Workshop Manual

Tiguan 2016 ➤
Tiguan RUS 2017 ➤

General body repairs, exterior

Edition 06.2017

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
50 - Body - front
55 - Bonnet, rear lid
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking
58 - Rear doors, door components
60 - Sunroof
63 - Bumpers
64 - Glazing
66 - Exterior equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2017 Volkswagen AG, Wolfsburg

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Safety information 1
1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with start/stop system 1
50 - Body - front 2
1 Lock carrier 2
1.1 Assembly overview - lock carrier 2
1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier 3
1.3 Moving to and back from service position 5
1.4 Repairing lock carrier 9
2 Wings 12
2.1 Assembly overview - wing 12
2.2 Removing and installing wing 13
3 Bulkhead 17
3.1 Assembly overview - plenum chamber bulkhead 17
3.2 Assembly overview - plenum chamber cover 18
3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber bulkhead 18
3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover 20
55 - Bonnet, rear lid 26
1 Bonnet 26
1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet 26
1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable 28
1.3 Removing and installing bonnet 28
1.4 Resetting hinge 31
1.5 Adjusting bonnet 34
1.6 Removing and installing bonnet lock 40
1.7 Removing and installing bonnet release lever 45
1.8 Removing and installing striker pin 46
1.9 Removing and installing hinges 48
1.10 Removing and installing insulation 51
1.11 Removing and installing gas strut 53
1.12 Releasing gas from gas strut 54
1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable 54
2 Rear lid 58
2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid 58
2.2 Removing and installing rear lid 59
2.3 Adjusting rear lid 61
2.4 Removing and installing bonnet lock 68
2.5 Removing and installing operating mechanism 80
2.6 Removing and installing hinges 81
2.7 Removing and installing striker pin 84
2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal 85
2.9 Removing and installing gas strut 87
2.10 Releasing gas from gas strut 89
2.11 Removing and installing drive unit for rear lid VX69 89
3 Tank flap unit 94
3.1 Assembly overview - tank flap unit 94
3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit 94
3.3 Removing and installing fuel tank flap 97
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking 100

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 Door ... 100
1.1 Assembly overview - door ... 100
1.2 Removing and installing inner door seal ... 102
1.3 Removing and installing outer door seal ... 104
1.4 Removing and installing door ... 106
1.5 Adjusting door ... 109
1.6 Adjusting striker pin ... 112
1.7 Removing and installing door arrester ... 114
2 Door components ... 117
2.1 Assembly overview - door components ... 117
2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator ... 119
2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock ... 120
2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor ... 121
2.5 Removing and installing window regulator ... 123
2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover ... 126
2.7 Removing and installing striker pin ... 128
2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle ... 130
2.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder ... 135
2.10 Removing and installing door handle ... 139
2.11 Removing and installing door handle bracket ... 143
2.12 Removing and installing door lock ... 145
2.13 Removing and installing window channel ... 150
2.14 Removing and installing outer window slot seal ... 153
2.15 Removing and installing inner window slot seal ... 155
3 Central locking ... 156
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking ... 156
3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 ... 158
3.3 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 ... 159
3.4 Removing and installing ignition key battery ... 160
3.5 Removing and installing cap on ignition key ... 162

58 - Rear doors, door components ... 163
1 Door ... 163
1.1 Assembly overview - door ... 163
1.2 Removing and installing door ... 165
1.3 Adjusting door ... 167
1.4 Adjusting striker pin ... 170
1.5 Removing and installing door arrester ... 172
1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal ... 174
1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal ... 177
2 Door components ... 180
2.1 Assembly overview - door components ... 180
2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator ... 182
2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock ... 183
2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor ... 183
2.5 Removing and installing window regulator ... 186
2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover ... 189
2.7 Removing and installing striker pin ... 191
2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle ... 193
2.9 Removing and installing door handle ... 198
2.10 Removing and installing door handle bracket ... 201
2.11 Removing and installing door lock ... 204
2.12 Removing and installing window channel ... 208
2.13 Removing and installing outer window slot seal ... 211

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.14 Removing and installing inner window slot seal . . . 213

60 - Sunroof . . . 214
1 Sliding sunroof . . . 214
1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof . . . 214
1.2 Assembly overview - wind deflector . . . 216
1.3 Removing and installing sunroof panel . . . 216
1.4 Removing and installing rear sunroof panel . . . 220
1.5 Adjusting sunroof panel . . . 227
1.6 Removing and installing sliding sunroof seals . . . 231
1.7 Removing and installing wind deflector . . . 235
1.8 Removing and installing sunroof motor V1 . . . 236
1.9 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 . . . 239
1.10 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind control unit J394 . . . 240
1.11 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 . . . 241
1.12 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind . . . 242
1.13 Removing and installing sliding sunroof frame . . . 247
1.14 Removing and installing rear part . . . 250
1.15 Removing and installing tilt mechanism for sliding sunroof . . . 255
1.16 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind cables . . . 257
1.17 Operating without current . . . 260
2 Water drain hoses . . . 262
2.1 Assembly overview - water drainage hoses . . . 262
2.2 Removing and installing water drain hoses . . . 263
2.3 Cleaning water drainage hoses . . . 263

63 - Bumpers . . . 266
1 Bumper, front . . . 266
1.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover . . . 266
1.2 Assembly overview - add-on parts . . . 268
1.3 Assembly overview - impact bar . . . 274
1.4 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 275
1.5 Repairing bumper cover . . . 278
2 Bumper, rear . . . 283
2.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover . . . 283
2.2 Assembly overview - guides for bumper cover . . . 284
2.3 Assembly overview - add-on parts . . . 285
2.4 Assembly overview - impact bar . . . 287
2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 287
2.6 Removing and installing impact bar . . . 291
2.7 Repairing bumper cover . . . 293

64 - Glazing . . . 302
1 Repair notes . . . 302
1.1 Minimum curing periods for bonded windows . . . 302
1.2 Window repair . . . 302
1.3 Installation instructions for bonded windows . . . 303
1.4 Preparing old undamaged windows for fitting . . . 304
1.5 Preparing new windows for installing . . . 305
1.6 Preparing body flange for fitting . . . 307
1.7 Cleaning off excess adhesive . . . 307
2 Windscreen . . . 309
2.1 Assembly overview - windscreen . . . 309
2.2 Removing and installing windscreen . . . 310
3 Rear windscreen . . . 317

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.1 Assembly overview - rear window . . . 317
3.2 Removing and installing rear window . . . 318
4 Side window . . . 322
4.1 Assembly overview - rear side windows . . . 322
4.2 Removing and installing rear side window . . . 323
5 Door windows . . . 328
5.1 Assembly overview - front door window . . . 328
5.2 Assembly overview - rear door window . . . 329
5.3 Removing and installing front door window . . . 329
5.4 Removing and installing rear door window . . . 333
5.5 Removing and installing fixed front door window . . . 337
5.6 Removing and installing fixed rear door window . . . 338

66 - Exterior equipment . . . 341

1 Radiator grille and front trim . . . 341
1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille . . . 341
1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille . . . 343
2 Spoiler . . . 346
2.1 Assembly overview - spoiler . . . 346
2.2 Removing and installing spoiler . . . 347
3 Mouldings, trims, extensions . . . 352
3.1 Assembly overview - water deflector . . . 352
3.2 Assembly overview - wheel arch covers . . . 354
3.3 Assembly overview - heat shield . . . 355
3.4 Removing and installing water deflector . . . 356
3.5 Removing and installing cover . . . 357
3.6 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on door . . . 363
3.7 Removing and installing trim strip . . . 365
3.8 Removing and installing entry moulding . . . 367
3.9 Removing and installing wheel arch covers . . . 370
3.10 Removing and installing underbody heat shield . . . 377
4 Noise insulation . . . 381
4.1 Assembly overview - noise insulation . . . 381
5 Underbody cladding . . . 385
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim . . . 385
5.2 Removing and installing underbody cladding . . . 386
5.3 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece . . . 391
6 Roof moulding and roof railing . . . 394
6.1 Assembly overview - roof railing . . . 394
6.2 Removing and installing roof railing . . . 395
7 Exterior mirror . . . 396
7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror . . . 396
7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror . . . 397
7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass . . . 400
7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit . . . 402
7.5 Removing and installing mirror cover . . . 404
7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim . . . 405
8 Wheel housing liner . . . 407
8.1 Assembly overview - front wheel housing liner . . . 407
8.2 Assembly overview - rear wheel housing liner . . . 408
8.3 Removing and installing front wheel housing liner . . . 409
8.4 Removing and installing rear wheel housing liner . . . 411
9 Lettering and emblems . . . 414
9.1 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on rear . . . 414

Printed by VW AG
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

9.2 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on sides 417
9.3 Removing and installing emblems at vehicle front 418
9.4 Renewing lettering and badges at rear 420
9.5 Renewing lettering and badges on sides 421
9.6 Removing and installing lettering and emblems for radiator grille 422
10 Special add-on parts 423
10.1 Assembly overview – special add-on parts 423
11 Support 424
11.1 Assembly overview - towing bracket 424
11.2 Removing and installing towing bracket 424
11.3 Removing and installing trigger unit 427

Protected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety information

(VRL010540; Edition 06.2017)

⇒ "1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with start/stop system", page 1

1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury from unexpected engine start

If the vehicle's start/stop system is activated, the engine can start unexpectedly. A message in the dash panel insert indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– Deactivate start/stop system by switching off the ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

50 – Body - front

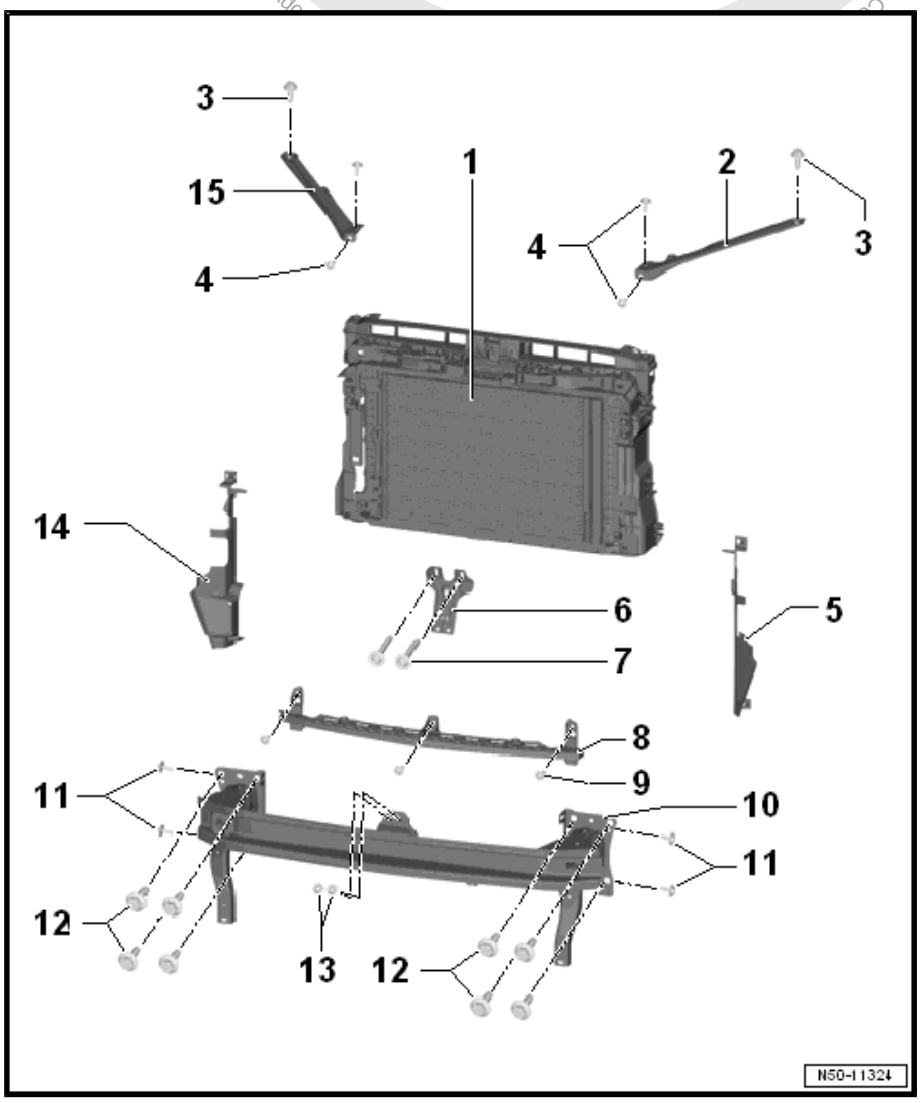
1 Lock carrier

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - lock carrier”, page 2
⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier”, page 3
⇒ “1.3 Moving to and back from service position”, page 5
⇒ “1.4 Repairing lock carrier”, page 9

1.1 Assembly overview - lock carrier

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA



1 - Lock carrier with add-on parts
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 3
- ❑ Moving to and back from service position ⇒ page 5

2 - Mounting plate
- ❑ Left

3 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 1 on each side
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

5 - Air duct
- ❑ Left

6 - Support for lock carrier

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 12 Nm

8 - Centre guide profile

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

10 - Bumper carrier

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

12 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 4 on each side
- ❑ 55 Nm

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

13 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 12 Nm

14 - Air duct

- ❑ Right

15 - Mounting plate

- ❑ Right

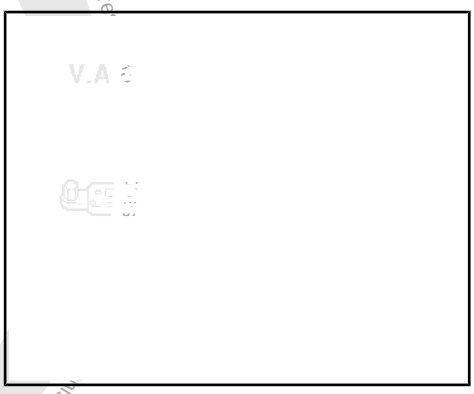
1.2 Removing and installing lock carrier

Special tools and workshop equipment required

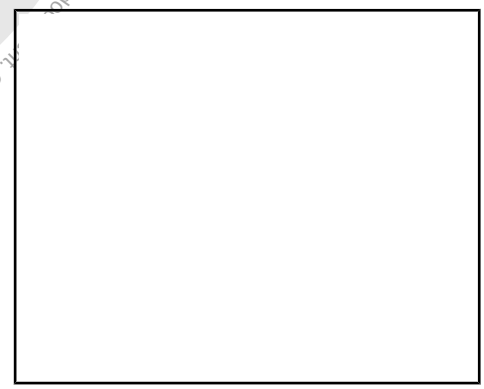
- ♦ Guide pins - T10093-



- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



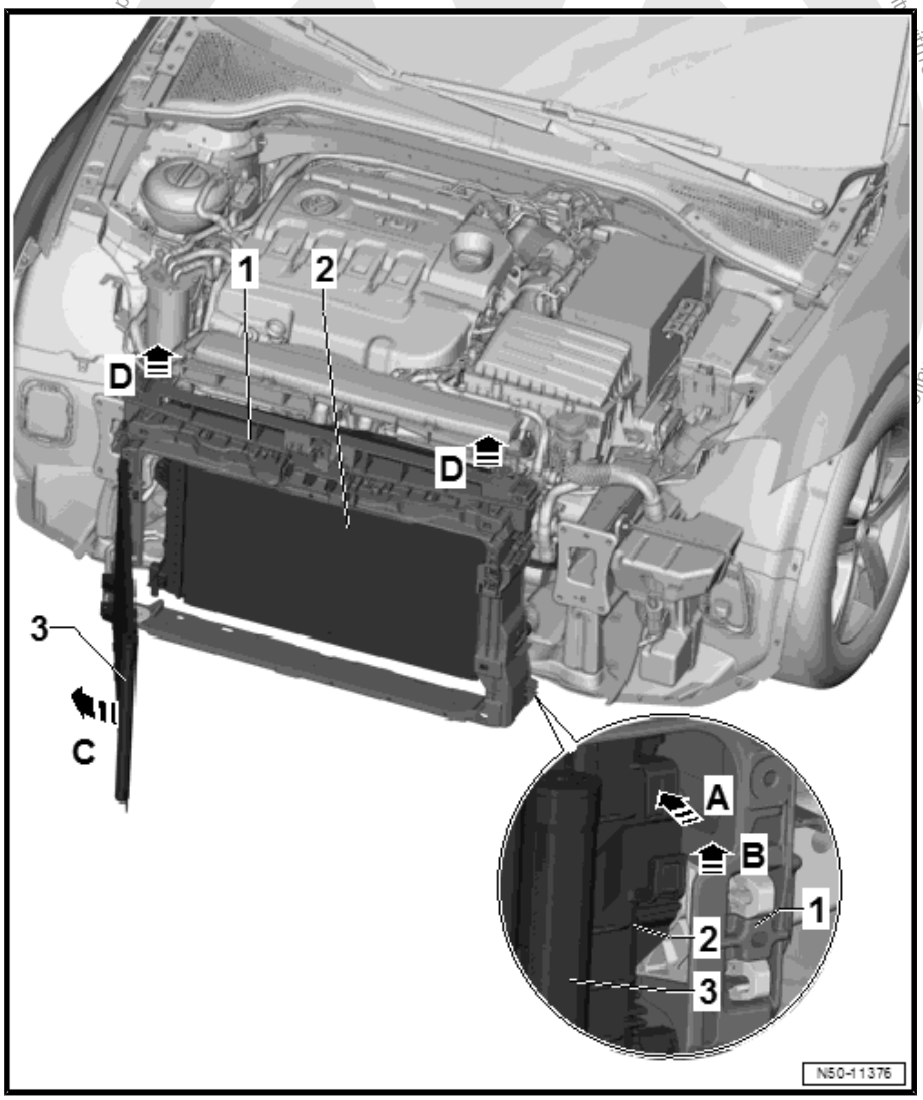
- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *The lock carrier is a safety-relevant component. For this reason, the lock carrier must only be repaired at the points indicated.*
- *In the event of damage, renew lock carrier.*
- *For vehicles with adaptive cruise control unit - J428-, the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- must be adjusted anew whenever the lock carrier has been removed, installed or replaced.*
- *General information and work instructions for the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control*



Removing

– Always use guide pins - T10093- to move lock carrier to service position ⇒ page 5 .

– Remove guide pins - T10093- from left and right longitudinal members with the aid of a second mechanic. Put down lock carrier -1- with attachments. For example on engine and gearbox jack - VAS 6931- .

– Remove bumper carrier and support arm ⇒ page 274 .

permitted only as authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

– Detach radiator module from lock carrier -arrow a-, but do not remove it ⇒ Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator, radiator fan; Removing and installing radiator module .

– Lift condenser -3- off radiator module -2- -arrow b-, swing it slightly out of lock carrier -arrow c-, but do not remove it.

– Pull out lock carrier -1- upwards between radiator module and condenser -arrows d-.

Note

- *Do not hang condenser and hydraulic oil cooler from lines.*
- *Do not kink lines for condenser and hydraulic systems.*

Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

Note

- *Always fit lock carrier on the bolting points at the foremost position in the elongated hole. Only then can the lock carrier move in a crash situation.*
- *On vehicles equipped with adaptive cruise control unit - J428- , the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- must be readjusted whenever the lock carrier has been removed, installed or renewed.*
- *General information and work instructions for the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control*

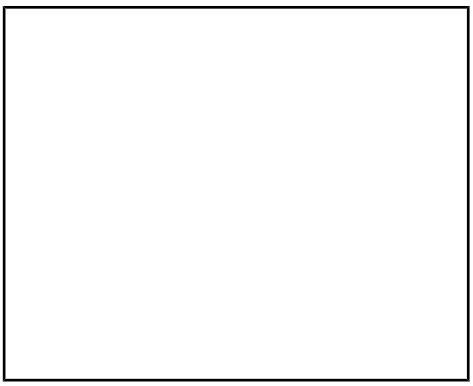
Specified torques

- Lock carrier
⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - lock carrier”, page 2 .

1.3 Moving to and back from service position

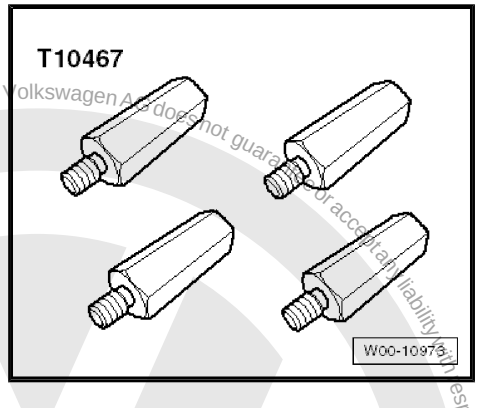
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Guide pins - T10093-

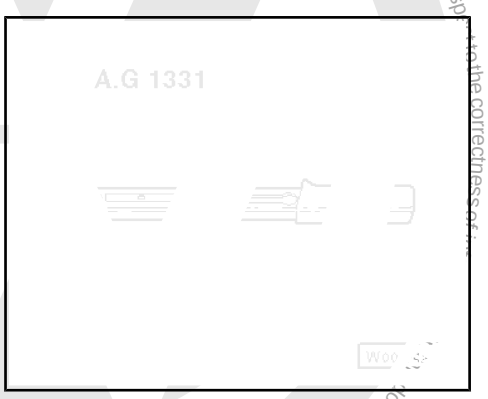


Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- Adapter - T10467-



- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-

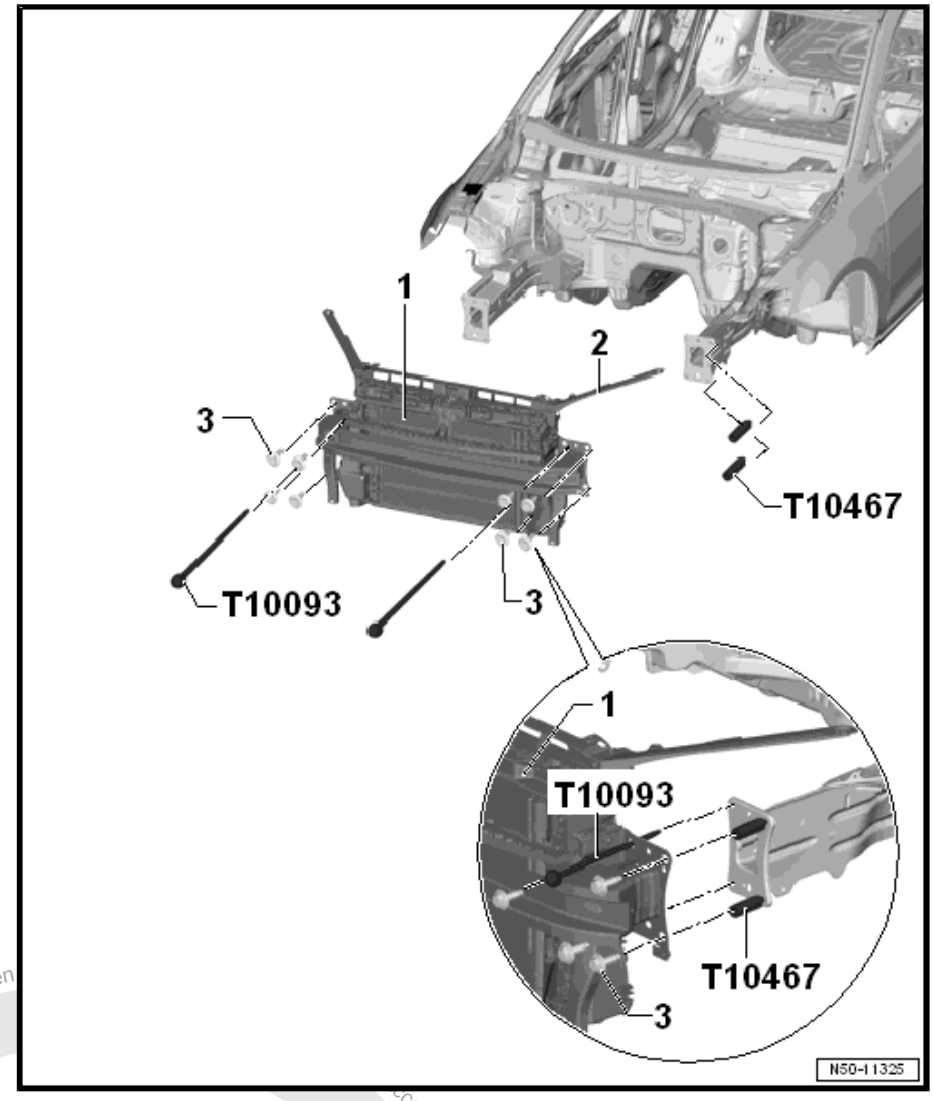


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Moving to service position

Note

- *The lock carrier is a safety-relevant component. The lock carrier must not be repaired for this reason.*
- *In the event of damage, renew lock carrier.*
- *For vehicles with adaptive cruise control unit - J428- , the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- must be adjusted anew whenever the lock carrier has been removed, installed or replaced.*
- *General information and work instructions for the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control*

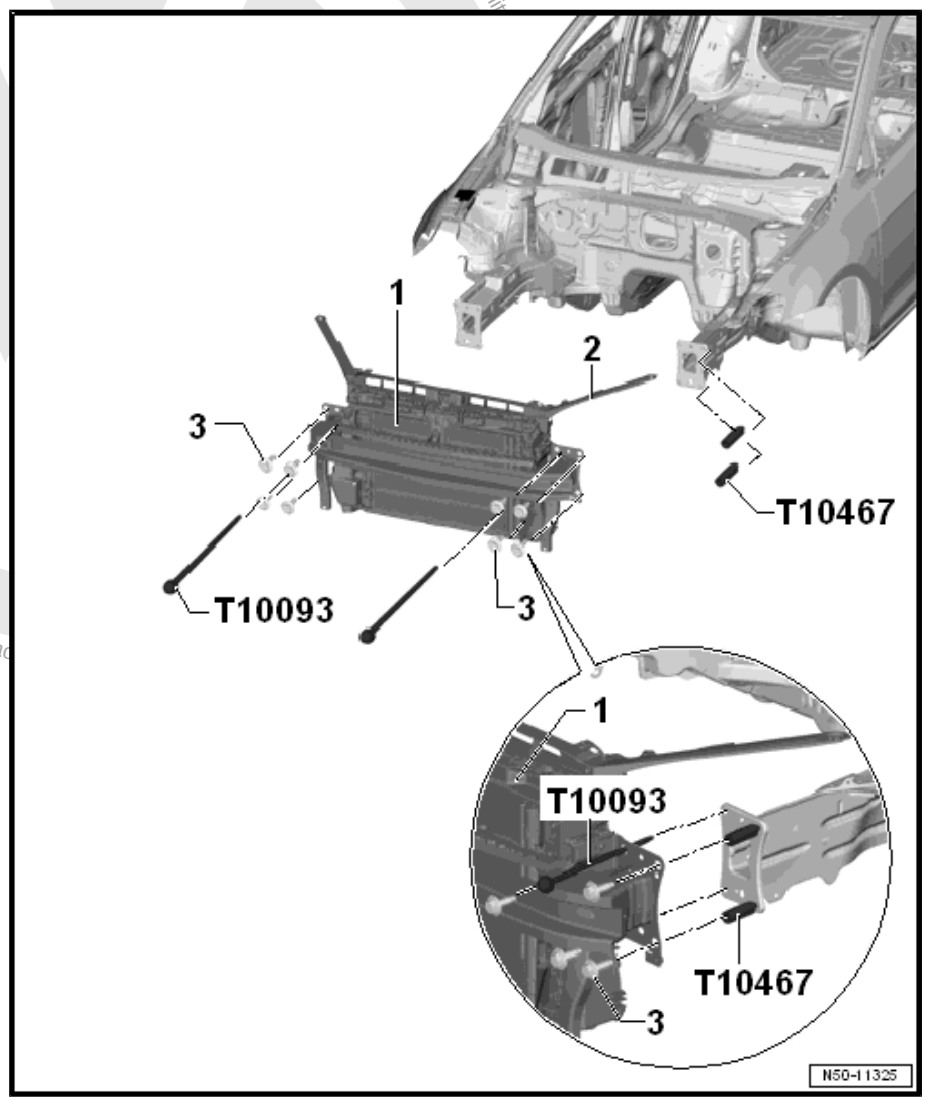


– Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .
– Remove cable on mounting bracket of electrically operated lid ⇒ page 54 .
– Unhook filler neck for washer fluid reservoir on carrier -2- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Window washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .
– Only remove one bolt -3- on left and right side of each longitudinal member.
– Screw in special tool guide pins - T10093- to left and right longitudinal members where the bolts were previously located.
– Remove remaining bolts -3- on left and right side of longitudinal members.
– The lock carrier with add-on parts -1- can be pulled forwards about 10 cm on the special tool guide pins - T 10093- . When doing this, be careful with the electrical wires/cables leading to lock carrier and, if necessary, detach connectors.
– Install special tool adapter - 10467- (2 on each side) on left and right between bumper carrier and longitudinal member.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Moving from service position



– Remove special tool adapter - T10467- on left and right from between bumper carrier and longitudinal member.
– Push lock carrier together with add-on parts -1- on the guide pins - T10093- and onto the longitudinal member.
– Place bolts -3- on left and right.
– Unscrew guide pins - T10093- on left and right.
– Align lock carrier together with add-on parts -1- to longitudinal members and between wings ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body gaps/shut lines; Body - front .

Note

- *Always fit lock carrier on the bolting points at the foremost position in the elongated hole. Only then can the lock carrier move in a crash situation.*
- *On vehicles equipped with adaptive cruise control unit - J428- , the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- must be readjusted whenever the lock carrier has been removed, installed or renewed.*
- *General information and work instructions for the adaptive cruise control unit - J428- can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control*

Further installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.
When proceeding, observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that the charge air cooler pressure hoses are properly refitted.*
- *Hoses and lines must not be pinched.*

– Adjust headlights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Adjusting headlights .

Specified torques

- Lock carrier
  ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - lock carrier”, page 2 .

1.4 Repairing lock carrier

⇒ “1.4.1 Left headlight mounting”, page 9

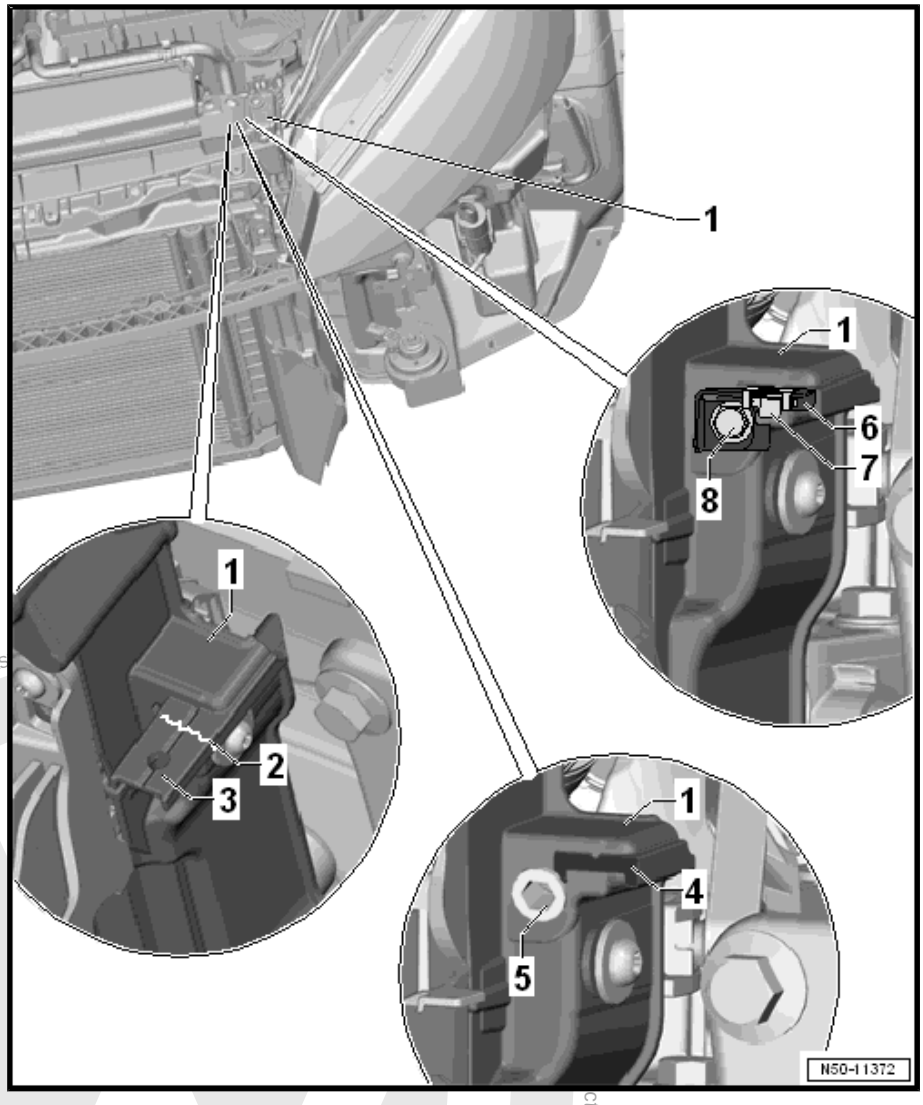
⇒ “1.4.2 Right headlight mounting”, page 11

1.4.1 Left headlight mounting

Note

Line -2- indicates the position where the tab might break off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .
– Make a straight cut to cut or saw headlight mounting -4- off lock carrier -1-.
– Fit threaded rivet -5-.
– Fit new retaining bracket -6- with speed nut -7-.
– Tighten bolt -8-.

Specified torques

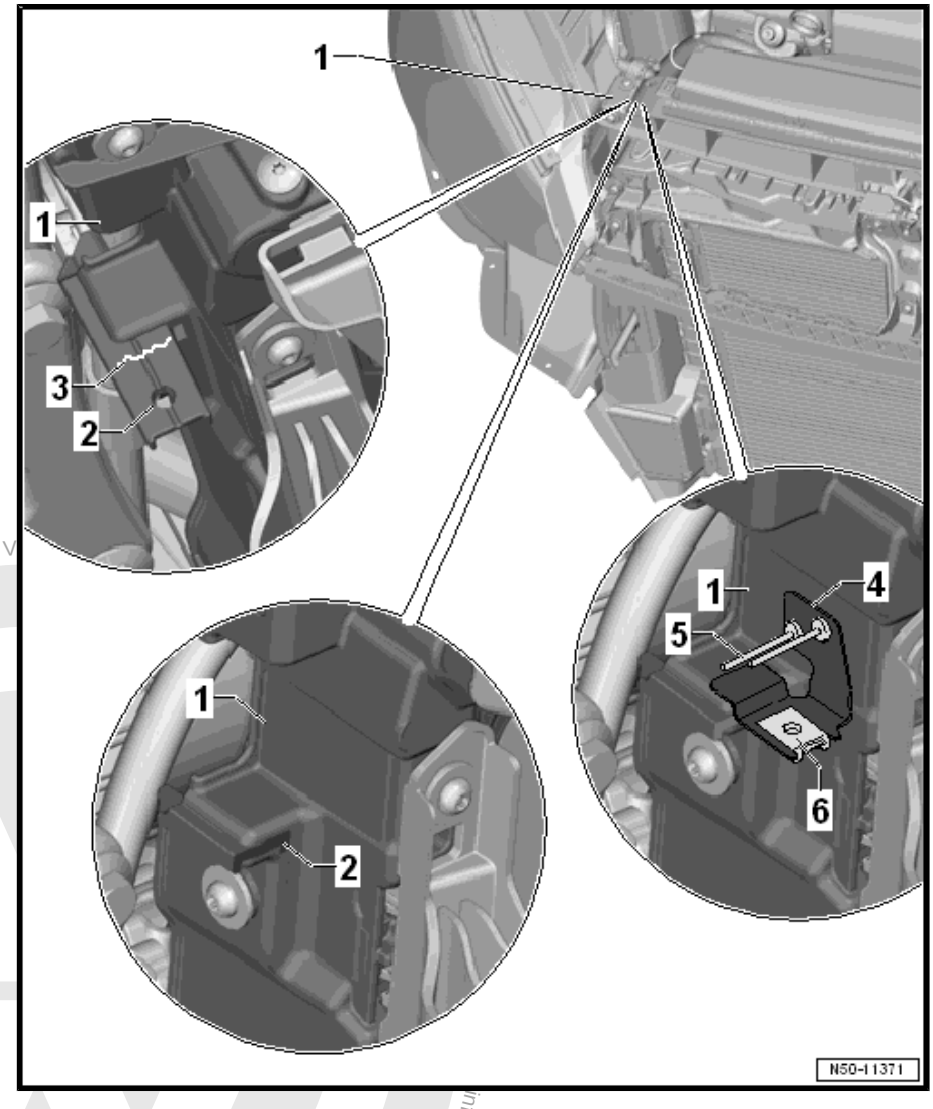
Component	Specified torque
Bolt	5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No guarantee or liability for correctness of information in this document.

1.4.2 Right headlight mounting

Note

Line -3- indicates the position where the tab might break off.



– Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .
– Make a straight cut to cut or saw headlight mounting -2- off lock carrier -1-.
– Fit new retaining bracket -4- with speed nut -6-.
– Fit pop rivets -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

2 Wings

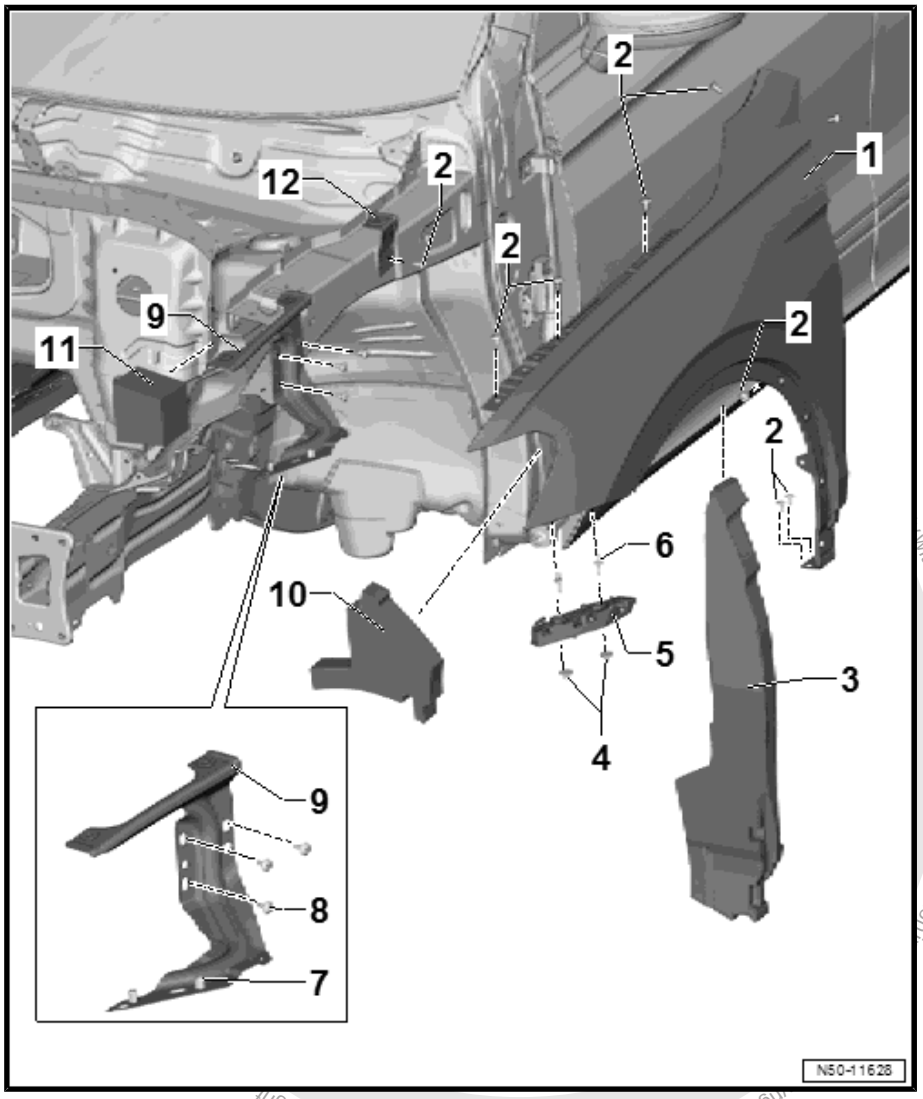
⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - wing”, page 12

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing wing”, page 13

2.1 Assembly overview - wing

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The right side is similar.



1 - Wings

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 8 for wing
- ❑ Qty. 1 for deformation element
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

3 - Insulation for rib section

- ❑ Inserted between wing and A-pillar.

4 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

5 - Guide profile

- ❑ Removing:
- ❑ Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .
- ❑ Unscrew hexagon nut -6-.
- ❑ Different versions. For allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue “ETKA” .

6 - Double stud

- ❑ Qty. 2, wing bracket
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

7 - Expansion nut

- ❑ Qty. 2

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

9 - Wing bracket

10 - Wing insulation

- ❑ Inserted between wing and upper A-pillar

11 - Top longitudinal member insulation

- ❑ Inserted in top of longitudinal member.

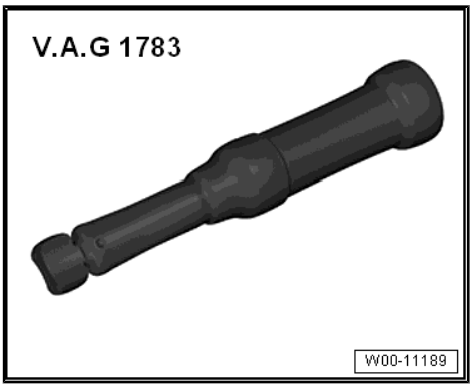
12 - Deformation element

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ... with respect to the correctness of information ...

2.2 Removing and installing wing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

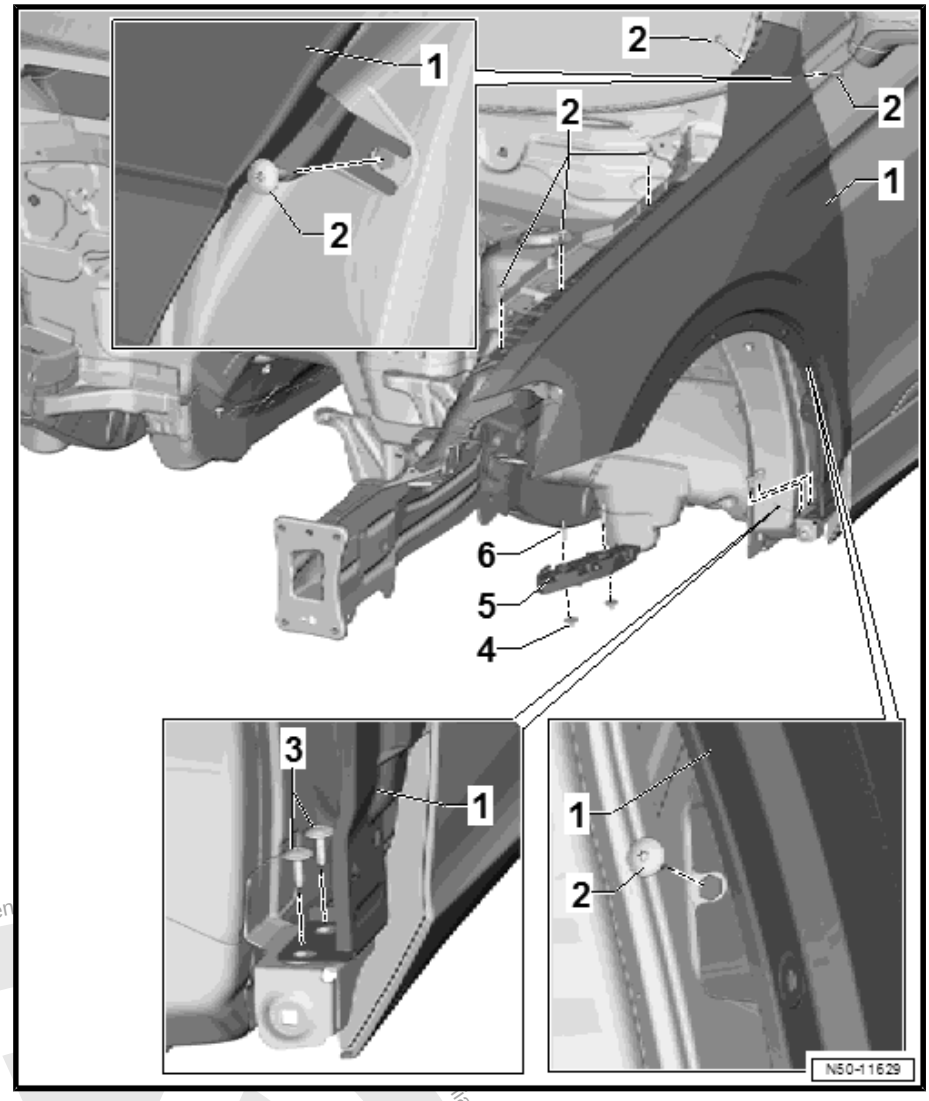


Removing

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left wing. Removal and installation of the right wing are similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove front wheel housing liner ⇒ page 409 .
– Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .
– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .
– Removing left plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 20 .
– Remove water deflector ⇒ page 356 .
– Unscrew hexagon nut -4- and remove guide bracket -5-.
– Pull out wing insulation.
– Remove centre hex studs -6-.
– Loosen bolt -2- on windscreen by 1 or 2 turns only, do not unscrew.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and -3-.
– Remove wing -1- carefully.

Note

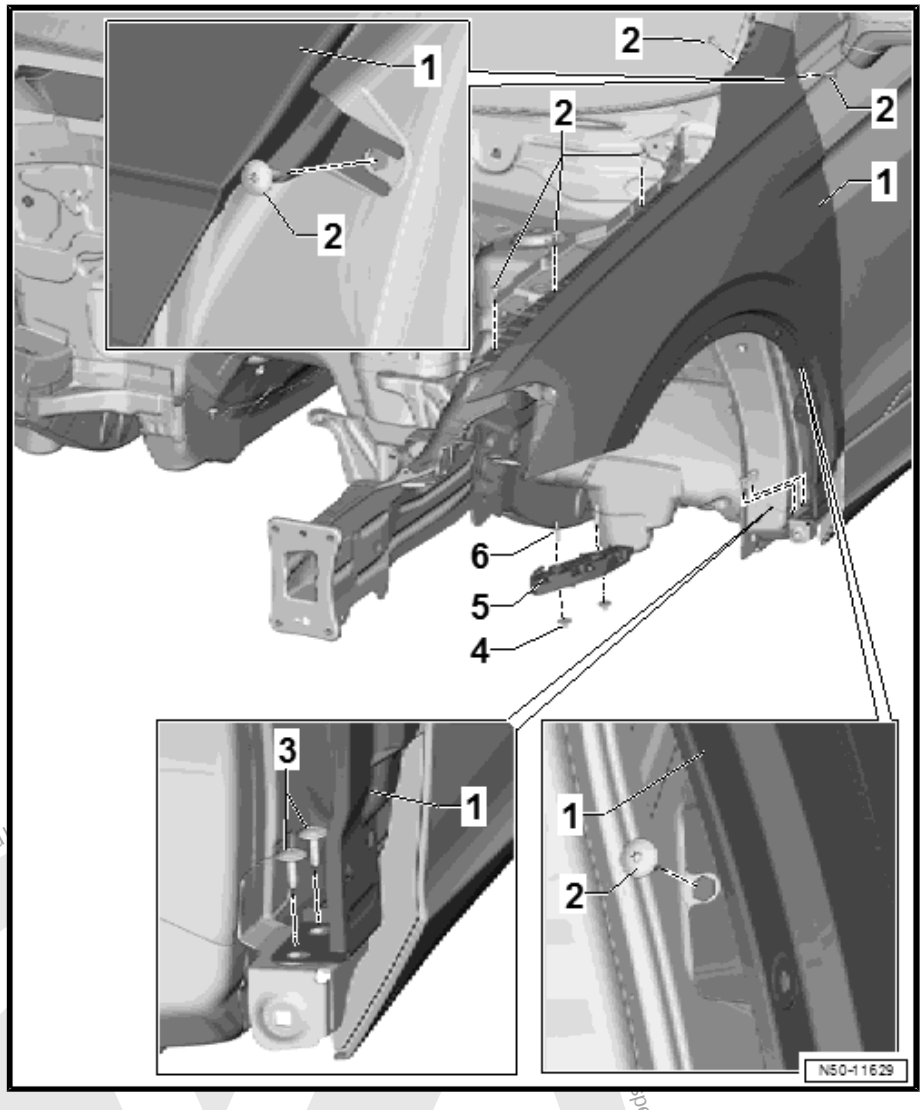
The zinc intermediate piece - AKL 381 035 50- -7- (if there is one) will be damaged during removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

Note

Install wing -1- without subjecting it to tensile stress.



Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

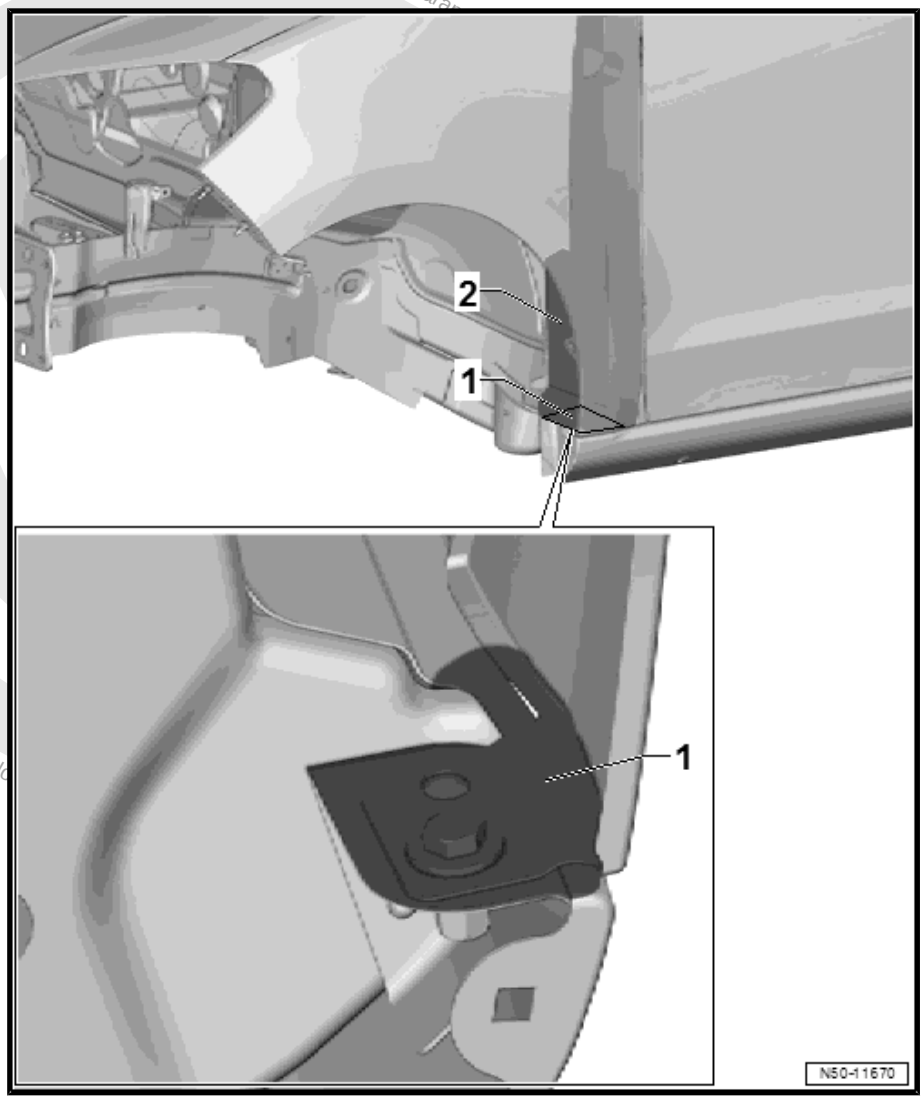
– The wing is aligned free of tension with wing bracket loosened.
– Always insert zinc intermediate piece - AKL 381 035 50- -7- between wing and side member.
– Ensure joints are parallel and shut lines are equal ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body gaps; Body, front .

Specified torques

♦ Wing ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - wing”, page 12

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Thoroughly wax area -1- of wing in which insulation -2- is installed.
– Once wax has dried, insulation -2- can be installed.
– Install wheel housing liner ⇒ page 409 .

3 Bulkhead

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - plenum chamber bulkhead”, page 17

⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - plenum chamber cover”, page 18

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber bulkhead”, page 18

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover”, page 20

3.1 Assembly overview - plenum chamber bulkhead

1 - Right bulkhead

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 18

2 - Left bulkhead

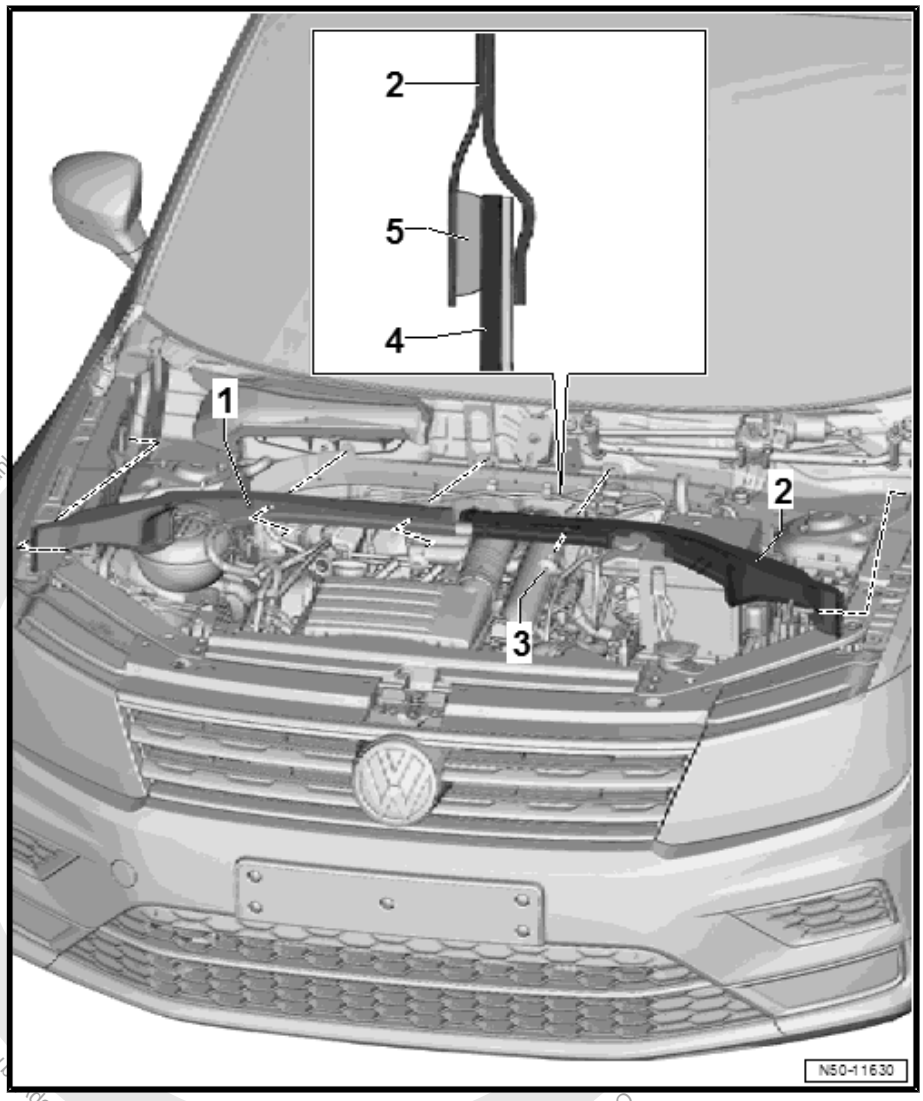
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 18

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 5
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

4 - Plenum chamber

5 - Seal



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.2 Assembly overview - plenum chamber cover

1 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Right side
- ❑ Removing and installing, left-hand drive vehicles ⇒ page 20
- ❑ Removing and installing, right-hand drive vehicles ⇒ page 22

2 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Left side
- ❑ Removing and installing, left-hand drive vehicles ⇒ page 20
- ❑ Removing and installing, right-hand drive vehicles ⇒ page 22

3 - Clip

- ❑ Qty. 3

4 - Foam element

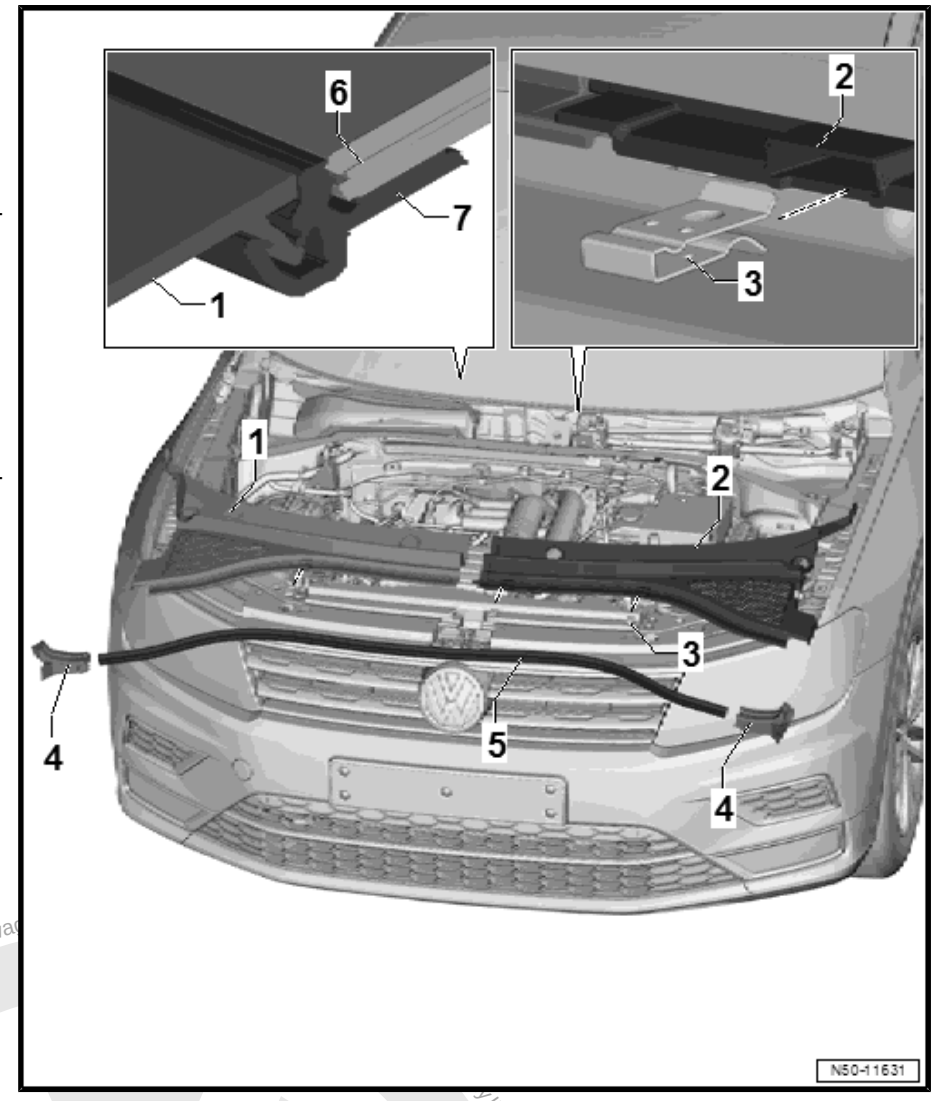
- ❑ Left and right

5 - Seal

6 - Windscreen

7 - Windscreen seal

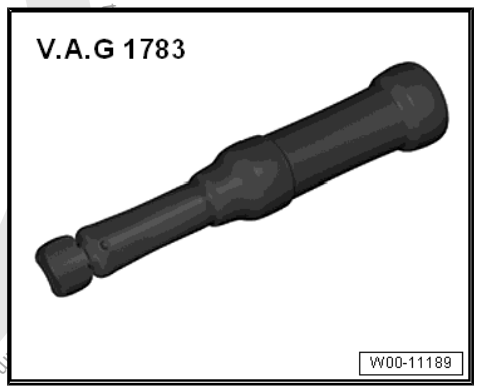
- ❑ Part of windscreen



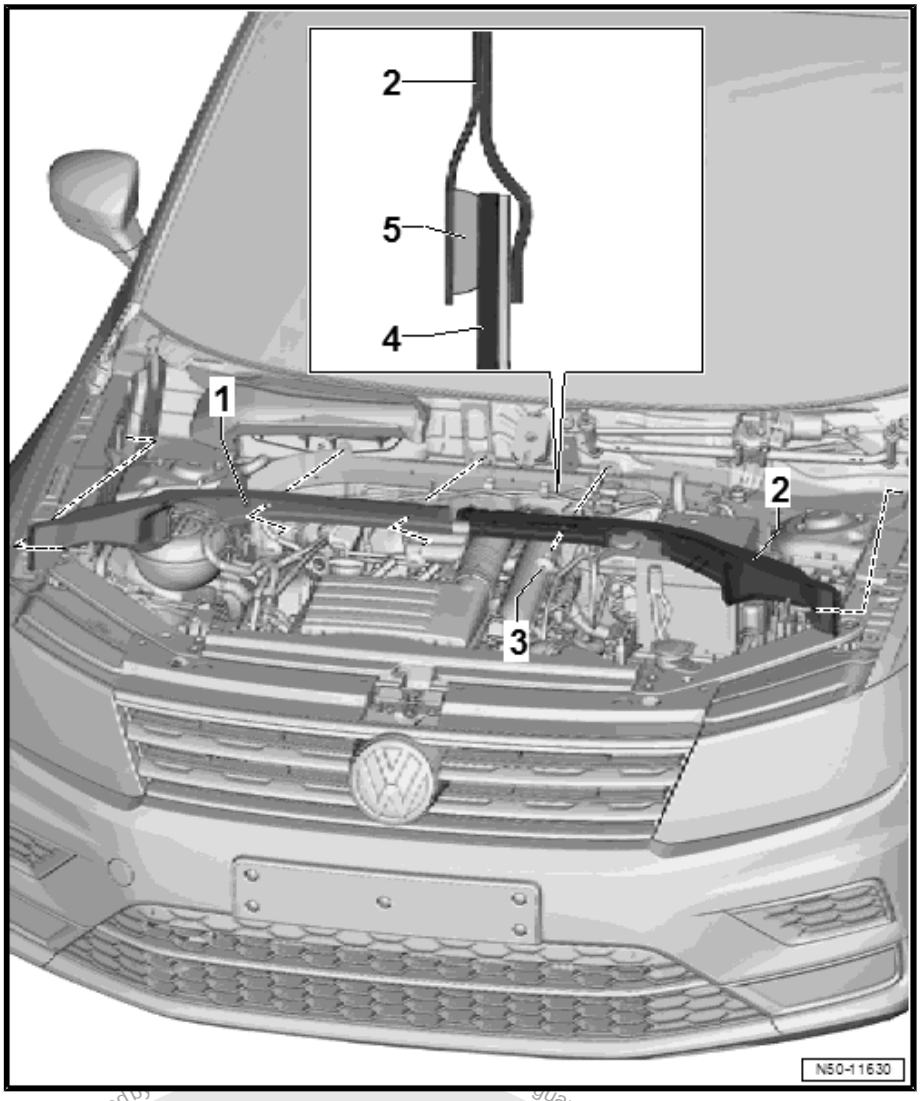
3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber bulkhead

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Removing plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 18 .
– Unscrew bolts -3- and remove bulkhead -1- upwards.
– Remove bulkhead -2-.

Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

– Check seal -5- for damage, renew bulkhead -2- if necessary.

Specified torques

Bolts ⇒ page 17

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover

⇒ “3.4.1 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover, left-hand drive vehicles”, page 20

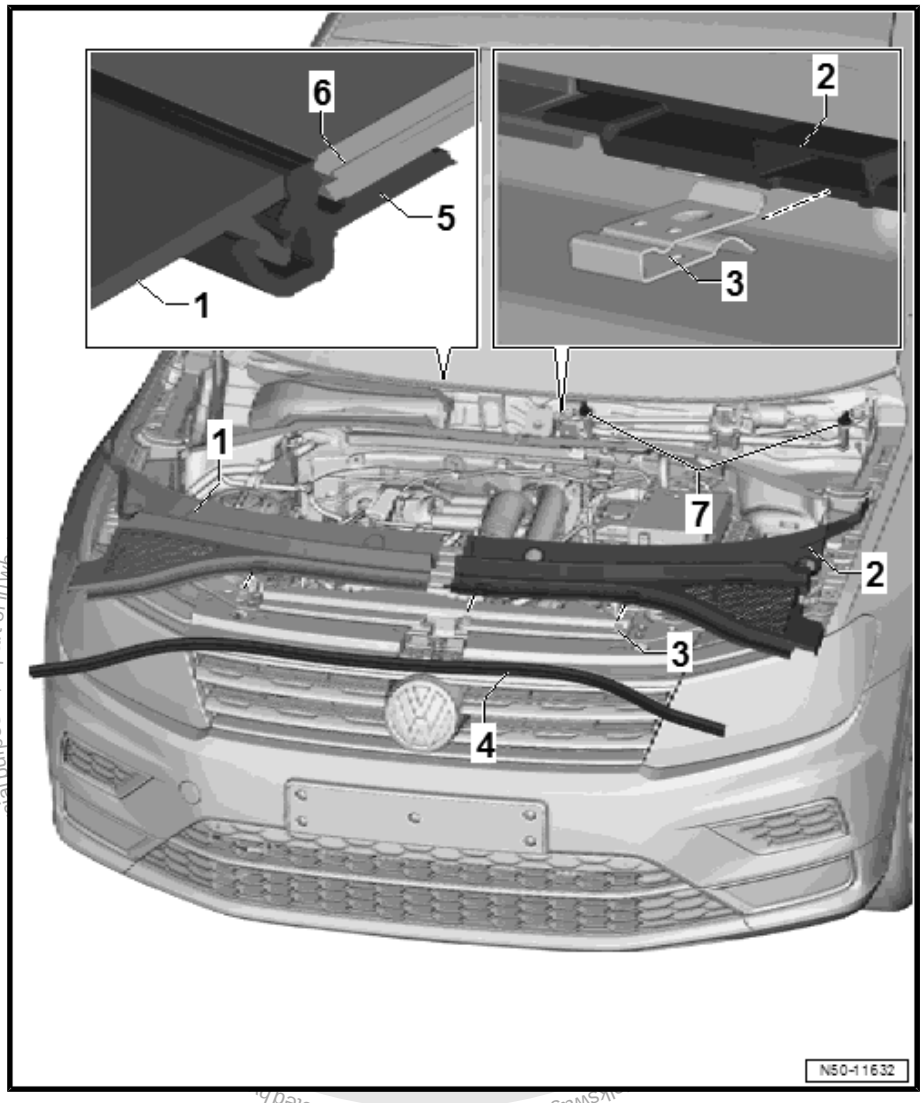
⇒ “3.4.2 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover, right-hand drive vehicles”, page 22

3.4.1 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover, left-hand drive vehicles

Removing

Note

The removal and installation procedures for the plenum chamber covers may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.

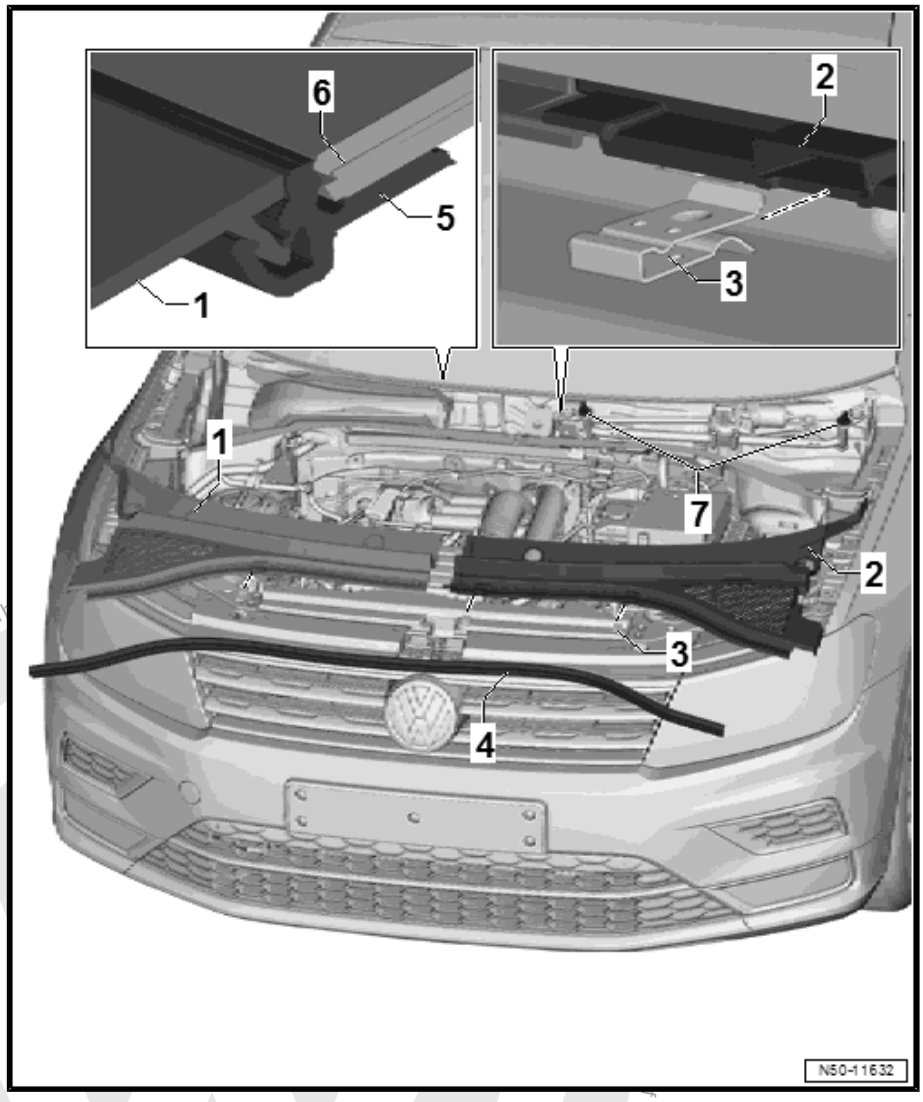


...al purposes, in part or in...
Protected b... ...kswagen AG.

– Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .
– Pull off seal -4- along entire length of plenum chamber covers.
– Loosen clips -3- (qty. 3) at bottom.

– First pull plenum chamber covers -2- by hand, starting from middle, upwards from windscreen seal -5-.
– Lift plenum chamber covers -2- over wiper arm shafts -7-.
– Remove plenum chamber covers -2-.
– Then pull out plenum chamber covers -1- by hand, starting from middle, upwards from windscreen seal.
– Remove plenum chamber covers -1-.

Installing



Note

- *An insert is fitted in windscreen seal of new windscreens. Remove this insert before installing plenum chamber cover.*
- *Push the plenum chamber cover into the windscreen seal by hand using only slight force. Never force it in by hitting or using tools.*
- *Striking or banging the plenum chamber cover into the windscreen seal may crack the windscreen.*

– Spray windscreen seal -5- with a soapy solution so that plenum chamber covers -1- and -2- are easier to press in.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– First push in plenum chamber covers -1-.
– Place plenum chamber cover -1- on beading -5-. Starting from the outside, press into beading -5- by applying light pressure.
– Then push in plenum chamber covers -2- over wiper arm shafts -7-.
– Fit plenum chamber covers -2- onto windscreen seal -5-. Starting from outside, press into windscreen seal by applying light pressure.
– Attach clips -3- (qty. 3) at bottom.
– Fit seal -4- to plenum chamber covers -1- and -2-.
– Install wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .

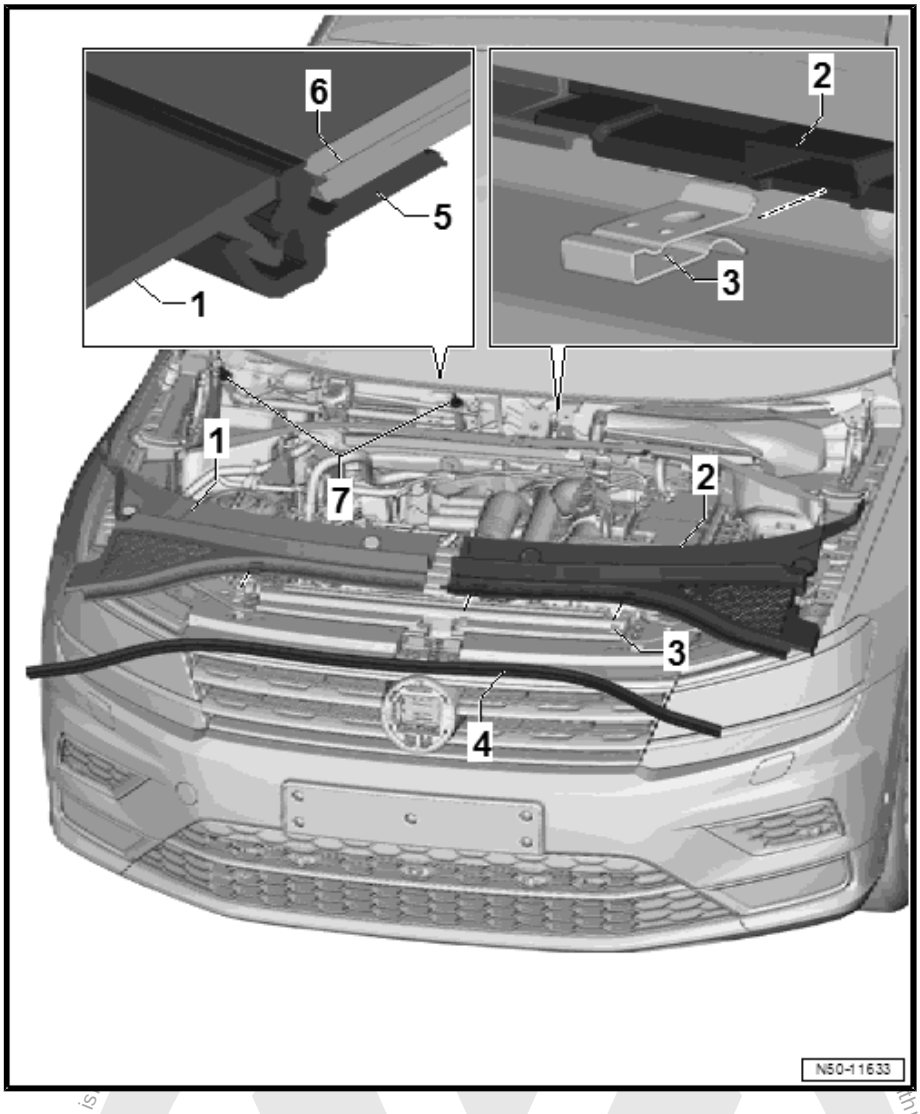
3.4.2 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover, right-hand drive vehicles

Removing

Note

The removal and installation procedures for the plenum chamber covers may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

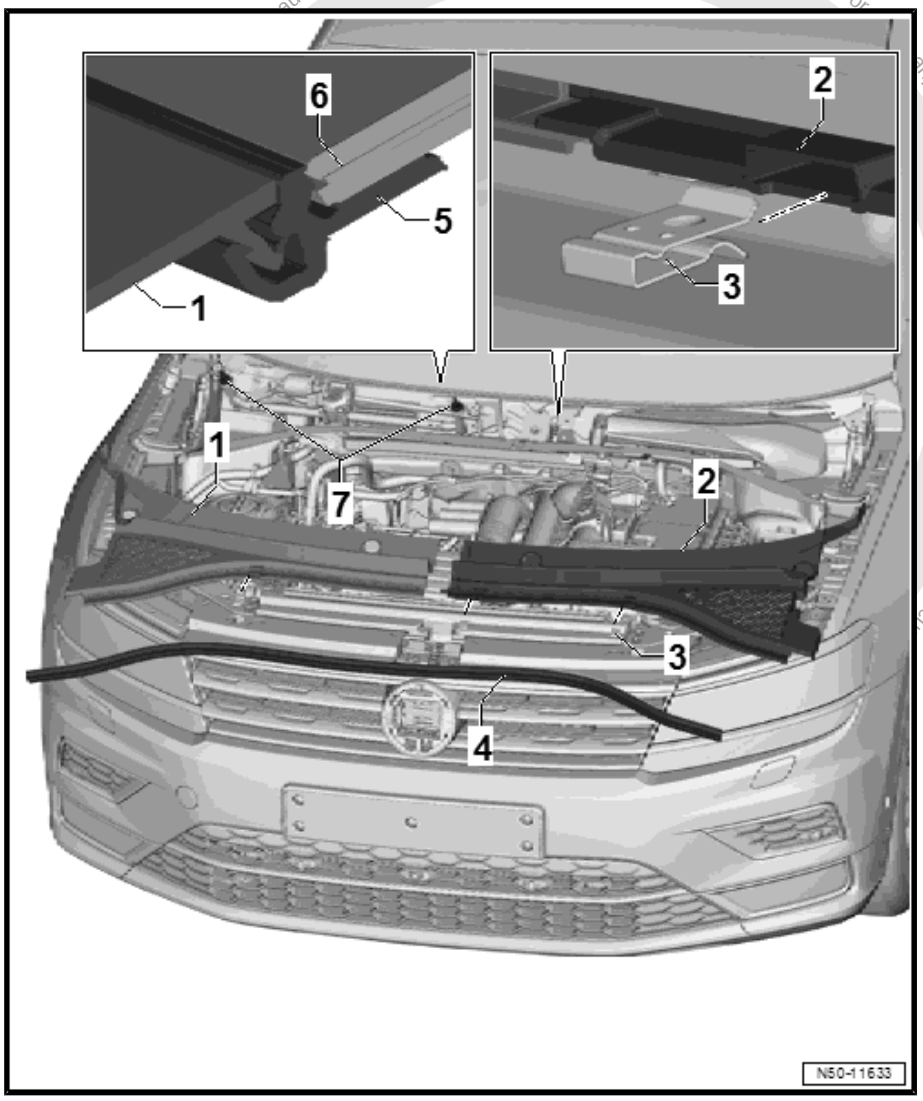


– Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .
– Pull off seal -4- along entire length of plenum chamber covers.
– Loosen clips -3- (qty. 3) at bottom.
– First, starting from middle, pull plenum chamber covers -2- by hand upwards out of windscreen seal -5-.
– Then, starting from middle, pull plenum chamber covers -1- by hand upwards out of windscreen seal -5-.
– Remove plenum chamber covers -1- via wiper arm shafts -7-.
– Remove plenum chamber covers -1-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. In respect to the correctness of information in this document

authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or ... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc...



Note

- *An insert is fitted in windscreen seal of new windscreens. Remove this insert before installing plenum chamber cover.*
- *Push the plenum chamber cover into the windscreen seal by hand using only slight force. Never force it in by hitting or using tools.*
- *Striking or banging the plenum chamber cover into the windscreen seal may crack the windscreen.*

– Spray windscreen seal with a soapy solution so that plenum chamber covers are easier to press in.

– First, push in plenum chamber covers -1- over wiper arm shafts -7-.

– Place plenum chamber cover -1- on beading -5-. Starting from the outside, press into beading -5- by applying light pressure.

– Then, fit plenum chamber covers -2- on windscreen seal -5-. Starting from the outside, press into beading -5- by applying light pressure.

– Attach clips -3- (qty. 3) at bottom.

– Fit seal -4- on plenum chamber covers.

– Install wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

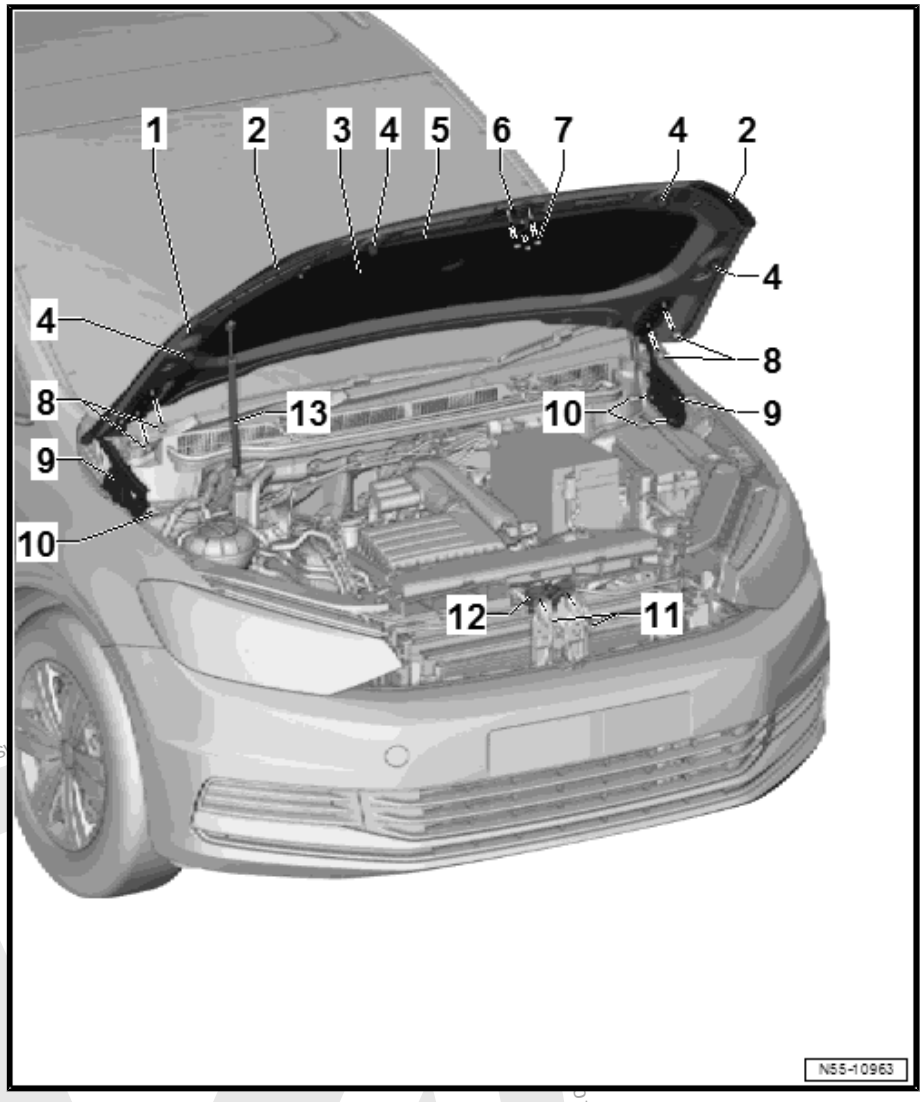
55 – Bonnet, rear lid

1 Bonnet

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26
⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable”, page 28
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing bonnet”, page 28
⇒ “1.4 Resetting hinge”, page 31
⇒ “1.5 Adjusting bonnet”, page 34
⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing bonnet lock”, page 40
⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing bonnet release lever”, page 45
⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing striker pin”, page 46
⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing hinges”, page 48
⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing insulation”, page 51
⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 53
⇒ “1.12 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 54
⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable”, page 54

1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Bonnet

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 34

2 - Seal on side

- ❑ Left and right

3 - Dampers

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

4 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Contact point for adjusting buffer is always protected by protective film.

5 - Seal in centre

6 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46

7 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 12 Nm

8 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ For securing bonnet
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 22 Nm

9 - Hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For securing hinge
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 22 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking; must be renewed after each time it has been loosened
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 12 Nm

12 - Lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40

13 - Gas strut

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 54

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.

1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable

1 - Operating lever

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 45

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

3 - Mounting bracket

4 - Expansion nut

- ❑ Qty. 2

5 - Bowden cable

- ❑ From mounting bracket -3- to clutch -7-

6 - Grommet

7 - Clutch

8 - Bowden cable

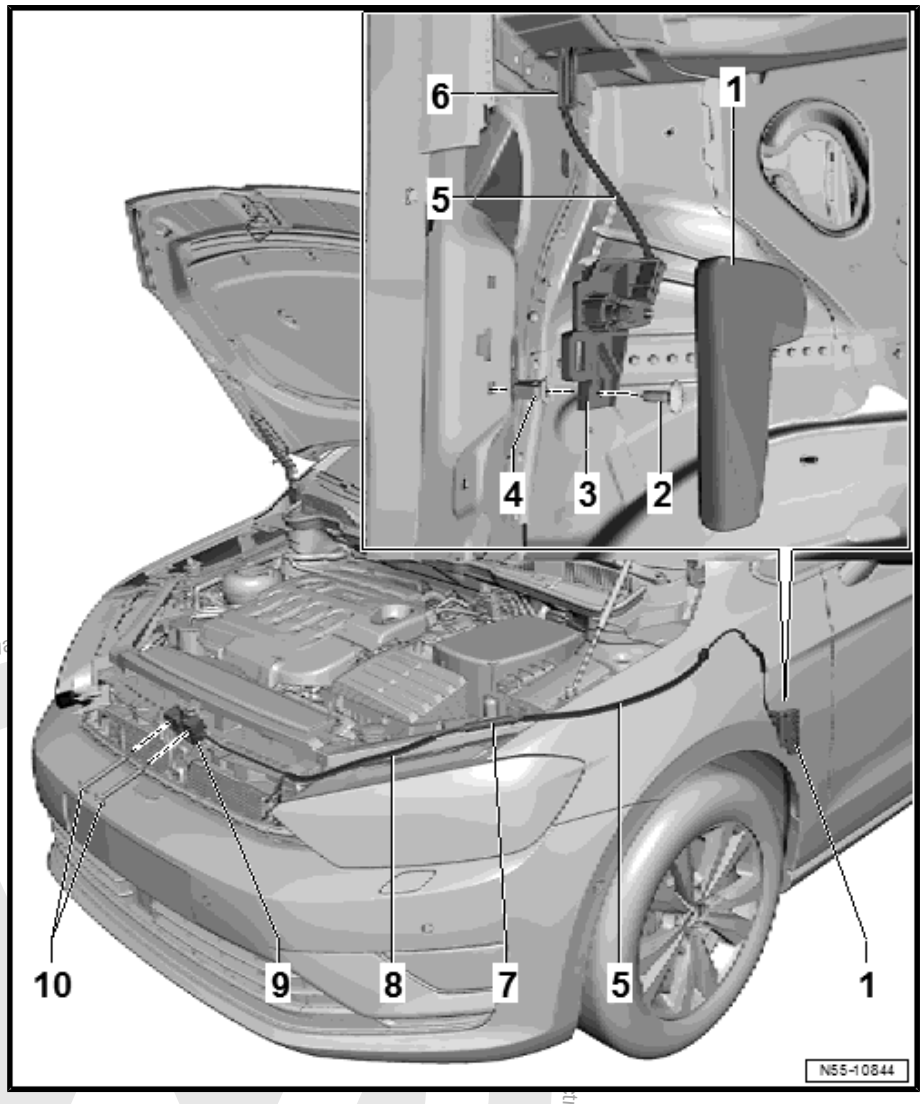
- ❑ From clutch -7- to bonnet lock -9-

9 - Lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 40

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking; must be renewed after each time it has been loosened
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 12 Nm



1.3 Removing and installing bonnet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

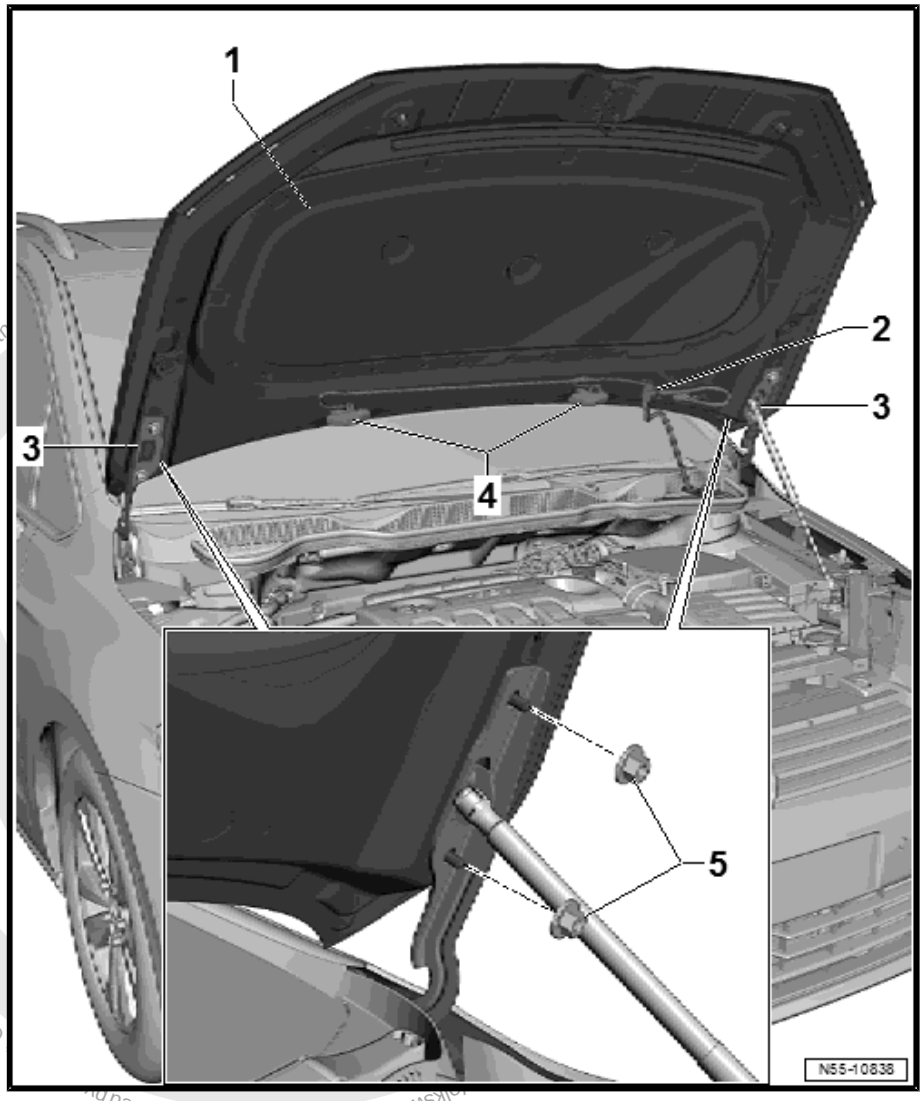
- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

Note

- *The bonnet with triggered active hinges can be reset in closed ⇒ page 31 and opened ⇒ page 32 condition.*
- *When the bonnet is opened with triggered hinges, there won't be any damage to surrounding components.*



Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth
Protected by
Volkswagen AG.

- Triggered active hinges have been reset to start position.

– Remove spray jets -4- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Window washer system; Removing and installing spray jets .

– Pull line -2- out of opening in bonnet -1-.

– Loosen hexagon nuts -5- on left and right of hinge -3- (do not unscrew completely).

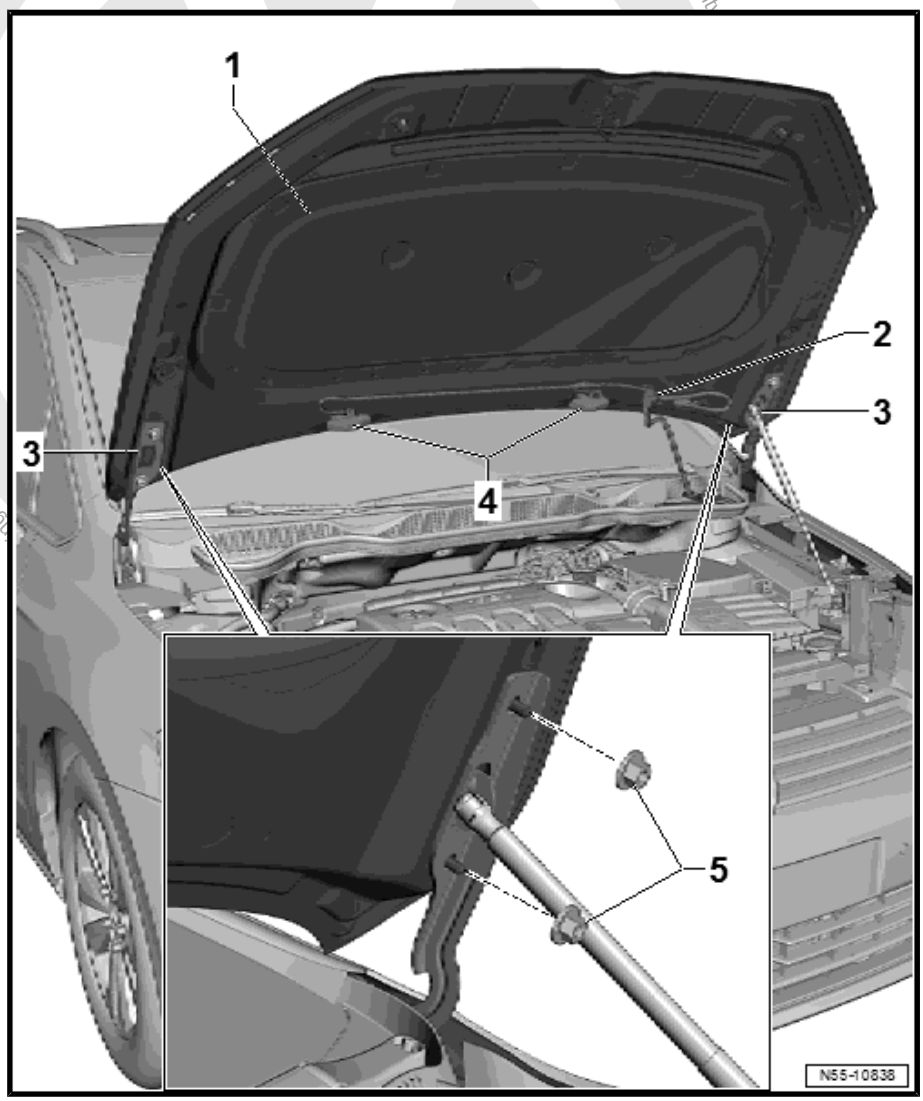
Further dismantling requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

– Remove gas strut ⇒ page 53 .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is not permitted under the copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Now, and only now, unscrew and remove hexagon nuts -5- and lift bonnet -1- out of hinges -3-.

Installing



Installation of bonnet -1- is carried out accordingly in reverse order of removal.

Note

Install the line -2- in a curve. If line is installed twisted it will kink.

– Adjusting bonnet -1- ⇒ page 34 .

Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nuts ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26

1.4 Resetting hinge

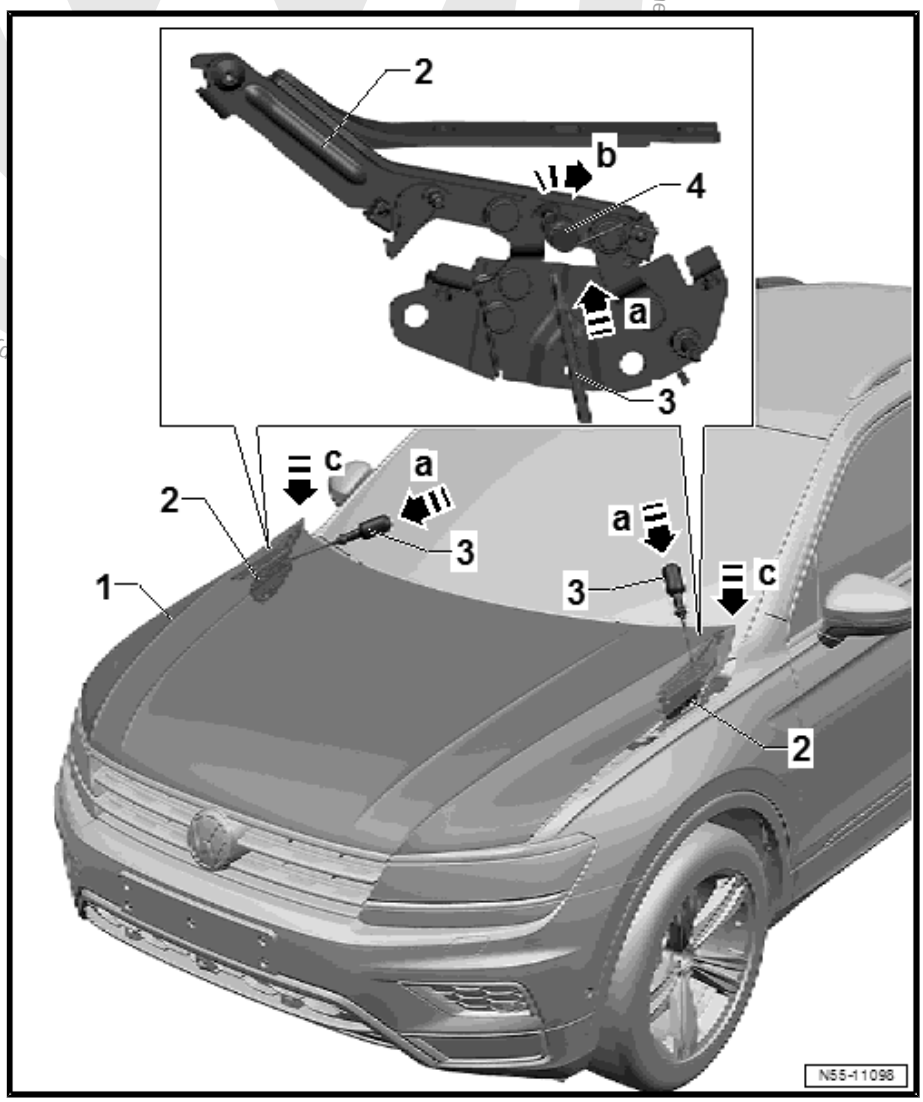
⇒ “1.4.1 Resetting closed bonnet with triggered active hinges for pedestrian protection system”, page 31

⇒ “1.4.2 Resetting opened bonnet with triggered active hinges for pedestrian protection system”, page 32

1.4.1 Resetting closed bonnet with triggered active hinges for pedestrian protection system

Note

- *Triggered hinges -2- can be identified by the bonnet being raised at the rear. There is also a gap at the wings.*
- *The following measures must always be performed at the same time on both sides.*



– Protect surrounding parts against damage.

– Fit screwdriver -3- on left and right to locking pawl -arrow a-.

– Release locking pawl -4- on hinge -2- -arrow b-.

– Carefully press down bonnet -1- -arrows a- so that locking pawl -4- can no longer engage.

– Only then release locking pawl, and pull out screwdriver.

– Carefully push down bonnet further -arrows a- until arrester engages on shoulder.

Once the hinges have been returned to the default position on a vehicle with triggered pedestrian protection system, the following components must be replaced:

- Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-
- Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

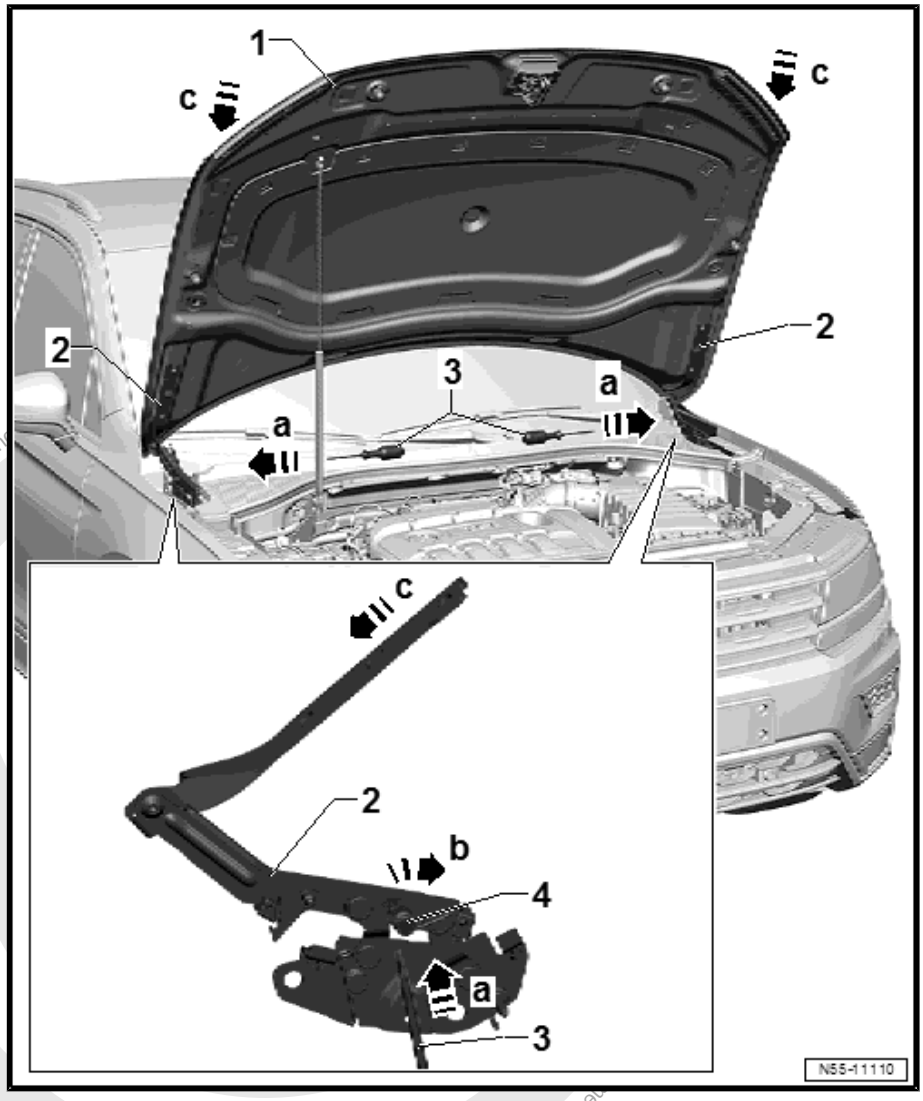
– For additional information and work instructions for the pedestrian protection system, refer to ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection system .

1.4.2 Resetting opened bonnet with triggered active hinges for pedestrian protection system

Note

- *Triggered hinges -2- can be identified by the bonnet being raised at the rear. There is also a gap at the wings.*
- *When the bonnet is opened with triggered hinges, there won't be any damage to surrounding components.*
- *The following measures must always be performed at the same time on both sides.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Protect surrounding parts against damage.
– Fit screwdriver -3- on left and right to locking pawl -arrow a-.
– Release locking pawl -4- on hinge -2- -arrow b-.
– Carefully press down bonnet -1- -arrows a- so that locking pawl -4- can no longer engage.
– Only then release locking pawl, and pull out screwdriver.
– Carefully push down bonnet further -arrows a- until arrester engages on shoulder.

Once the hinges have been returned to the default position on a vehicle with triggered pedestrian protection system, the following components must be replaced:

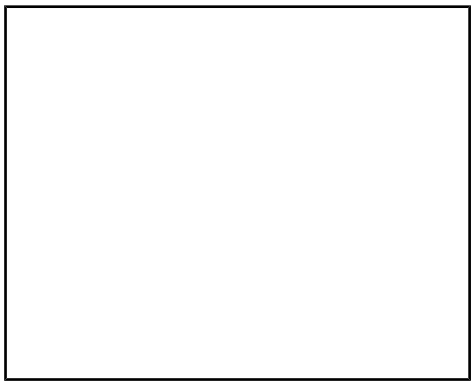
♦ Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-
♦ Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

– For additional information and work instructions for the pedestrian protection system, refer to ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection system; Resetting triggered pedestrian protection system .

1.5 Adjusting bonnet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

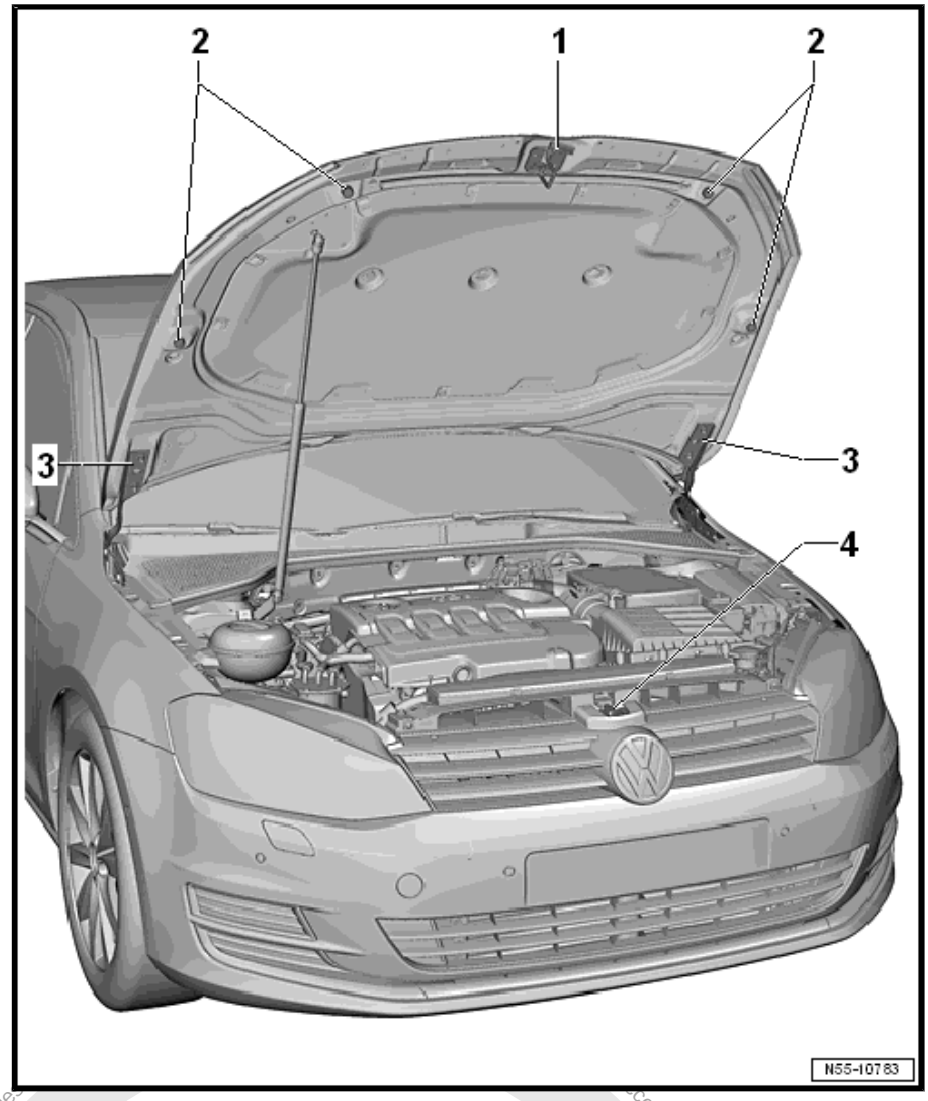
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

- *Vehicle must be standing on its wheels to enable bonnet to be adjusted.*
- *The adjusting buffers -2- on the left and right are not a means of adjustment. They have the function of stabilising and damping the bonnet.*
- *The bonnet is correctly adjusted when all shut lines are even when closed. The bonnet must not protrude too far inwards or outwards. The contours must also be flush with each other.*
- *The bonnet must engage into the lid lock without excessive force.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove striker pin -1- ⇒ page 46 .
– Adjustment buffers -2- can be used to adjust height of front part of bonnet relative to wings ⇒ page 36 .
– The gaps/shut lines are adjusted via the hinges ⇒ page 35 .
– After bonnet has been adjusted, the striker pin -1- can be re-installed and adjusted ⇒ page 37 .

Specified torques

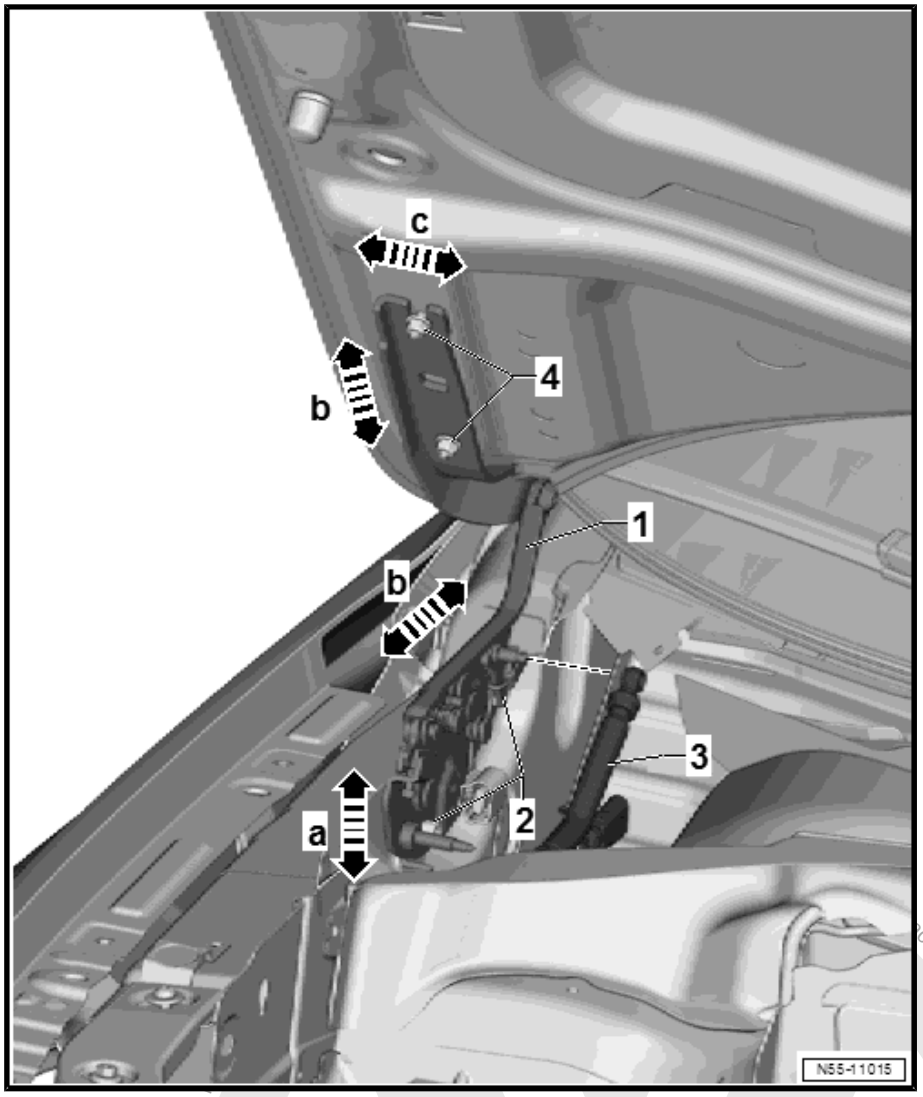
♦ Lid lock ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable”, page 28

Adjusting hinges

Note

♦ *Do not unscrew bolts -2- and hexagon nuts -4- completely, just loosen them.*
♦ *Trigger for pedestrian protection -3- is not removed.*
♦ *Trigger for pedestrian protection -3- is only pulled off in diagram for reasons of clarity so that hinge -1- can be seen.*

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Removing plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 20 .
– By loosening hexagon nuts -4- on left and right bonnet hinges -1-, the bonnet can be centred laterally -arrow c- and in longitudinal direction -arrow b- between wings.
– By loosening bolts -2- on left and right bonnet hinges -1-, bonnet can be centred longitudinally -arrow b- and in height -arrow a- between wings.
– Ensure that gaps are uniform: ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - front .
– After adjusting, carry out corrosion protection measures on bonnet hinges -1-, hexagon nuts -5- and bolts -2-.
– If necessary, readjust adjustment buffers.

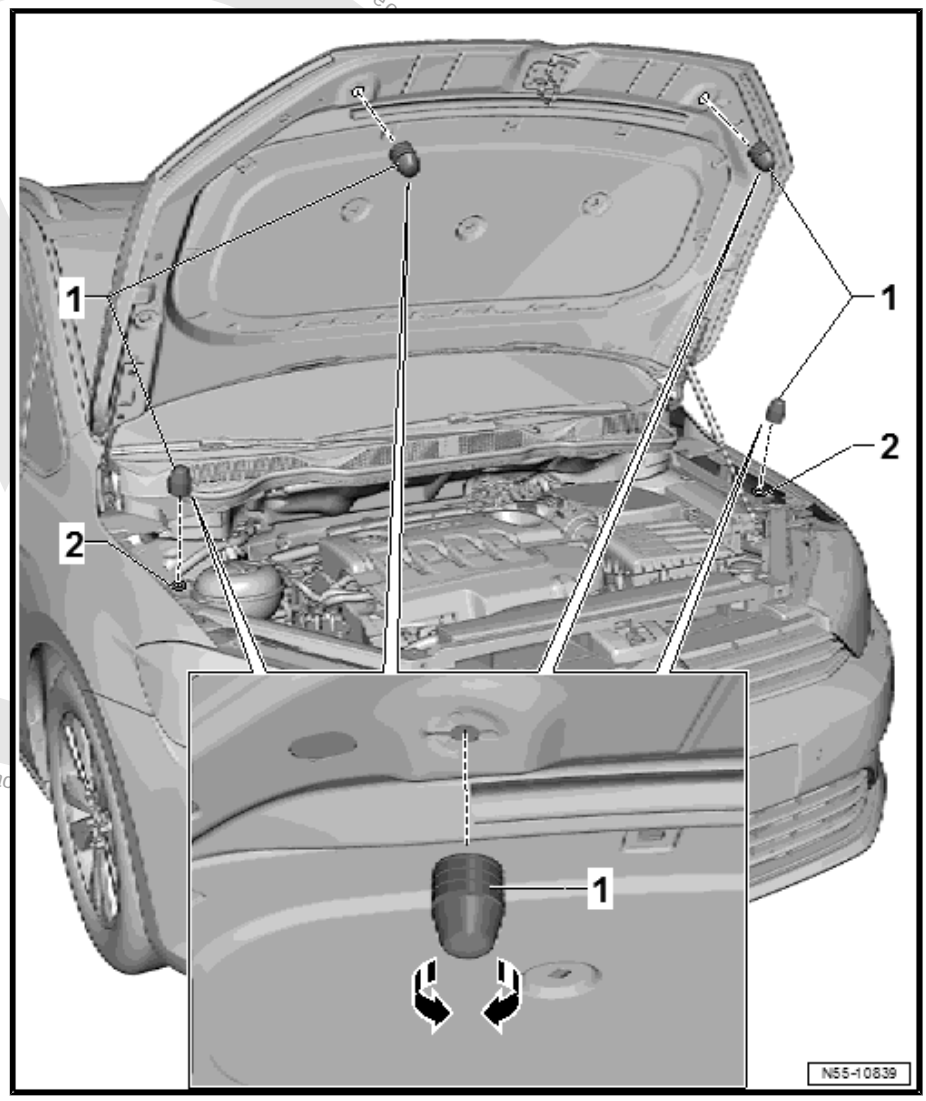
Specified torques

◆ Hinges ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26

Adjusting adjusting buffer

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

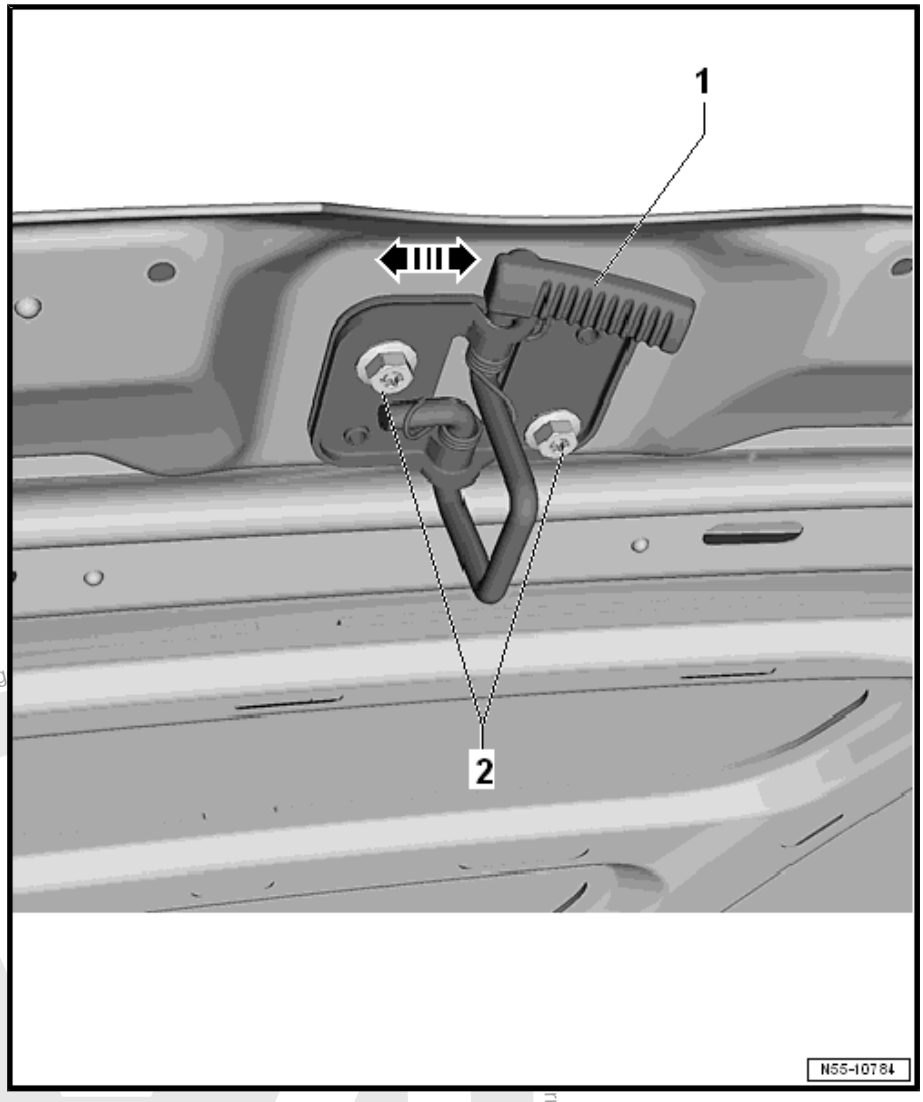


– Turn adjustment buffers -1- to adjust -arrows-.
– After bonnet -2- has been adjusted, the striker pin can be re-installed and adjusted ⇒ page 37 .

Adjusting striker pin

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



– Loosen bolts -2- (qty. 3).
– Striker pin -1- can now be adjusted on bonnet -2- in lateral elongated holes.

Specified torques

♦ Hinges ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26

Adjusting lid lock

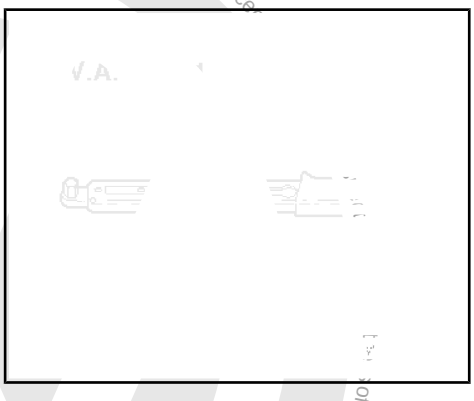
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

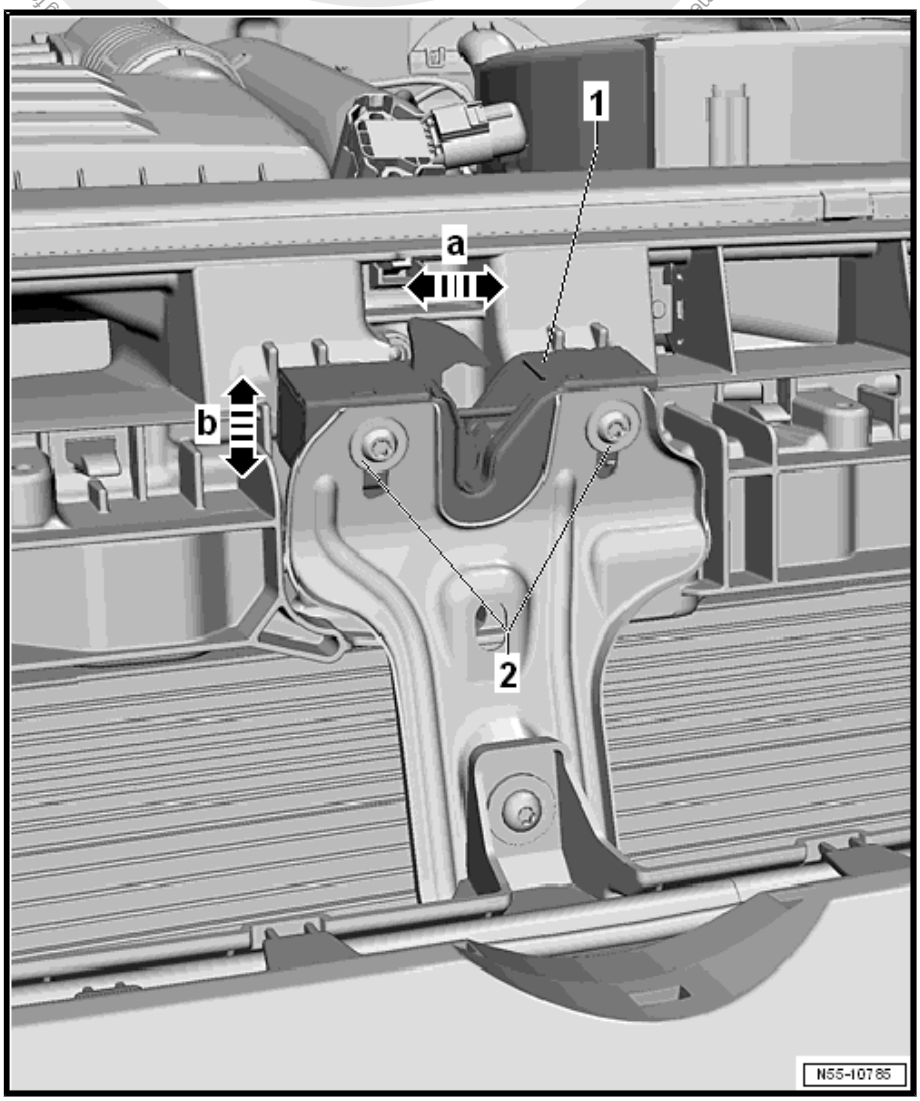
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the accuracy, completeness or timeliness of information in this document. Any use or distribution for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

Use new bolts when adjusting the lid lock.



– Loosen bolts -2- to adjust lid lock -1- relative to bonnet laterally -arrow a- and vertically -arrows b- ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - front .

Specified torques

- Lid lock ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable”, page 28

1.6 Removing and installing bonnet lock

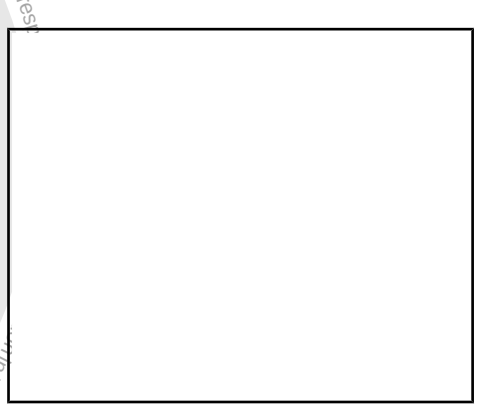
⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing lid lock, LHD vehicle”, page 40

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing lid lock, RHD vehicle”, page 42

1.6.1 Removing and installing lid lock, LHD vehicle

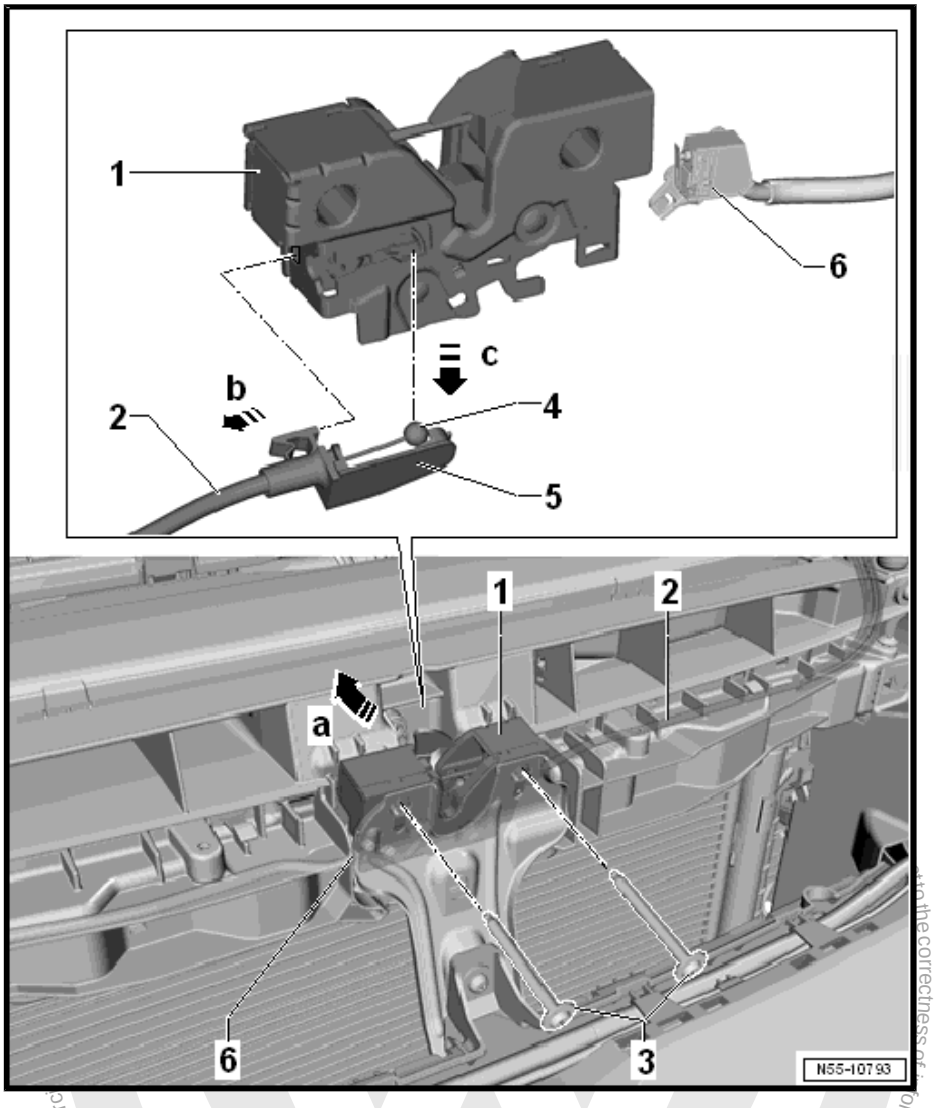
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to this document.
Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Open bonnet.
– Remove Bowden cable on mounting bracket ⇒ page 54 .
– Disconnect connector for bonnet contact switch.

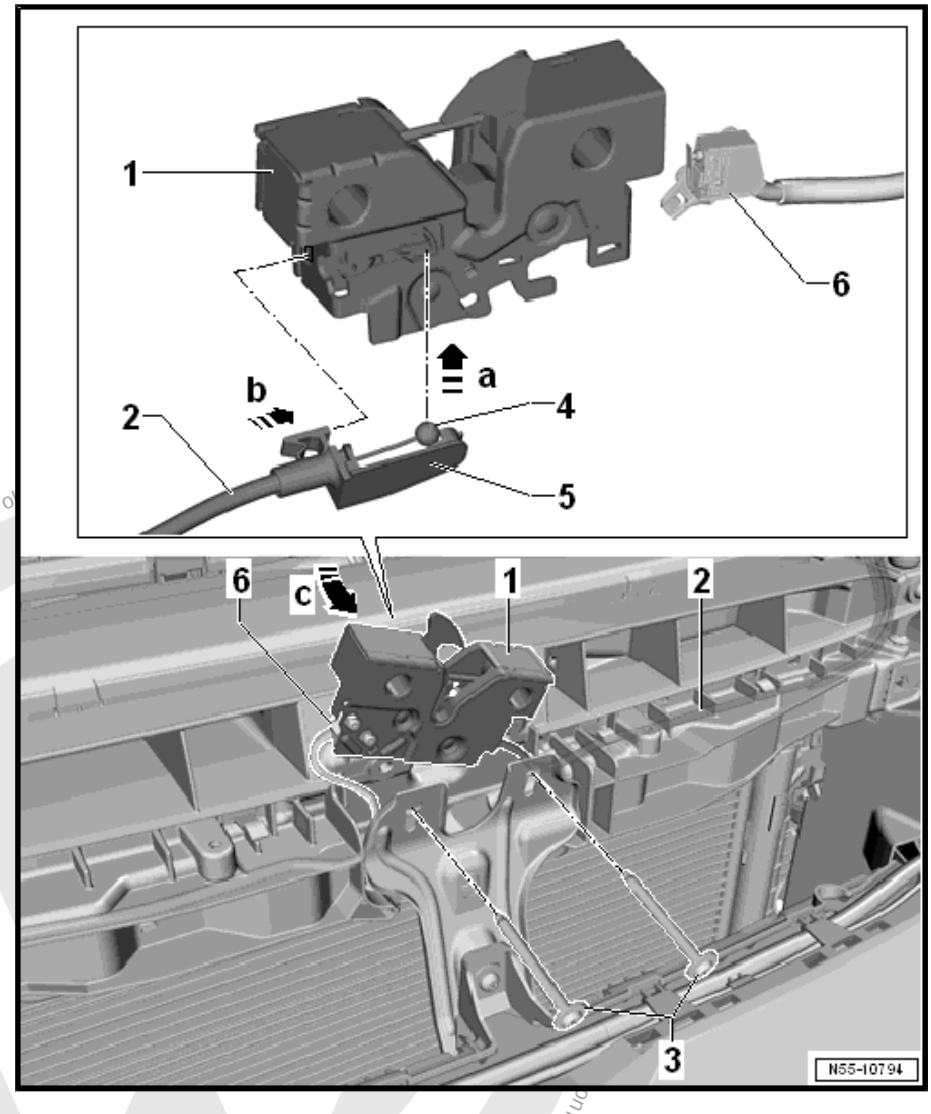
Note

- *The connector is secured next to the right headlight.*
- *Bolt -3- is self-locking and must be renewed after each time it has been loosened.*

– Remove bolts -3- from lock carrier and remove lid lock -1- upwards -arrow a-.
– Unclip retainer -5- from bonnet lock.
– Slightly remove retainer -5- from bonnet lock -1- -arrow b- and unhook cable -4- -arrow c-.
– Remove microswitch -6- from bonnet lock.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Hook in cable -4- -arrow a- and clip retainer -5- into lid lock -1- -arrow b-.
– Install microswitch -6- in lid lock.
– Insert lid lock -1- into lock carrier -arrow c-.
– Screw in new bolts -3-.
– Connect connector for bonnet contact switch -6-.
– Install Bowden cable on mounting bracket ⇒ page 45 .
– Adjust lid lock ⇒ page 34 .
– Before closing bonnet, check function of release lever and cable.

Specified torques

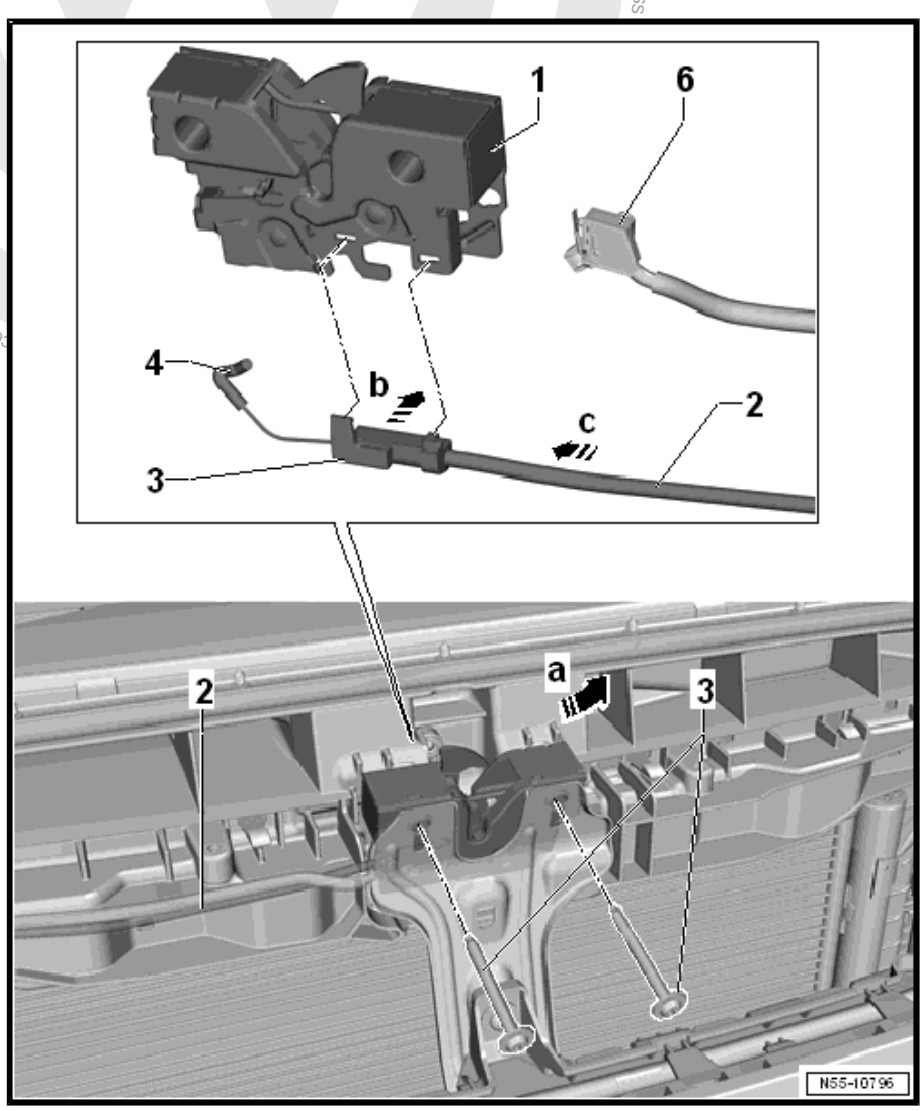
◆ Lid lock ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable”, page 28

1.6.2 Removing and installing lid lock, RHD vehicle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



– Open bonnet.
– Remove Bowden cable on mounting bracket ⇒ page 54 .
– Disconnect connector for bonnet contact switch.

Note

- *The connector is secured next to the right headlight.*
- *Bolt -3- is self-locking and must be renewed after each time it has been loosened.*

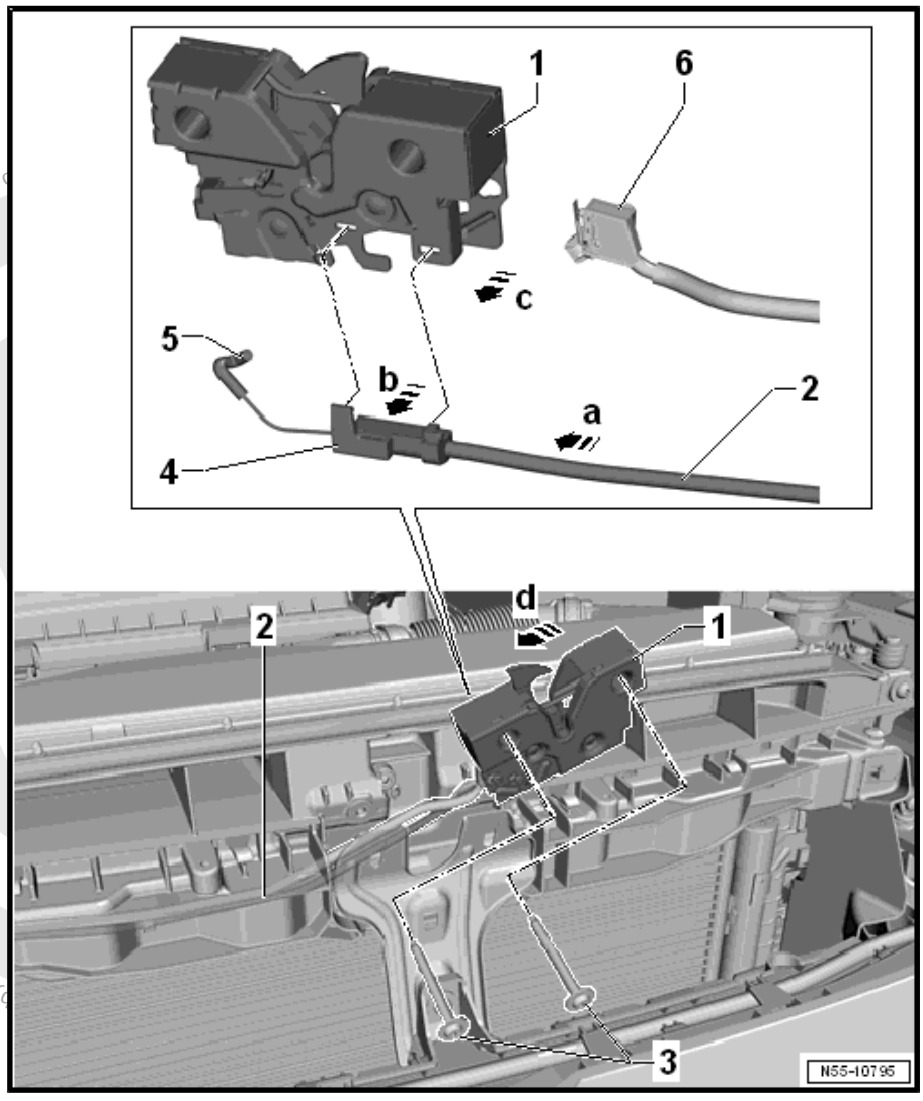
– Remove bolts -3- from lock carrier and remove lid lock -1- upwards -arrow a-.

– Unclip retainer -5- from bonnet lock.

– Slightly remove retainer -5- from bonnet lock -1- -arrow b- and unhook cable -4- -arrow c-.

– Remove microswitch -6- from bonnet lock.

Installing



– Hook in cable -5- -arrow a- and clip retainer -4- into bonnet lock -1- -arrow b-.

– Install microswitch -6- in lid lock -arrow c-.

– Insert lid lock -1- into lock carrier -arrow d-.

– Screw in new bolts -3-.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by VW

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctne

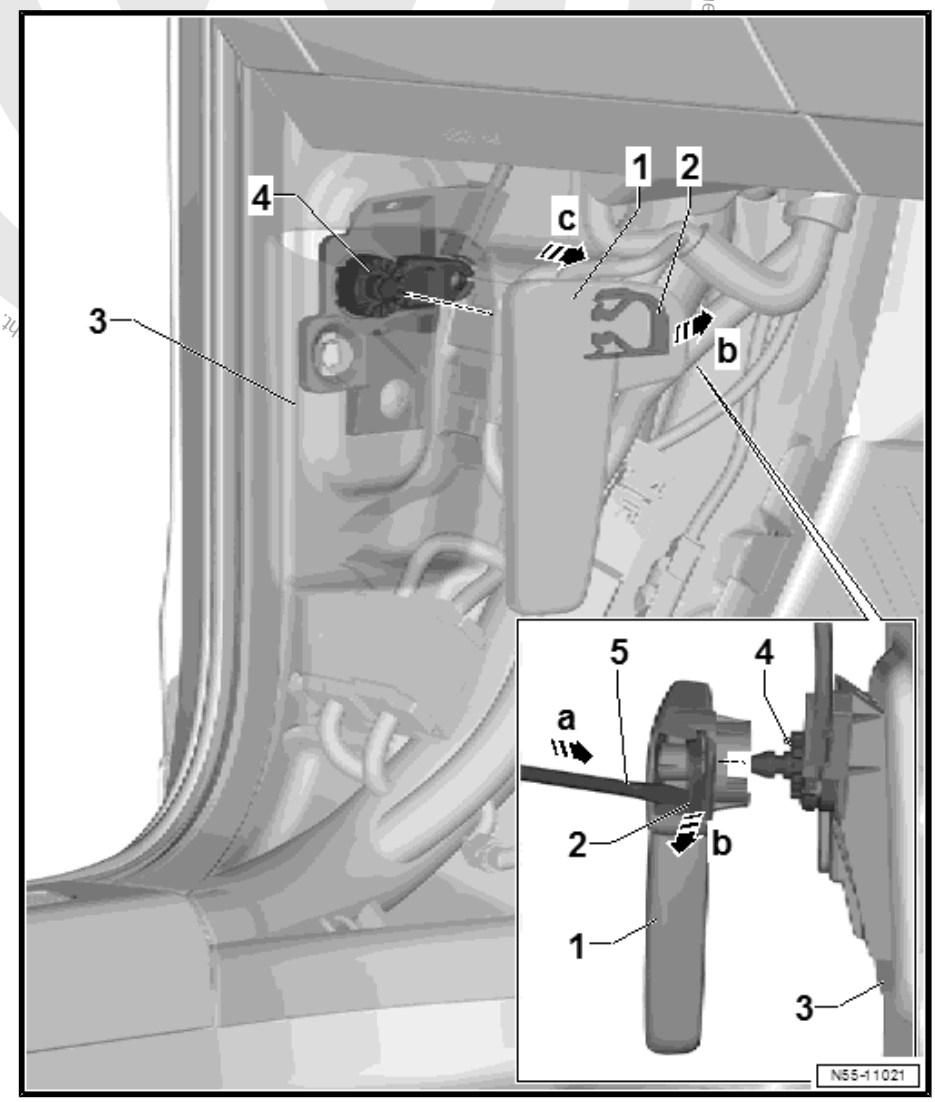
– Connect connector for bonnet contact switch -6-.
– Install Bowden cable on mounting bracket ⇒ page 45 .
– Adjust lid lock ⇒ page 34 .
– Before closing bonnet, check function of release lever and cable.

Specified torques

♦ Lid lock ⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - Bowden cable”, page 28

1.7 Removing and installing bonnet release lever

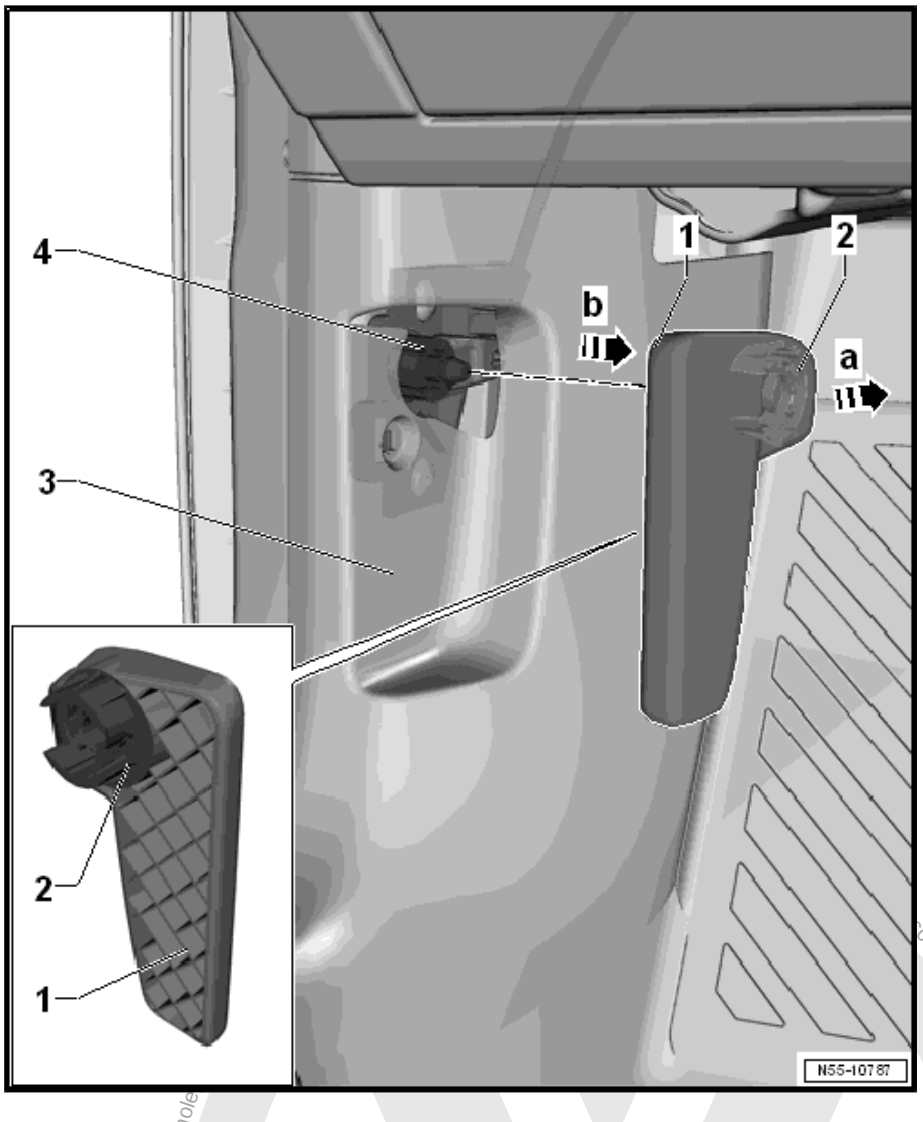
Removing



– Tighten release lever -1- and unlock bonnet.
– Insert -arrow a- a small screwdriver in gap between release lever -1- and retaining clip -2-.
– Lever retaining clip -2- out of release lever -1- -arrow b- and pull release lever off mounting bracket -3- -arrow c-.

For further work on mounting bracket -4- , remove lower A-pillar trim -3- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

Installing



- Lower A-pillar trim -3- is installed.

– Push retaining clip -2- into release lever -1-.

– Press release lever -1- onto mounting bracket -4-.

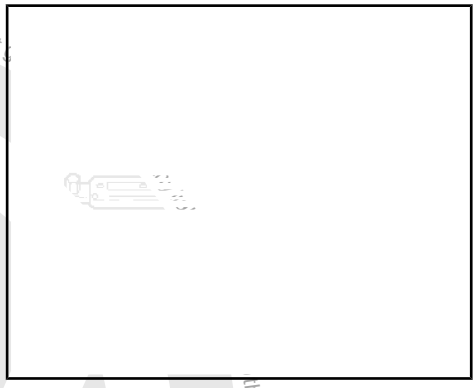
– Before closing bonnet, check function of release lever and cable.

1.8 Removing and installing striker pin

Special tools and workshop equipment required

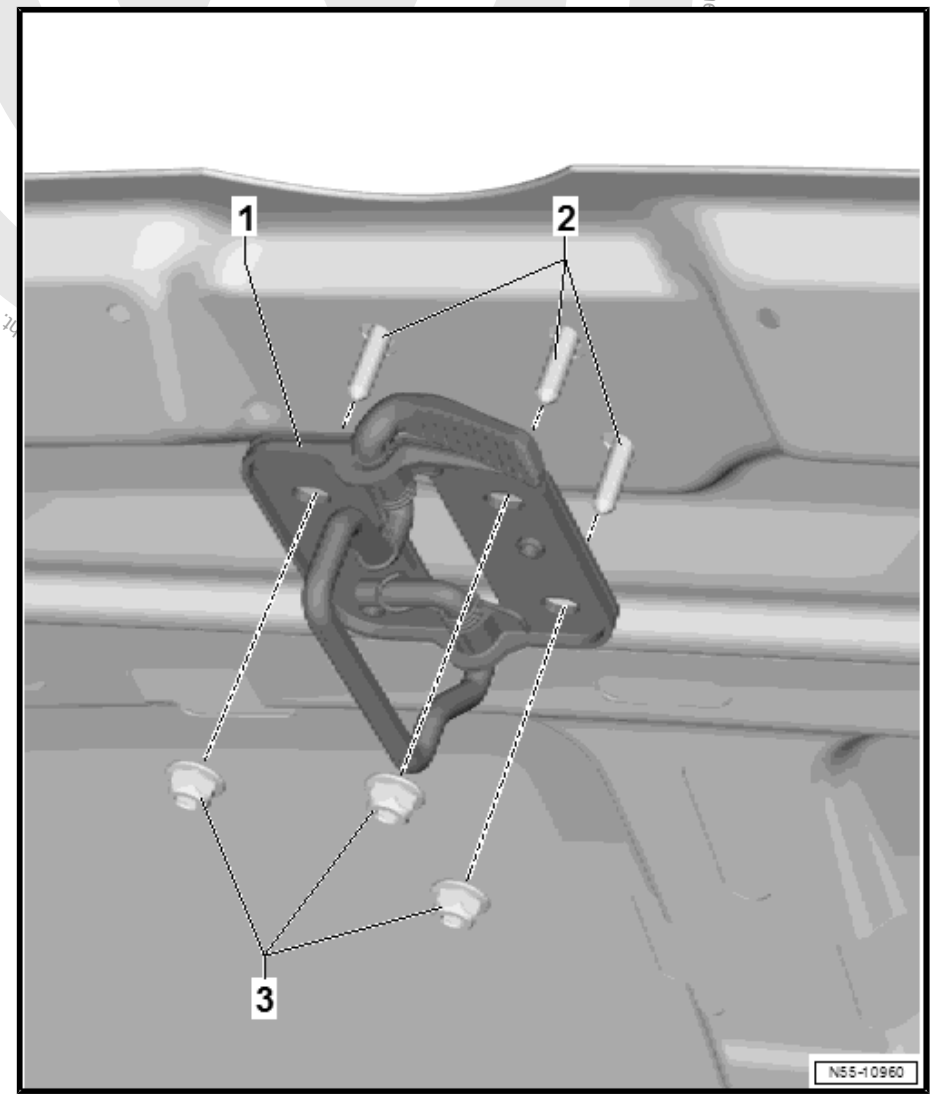
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



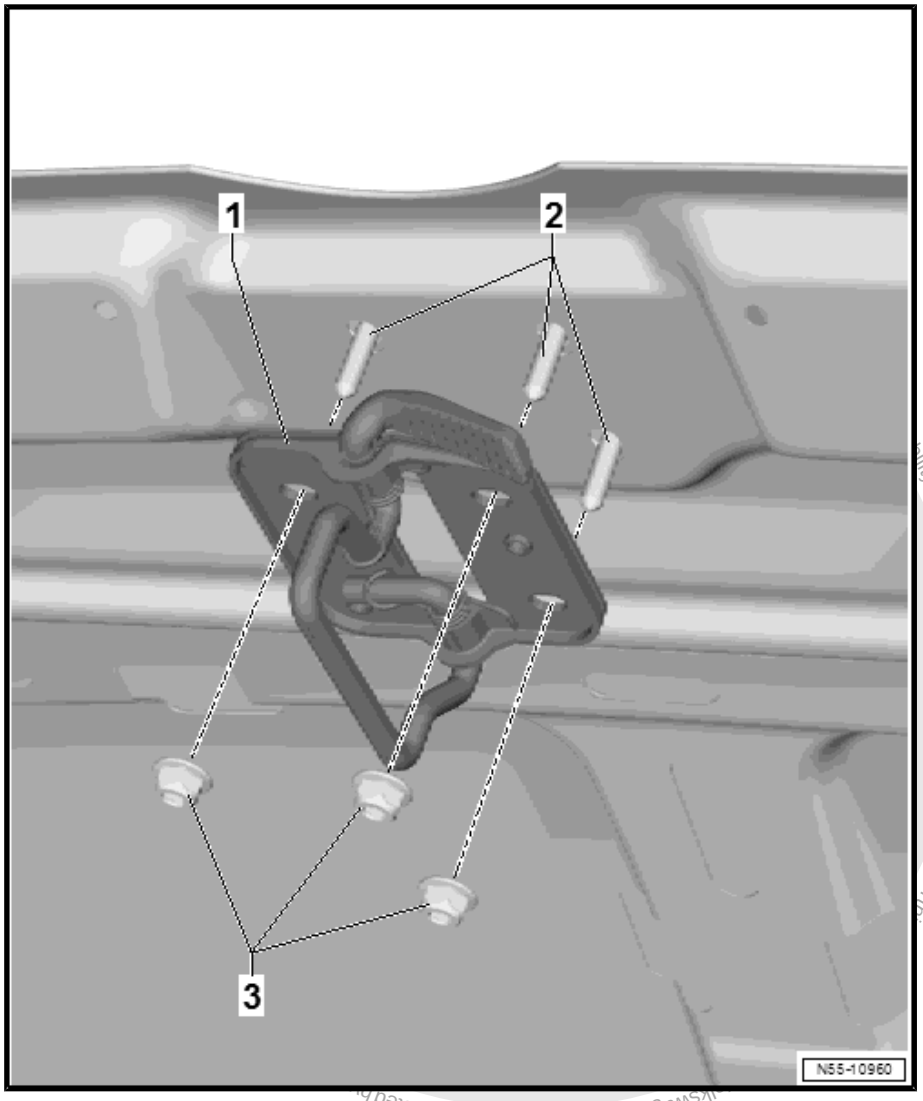
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness

Removing



– Open bonnet.
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Pull off striker pin -1- from stud on bonnet -2-.

Installing



Protected by ... Volkswagen AG. ... ility with respect to the correctness of information in th...

Installation of the striker pin -1- is carried out in the reverse order of removal.

– Adjusting striker pin ⇒ page 34 .

Specified torques

♦ Striker pin ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26

1.9 Removing and installing hinges

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

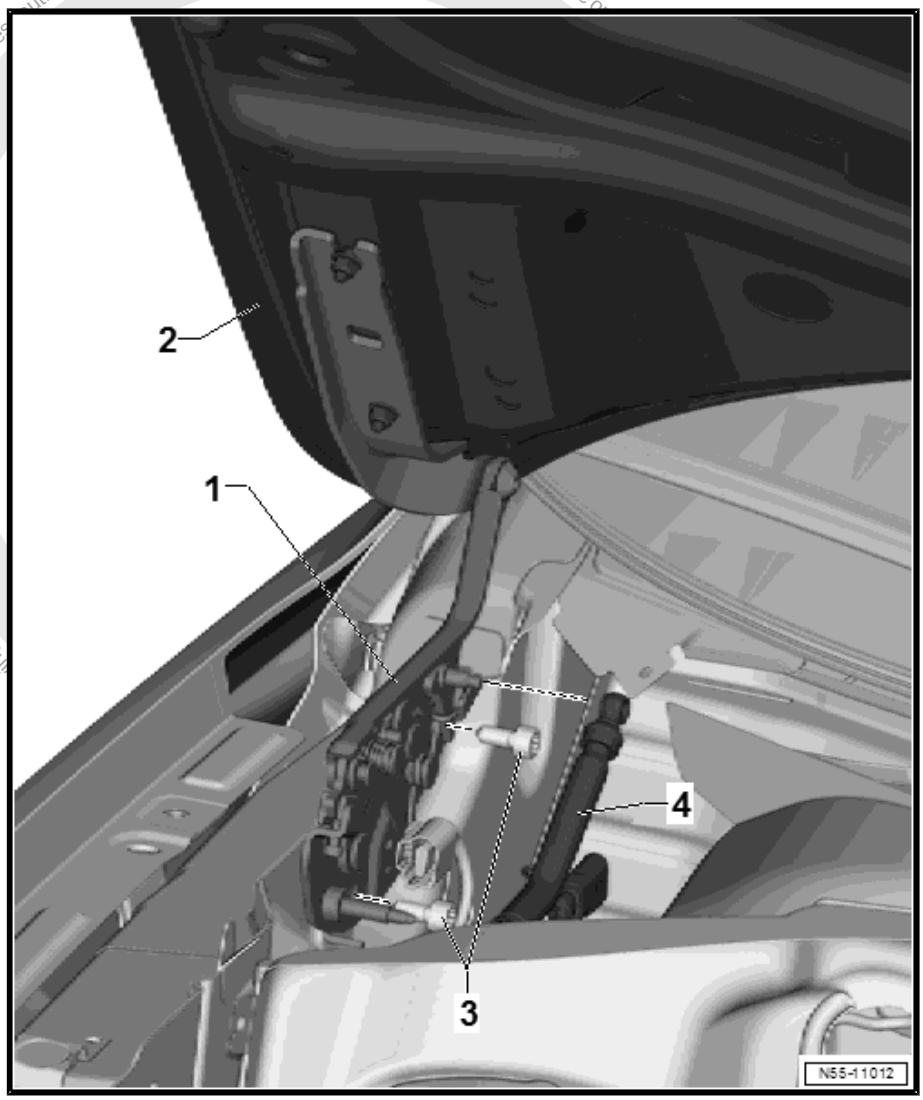
- Supplement tool set - T10395/8-/10-

Note

- *The trigger for pedestrian protection -4- that was not actuated must also be renewed if the hinge -1- is damaged.*
- *Actuation of the trigger for pedestrian protection -4- may not necessary cause damage to the hinge -1-.*
- *When removing an undamaged hinge -1-, it is not necessary to remove the trigger for pedestrian protection -4-.*
- *Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection - G589- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection .*

...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee o...

Removing



– Remove bonnet -2- ⇒ page 28 .
– Removing plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 20 .
– If necessary, trigger 1 / 2 for pedestrian protection - G598/ G598- -4- must be removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior;

Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598/G598 .

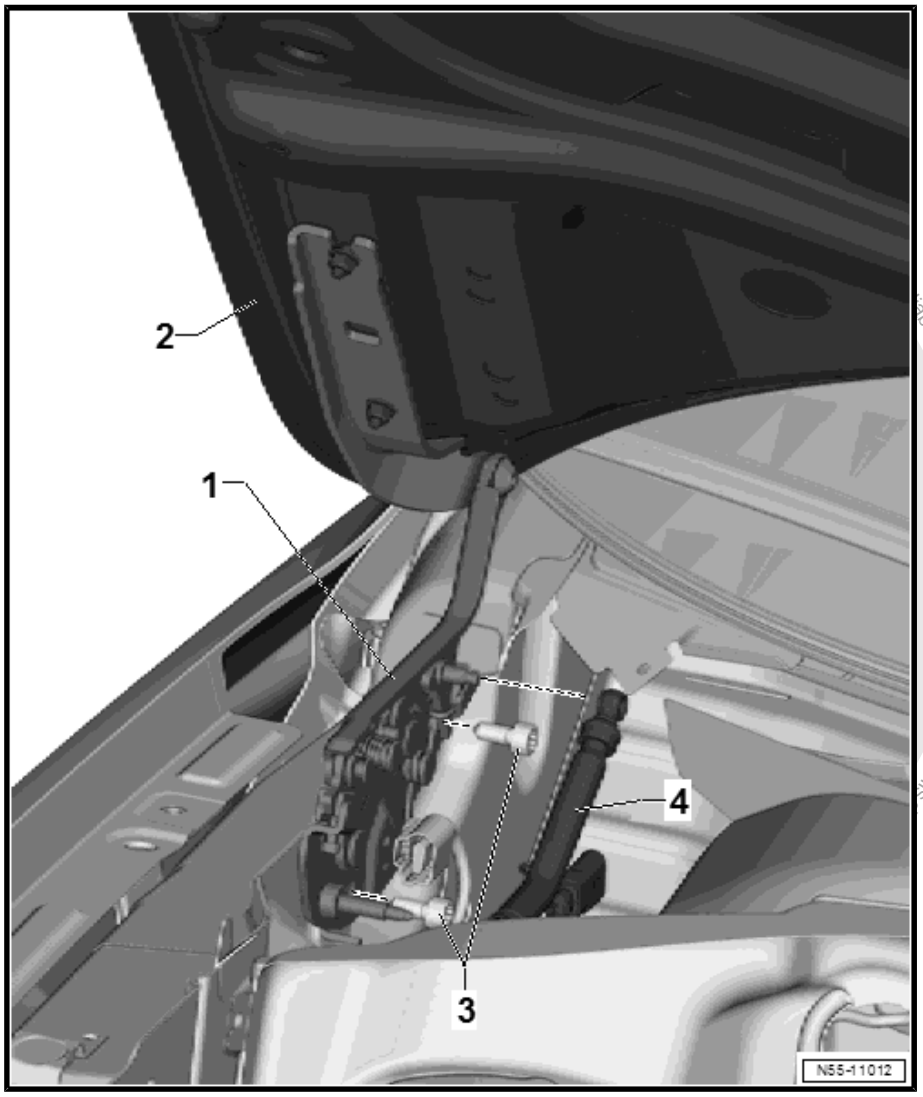
– Unscrew bolts -3-.

– Pull off hinge -1-.

Installing

Note

Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection .



Installation of the hinge -1- is carried out in the reverse order of removal.

– Install bonnet ⇒ page 28 .

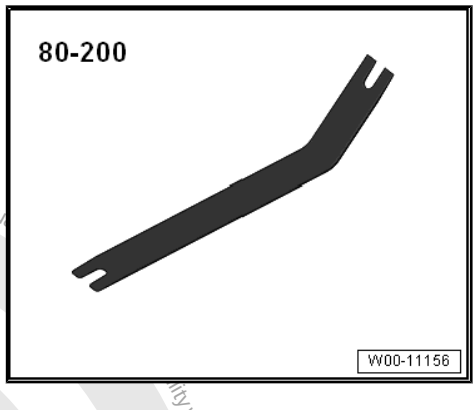
Specified torques

◆ Hinges ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bonnet”, page 26

1.10 Removing and installing insulation

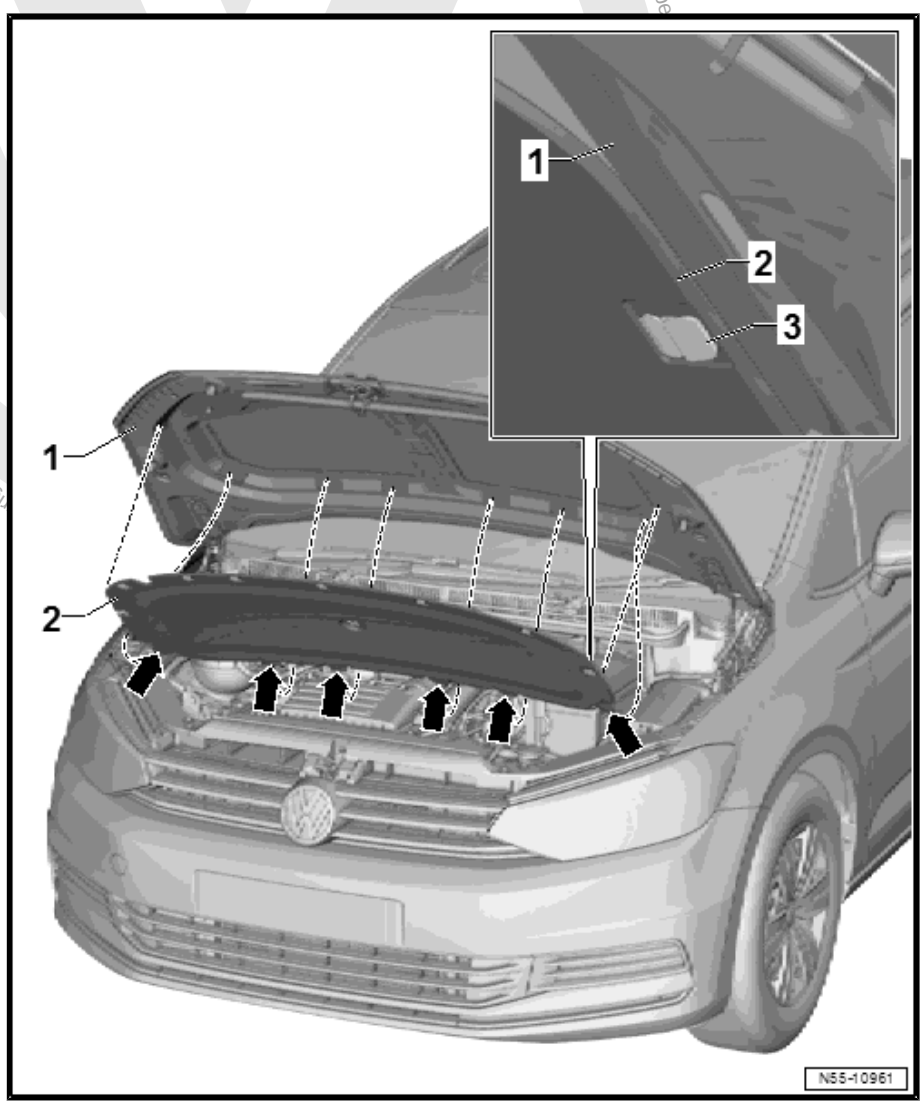
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Release lever - 80-200-



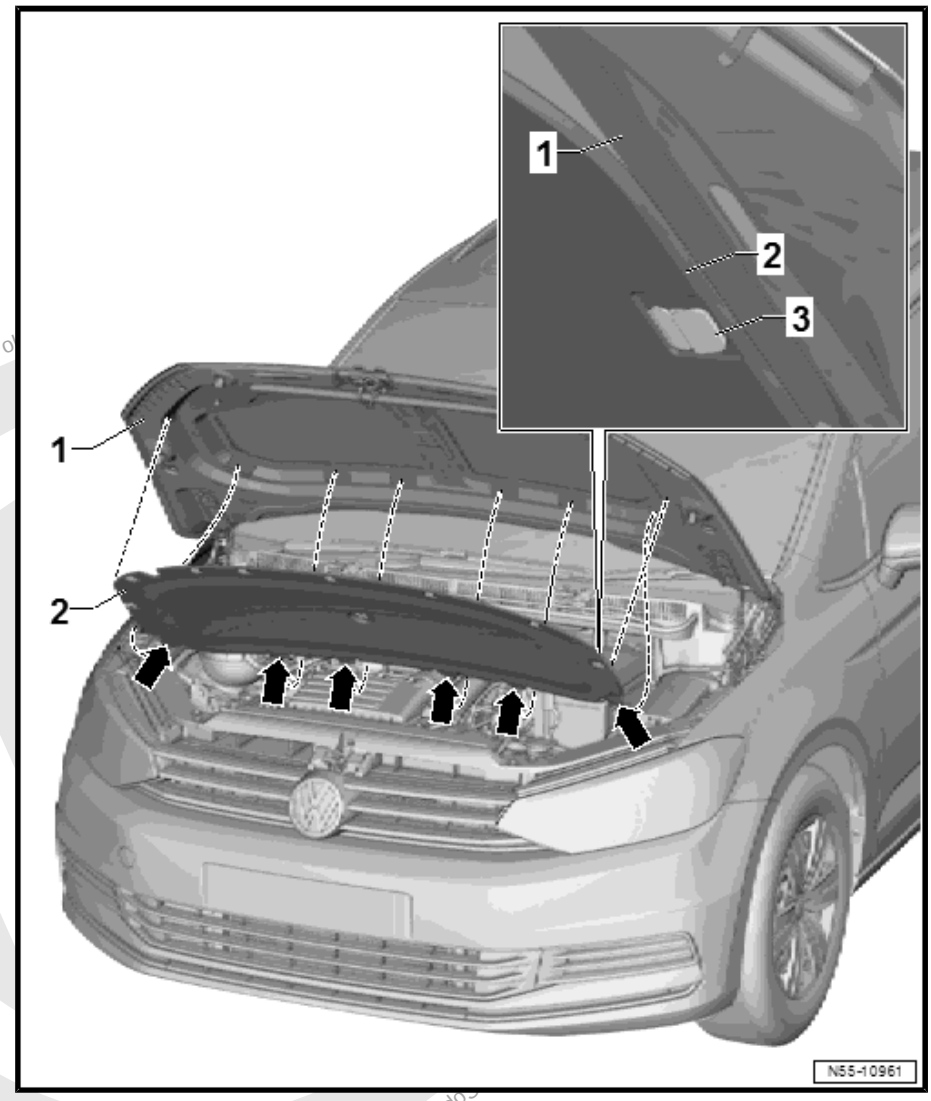
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gu
ity with respe

Removing



– Using removal lever - 80-200- , lever retaining clips -3- out of bonnet -1-.
– Pull insulation -2- out of elongated holes -arrows-.

Installing



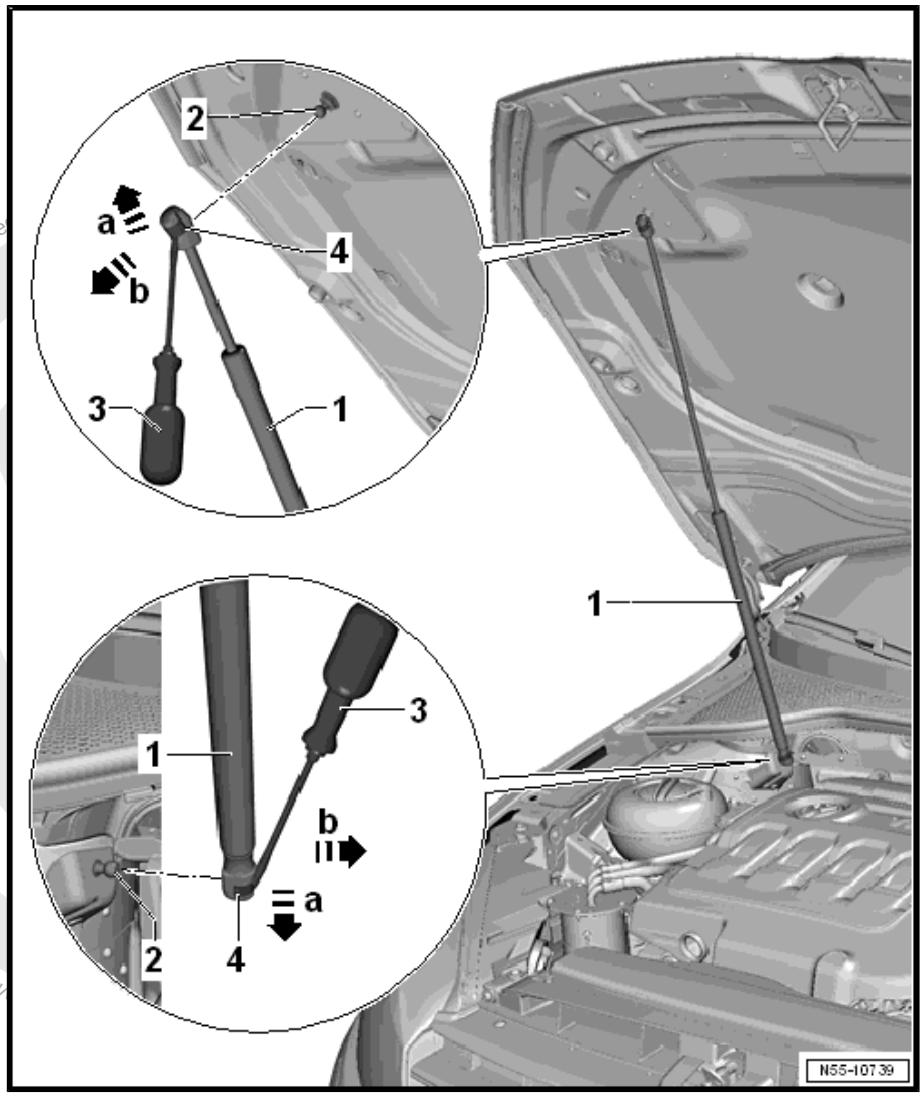
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- When installing insulation -2-, ensure that retaining clips -3- are fitted with wider side outwards.

– Slide insulation -2- with fitting lugs -arrows- in longitudinal holes.

– Insert all retaining clips -3- into bonnet -1-.

1.11 Removing and installing gas strut



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

Removing

– Open and support bonnet.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to spring clip caused by levering it out too far.
The spring clip may break.
– Never lever spring clip completely out of ball socket.

– Position a small screwdriver -3- beneath spring clip -4-.
– Raise spring clip -4- in such a way that it can be moved over ball socket -arrow a-.
– Pull off gas strut -1- from ball-head pin -2- -arrow b-.

After removing gas strut -1-, slide spring clip -4- back immediately.

– When the gas strut is disposed, gas needs to be released from gas strut ⇒ page 54 .

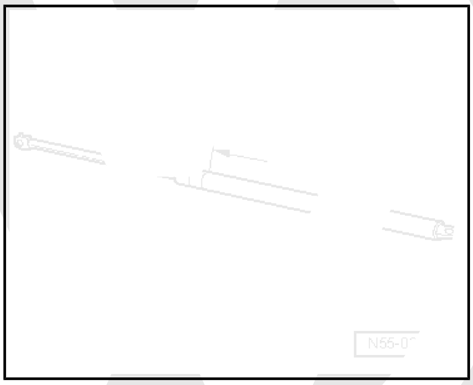
Installing

– Press gas strut -1- onto ball-head pins -2-.

	Component	Specified torques
Ball-head pin	20 Nm	

1.12 Releasing gas from gas strut

– Clamp gas strut in vice in area x = 50 mm.



CAUTION

Risk of eye injury caused by flying swarf.

Eye irritation and injury possible.

– Wear protective goggles.

– Cover area of saw cut with a cloth.

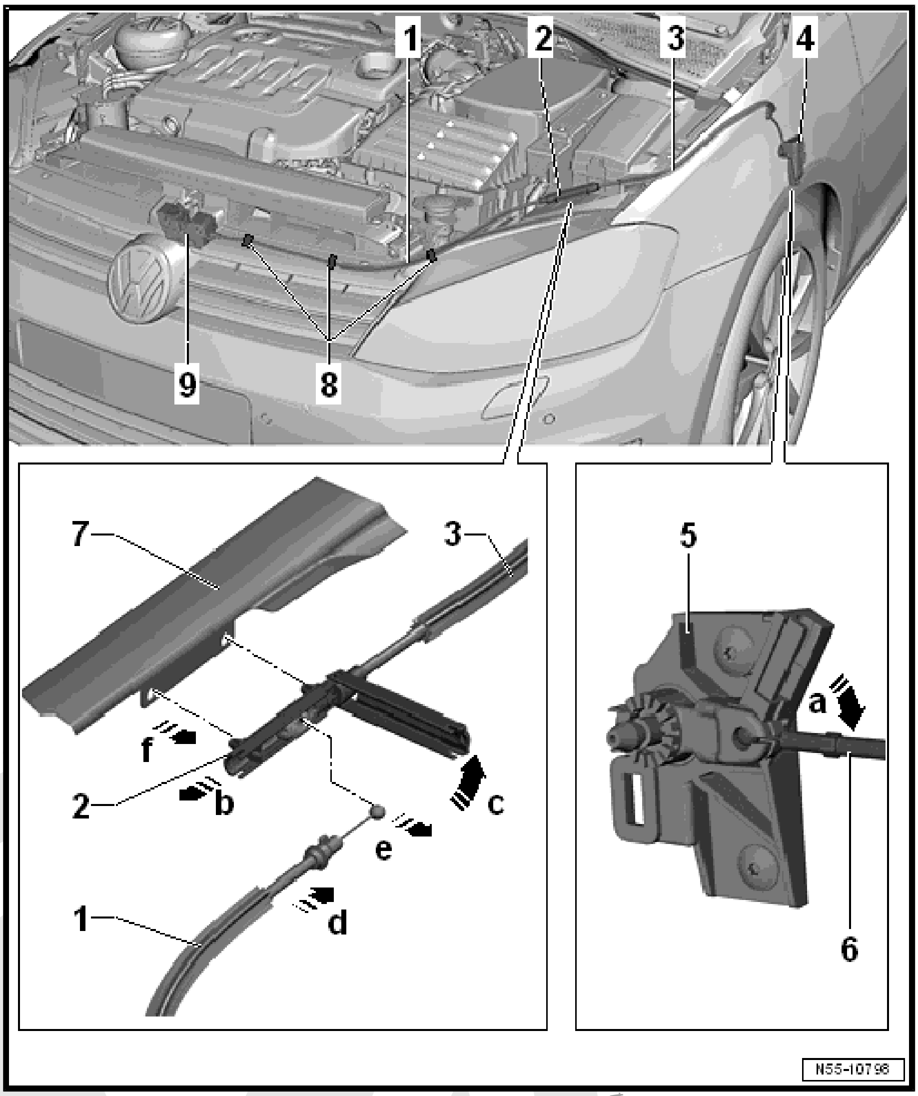
– Saw through cylinder of gas strut within first third of cylinder's overall length using piston rod end of cylinder as reference point.

– Feed oil and cleaning clothes into existing method of disposal.

1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



- Open bonnet.
- Remove release lever ⇒ page 45 .
- Remove Bowden cable -3- from mounting bracket -5- -arrow a-.
- Pull Bowden cable coupling -2- off carrier -7- -arrow e-.
- Slightly pull off Bowden cable -1- -arrow a-.
- Open cap of Bowden cable coupling -arrow b-.
- Release Bowden cable -1- -arrow c- and remove from Bowden cable coupling -2-.

Note

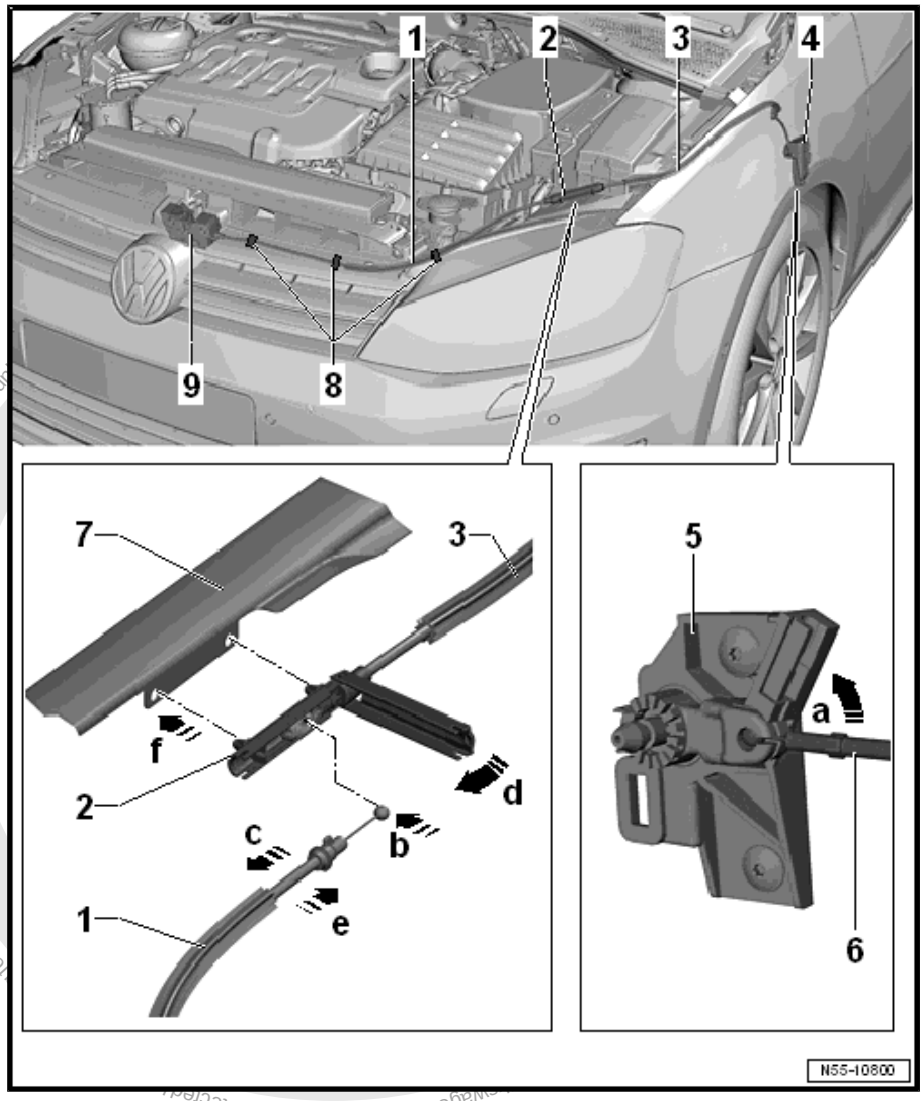
In order to be able to remove or install the Bowden cable -3-, remove the support arm -7- ⇒ page 2 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

Note

- *If the Bowden cable -3- is not removed from mounting bracket, the Bowden cable -1- unhooks again and again when installing the Bowden cable coupling -2-.*
- *The bonnet cannot be opened in this case.*



for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted

– Hook in Bowden cable -1- into Bowden cable coupling -2- -arrow a-.
– Slightly pull Bowden cable off Bowden cable coupling -arrow b-.
– Close Bowden cable coupling -arrow c-.
– Push Bowden cable -1- into Bowden cable coupling -arrow d-.
– Attach Bowden cable coupling -2- to lock carrier -4- -arrow e-.
– Install Bowden cable -3- on mounting bracket -5- -arrow a-.
– Install release lever ⇒ page 45 .

– Before closing bonnet, check function of release lever and Bowden cable.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Rear lid

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58
⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing rear lid”, page 59
⇒ “2.3 Adjusting rear lid”, page 61
⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing bonnet lock”, page 68
⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing operating mechanism”, page 80
⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing hinges”, page 81
⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing striker pin”, page 84
⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal”, page 85
⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 87
⇒ “2.10 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 89
⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing drive unit for rear lid VX69 ”, page 89

2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid

1 - Rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 61

2 - Power latching system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 76

3 - Operating mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 80

4 - Lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

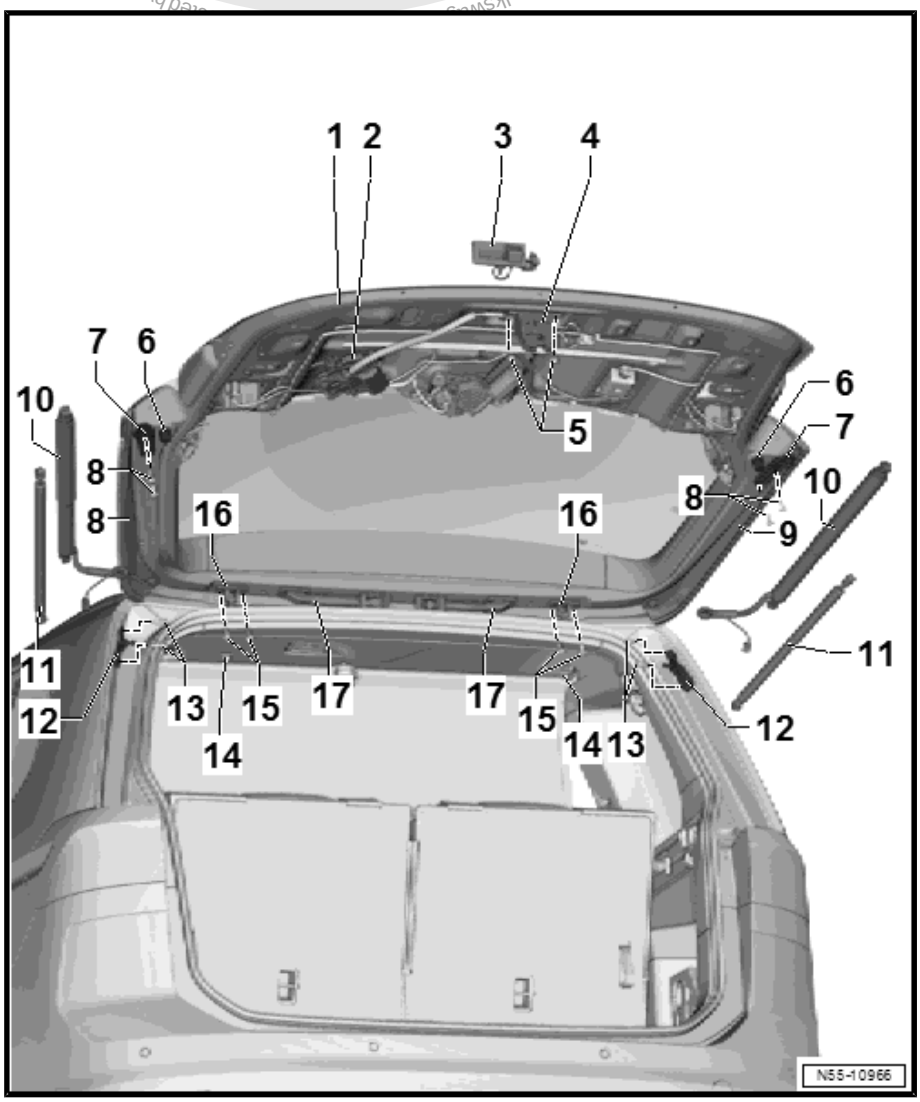
5 - Hexagon nuts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 20 Nm

6 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 61

7 - Mounting bracket for ball-head pin
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ On rear lid

8 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 10 Nm + 90°

9 - Pinch protection
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91



10 - Drive for rear lid

- ❑ Removing and installing drive for rear lid ⇒ page 89

11 - Gas strut

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 89

12 - Mounting bracket for ball-head pin

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ On side panel
- ❑ 10 Nm + 45°

13 - Bolts

- ❑ On side panel
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 10 Nm + 45°

14 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 1 for each hinge
- ❑ 20 Nm + 45°

15 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2 for each hinge.
- ❑ 10 Nm

16 - Hinge

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 81

17 - Rubber grommet

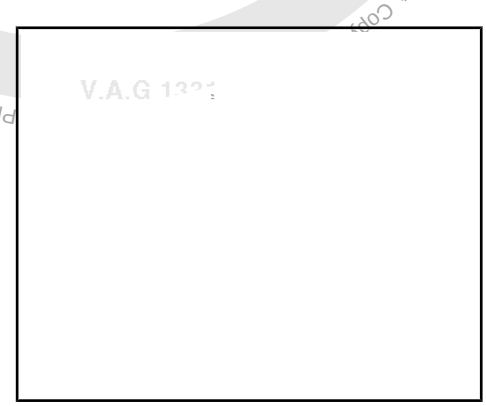
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 59

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

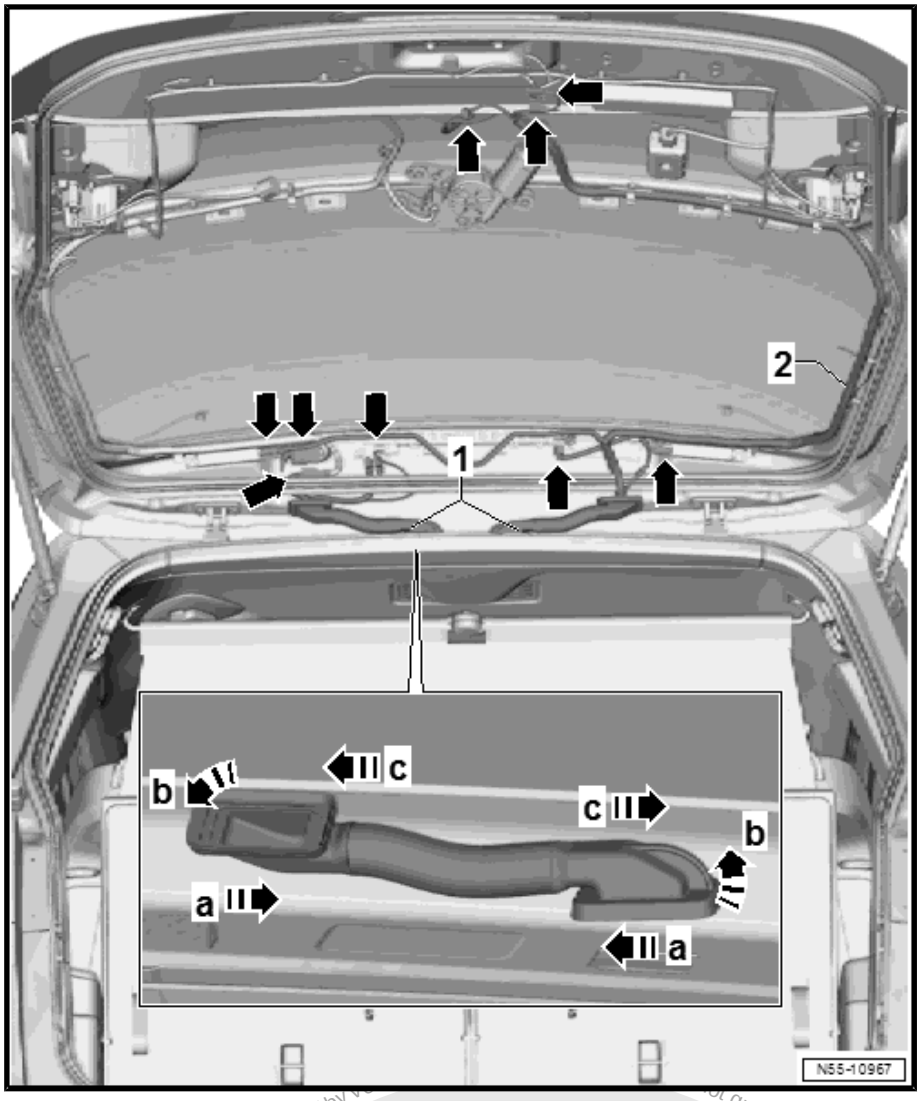
2.2 Removing and installing rear lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing



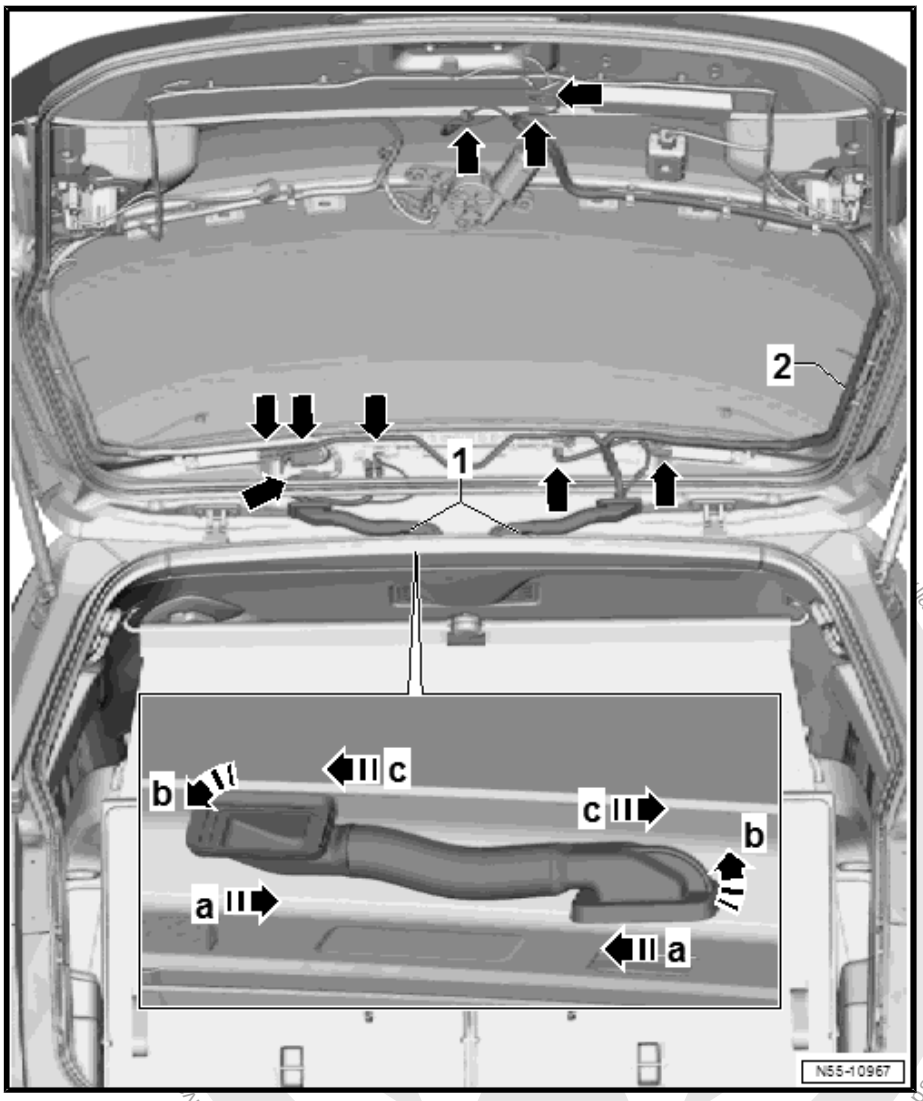
– Remove upper rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing rear lid trim .
– Remove lower rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing lower rear lid trim .
– Remove high-level brake light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; High-level brake light; Removing and installing high-level brake light .
– Disconnect connectors -2, 3, 4 and 5- of installed electrical components.
– Thread wires together with rubber grommet out of rear lid.
– Loosen bolts -8- of left and right hinges but do not remove completely yet.

Further dismantling requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

– Remove gas struts -7- ⇒ page 87 .
– Or remove drive ⇒ page 89 .
– Now, and only now, remove bolts -8- completely and then remove rear lid -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing



– Install rear lid -1- with the aid of a 2nd mechanic.
– Install gas struts -7- ⇒ page 87 .
– Guide wires -2, 3, 4 and 5- into rear lid, and attach rubber grommet.
– Connect connectors of all installed electrical components.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

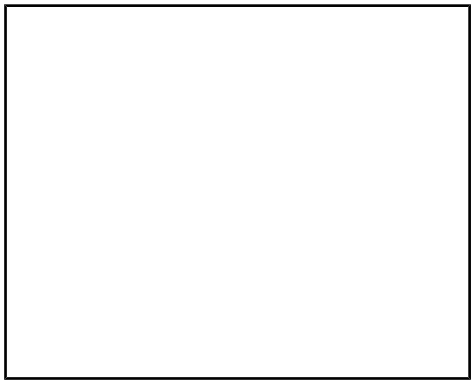
– Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.
– Adjusting rear lid ⇒ page 61 .

2.3 Adjusting rear lid

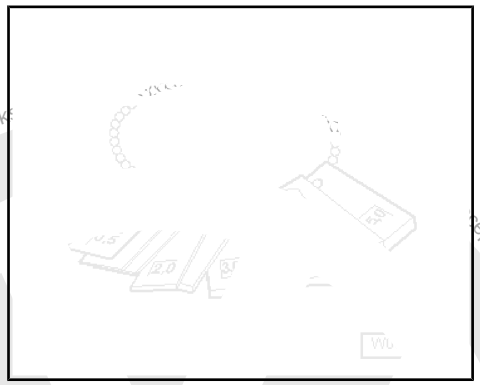
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



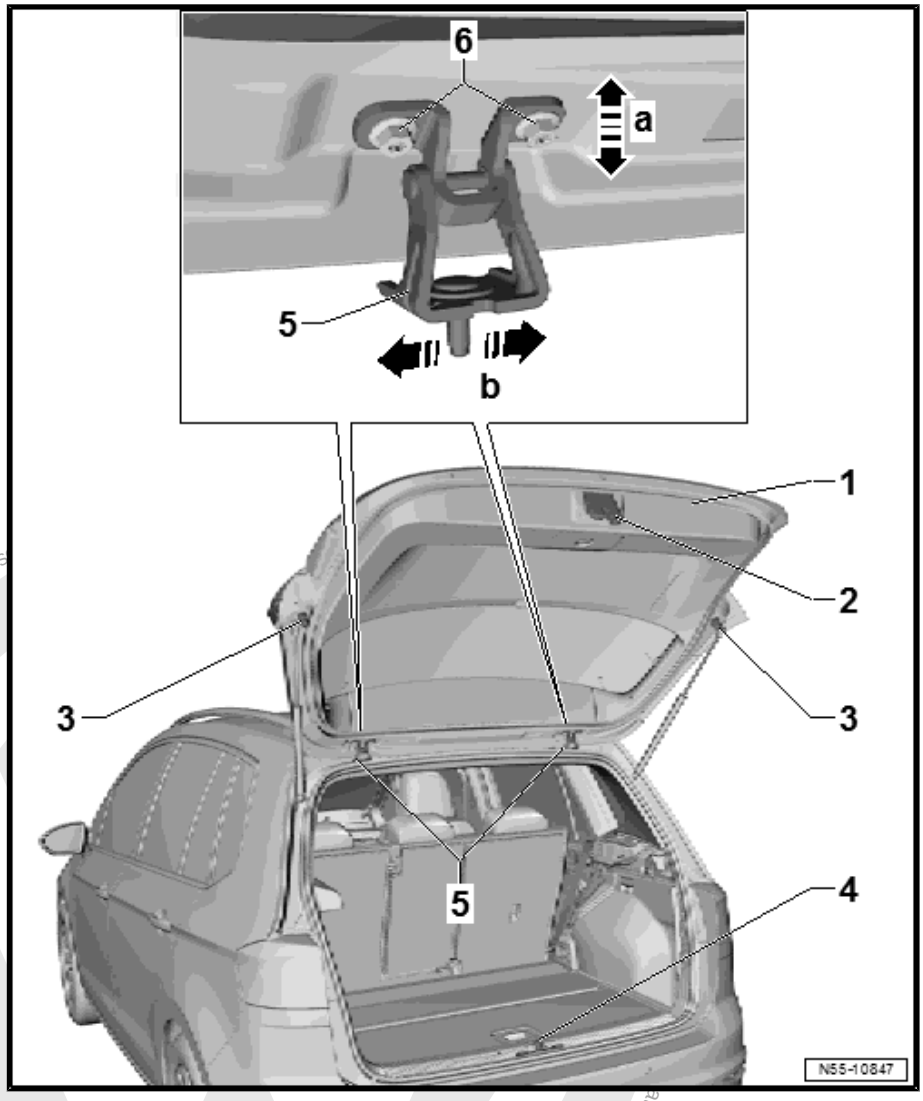
- Setting gauge - 3371-



Note

- *Vehicle must be standing on its wheels to enable rear lid to be adjusted.*
- *The rear lid lock -2- is bolted directly to the rear lid -1-. The rear lid lock cannot be adjusted.*
- *The adjusting buffers -4- on the left and right are not a means of adjustment. They have the function of stabilising and damping the rear lid.*
- *The rear lid is correctly adjusted when all shut lines are even when closed. it is not protruding too far inwards or outwards, and when the contours are flush with each other.*
- *The rear lid must engage in the striker plate without excessive force being applied.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Use the setting gauge - 3371- ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Bodywork gaps/shut lines; Rear body to check or set the gap dimensions.

– The rear lid lock -2- cannot be adjusted.
– Loosen striker pin -4- and adjust after hinge and adjustment buffer have been adjusted ⇒ page 66 .
– If bolts -6- are loosened on left and right, it is possible to adjust rear lid -1- in the oversized holes of hinge -5- -arrows a- and -arrows b-.
– After completing adjustments, perform corrosion protection measures on hinge and bolts -6-.
– Readjust adjusting buffer -3-.

Specified torques

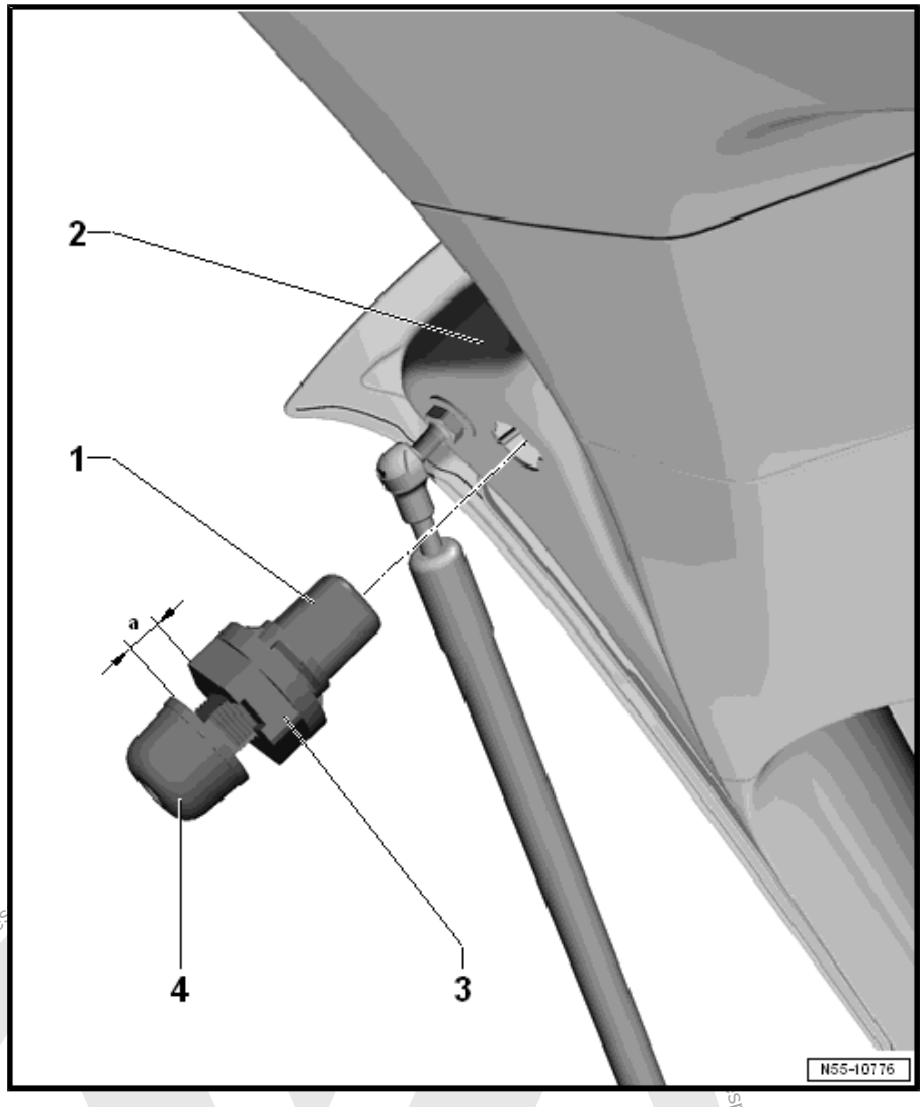
♦ Bolts ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

Adjusting adjusting buffer

Note

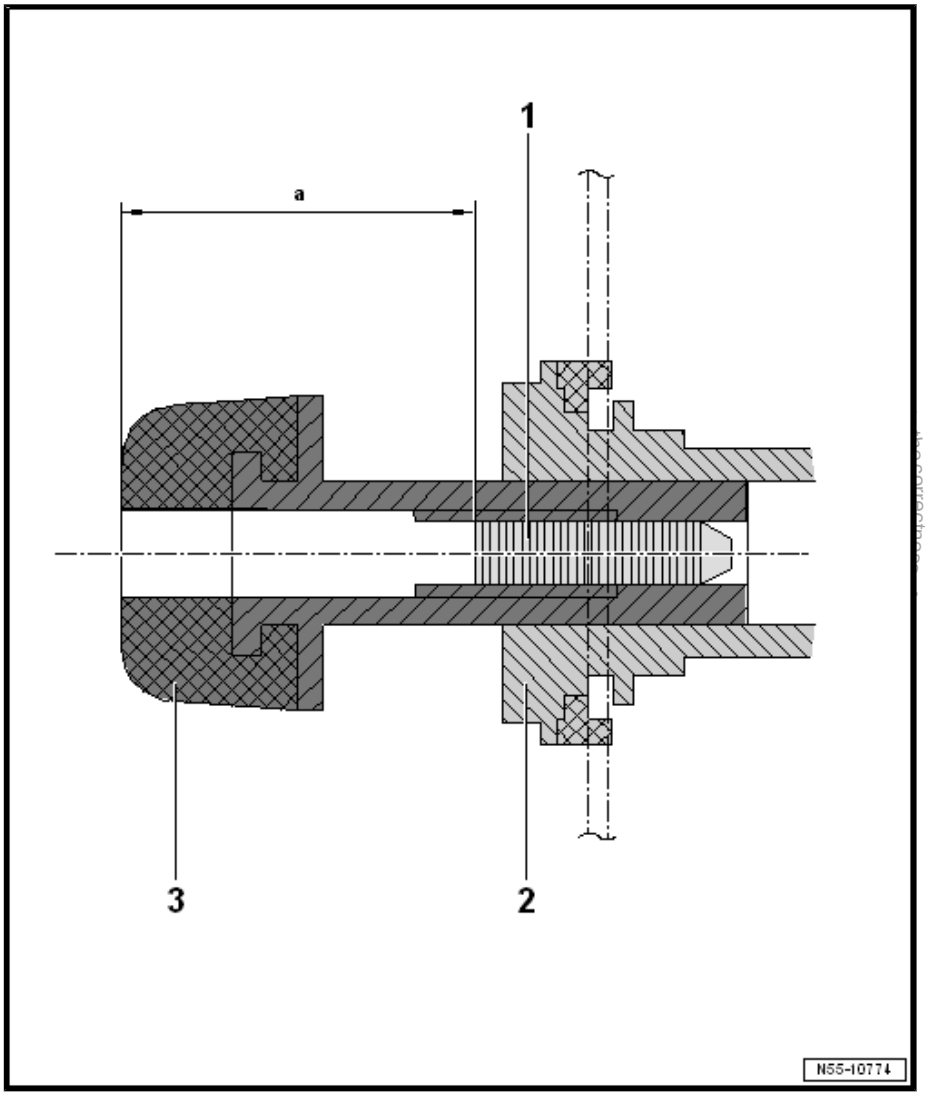
If necessary, renew adjusting buffer ⇒ page 65 .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Commercial use or distribution of data and/or reproduction of this document in whole or in part is not permitted unless authorised.



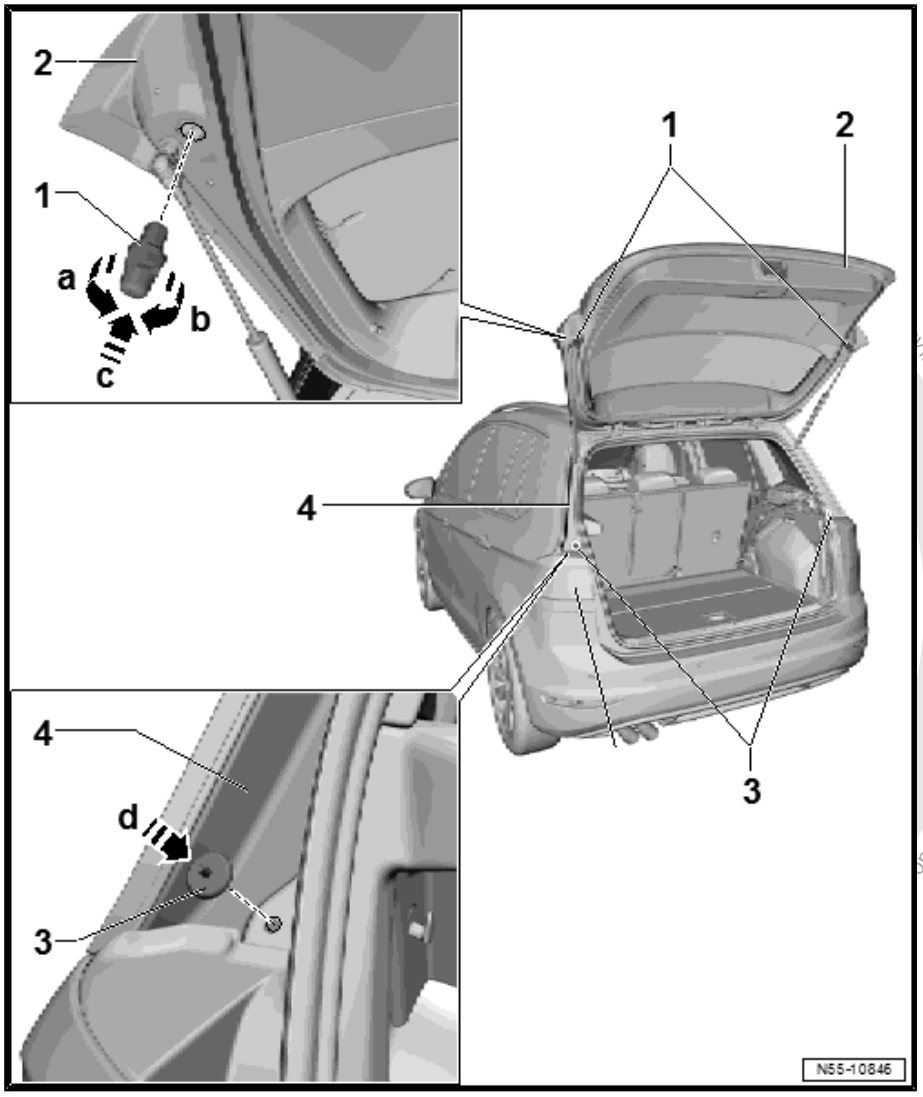
– Loosen clamping bolt -4- until it is visible in rubber buffer.
– Pull detent slide -3- out of adjusting buffer -1-.
– Adjust detent slide to dimension -a- = 12.5 mm.
– Close rear lid in preliminary detent position with slight pressure in the middle.
– Open rear lid again.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Screw in clamping screw -1- of adjustment buffer -2- to a depth of -a- = 20 mm.
– Check the adjustment.

Renew adjustment buffer.



liability with respect to the correctness of information in this do

Removing

– To remove bump stop, turn entire adjusting buffer -1- by 90° -arrow a-.

– Remove buffer stop from rear lid -2-.

Installing

– Carefully check that stop -3- is correctly seated in side panel -4-.

– To install, insert entire bump stop -1- at right-angle into rear lid -2- -arrow c-.

– Turn bump stop -1- through 90° -arrow b-.

– Adjust buffers -1- ⇒ page 63 .

Adjusting striker pin

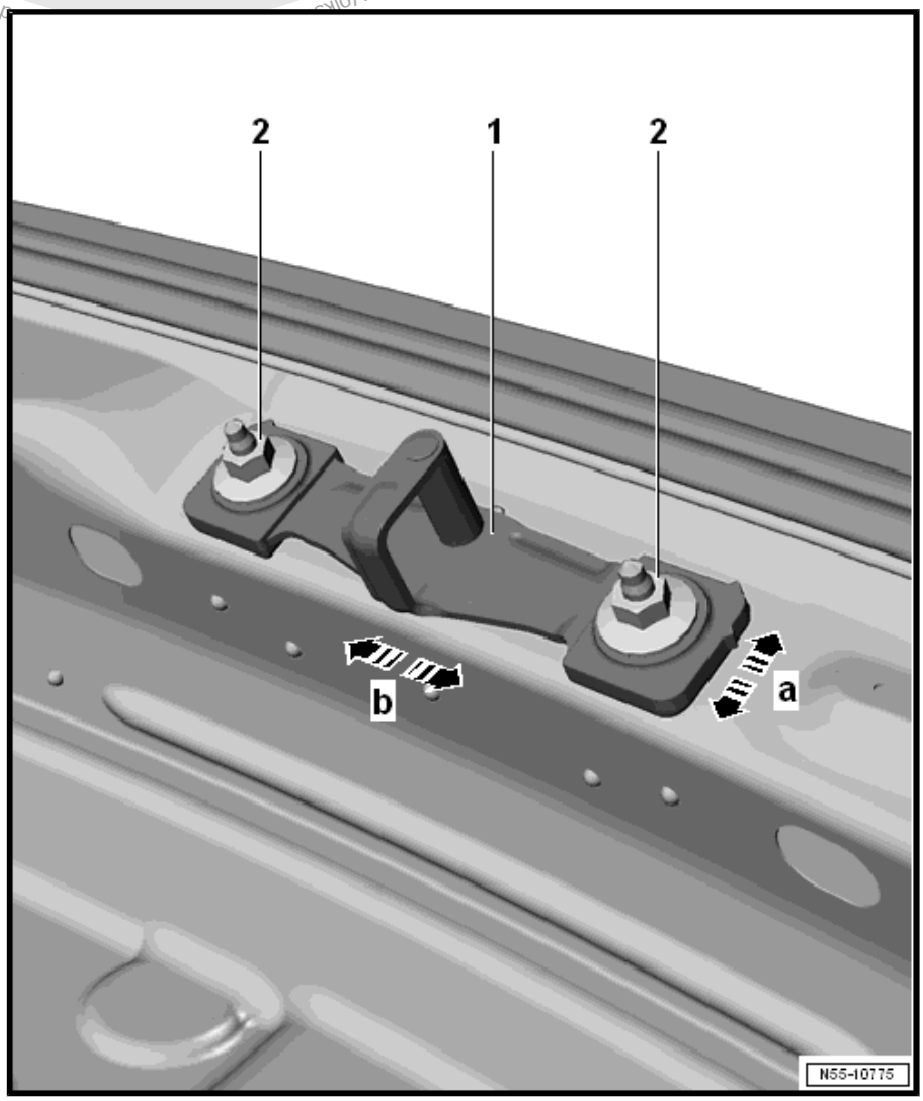
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

- *If hexagon nuts are loosened -2-, it is possible to adjust striker pin -1- in the oversized holes of hinge -arrow a- and -arrow b-.*
- *Adjust striker pin -1- so that the recess of the rear lid lock with rotary latch is centred relative to the striker pin -1- when it engages.*



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, for commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove trim for rear lid lock ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock .
– Loosen hexagon nuts -2-.
– Move striker pin -1- into upper position and tighten hexagon nuts -2-.
– Close rear lid and make sure adjustment has been carried out correctly.

Specified torques

◆ Hexagon nut ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

2.4 Removing and installing bonnet lock

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing bonnet lock”, page 68

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing lid lock with power latching system”, page 70

⇒ “2.4.3 Installing new lid lock with power latching system”, page 75

⇒ “2.4.4 Removing and installing power latching system”, page 76

⇒ “2.4.5 Installing new power latching system”, page 79

2.4.1 Removing and installing bonnet lock

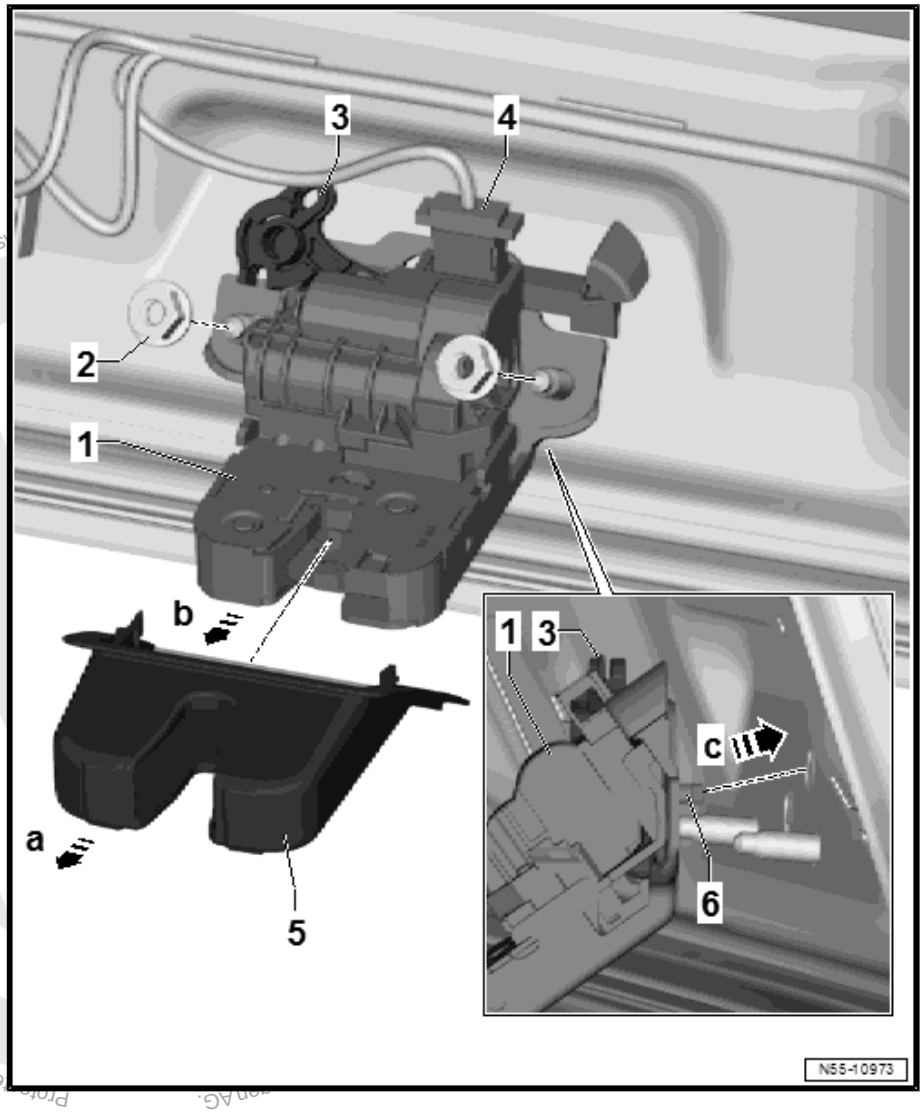
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



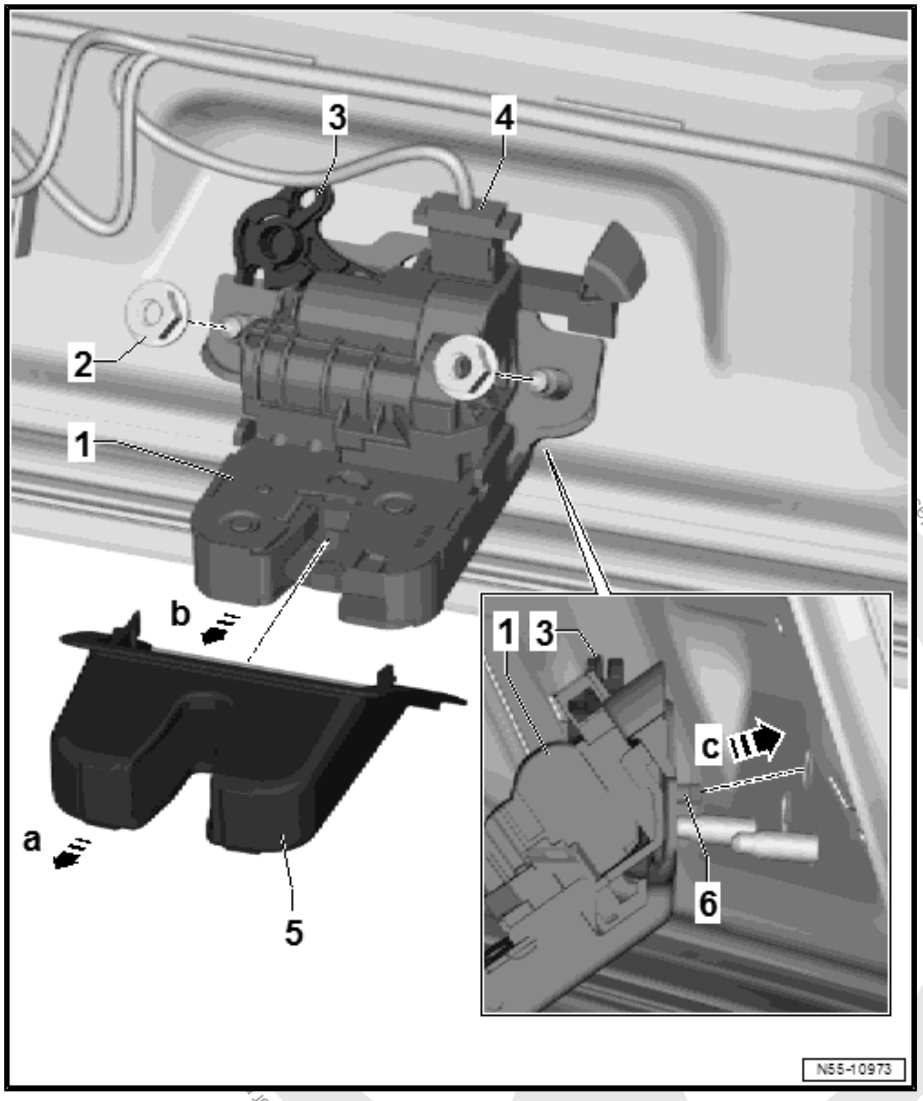
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volks

Note

If the rear lid does not open, it can be opened in an emergency by reaching through the rear lid trim and actuating the emergency release -3- by hand ⇒ Operating Manual .

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing lower rear lid trim .
– Pull off bonnet lock cover -5-.
– Separate electrical connector -4- from lid lock -1-.
– Unscrew hexagon nuts -2- and pull off lid lock -1- from stud.
– This causes hooks -6- to be released from rear lid.

Installing



– Push lid lock -1- onto studs until hooks -6- engage in rear lid -arrow c-.
– Tighten hexagon nuts -2-.
– Fit electrical connector -4- on lid lock -1-.
• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nuts ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

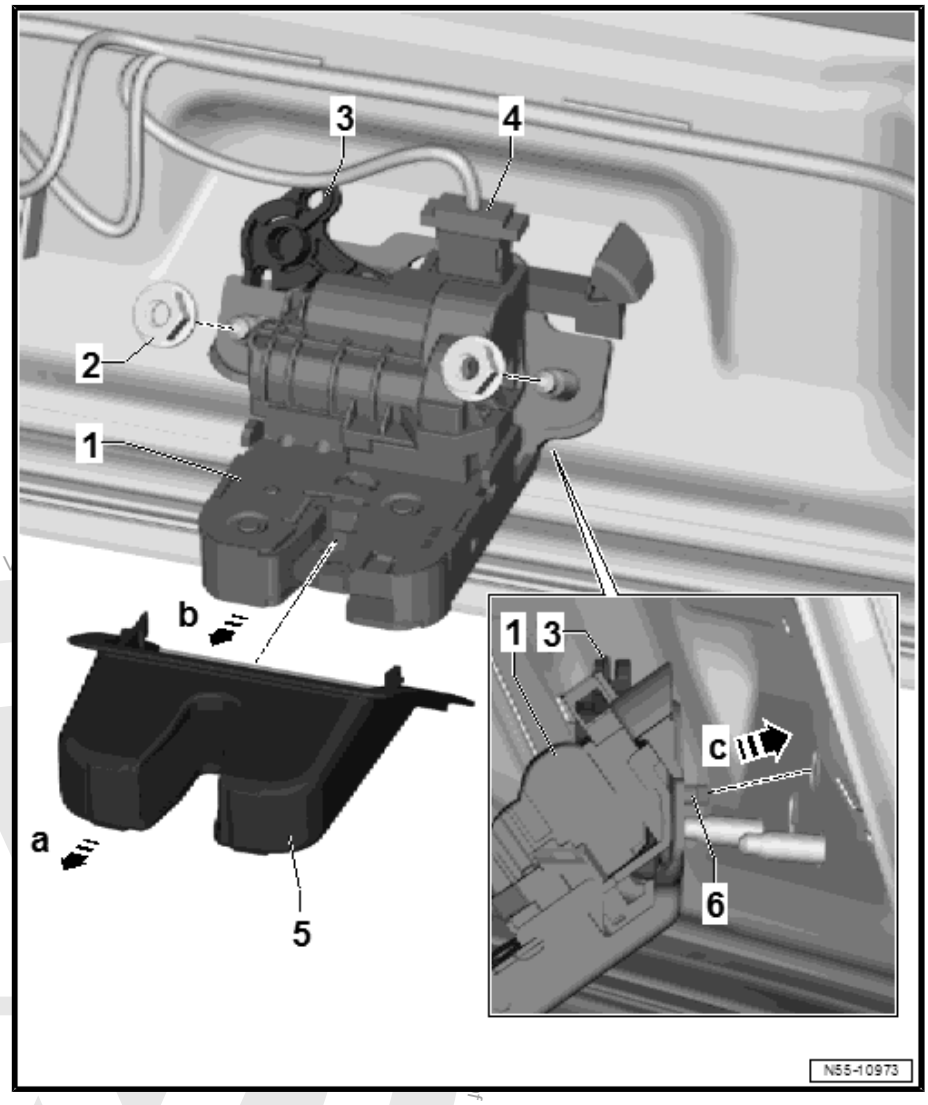
2.4.2 Removing and installing lid lock with power latching system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

Removing

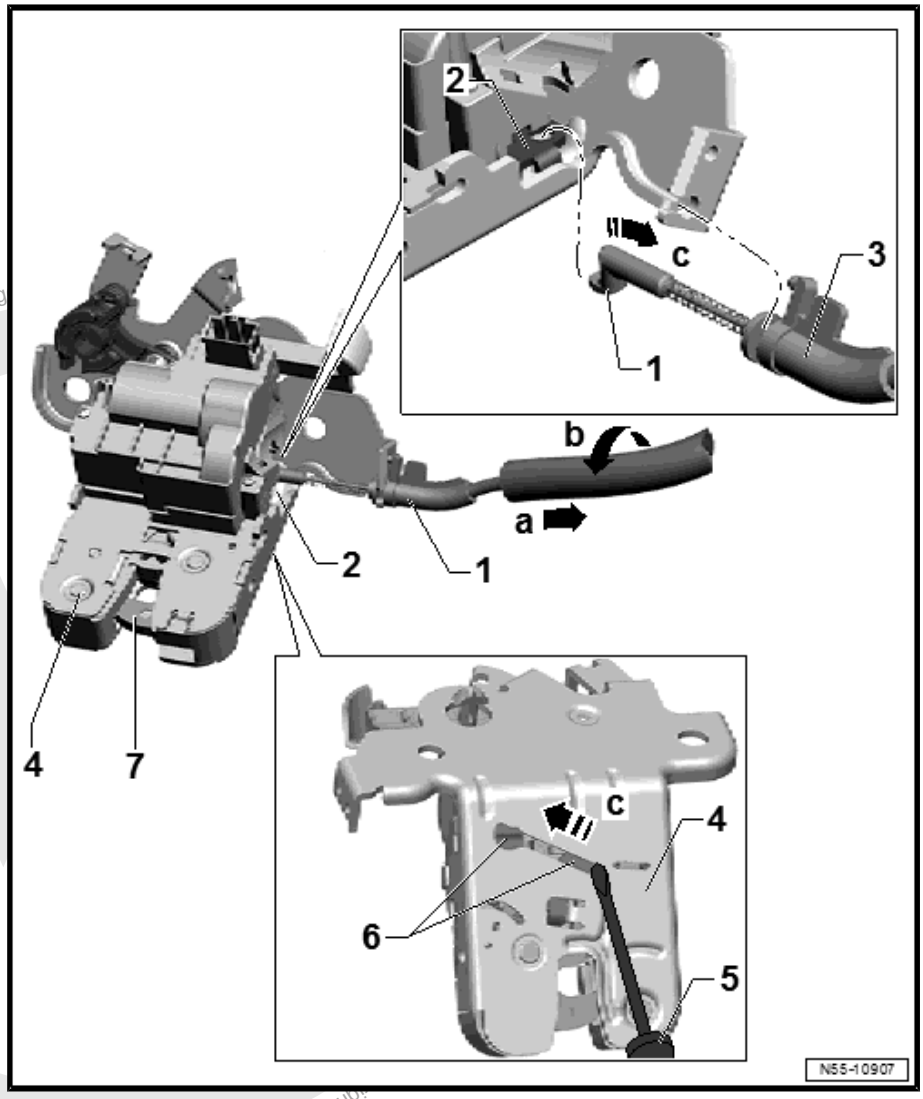


Note

If the rear lid does not open, it can be opened in an emergency by reaching through the rear lid trim and actuating the emergency release -3- by hand ⇒ Operating Manual .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for information in this document.

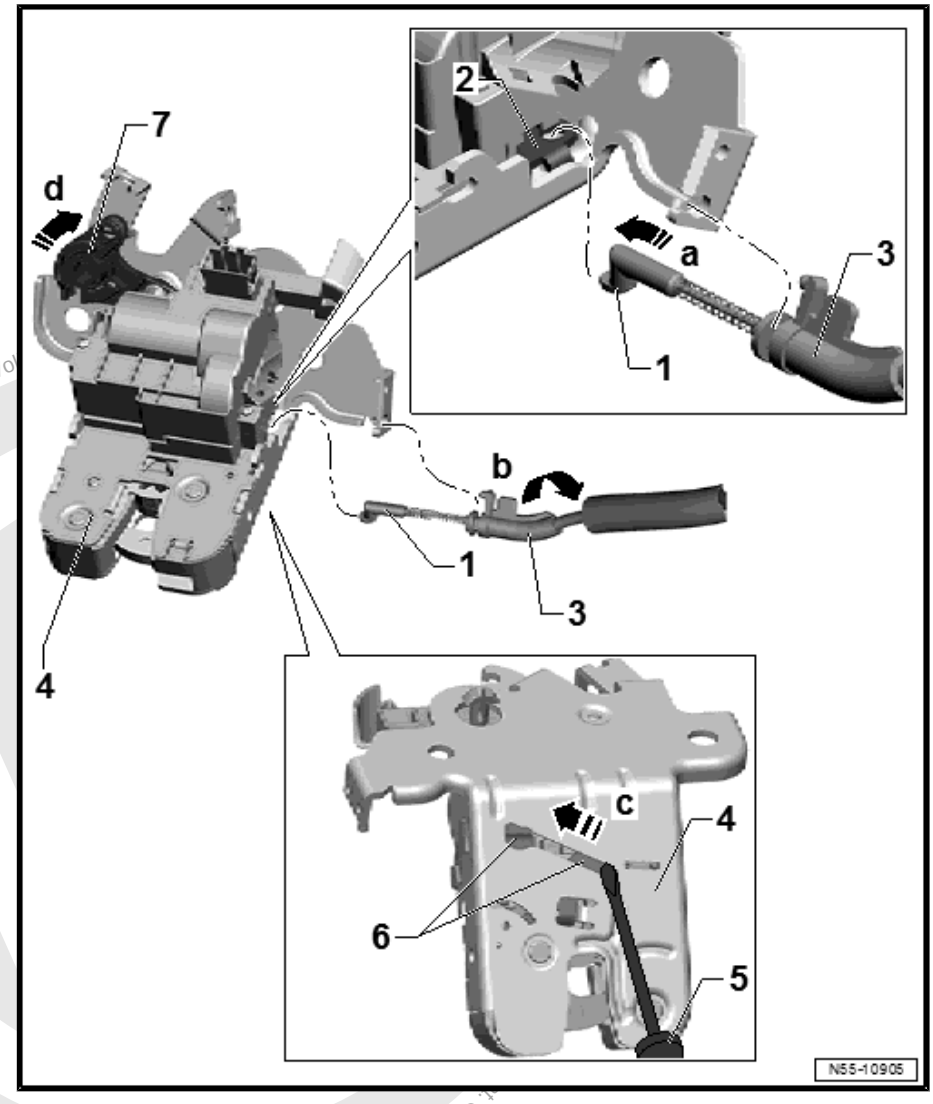
– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing lower rear lid trim .
– Pull off rear lid lock cover -5-.
– Separate electrical connector -4- from lid lock -1-.
– Unscrew hexagon nuts -2- and pull off lid lock -1- from stud.
– This causes hooks -6- to be released from rear lid.



– Lock latch -7- of lid lock -4-.
– Using a screwdriver -5-, push lever -6- to stop in -direction of arrow c-, and hold it in this position.
– Detach Bowden cable -1- from retainer by turning it -arrow b-.
– Guide Bowden cable -1- out of lever -2- -arrow c-.

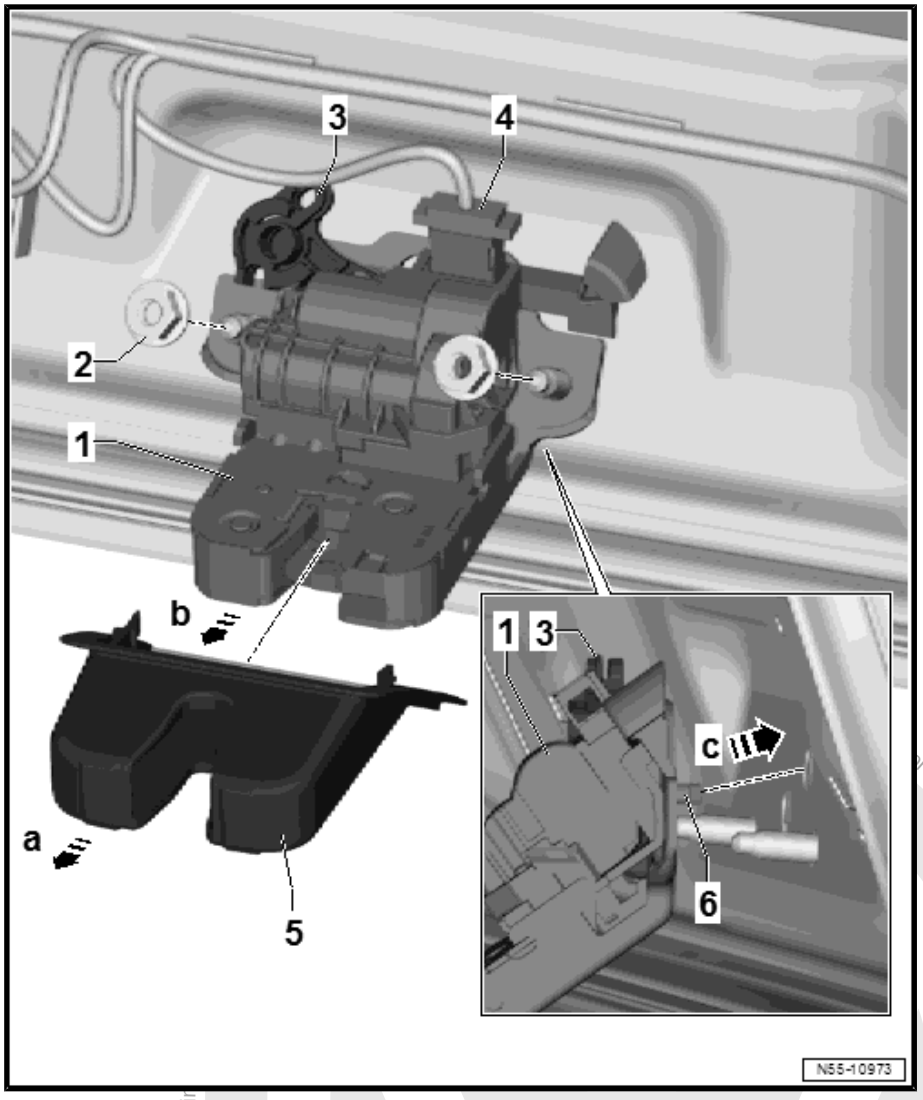
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Using a screwdriver -5- push lever -6- to stop in -direction of arrow c-, and hold it in this position.
– Guide Bowden cable -1- into lever -2- -arrow a-.
– Attach Bowden cable -3- to retainer by turning it -arrow b-.
– Release lever -6-, and operate release mechanism -7- -arrow d-.



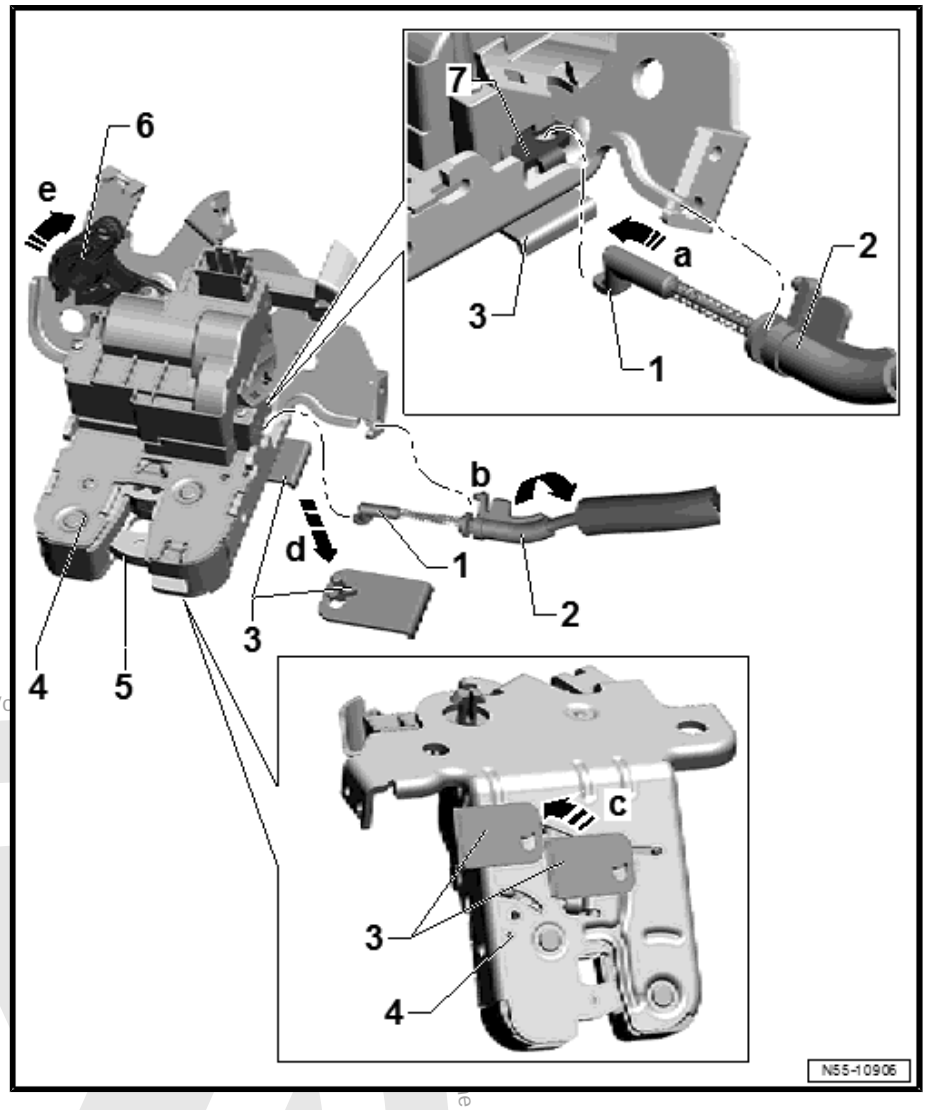
– Push lid lock -1- onto studs until hooks -6- engage in rear lid -arrow c-.
– Tighten hexagon nuts -2-.
– Fit electrical connector -4- on lid lock -1-.
• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nuts ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

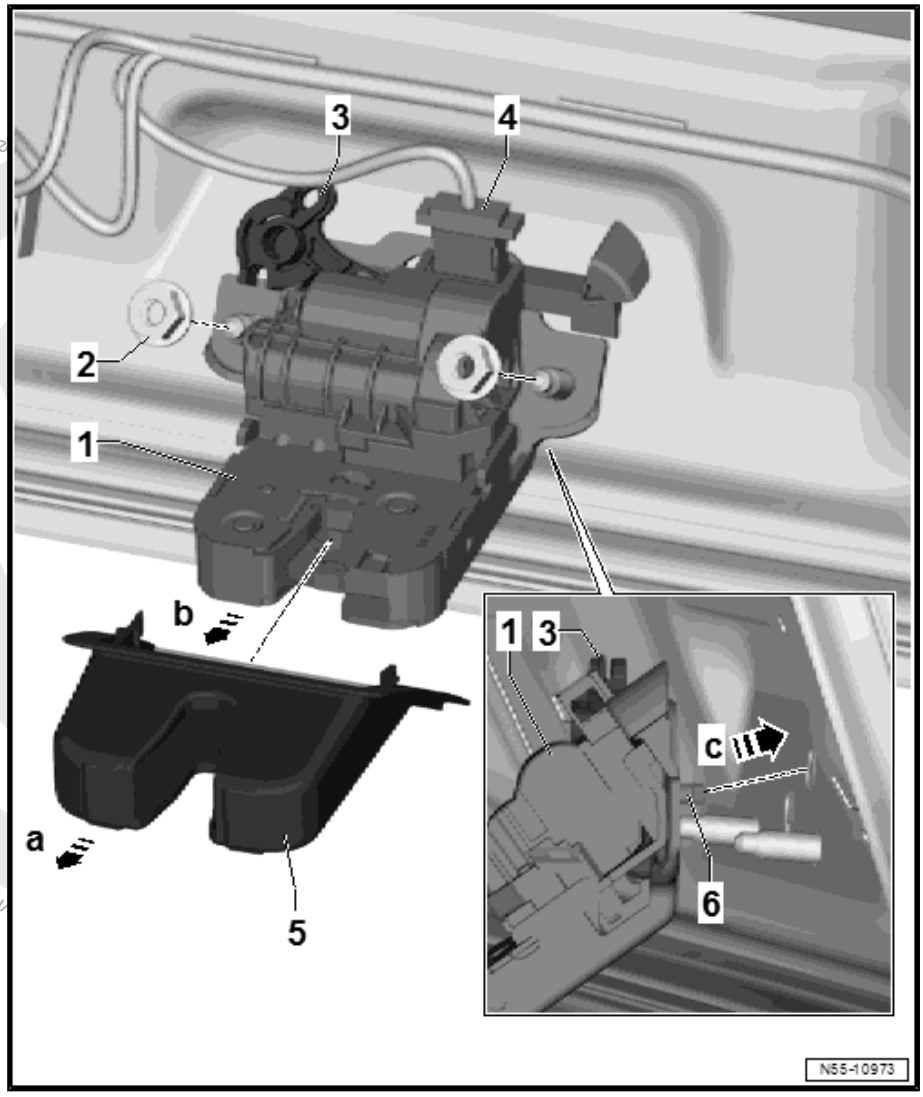
2.4.3 Installing new lid lock with power latching system



– Push clip -3- to stop in -direction of arrow c-, and hold it in this position.
– Guide Bowden cable -1- into lever -7- -arrow a-.
– Attach Bowden cable -2- to retainer by turning it -arrow b-.
– Release clip -3- and remove from lid lock -4- -arrow d-.
– Operate release mechanism -6- -arrows e-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised



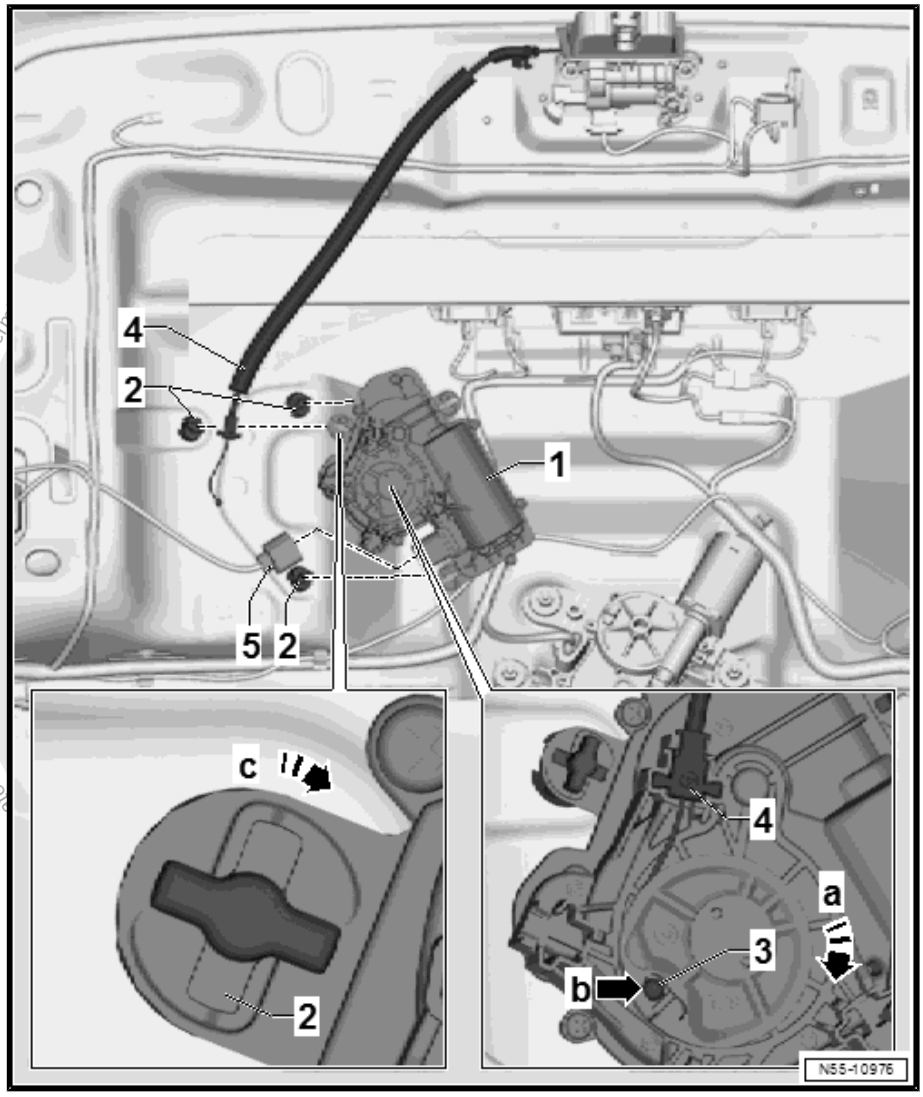
– Push lid lock -1- onto studs until hooks -6- engage in rear lid -arrow c-.
– Tighten hexagon nuts -2-.
– Fit electrical connector -4- on lid lock -1-.
• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nuts ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

2.4.4 Removing and installing power latching system

Removing



...of commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not per...

Note

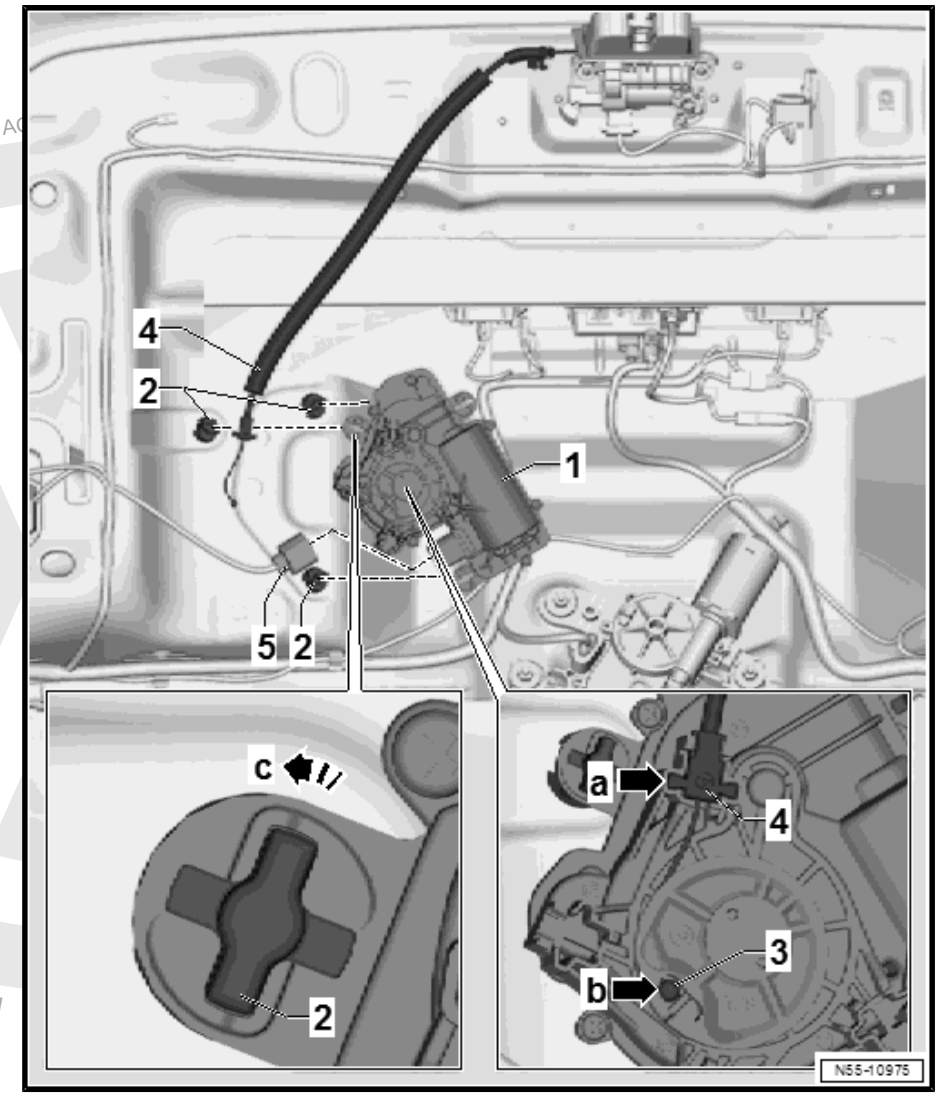
If the rear lid does not open, it can be opened in an emergency by reaching through the rear lid trim and actuating the emergency release by hand ⇒ Operating Manual .

- Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing lower rear lid trim .
- Disconnect connector -5- on power latching system -1-.
- Slightly turn mounting -arrow a- so that Bowden cable is free of stress.
- Lift Bowden cable retainer -4- out of power latching system -1-.
- Lift Bowden cable ball head -3- out of mounting -arrow b-.
- Turn retaining clip -2- 90 degrees -arrow c-.
- Pull power latching system -1- off retaining clip -2-.

Note

- *The retaining clips -2- remain installed.*
- *If a new power latching system -1- is installed ⇒ page 79 , the retaining clips -2- must be removed.*

Installing



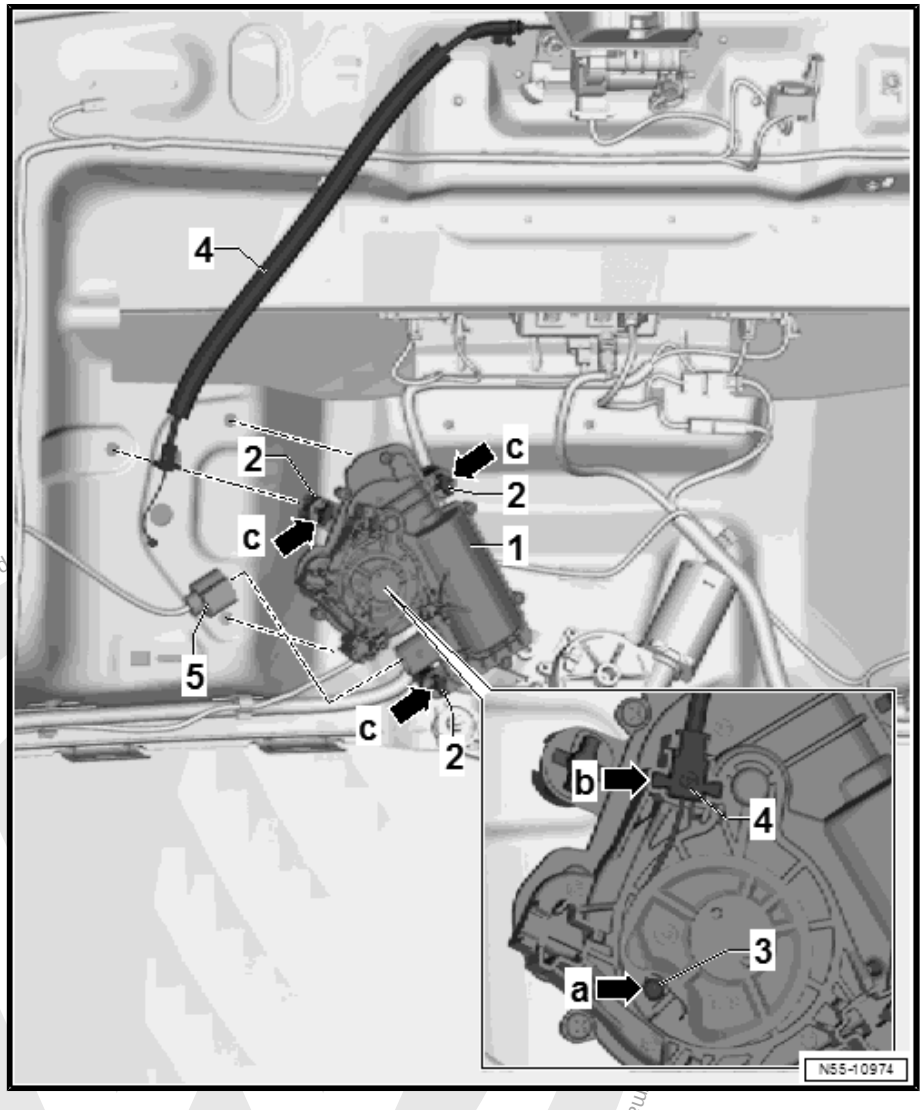
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG

– Fit power latching system -1- onto retaining clips -2-.
– Turn retaining clips -2- 90 degrees -arrow c-.
– Fit Bowden cable ball head -3- into mounting -arrow b-.
– Slightly turn mounting so that Bowden cable -4- is free of stress.
– Insert Bowden cable retainer -4- in power latching system -1- -arrow a-.
– Connect connector -5- to power latching system -1-.
• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

2.4.5 Installing new power latching system

Note

The existing retaining clips -2- must be removed.



– Push retaining clips -2- installed on new power latching system into holes in rear lid -arrows c-.
– Fit Bowden cable ball head -3- onto mounting -arrow a-.
– Slightly turn mounting so that Bowden cable -4- is free of stress.
– Insert Bowden cable retainer -4- in power latching system -1- -arrow b-.
– Connect connector -5- to power latching system -1-.

• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

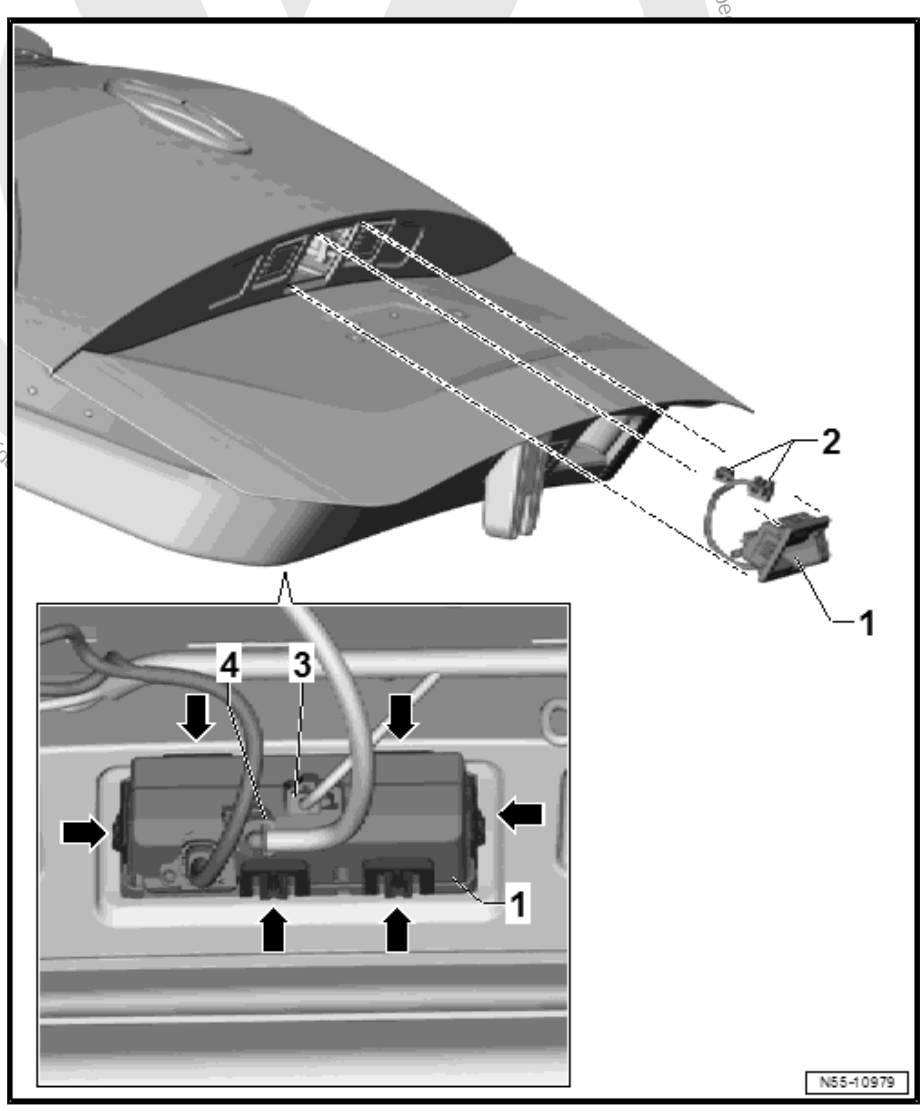
Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All information in this document.

2.5 Removing and installing operating mechanism

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respe

Note

- *Removal is the same whether the button has a reversing camera or not.*
- *In case of electrical malfunction, rear lid can be opened using lock emergency release. Emergency release is accessible through an aperture in rear lid trim.*



Removing

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing lower rear lid trim .

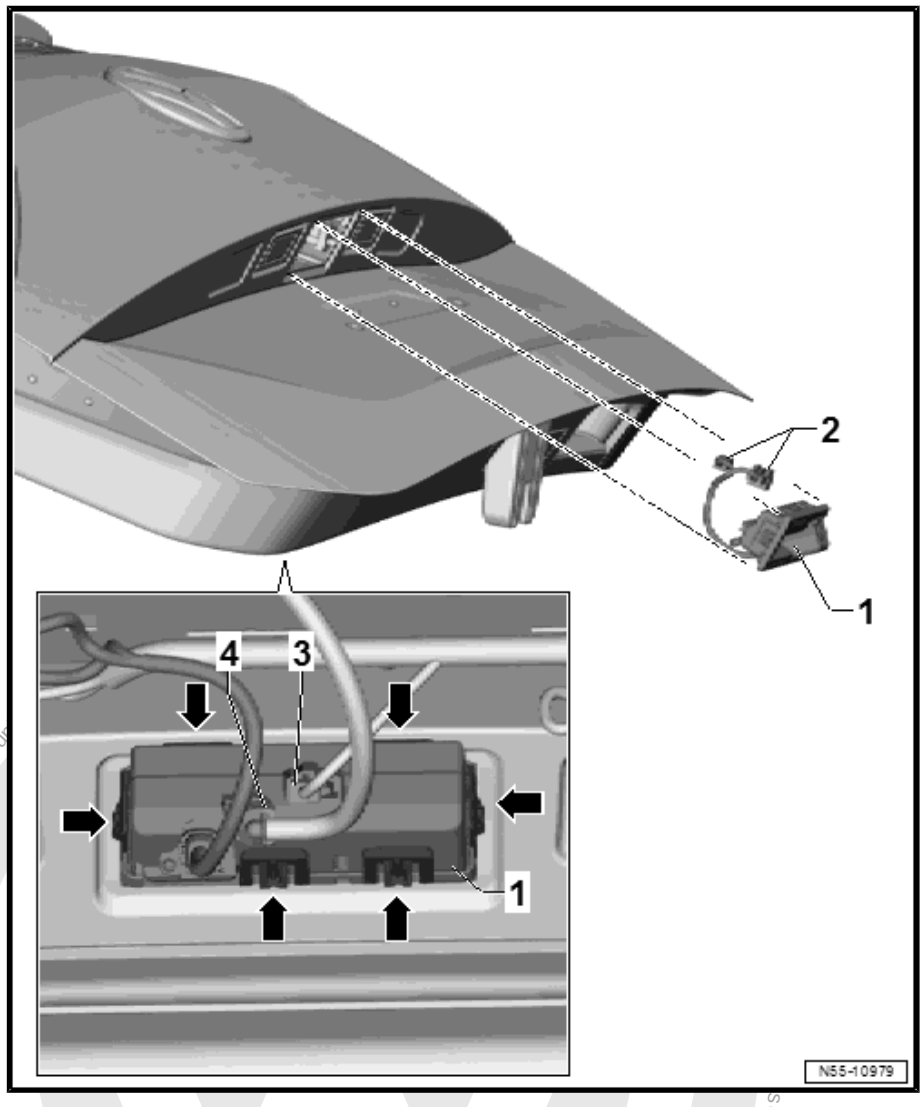
– Separate electrical connector -3-.

– If button has reversing camera, separate electrical connectors -2 and 4- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

– Release hooks -arrows- and guide button -1- outwards out of rear lid.

General information and work instructions for reversing camera ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

Installing



– Insert button -1- in rear lid until hooks -arrows- engage audibly.

– Attach electrical connectors -3-.

– If button has reversing camera, join electrical connectors -2 and 4- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

• Before closing rear lid, check function of lid release components.

2.6 Removing and installing hinges

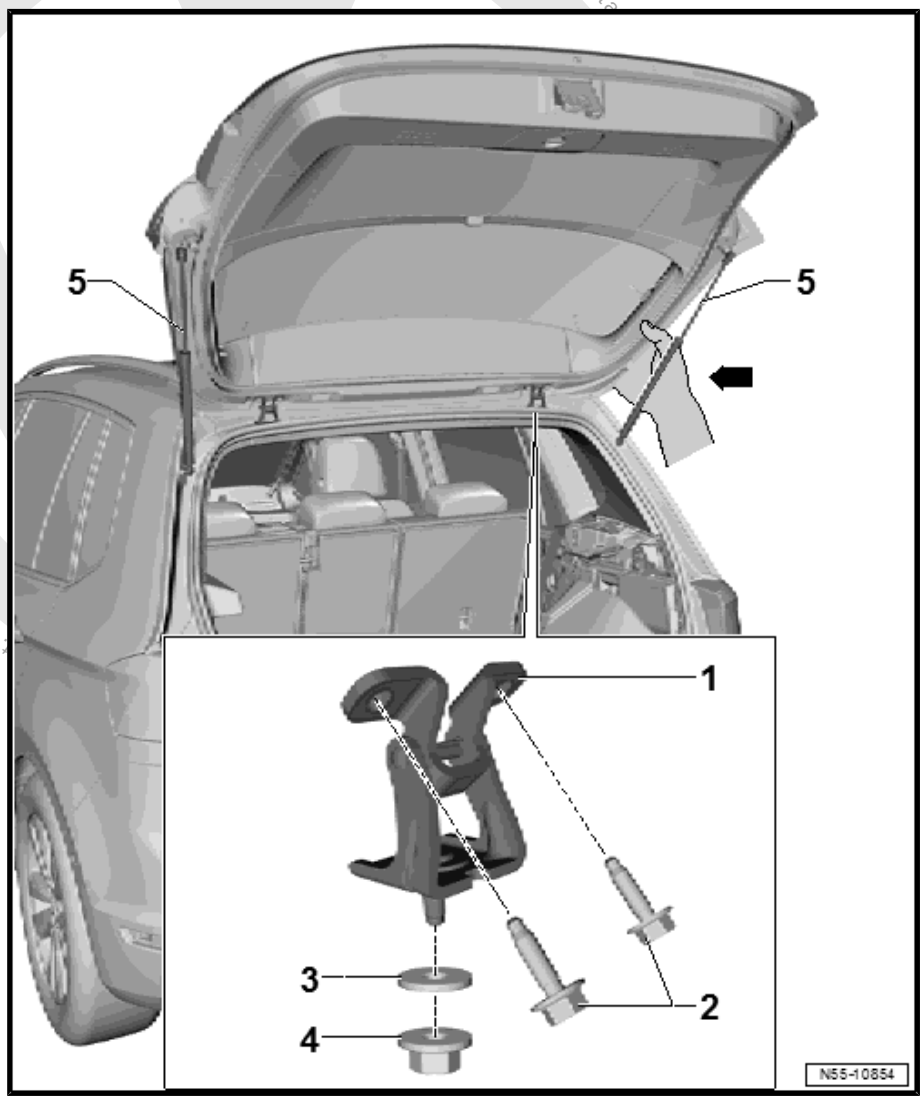
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Source of information in this document.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing



– Lower moulded headliner in area of hinge mounting ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trims; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Moulded headliner can now be lowered sufficiently to allow hexagon nut -4- to be unscrewed without damage occurring to moulded headliner.

– Loosen hexagon nut -4- and bolts -2-. Do not unscrew completely.

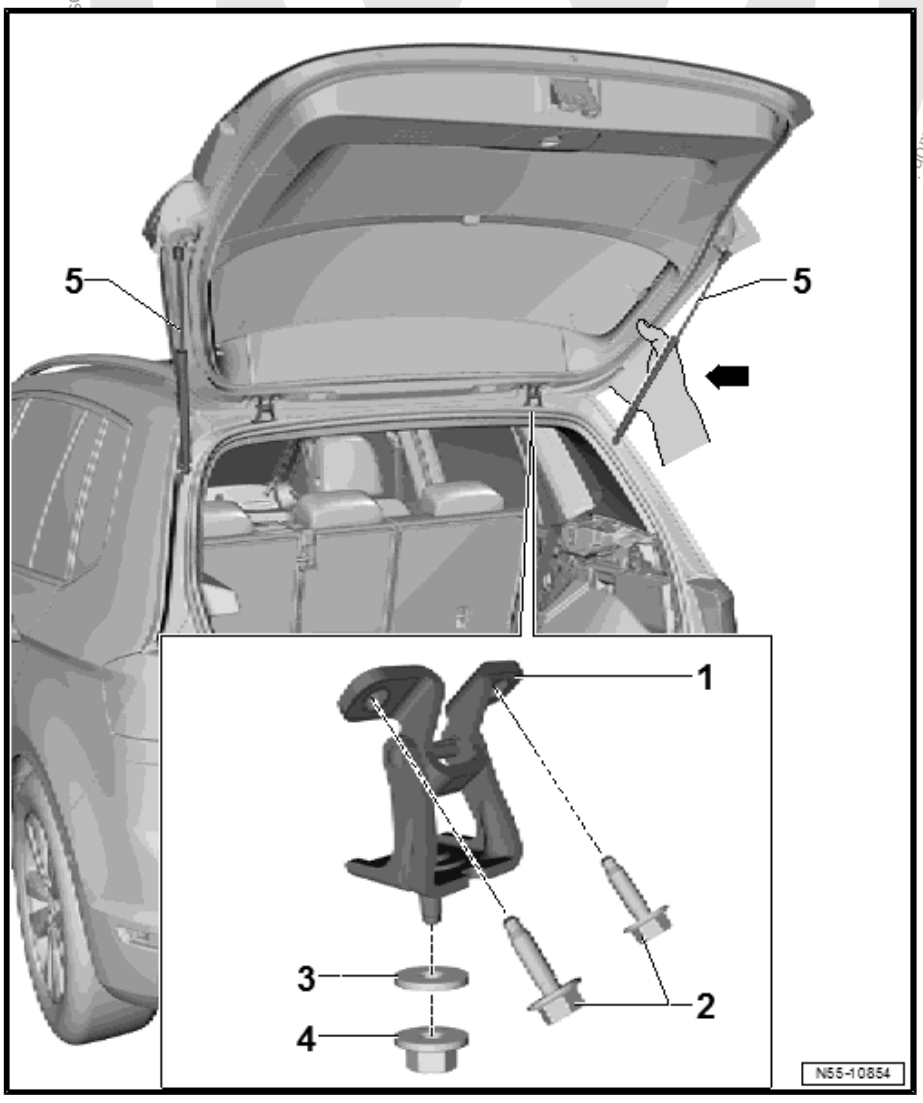
Note

- *Mask off the edge of the roof and the upper edge of the rear lid to prevent the paintwork from being damaged.*
- *For the following procedure a 2nd mechanic is required to support the rear lid in the area indicated by the -arrow-.*
- *The gas struts -5- remain installed.*

– Unscrew hexagon nut -4- and bolts -2-.

– Pull out hinge -1-.

Installing



Hinge -1- installation is carried out in reverse order of removal.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Any use of this electronic media, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *Make sure that washer -3- is correctly seated.*
- *Recreate all seals which have been broken.*

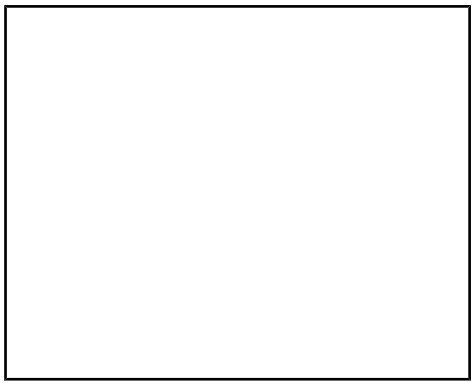
Specified torques

- Hexagon nut and bolts
  ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58 .

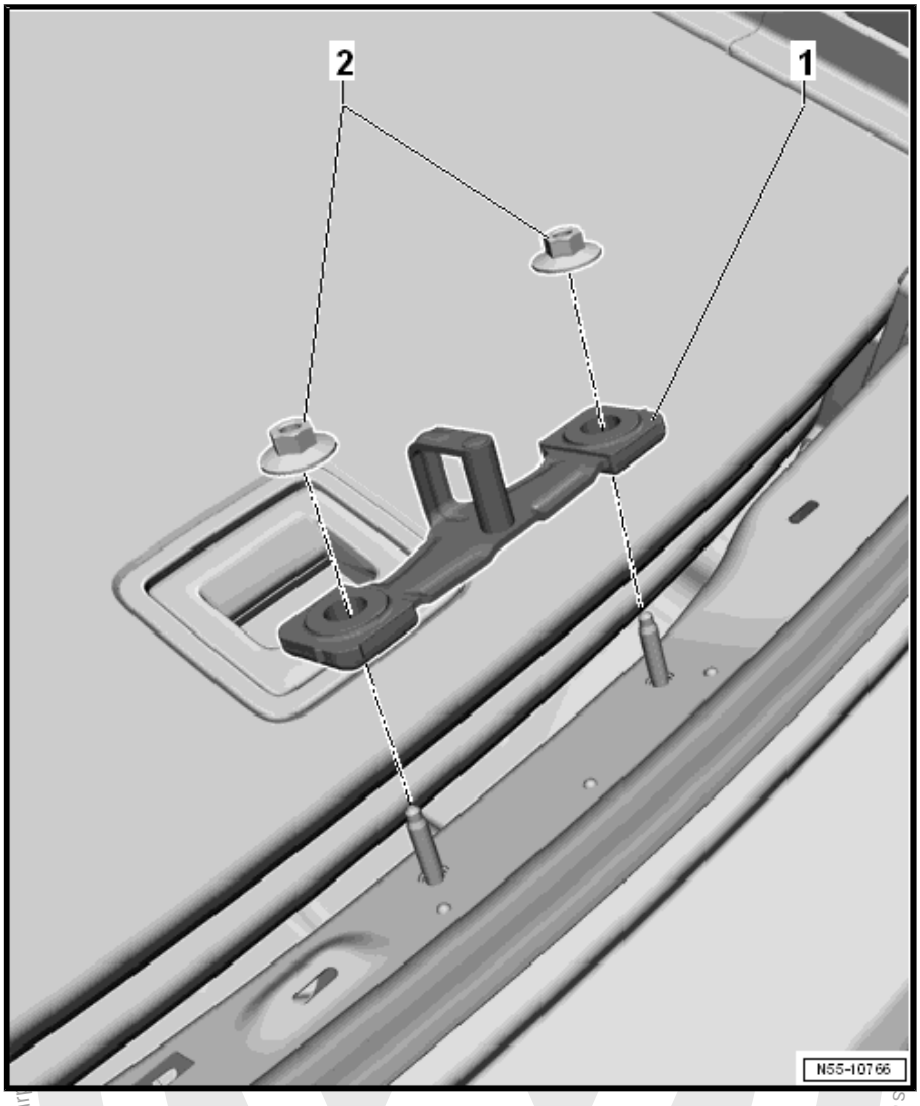
2.7 Removing and installing striker pin

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove trim for rear lid lock ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock .

– Unscrew hexagon nuts -2- and remove striker pin -1- from lock carrier.

Installing

– Mount striker pin -1- with hexagon nuts -2- onto lock carrier.

– Adjusting striker pin ⇒ page 61 .

Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nut ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

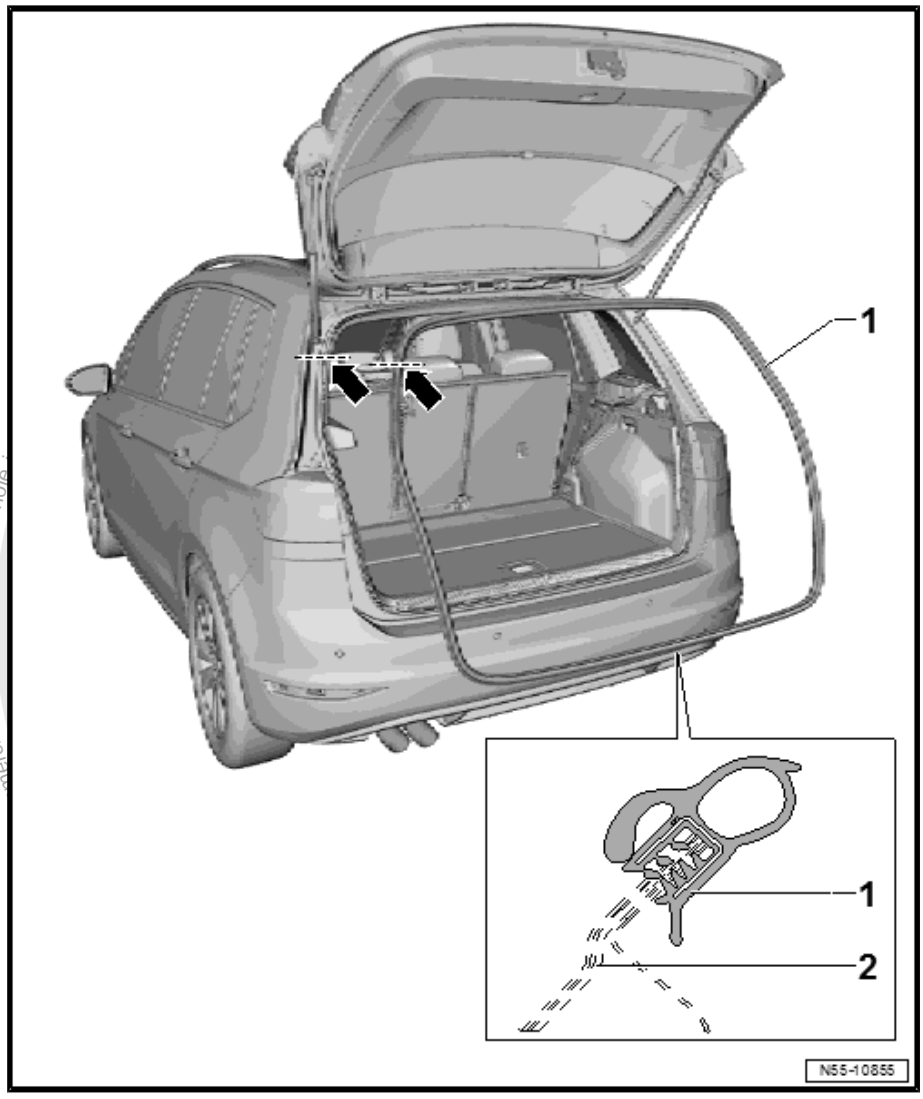
2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal

In the factory a sealant is applied to the rear lid seal, the seal is fitted to the body flange and then rolled on.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *When the seal is removed, the sealant on the inside of the seal will be spread and the flanks will be bent out slightly. If the seal is then refitted, sealing and firm seating are no longer guaranteed.*
- *Therefore, each seal that is completely removed must be replaced with a seal known as a "tap-on seal".*
- *If a seal has been partially removed, squeeze sides of seal together before installing.*



...mercial purposes, in part or in whole ...

Removing

– Pull seal -1- off body flange -2-.

Installing

– Align seal -1- with vulcanised point for securing the gas strut -arrows-.

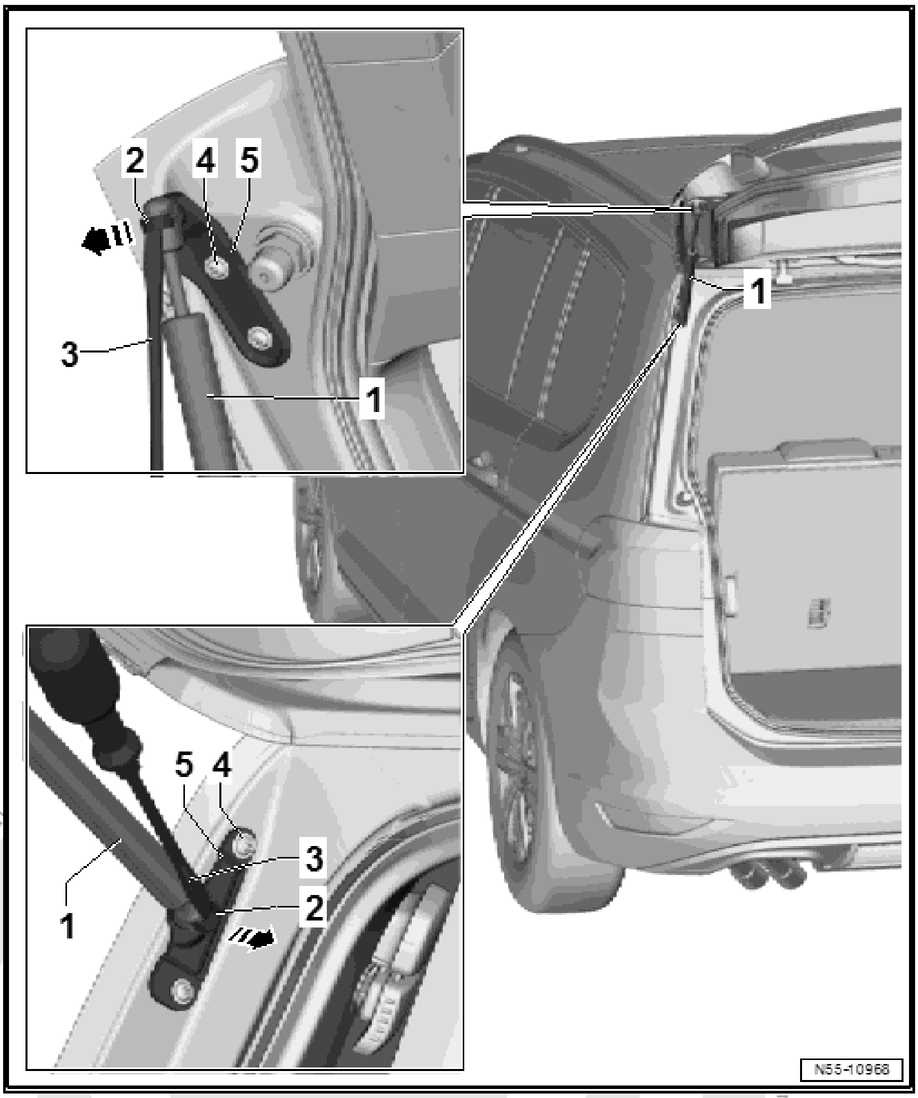
– Press seal -1- evenly onto body flange by hand.

2.9 Removing and installing gas strut

Removing

Note

The rear lid must be supported when a gas strut is removed. One gas strut alone cannot support an open rear lid.



– Open rear lid and brace it open.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to spring clip caused by levering it out too far.

The spring clip may break.

– Never lever spring clip completely out of ball socket.

– Position a small screwdriver -3- beneath spring clips -2-.

– Raise spring clips -2- until spring clips can be moved over ball sockets.

– Pull off gas strut -1- from ball-head pins -4- -arrows-.

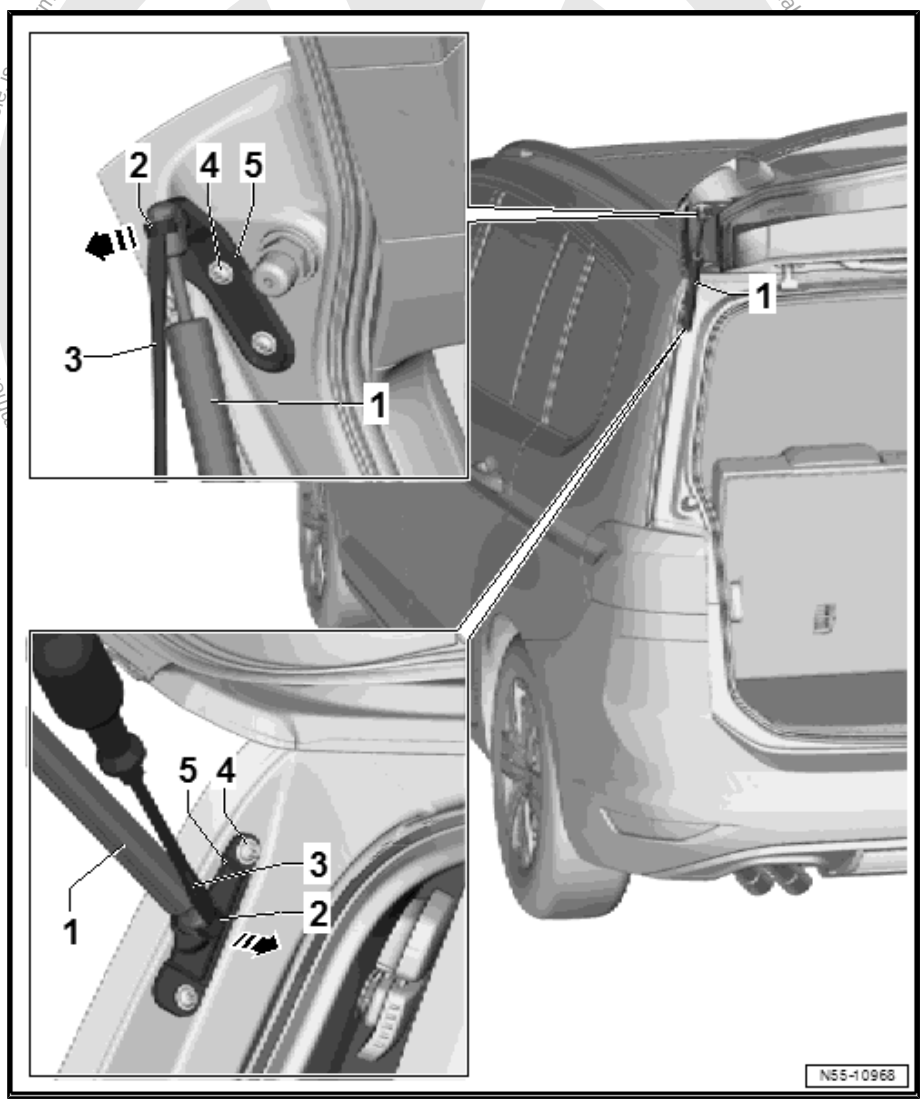
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted ... rectness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

After removing gas strut, slide spring clips -2- back immediately.

– When the gas strut is disposed, gas needs to be released from gas strut ⇒ page 89 .

Installing



- The spring clips -2- are pushed onto the ball sockets of the gas strut -1-.

– Push ball sockets of gas strut -1- onto ball-head pins -5- until ball sockets engage audibly with the ball-head pins.

Specified torques

♦ Ball-head pin ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

2.10 Releasing gas from gas strut

– Clamp gas strut in vice in area x = 50 mm.

CAUTION

Risk of eye injury caused by flying swarf.
Eye irritation and injury possible.
– Wear protective goggles.

– Cover area of saw cut with a cloth.
– Saw open strut cylinder in first third of total cylinder length, starting from the reference edge on the piston rod side.
– Feed oil and cleaning clothes into existing method of disposal.

2.11 Removing and installing drive unit for rear lid - VX69-

⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing drive for rear lid”, page 89
⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing pinch protection”, page 91

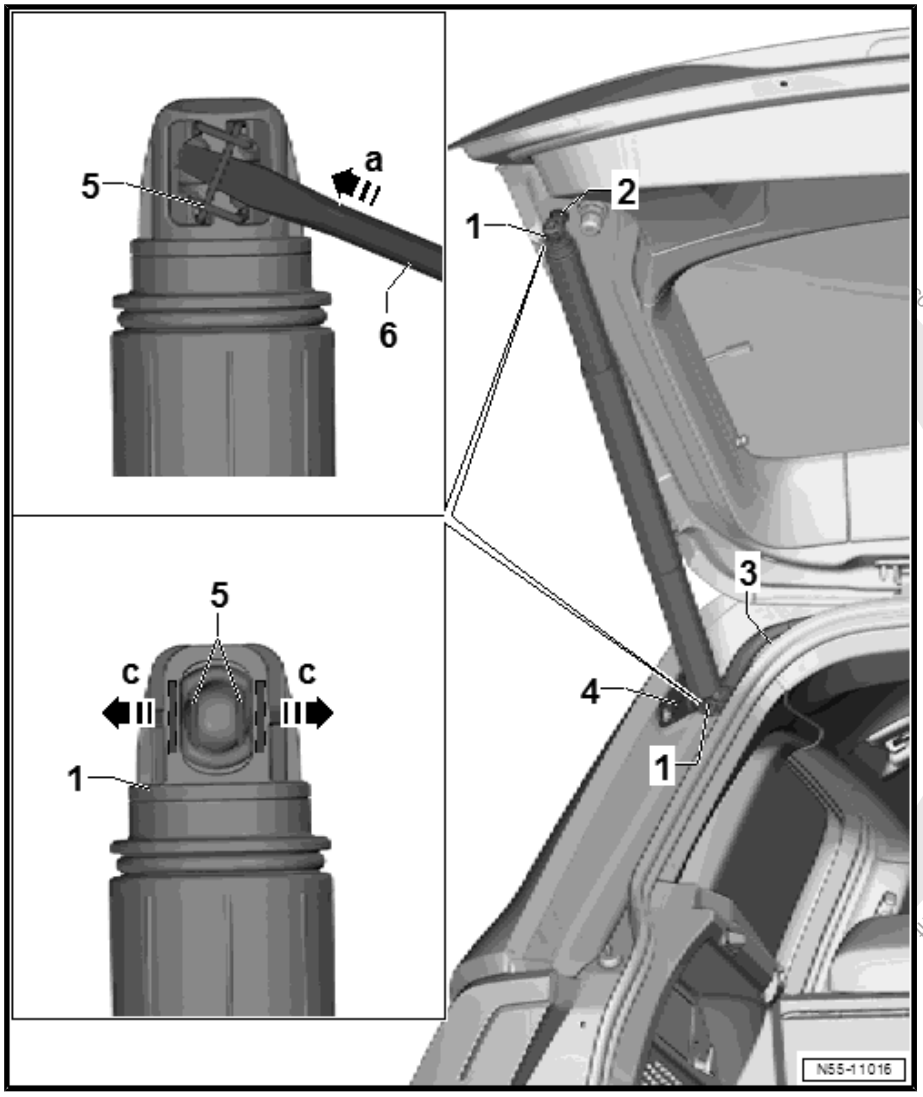
2.11.1 Removing and installing drive for rear lid

Removing

Note

If a rear lid drive is removed, rear lid must be supported.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



...cept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Detach D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .
– Lower moulded headliner at rear ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trims; Removing and installing moulded headliner .
– Disconnect electrical connectors for wires of rear lid drive -1- on D-pillar or on inside of roof cross member.
– Pull out wires with rubber grommet -3-.
– Support rear lid.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to spring clip caused by levering it out too far.

The spring clip may break.

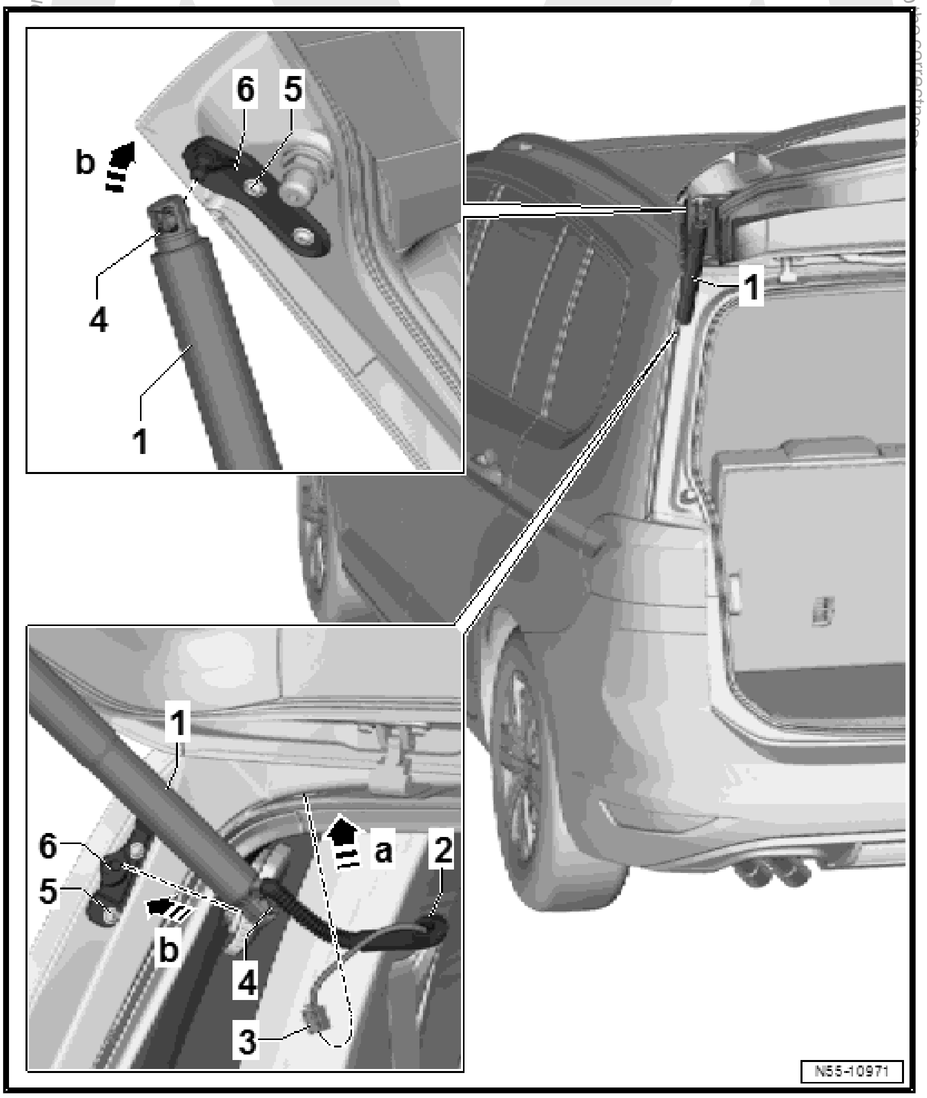
– Never lever spring clip completely out of ball socket.

– Push drive towards ball-head pin.
– Guide a screwdriver -6- under spring clips -5- -arrow a-.
– Spring clip -5- opens as screwdriver is inserted -arrows c- enough to allow spring clip to be moved over ball-head pins -2 and 4-.

– Pull rear lid drive -1- off ball head pins -4-.

After removing rear lid drive, pull out screwdriver -6- again immediately.

Installing



- Ball-head pins -6- installed.
- Spring clip -4- pushed back.

– Push drive -1- with ball sockets onto ball studs -6- -arrows b- until they engage audibly.

– Route wiring with rubber grommet -2- and push in rubber grommet firmly -arrow a-.

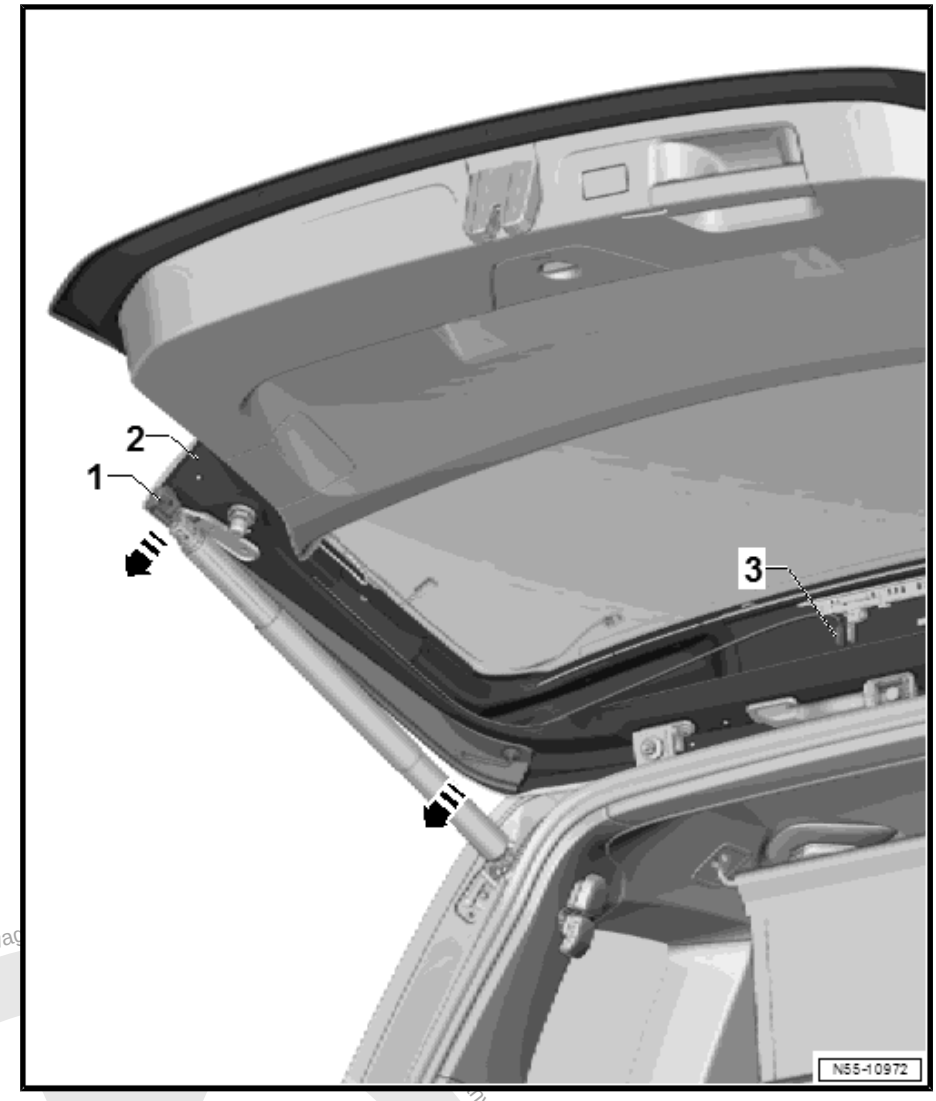
– Join electrical connectors for wires of rear lid drive -3-.

Specified torques

♦ Ball-head pin ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - rear lid”, page 58

2.11.2 Removing and installing pinch protection

Removing



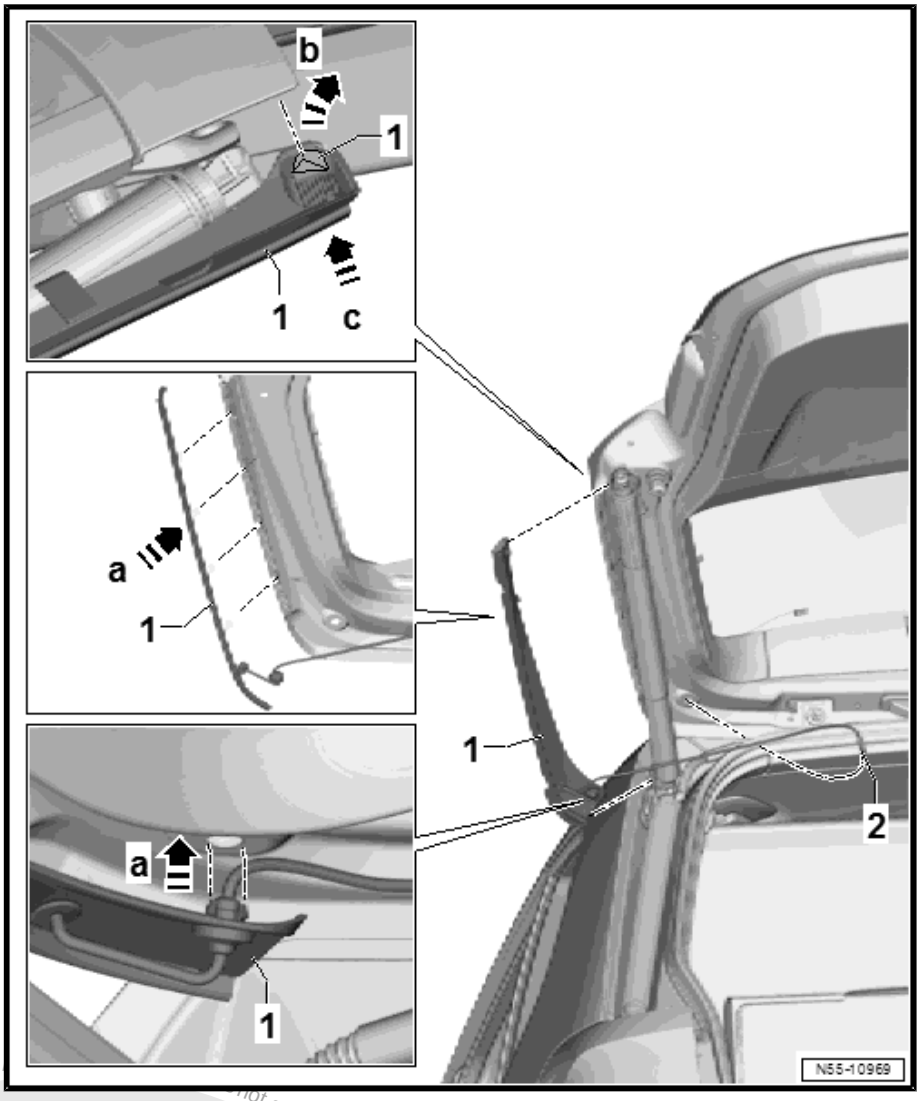
– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims .
– Separate electrical connectors -3- for wire of sensor strip -1-.
– Detach sensor strip -1- from rear lid.
– Pull out rubber grommet with sensor strip -1- and wire from rear lid -2-.

Installing

Note

- *Adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- must be used exclusively.*
- *Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.*
- *Remove backing only immediately before installation. Working temperature approx. 21 °C.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Attach sensor strip -1- to rear lid -arrow a-.
– Route wire in rear lid and push in rubber grommet firmly -arrow a-.
– Attach electrical connector -2-.
– Remove backing from adhesive tape -3- -arrow b- and fit sensor strip in area of adhesive tape by pressing on firmly -arrow c-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Any alteration or printout is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

3 Tank flap unit

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - tank flap unit”, page 94

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit”, page 94

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing fuel tank flap”, page 97

3.1 Assembly overview - tank flap unit

1 - Tank flap unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

2 - Tank flap

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

3 - Water drain hose

- ❑ Routed between wheel housing and wheel housing liner

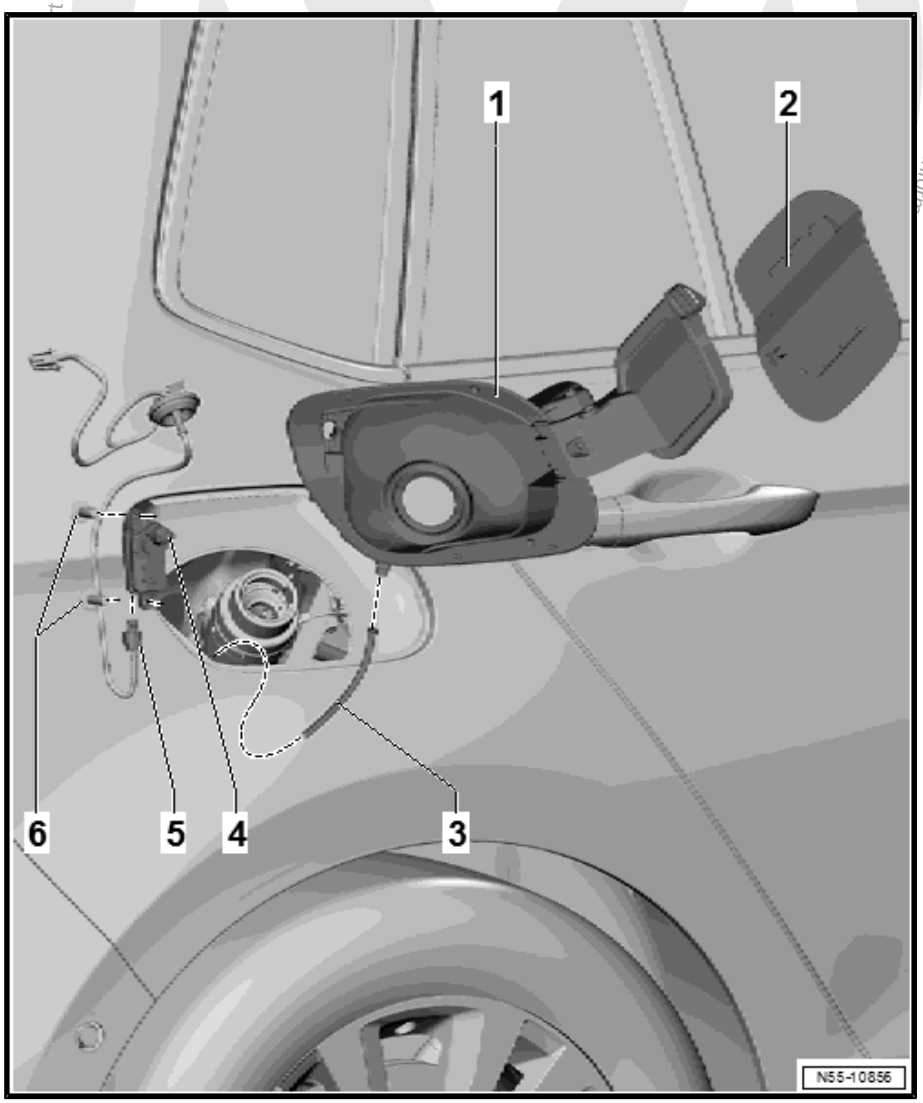
4 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

5 - Electrical connector

6 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

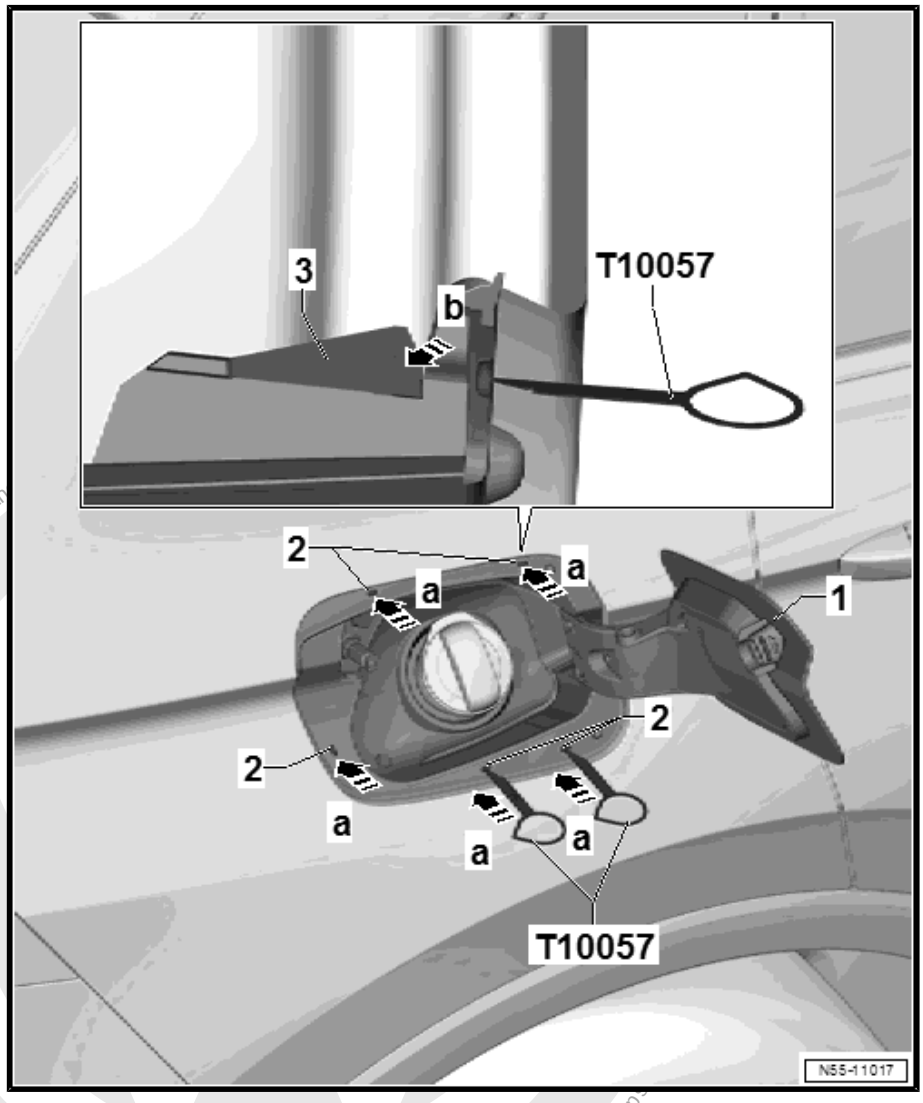


3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Radio release tool - T10057-

Removing



– Screw off tank cover.

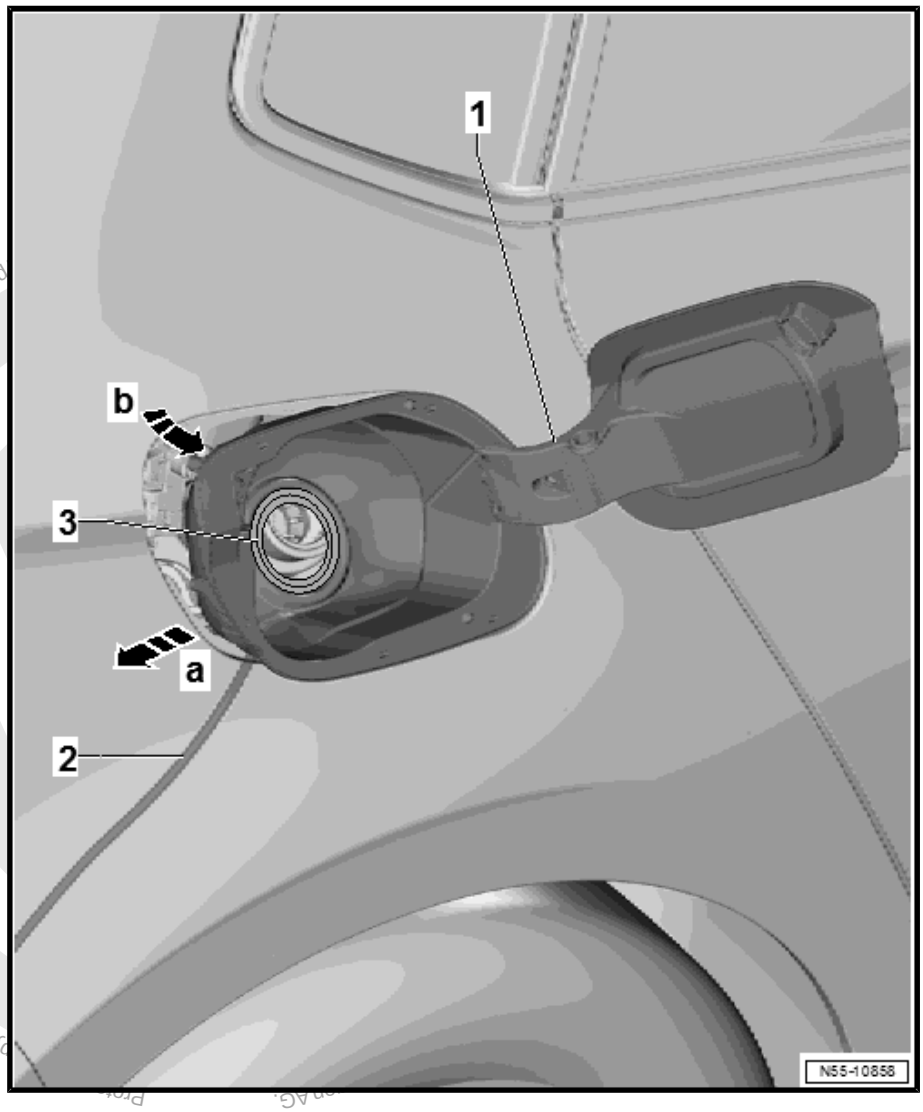
Note

The removal and installation procedure for the tank flap unit on vehicles with reducing agent filler neck is no different than that shown here.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth
e document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Using radio release tool - T10057- , punch through tank flap unit at markings -2- -arrows a-.
– Insert radio release tool - T10057- through these openings -2- until the notch is reached.

Retaining hooks -3- -arrow b- are released.

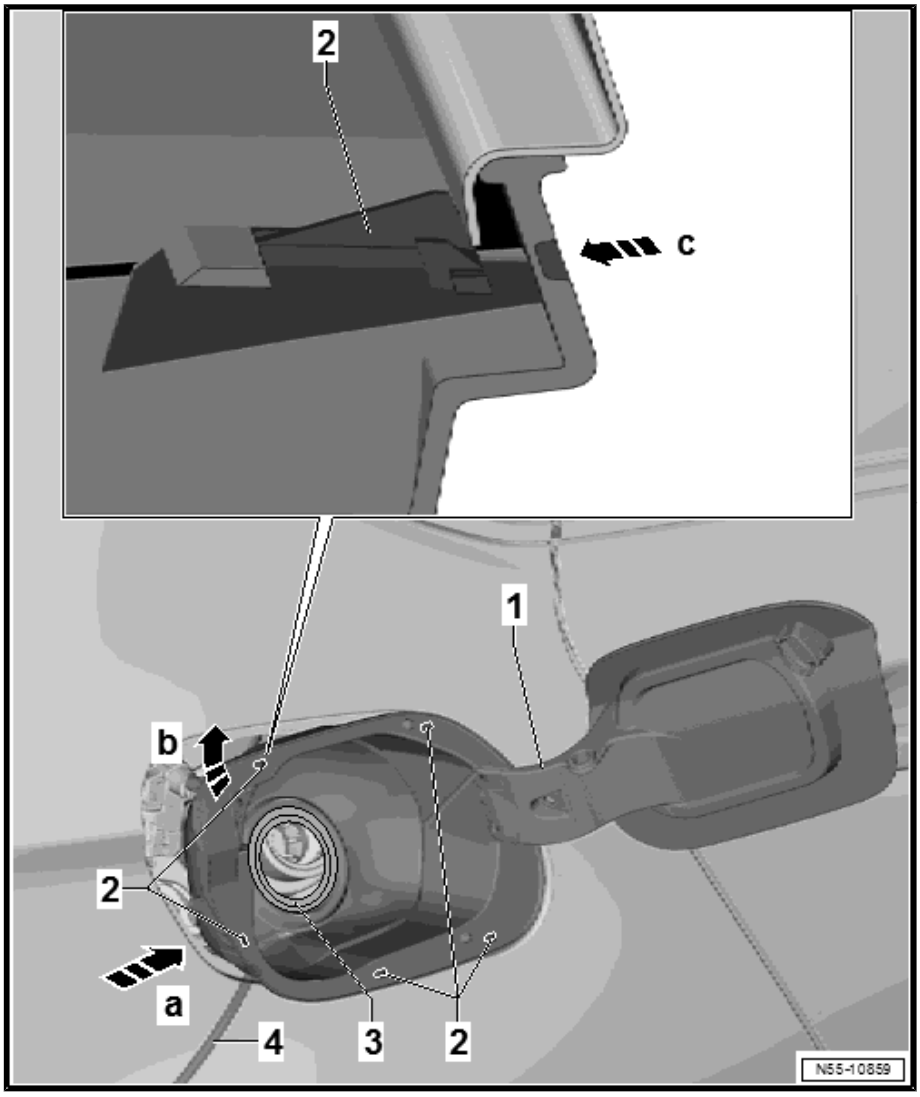


Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

– Peel rubber grommet off fuel filler neck.
– Swing tank flap unit -1- out of the side panel -arrow b-.
– Pull out tank flap unit -1- towards the rear -arrow a-.
– Guide water drainage hose -4- together with tank flap unit out of side panel.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

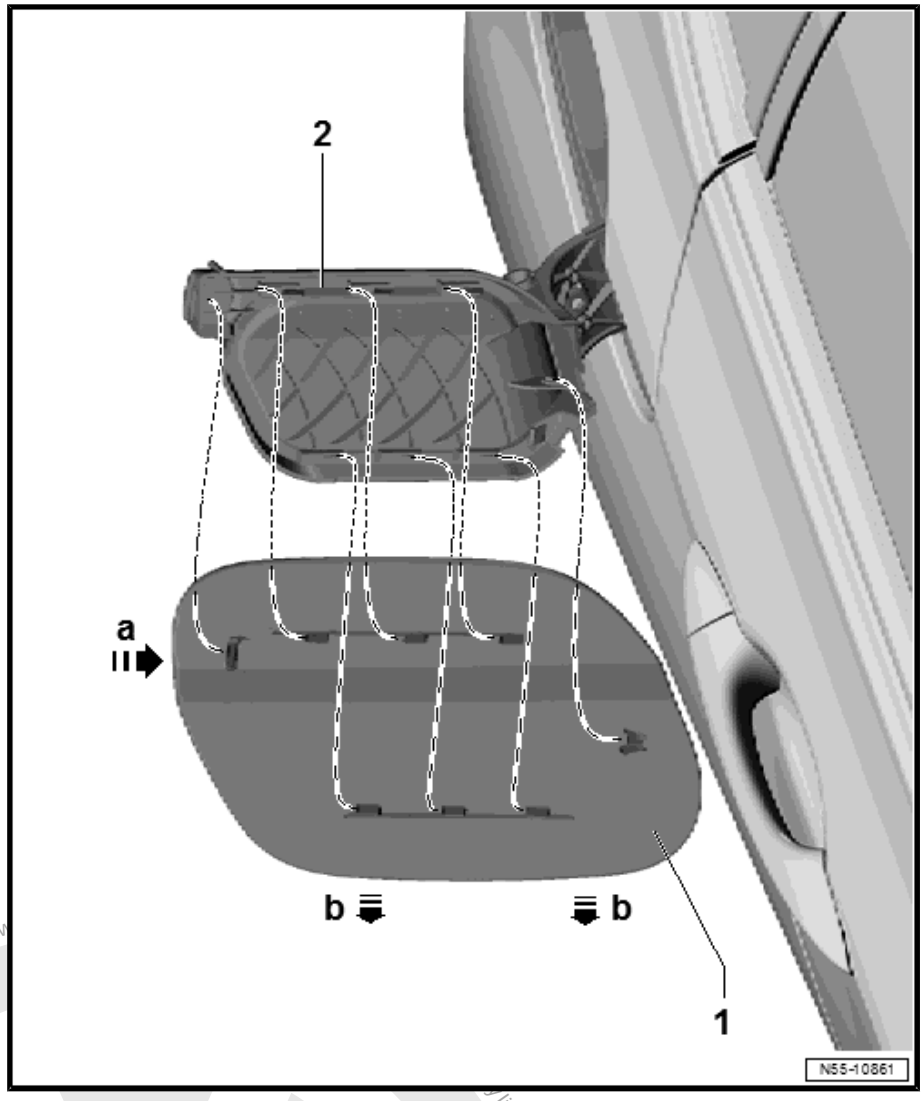


– Insert water drainage hose -4- through opening in tank flap unit -1- and then pull it through as far as it will go.
– Push water drainage hose -4- into side panel.
– Insert tank flap unit -1- in side panel -arrow a- and swing in -arrow b-.
– Push tank flap unit -1- into side panel -arrow c- until retaining hooks -2- engage.
– Pull sleeve over filler neck -3-.

• Check function of release components.

3.3 Removing and installing fuel tank flap

Removing



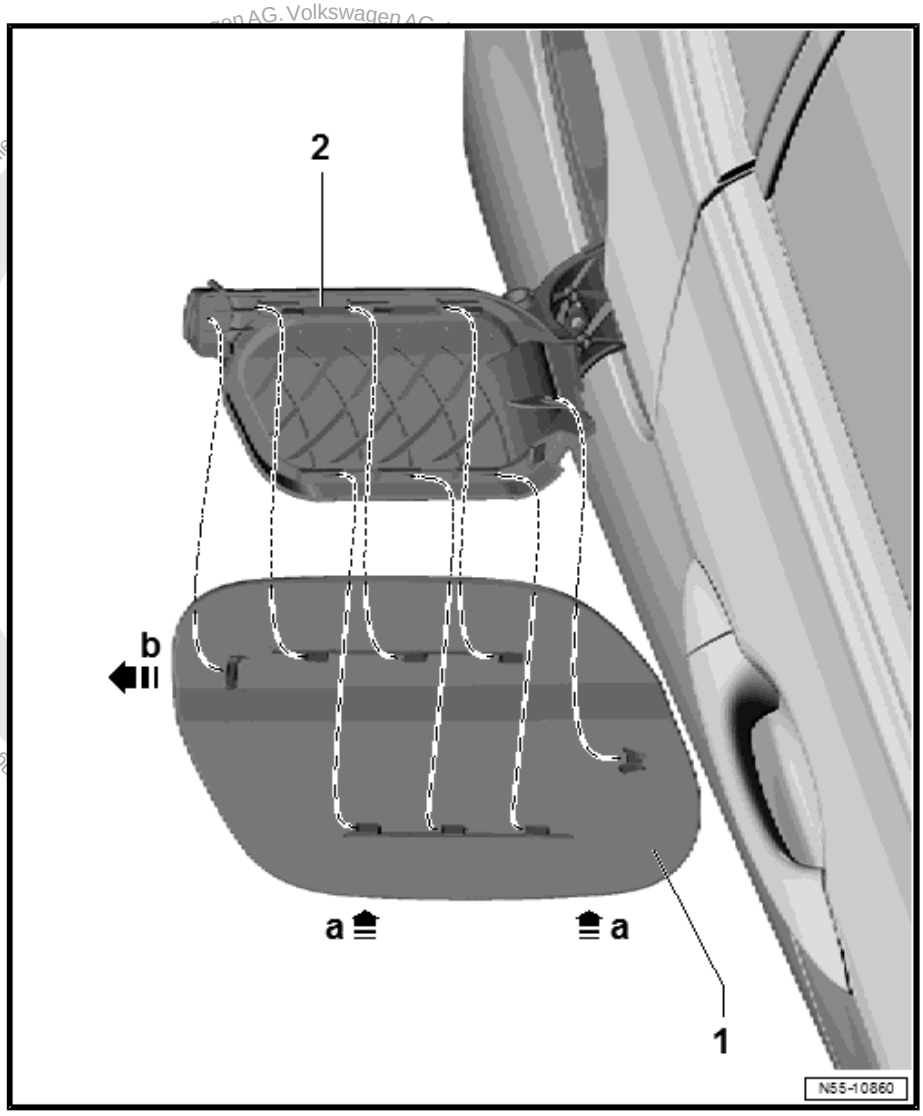
– Push tank flap -1- out of catches of tank flap unit -2- -arrow a-.
– Remove tank flap -arrows b-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

...gen AG, Volkswagen AG ...
...d for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unle...



– Position tank flap -1- on tank flap unit -2- -arrows a-.
– Push tank flap into catches of tank flap unit -arrow b-.

57 – Front doors, door components, central locking

1 Door

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - door”, page 100
⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing inner door seal”, page 102
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing outer door seal”, page 104
⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing door”, page 106
⇒ “1.5 Adjusting door”, page 109
⇒ “1.6 Adjusting striker pin”, page 112
⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing door arrester”, page 114

1.1 Assembly overview - door

Note

- *The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *After renewal of A-pillar, the specified torque for bolts -2 and 5- as well as for -14 and 17- changes.*

...s authorised by Volkswagen AG Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or a... ...with respect to the correctness of information...

1 - Rear door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 109

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- *After renewal of A-p... specified torque cha...*
- *Specified tightening ... renewal of A-pillar: 2*

3 - Door hinge

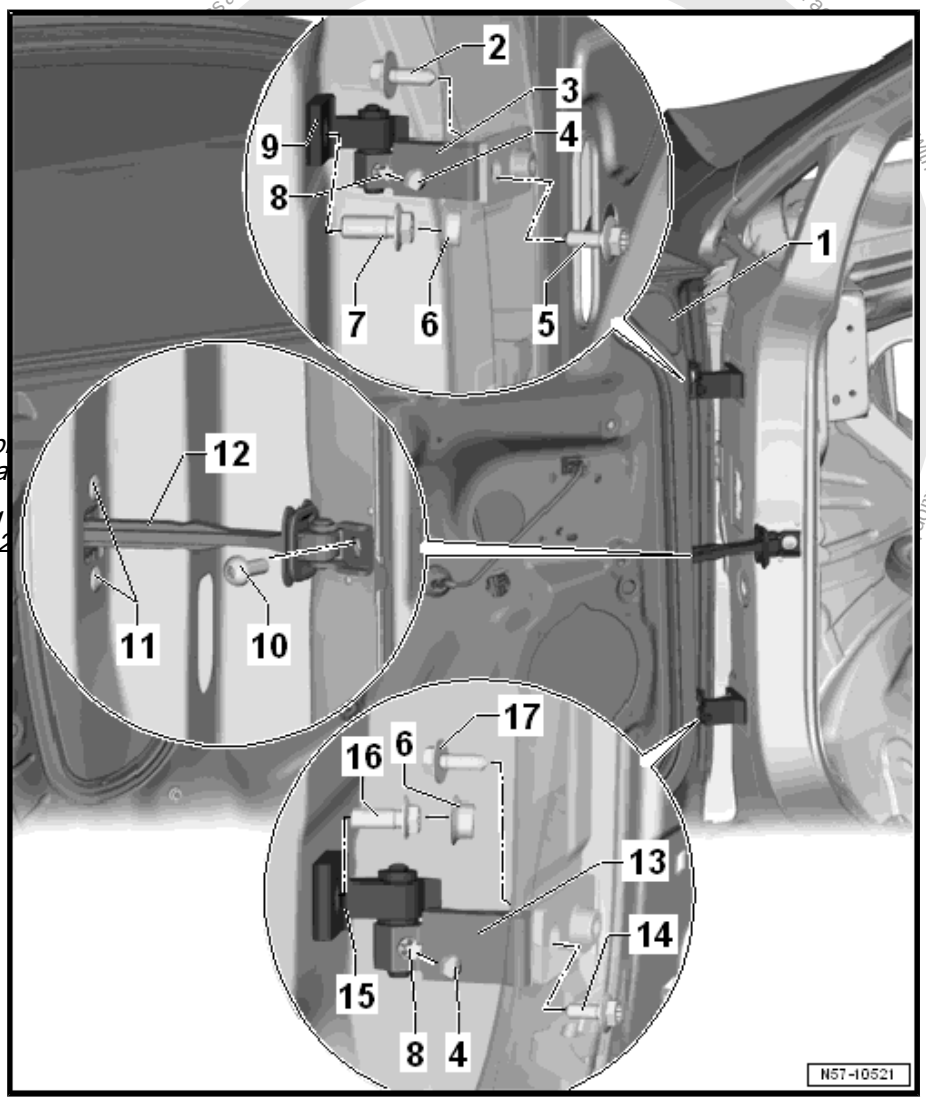
- ❑ Hinge is split into two. Upper and lower sections can be renewed individually if necessary.
- ❑ Lower part is secured to hinge upper part with bolt -8-.

4 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt -8-
- ❑ Not installed in all markets

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Installed from inside vehicle.



- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ For loosening and reattaching, dash panel is not removed
- ❑ To remove and install, the dash panel must be removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Dash panel; Removing and installing dash panel
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- ♦ *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- ♦ *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

6 - Cover

- ❑ For bolts -7- and -16-
- ❑ Not installed in all markets

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ 50 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Connects upper part of hinge -3- to bottom part of hinge -6-
- ❑ 23 Nm

9 - Door hinge

- ❑ Hinge is split into two. Upper and lower sections can be renewed individually if necessary.
- ❑ Upper part is secured to hinge lower part with bolt -5-.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

11 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Door arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

13 - Door hinge

- ❑ Hinge is split into two. Upper and lower sections can be renewed individually if necessary.
- ❑ Lower part is secured to hinge upper part with bolt -8-.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Installed from inside vehicle.
- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ For removal and installation, A-pillar lower trim must be removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing A-pillar gap cover
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- ♦ *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- ♦ *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm +90°*

15 - Door hinge

- ❑ Hinge is split into two. Upper and lower sections can be renewed individually if necessary.
- ❑ Upper part is secured to hinge lower part with bolt -16-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

16 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ 50 Nm

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm +90°*

1.2 Removing and installing inner door seal

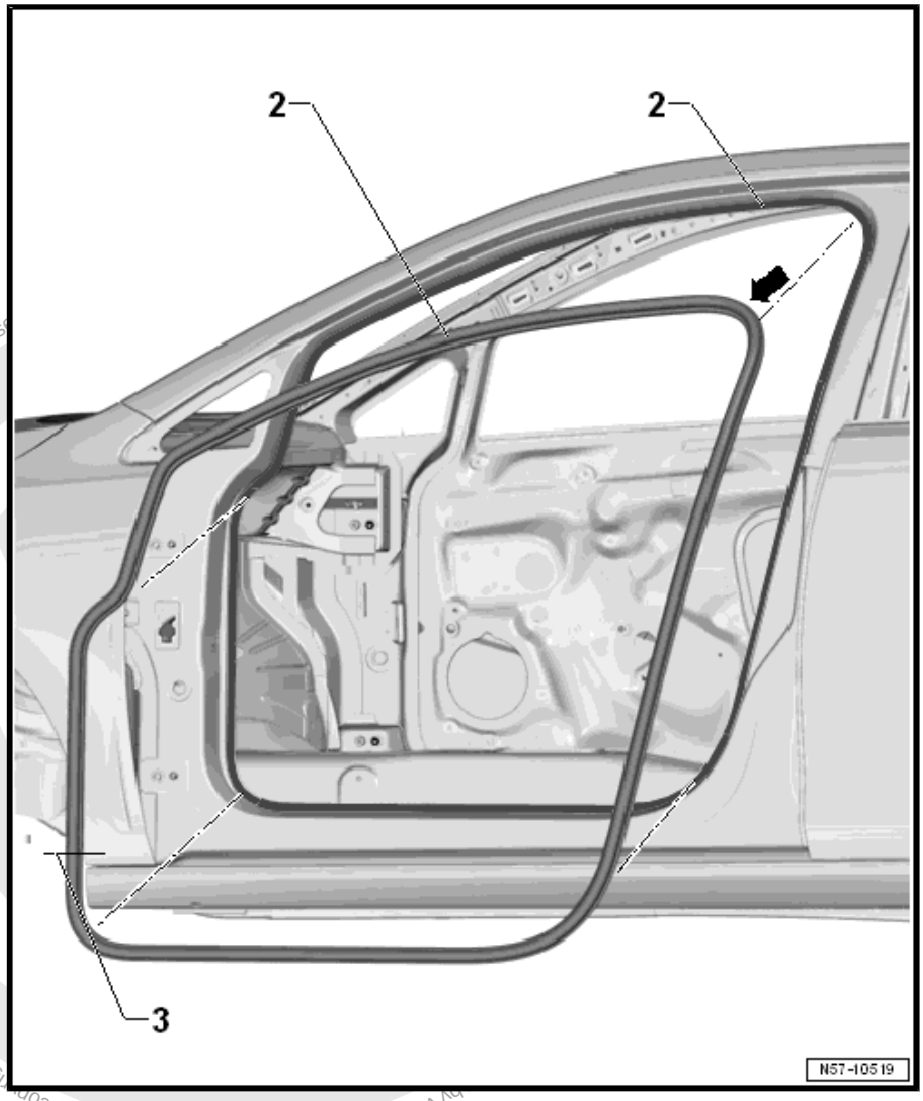
During production, a sealant is applied to the inner door seals, which are then placed on the door flange and rolled on.

Note

- *When removing the seal, the sealant is distributed across the inside of the seal. The sides are bent upwards slightly when this is being done. If the seal is then refitted, sealing and firm seating are no longer guaranteed.*
- *Therefore, each seal that is completely removed must be renewed with a so-called “tap-on seal”.*
- *If a seal has been partially removed, squeeze sides of seal together before installing.*
- *Removal and installation are described only for the left door inner seal. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *For reasons of clarity, the front door is shown in removed state.*

Removing

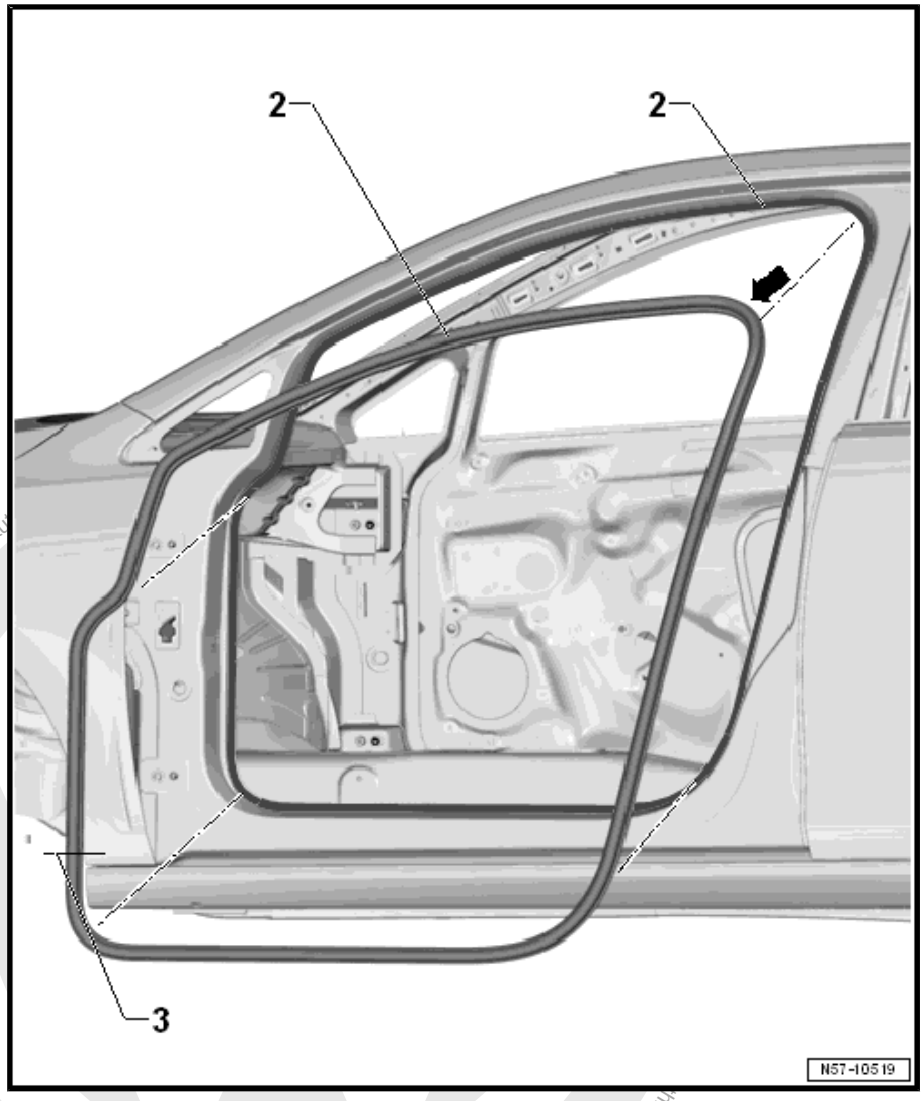
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing sill panel trim .
– To remove inner door seal, remove pillar trims as required ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Overview of fitting locations – trims, interior .
– Pull door inner seal -1- off body flange -2-.

Installing



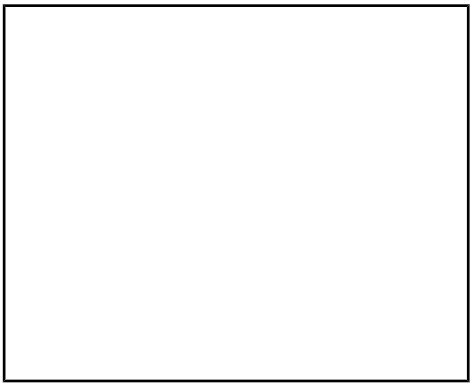
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Start installing door inner seal -1- at top radius of door aperture -arrow b-.
– Align vulcanised point -3- above lower hinge.
– Install pillar trims ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior .
– Install sill panel strip ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing sill panel strip .

1.3 Removing and installing outer door seal

Special tools and workshop equipment required

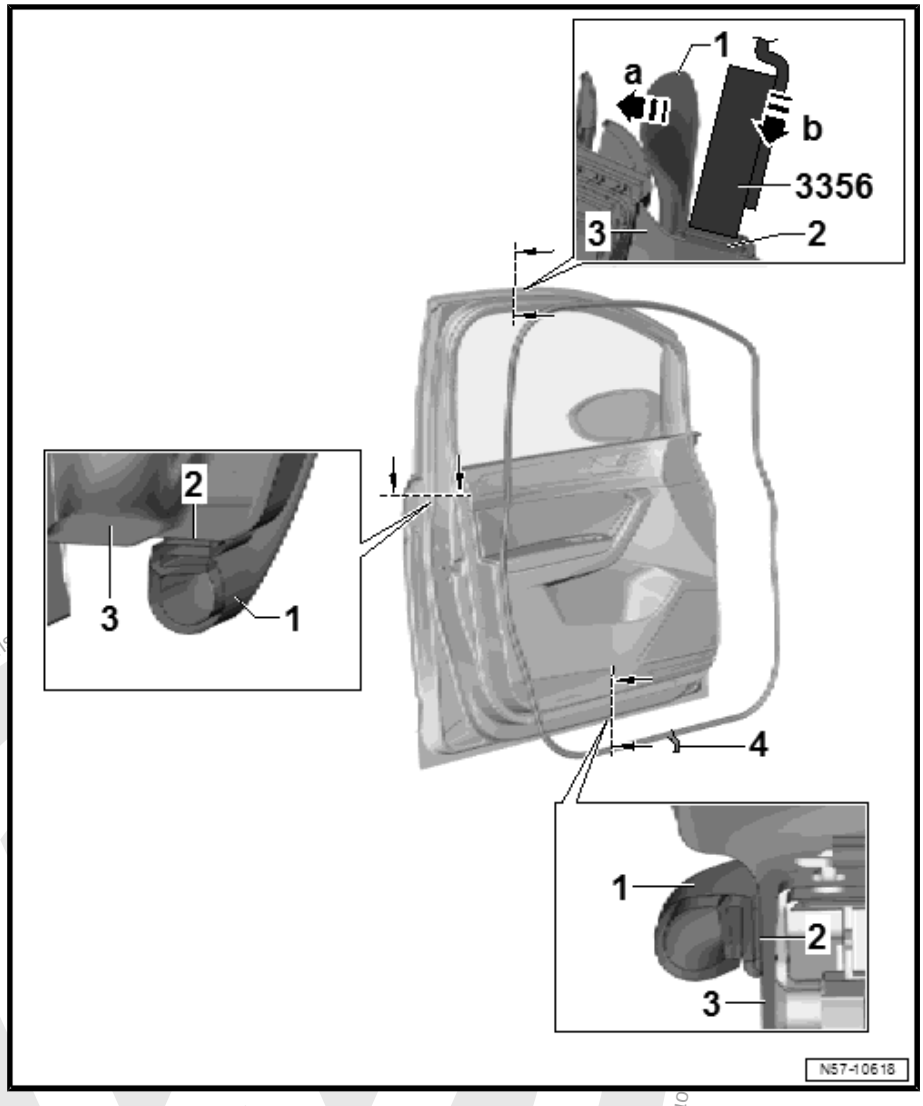
- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



Fitting instructions

- Only use adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- to remove adhesive residue.
- Remove existing adhesive residue of adhesive tape using adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The inner door seals must be bonded in place immediately after cleaning.
- Remove backing only immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.
- The bonded inner door seals cannot be removed without damage.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Pull door seal -1- off door -3-.

Installing

– Follow installation instructions ⇒ page 105 .

– Align door seal -1- to door -3- with vulcanised point downwards.

– Pull off backing -4- from adhesive tape -2- in increments.

– After lightly pressing on seal all around, roll it on firmly using roller - 3356- -arrow b-.

– Fold down round profile -arrow a- when doing this so that pressure -arrow b- of roller is exerted directly on adhesive tape -2-.

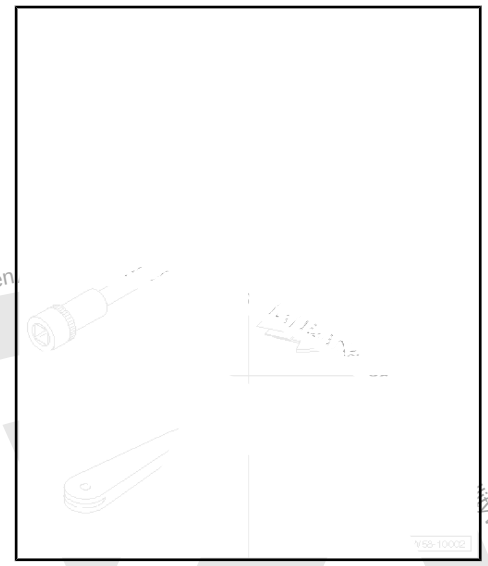
1.4 Removing and installing door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Key (for door alignment) - 3320-
- Universal joint for 3320 - 3320/1-
- Bit for 3320 - 3320/2-

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Bit for 3320 - 3320/3-
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-
- Setting gauge - 3371-
- Removal wedge - 3409-



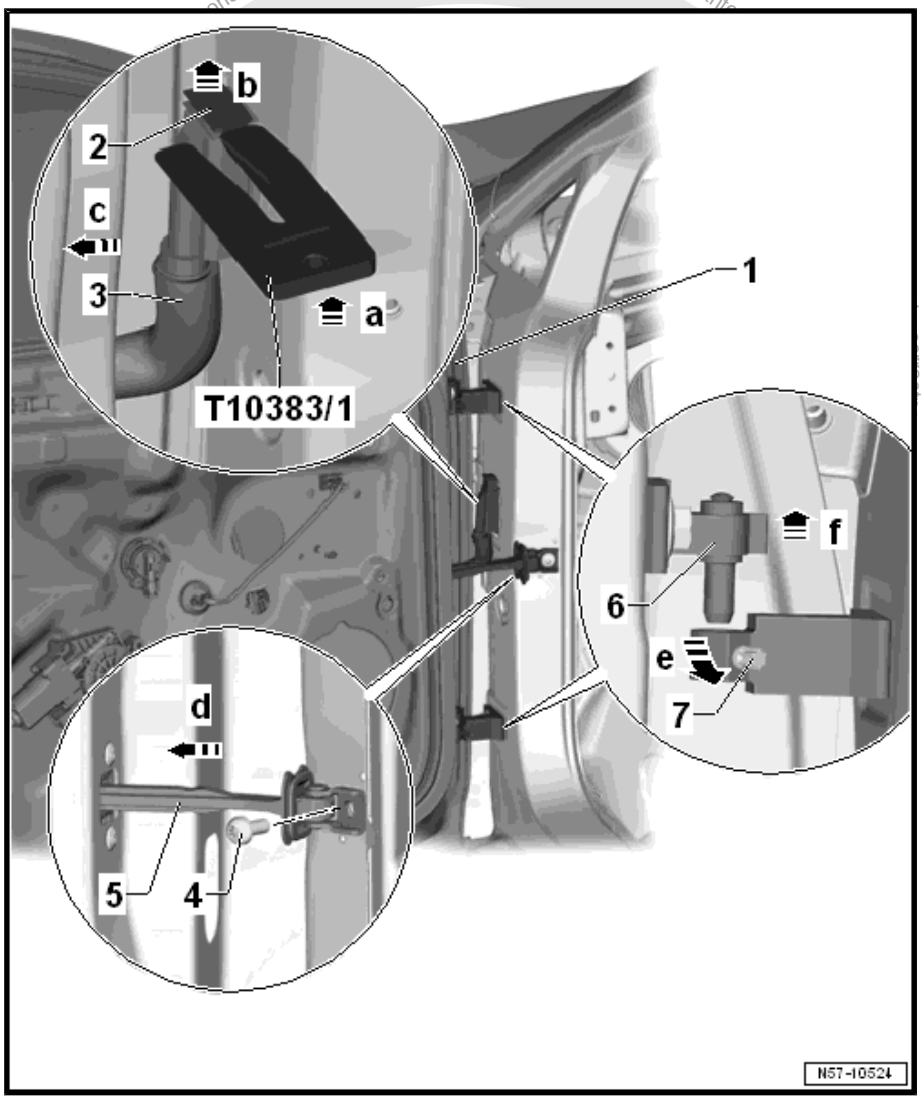
Note

The removal and installation sequence is for the rear left door.
Removal and installation of the rear right door are similar.

Removing

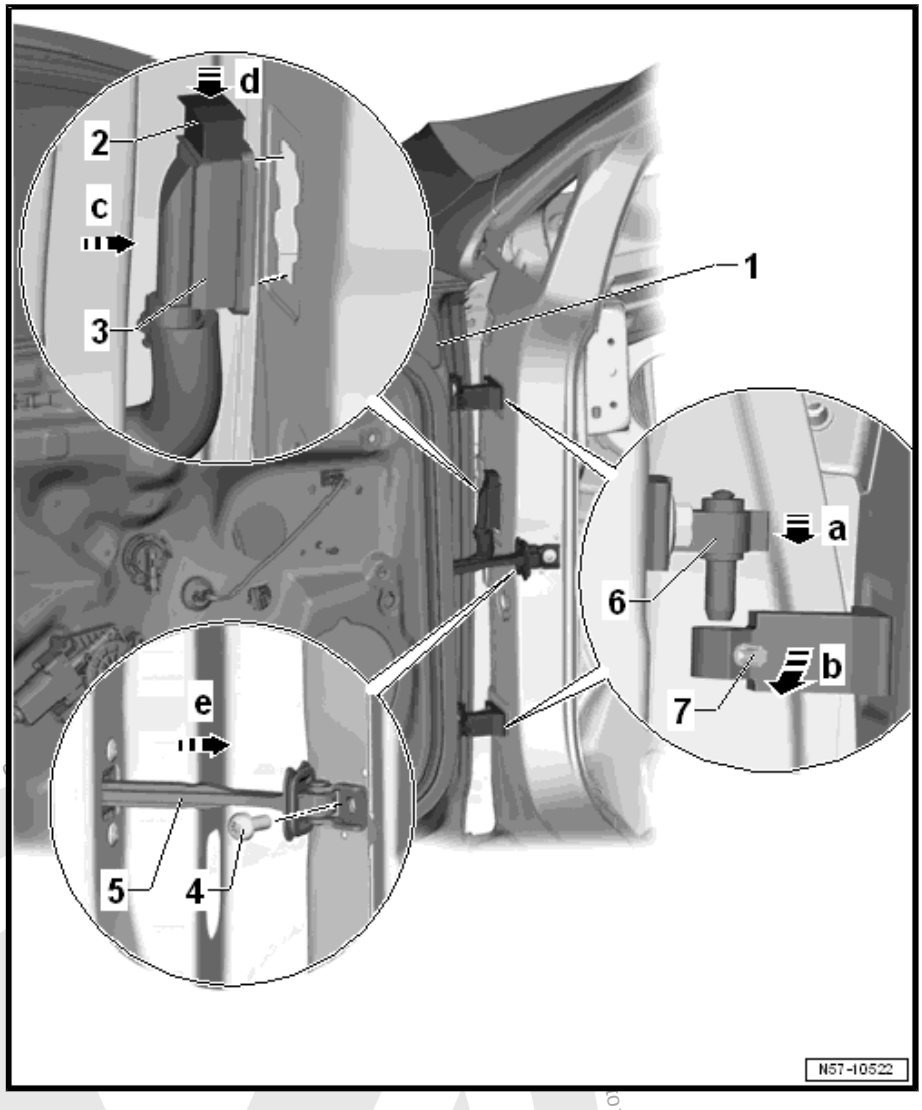
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We assume no liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarant



– Disconnect battery earth cable with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Connecting and disconnecting battery .
– Press wedge - T10383/1- between bellows -3- and locking element -arrow a-.
– Push locking element upwards -2- with wedge - T10383/1- -arrow b- and separate electrical connector -3- from coupling station -arrow c-.
– Undo screws -7- from hinges.
– Unscrew bolt -4- for door retaining strap -5-.
– Push door retaining strap -5- inwards -arrow d-.
– Lift front door -1- upwards -arrow f- so that hinge -6- is released from hinges -7-.

Installing



Installation is carried out in the reverse sequence of removal. To this end, the following should be observed:

– Prior to installing the front door, the door retaining strap must be folded towards the inside of the vehicle in order to avoid damage to the paintwork.

Note

After door installation the hinge arms must be flush one above the other.

– Adjust front door -1- ⇒ page 109 .

– Observe front door shut lines -1- ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - middle .

Specified torques

Door arrester and hinges ⇒ page 100 .

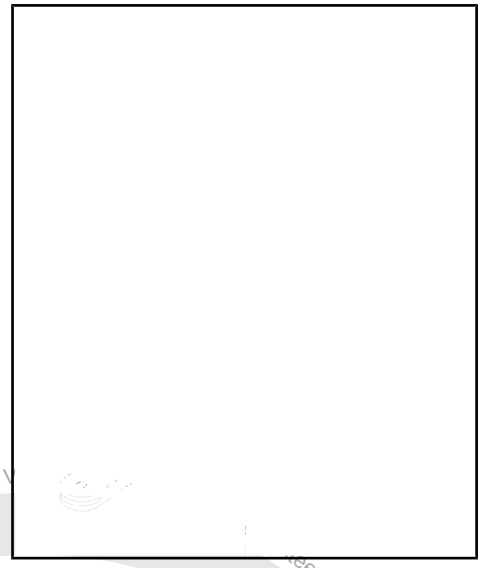
1.5 Adjusting door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Key (for door alignment) - 3320-
- Universal joint for 3320 - 3320/1-

Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

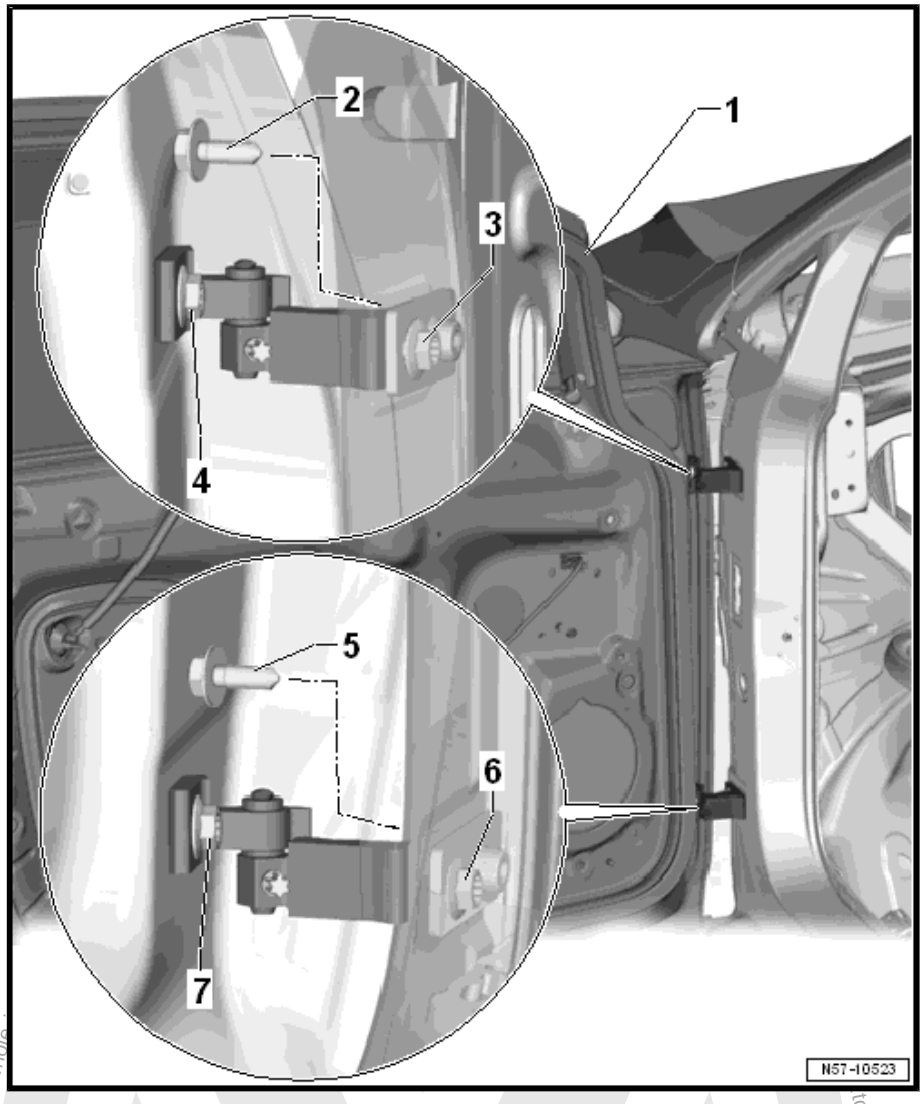
- Bit for 3320 - 3320/2-
- Bit for 3320 - 3320/3-
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-
- Setting gauge - 3371-
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Note

- *Only the adjustment for the left front door is described. The adjustment of the right front door is similar.*
- *Vehicle must be standing on its wheels when front door adjustment is performed.*
- *The front door is correctly adjusted when all shut lines are even when closed. it is not protruding too far inwards or outwards, and when the contours are flush with each other.*
- *Dimensions for checking gaps/shut lines ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - middle .*
- *After installing or alignment, carry out corrosion protection measures on hinges and screws/bolts.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Adjusting shut lines

To be able to adjust shut lines correctly, bolts -2-, -3-, -5- and -6- in A-pillar must be loosened.

– In order to gain access to bolt -3- on driver side, detach fuse box, and lower it ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse holders, E-boxes; Removing and installing relay and fuse holder behind dash panel on driver side .

– For bolt -3-, glove compartment on front passenger side must be removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Compartments/covers; Removing and installing glove compartment .

– For loosening bolt -6-, lower A-pillar trim must be removed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing A-pillar gap cover .

Adjusting for flush fitting

In order to adjust flushness correctly, bolts -4- and -5- must be loosened.

Use door alignment tool - 3320- with appropriate bit for this.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

Other measures, such as raising the front door, will prove pointless. Subsequent pressure from above will cause the door to sink again at the front.

Adjusting striker pin ⇒ page 112 .

Note

After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes ⇒ page 100 .

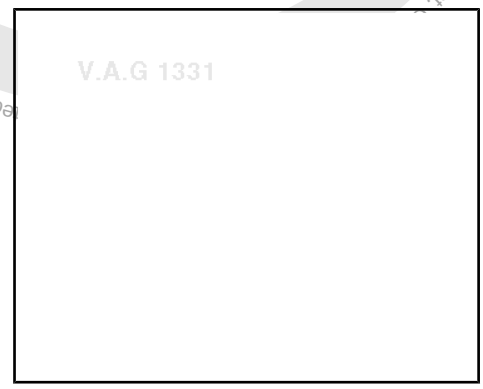
Specified torques

Hinges ⇒ page 100

1.6 Adjusting striker pin

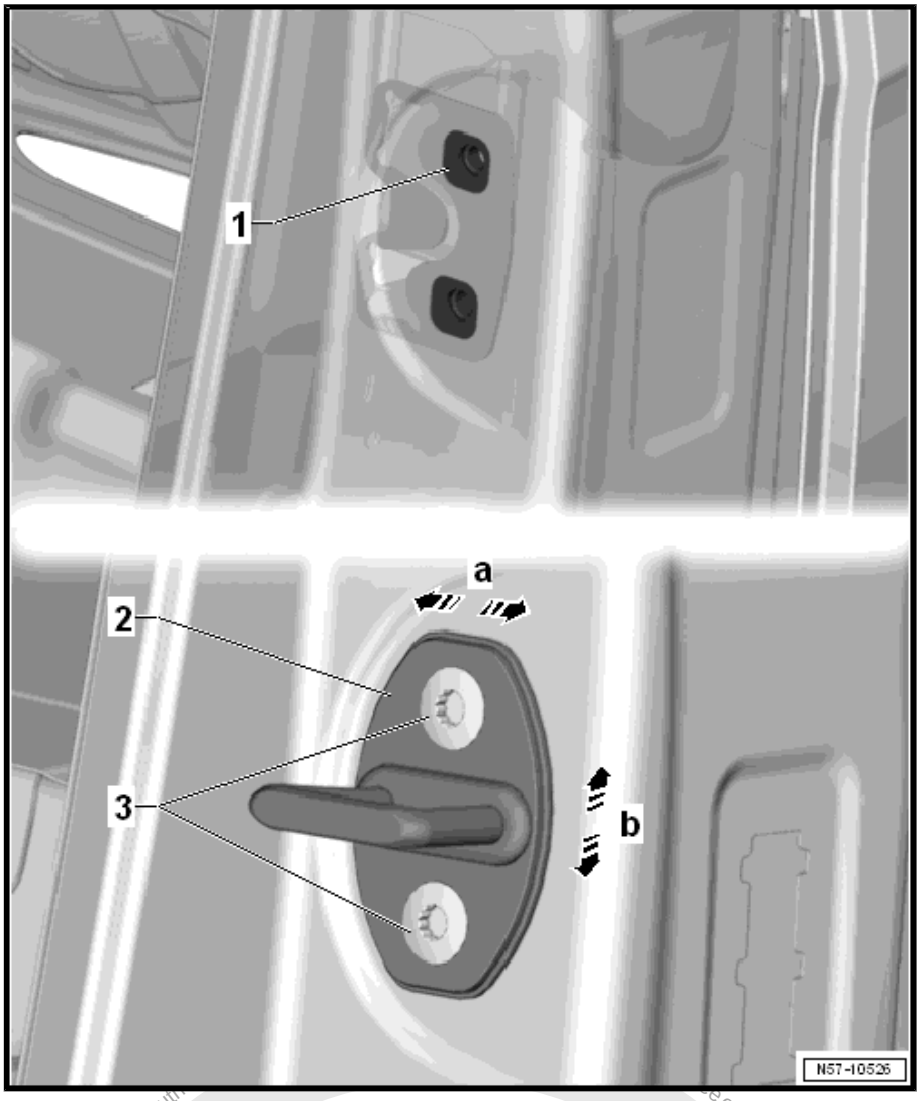
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

- *Threaded plate -1- of striker pin is secured in pillar using a method which differs from the previous method.*
- *Bow outside of threaded plate is welded firmly to pillar. Webs to threaded plate are plastically deformable.*
- *Greater forced has to be applied so that position of striker pin -2- can be adjusted when bolts -3- are loosened.*



Note

- *Only the adjustment for the left front door is described. The adjustment of the right front door is similar.*
- *The front door must lock fully when closing without any additional force being required and must not have any play.*
- *The front door must not be pushed up or down as a result of the striker pin adjustment.*

By adjusting the striker pin the alignment of the front door with the side panel or the rear door can be adjusted -arrow a- and -arrow b- (wind noise).

– Loosen striker pin -2- by loosening bolts -3- in B-pillar.

Note

Greater forced has to be applied so that position of striker pin -2- can be adjusted when bolts -3- are loosened.

– Tighten bolts -3- of striker pin -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part in whole, is not permitted unless authorized. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

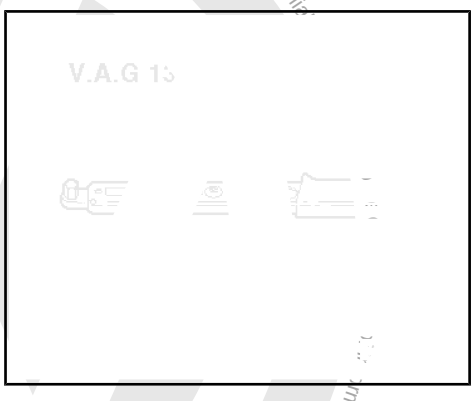
Specified torques

Component	Specified torques
Striker	20 Nm

1.7 Removing and installing door arrester

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

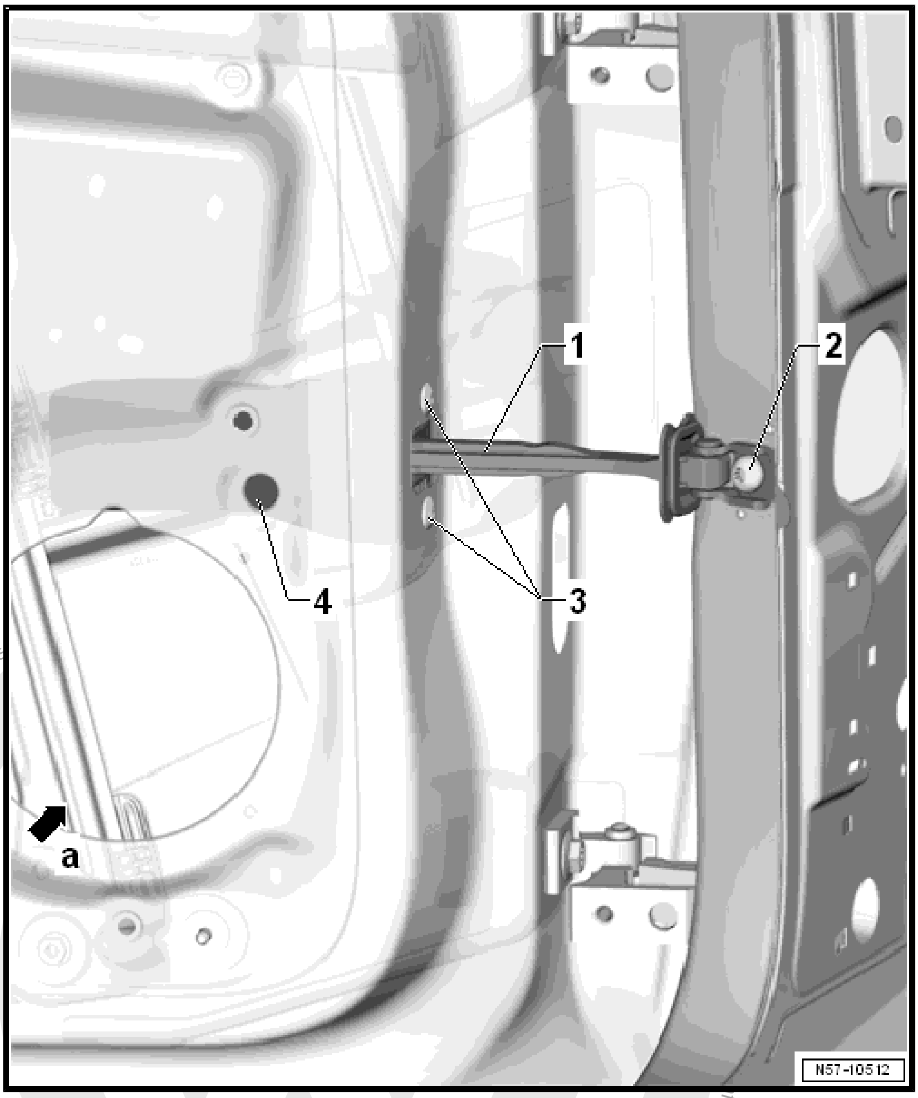


Note

The description of removal and installation only applies to the left wing. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

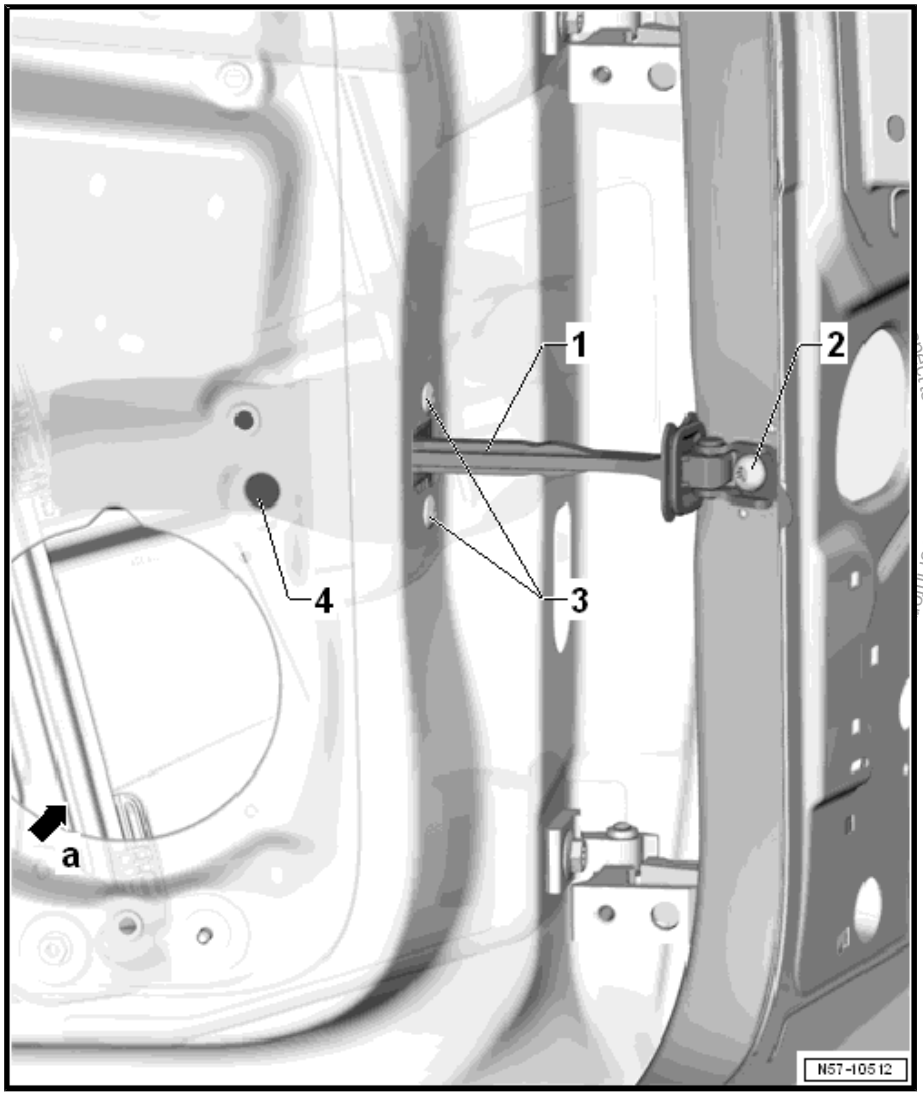
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorized use, duplication or publication by private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.



- Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
- Remove self-adhesive cover or front loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Unscrew bolt -2- in A-pillar.
- Unscrew bolts -3- and remove door arrester -1- through the opening of the loudspeaker -arrow a-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installation is carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Specified torques

Door arrester ⇒ page 100

2 Door components

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - door components”, page 117

⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator”, page 119

⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 120

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 121

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 123

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover”, page 126

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing striker pin”, page 128

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle”, page 130

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 135

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing door handle”, page 139

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing door handle bracket”, page 143

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing door lock”, page 145

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing window channel”, page 150

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing outer window slot seal”, page 153

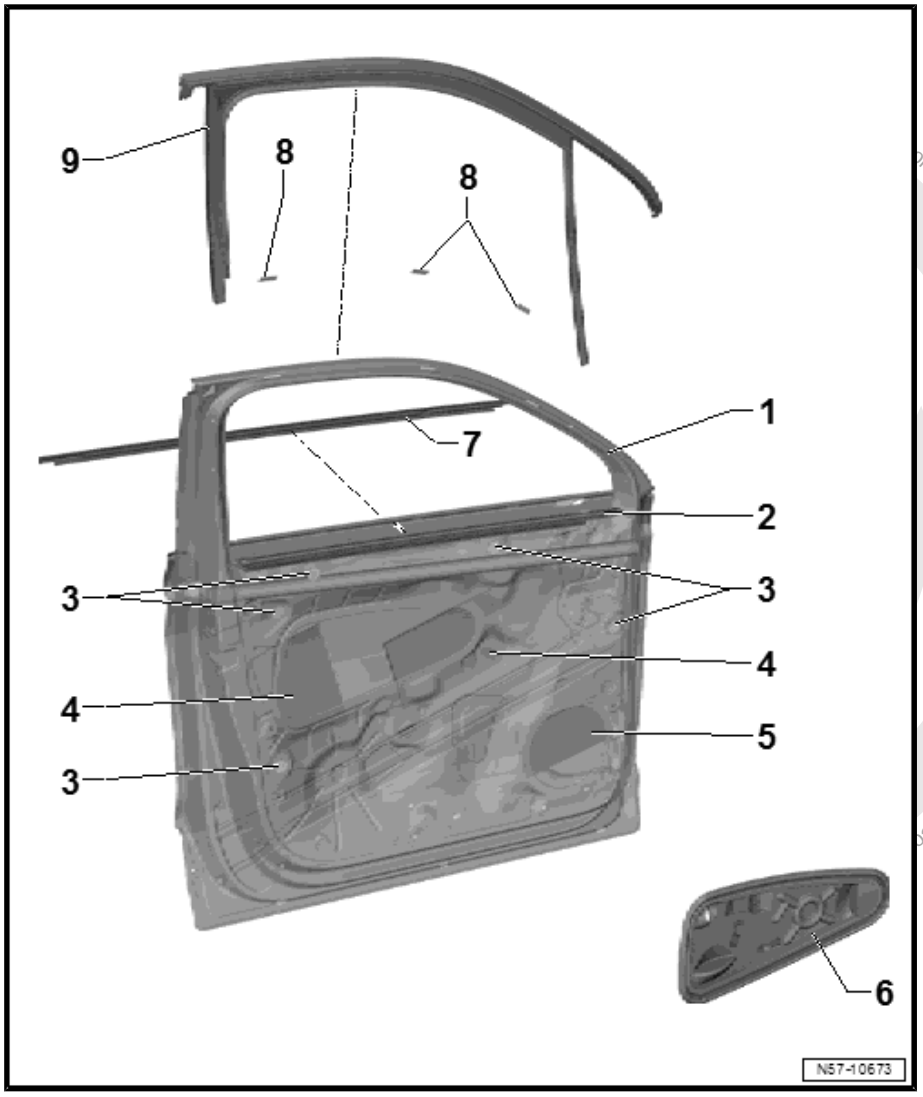
⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing inner window slot seal”, page 155

2.1 Assembly overview - door components

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Rear door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 109

2 - Inner window slot seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

3 - Stickers

- ❑ Diameter 32 and 40 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.
- ❑ Stickers must cover the openings completely

4 - Dampers

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:
  - – Cut to size if required, 250 mm x 160 mm Position as shown in illustration.
  - – Warm using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- and push on to outer door panel with force.

5 - Dampers

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:
  - – Cut to size if required, 200 mm x 100 mm Position as shown in illustration. Distance to next insulation 10 mm.
  - – Warm using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- and push on to outer door panel with force.

6 - Inner door cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 126

7 - Outer window slot seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 153

8 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 15 mm x 50 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.
- ❑ Stickers must cover the openings completely

9 - Window channel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C

2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not... whole or in part is not permitted unless authorized. ... for commercial purposes, in part ... Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

2 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Window regulator motor - V14/V15-

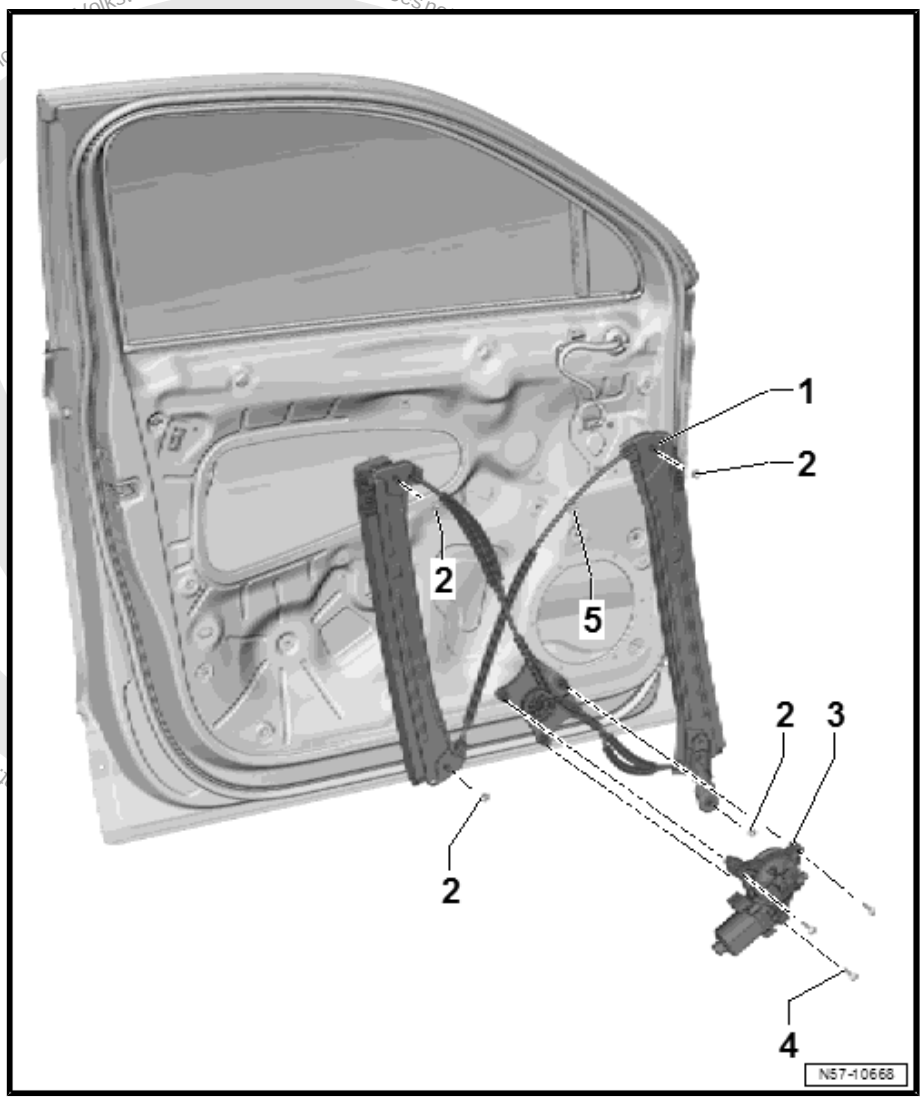
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Clip

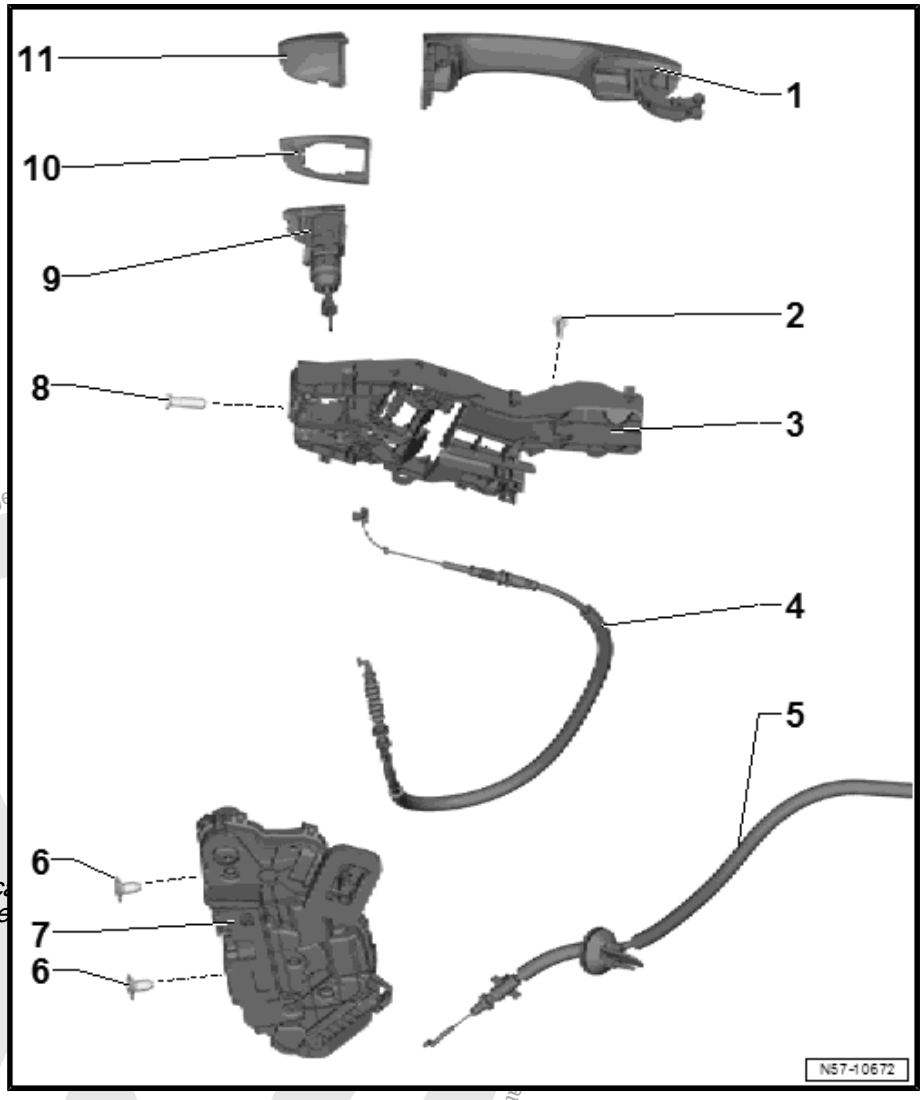
- ❑ For securing cable



2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.



1 - Door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 139

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Bearing plate is loosened from door when this bolt is loosened

3 - Bearing bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

4 - Bowden cable

- ❑ From door lock -1- to door handle bracket -3-

5 - Bowden cable

- ❑ From inner door handle to door lock -1-
- ❑ With grommet to passage on cover.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 18 Nm

Note

The bolts are microenca and must be renewed e they are unscrewed.

7 - Door lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ For lock cylinder.

9 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 135
- ❑ Only installed on driver door.

10 - Carrier

11 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



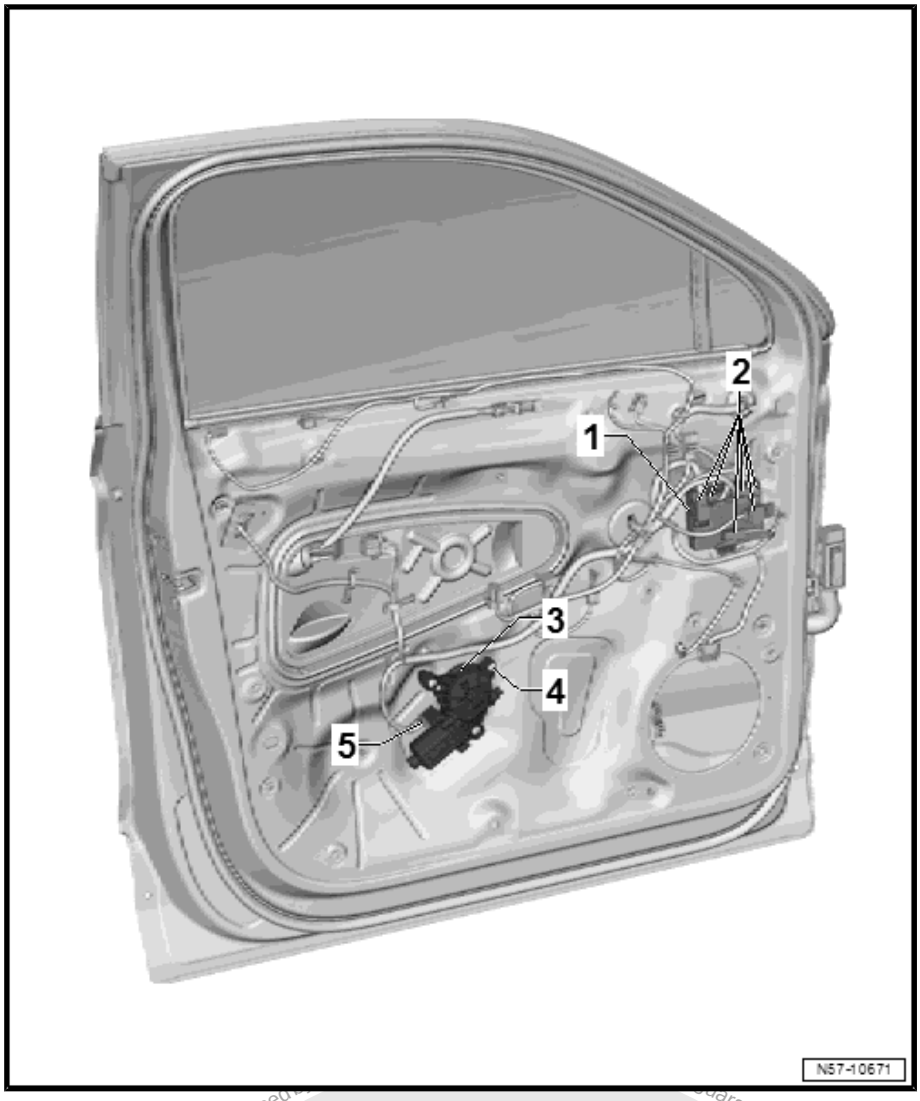
-

Note

- *Removal and installation are described only for the left motor. Removal and installation of the right motor are similar.*
- *The door control unit - J386/J387- -5- is separated from window regulator motor - V14/V15- -1-.*
- *The door control unit - J386/J387- is clipped into door.*

Removing

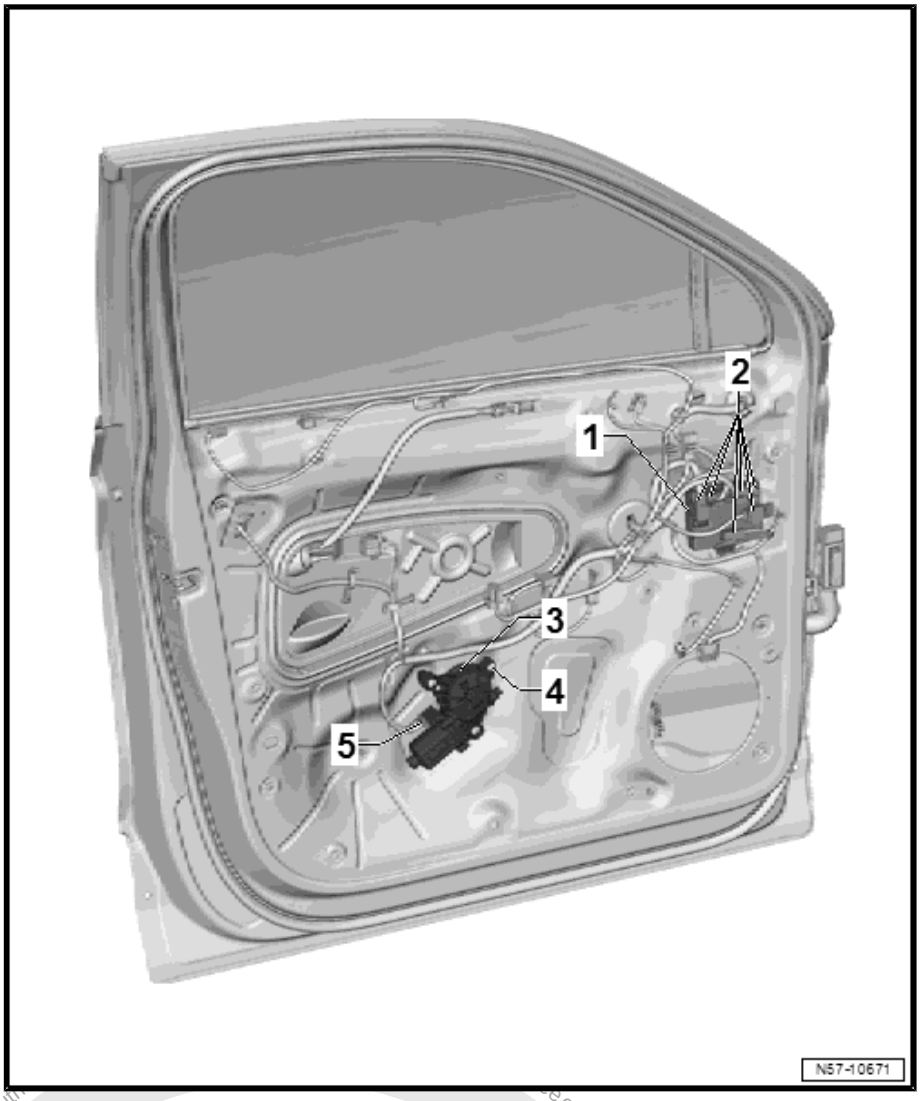
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks
antee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
– Tape up door window to prevent it from sliding down.
– Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers. Withdraw ignition key.
– Disconnect connector -5-.
– Remove bolts -4- (qty. 3).
– Remove window regulator motor -3- from mounting brackets of cable drum.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Position window regulator motor -3- on mounting brackets of cable drum. Move door window up and down slightly so that the splines between window regulator motor and cable drum engage more easily.
– Tighten bolts -4-.
– Connect connector -5-.
– A new control unit -1- must be coded using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
– The work procedure and notes on the automatic window raising and lowering system as well as on the excess-force limitation feature can be found in ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Specified torques

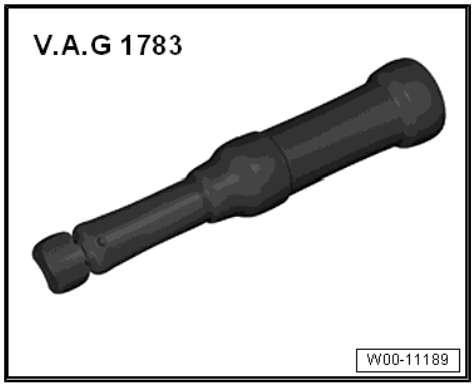
♦ Bolts
⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator”, page 119

2.5 Removing and installing window regulator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

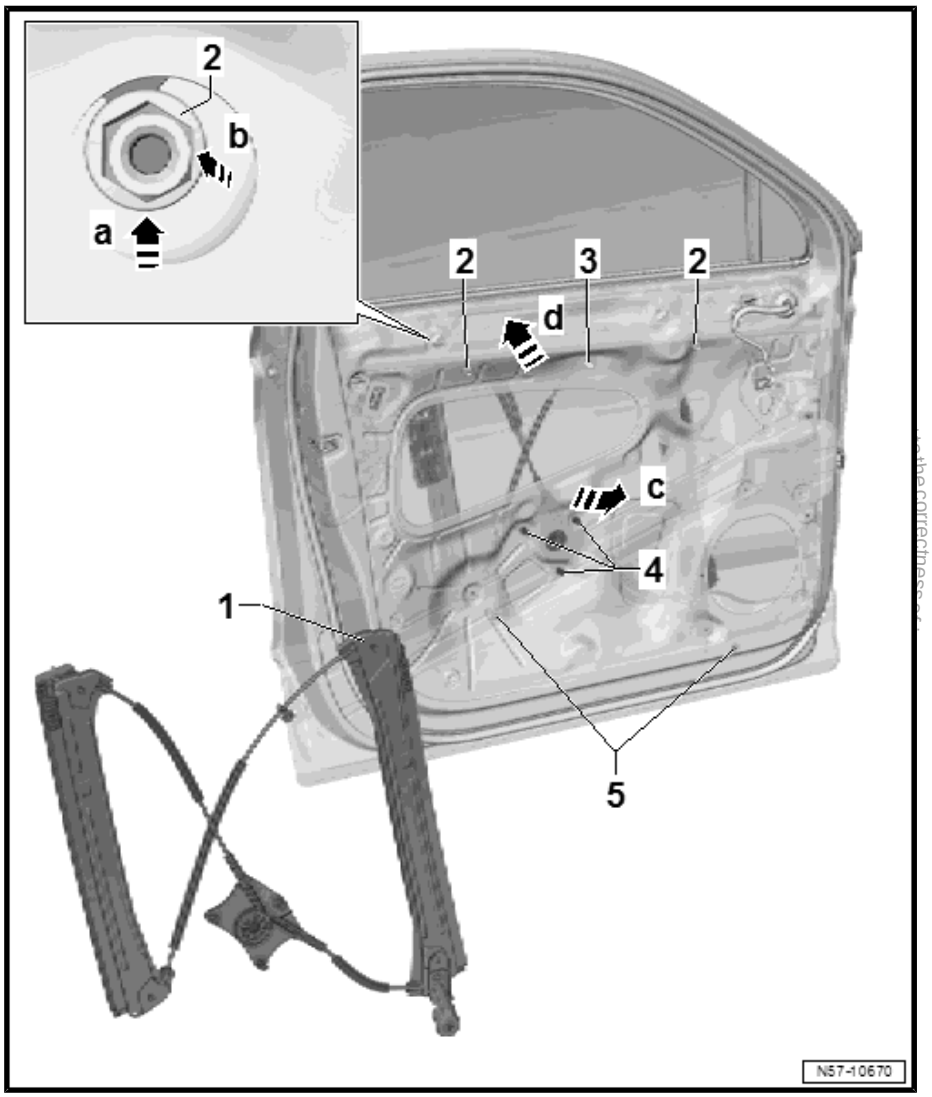
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

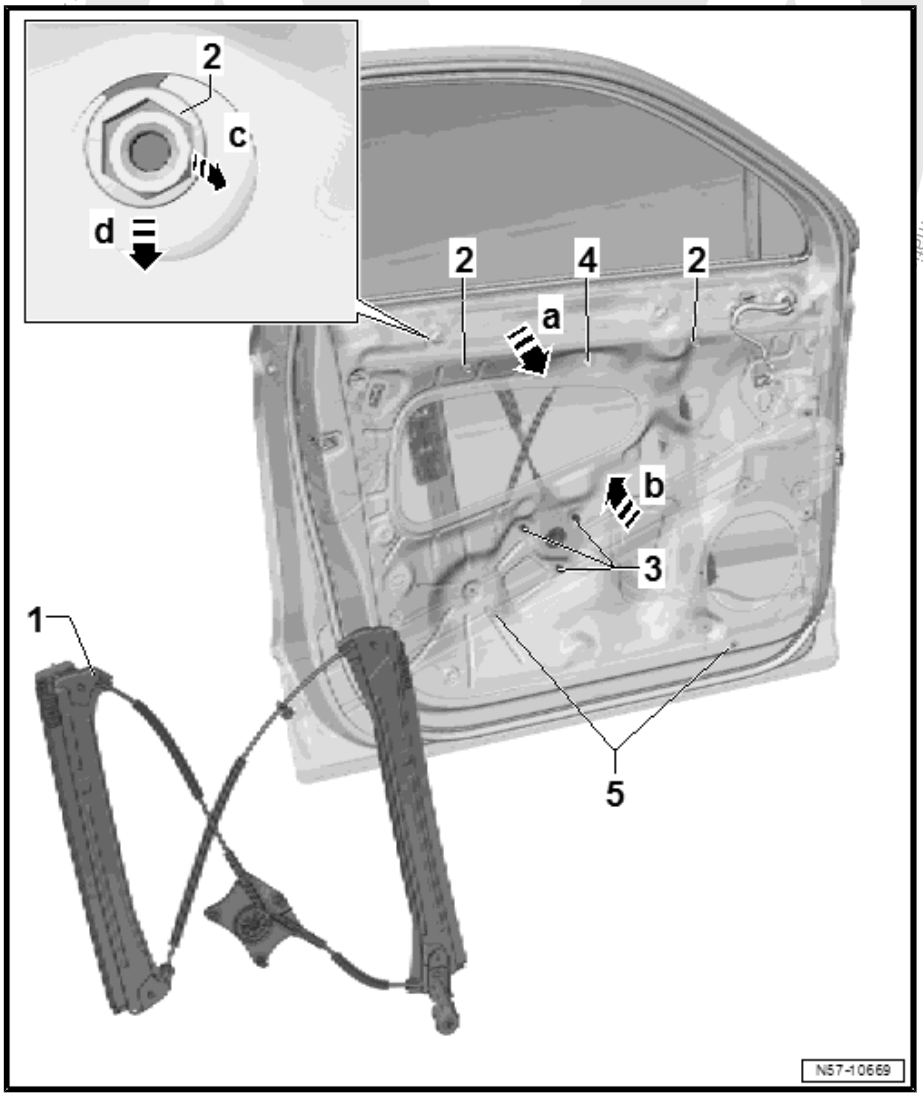
Removal and installation are described only for the left window regulator. Removal and installation of the right window lifter mechanism are similar.

Removing



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 121 .
– Remove door window ⇒ page 329 .
– Release locking hook of cable drum -4- and insert into door.
– Unscrew hexagon nuts -5- and insert threaded studs of window regulator into door.
– Loosen hexagon nuts -2-, do not remove.
– Loosen clip -3- and push inwards.
– Push window regulator upwards slightly -arrow a- and press into door with hexagon nuts -arrow b-.
– Push window regulator in door downwards and forwards slightly -arrow c-.
– Guide window regulator -1- through opening in door -arrow d- to remove.

Installing



in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

– Insert window regulator -1- through opening in door -arrow a- and move to mounting position -arrow b-.
– Insert studs of window regulator through door inner panel -arrow c- and guide downwards -arrow d-.
– Tighten hexagon nuts -2 and 5-.
– Press cable drum against door inner part until locking devices -4- engage audibly.
– Attach clip -4- to door.
– Install window regulator motor ⇒ page 121
– Install door window ⇒ page 329

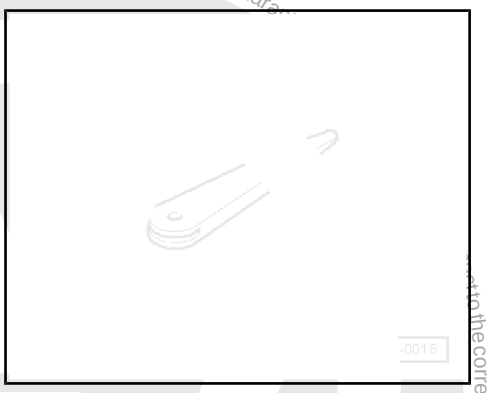
Specified torques

♦ Hexagon nuts
⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator”, page 119

2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

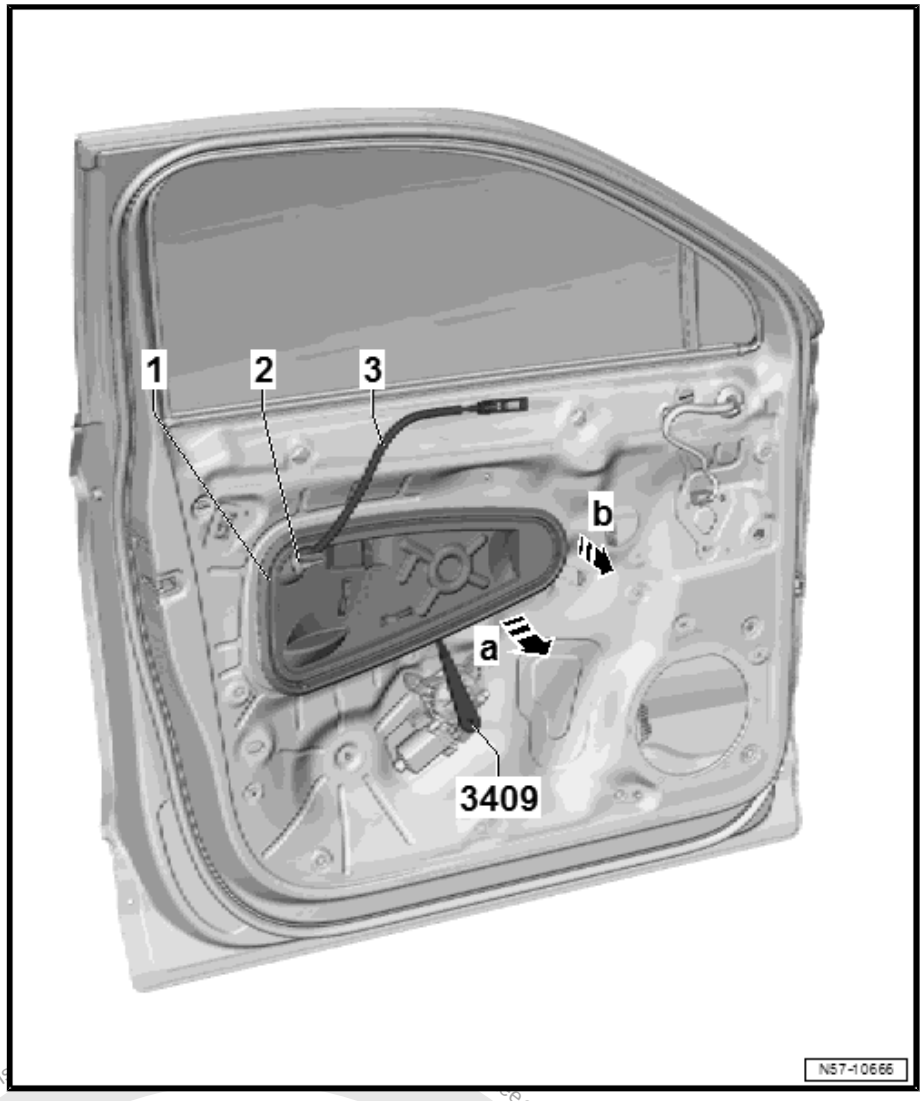


Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left cover. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



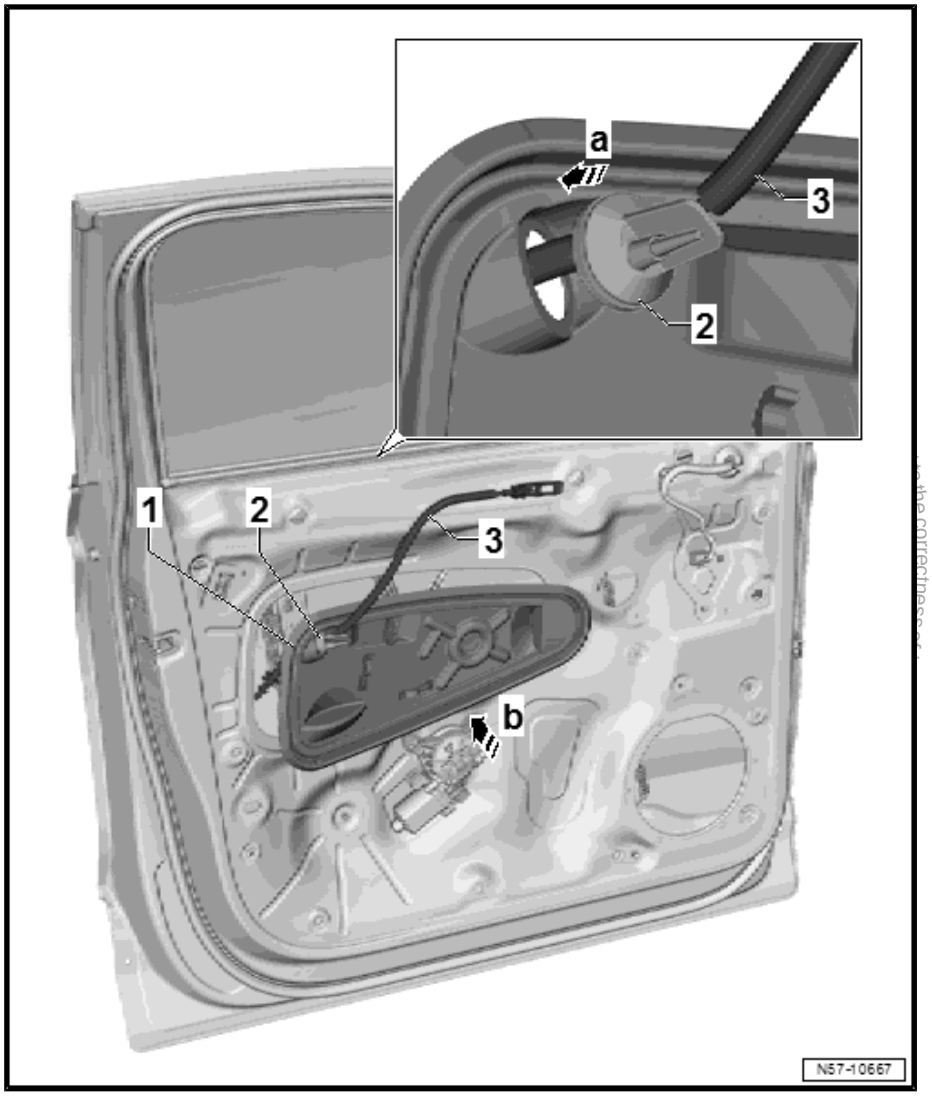
– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
– Lift lower end of cover -1- -arrow a-.
– Pull cover -1- out of door -arrow b-.

Note

If required for subsequent work, pull cable -3- with grommet -2- out of cover -1-. Separate connector at grommet (if there is one).

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Guide cable -3- with grommet -2- in cover -1- -arrow a-.
– Attach grommet -2- to cover -1-.
– Insert cover -1- in door -arrow b-.
– Engage cover -1- around circumference.

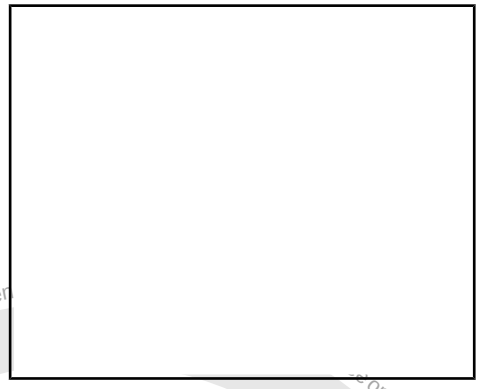
Note

- *Check proper seating of cover by pressing with fingers around circumference.*
- *If fitted, join electrical connector at grommet.*

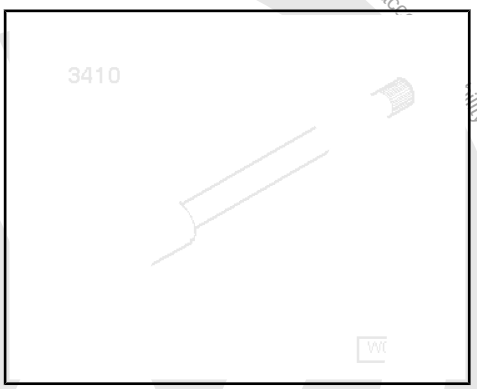
2.7 Removing and installing striker pin

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



♦ Multipoint extended bit - 3410-

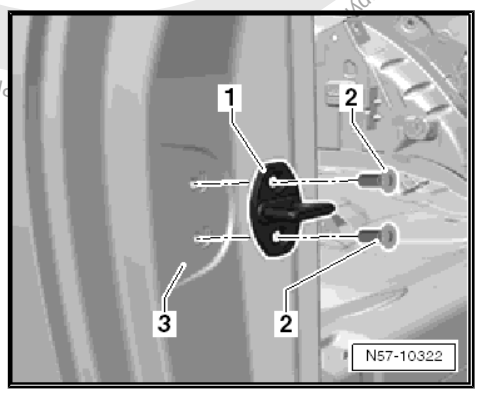


Note

Removal and installation are described only for the right door striker pin. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

– Remove bolts -2- and remove striker -1-.



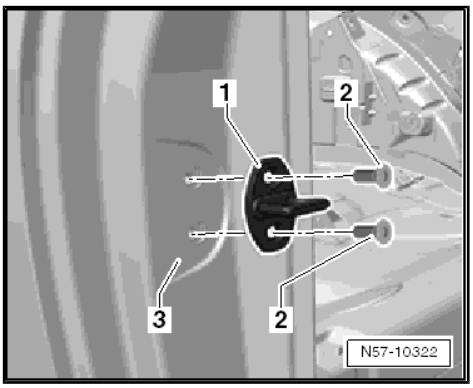
Installing

Note

A bent striker pin (square U-shape) must be installed.

– Position striker pin -1- on B-pillar -3- with the U-shape facing inwards. Tighten bolts -2-.

– Adjust striker pin ⇒ page 112 .



Specified torques

Component	Specified torques
Striker	20 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Copyright with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

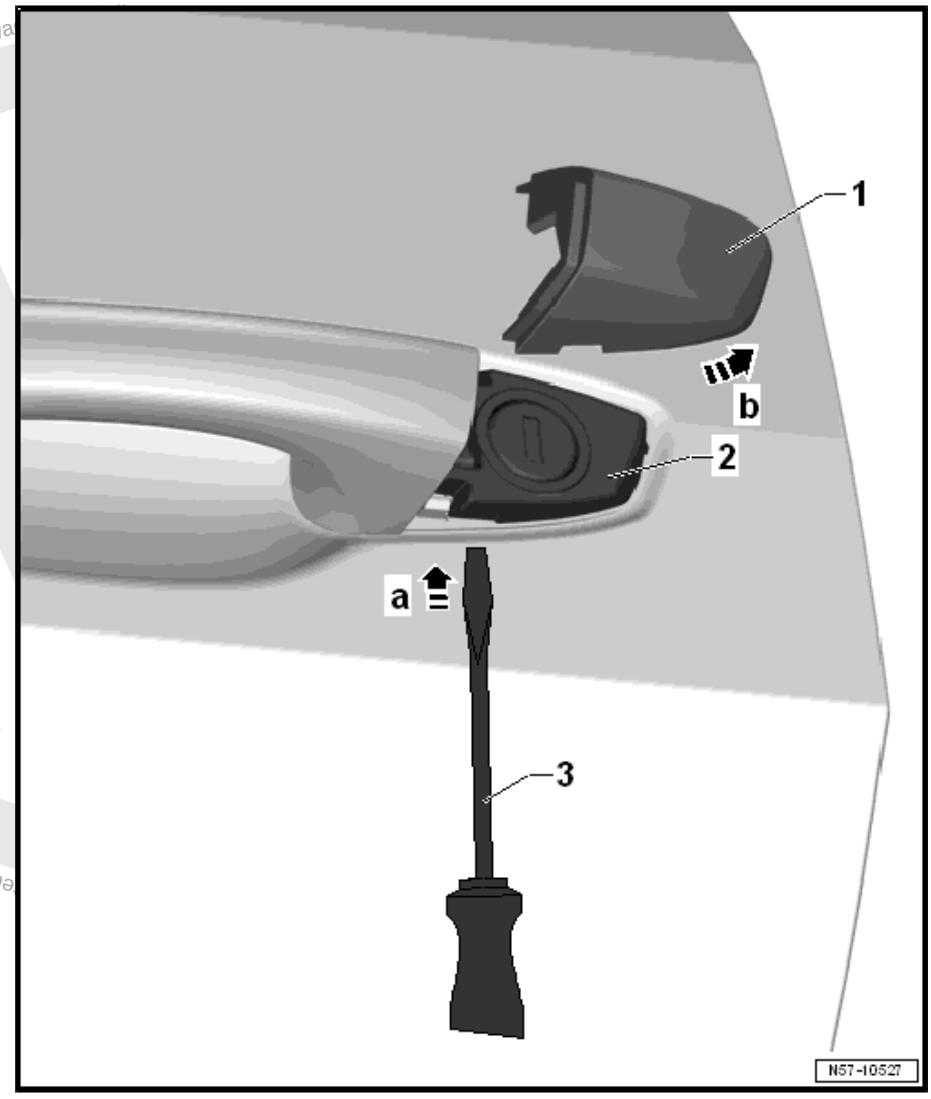
2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle

2.8.1 Removing and installing cap for door handle, with lock cylinder

Note

- *When removing lock cylinder cover cap, the screwdriver should not be turned and the screwdriver should not be used as a lever.*
- *The lock cylinder and cover cap for lock cylinder are only installed on the driver side.*

Removing

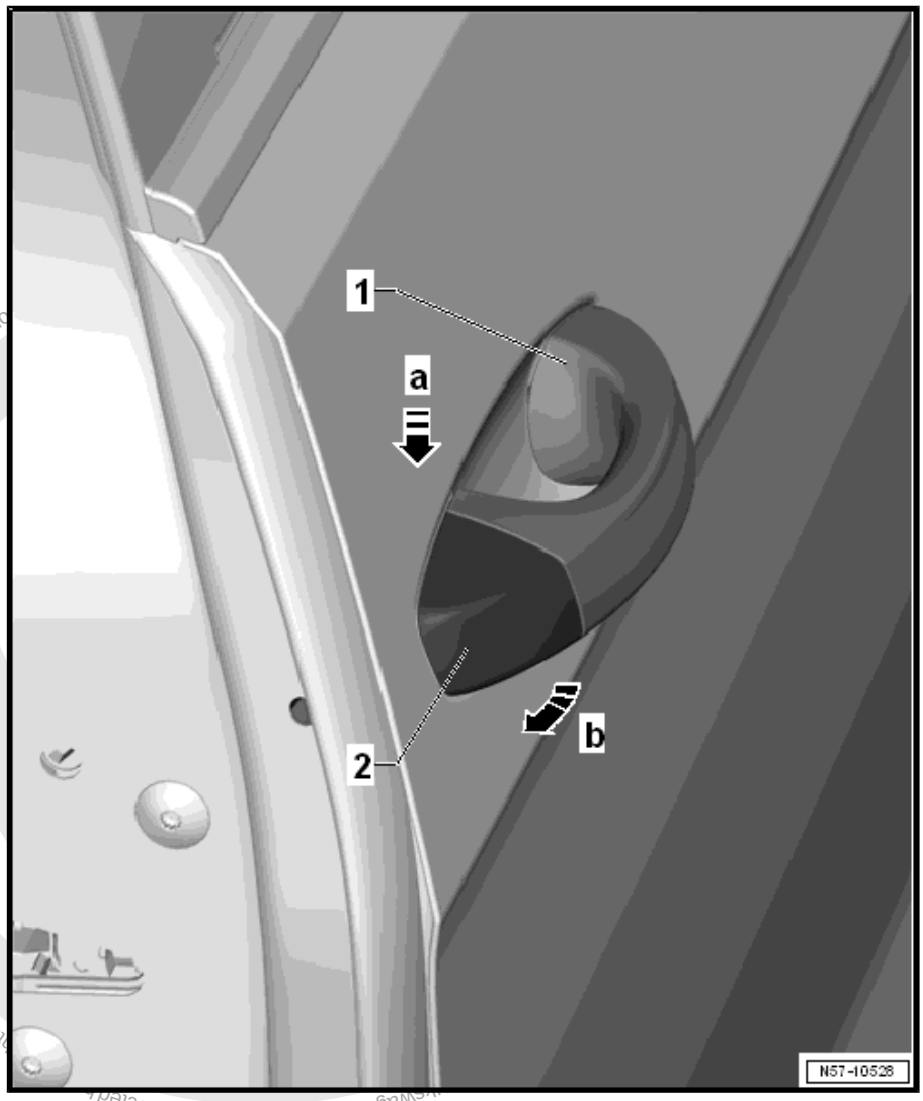


ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswa

– Pull door handle away from door.
– Push a small screwdriver -3- slightly -arrow a- into opening on underside of lock cylinder cover cap.

– Pull lock cylinder housing cover cap -1-, together with small screwdriver, slightly away from door from underside -arrow b-.
– Push cap upwards off lock cylinder.

Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

– Pull door handle -1- away from door.
– Push lock cylinder cover cap -2- at a slight angle from above -arrow a- onto lock cylinder.
– Push lock cylinder cover cap -2- onto door -arrow b- until cover cap engages in lock cylinder.

2.8.2 Removing and installing cap for door handle, without lock cylinder

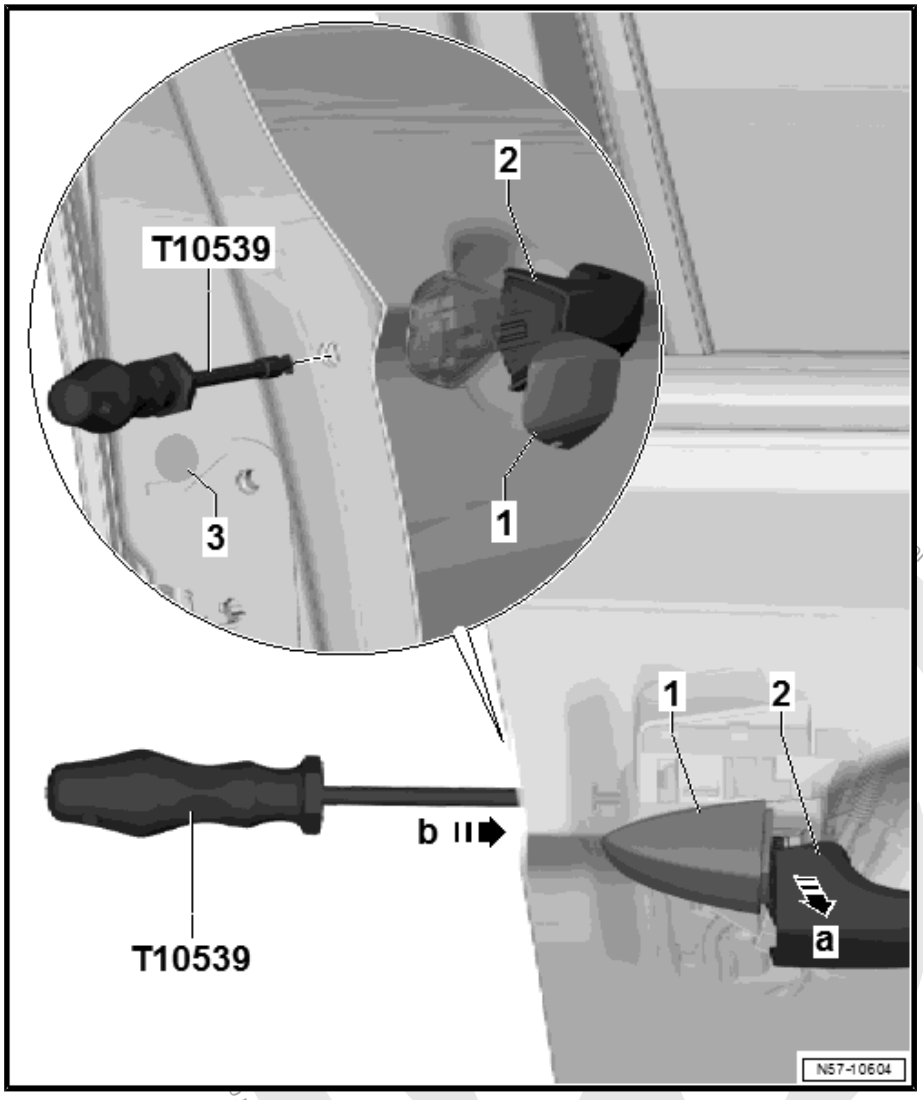
Note

The cover cap is installed when no lock cylinder is fitted.

Removing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Disassembly and assembly tool - T10539-



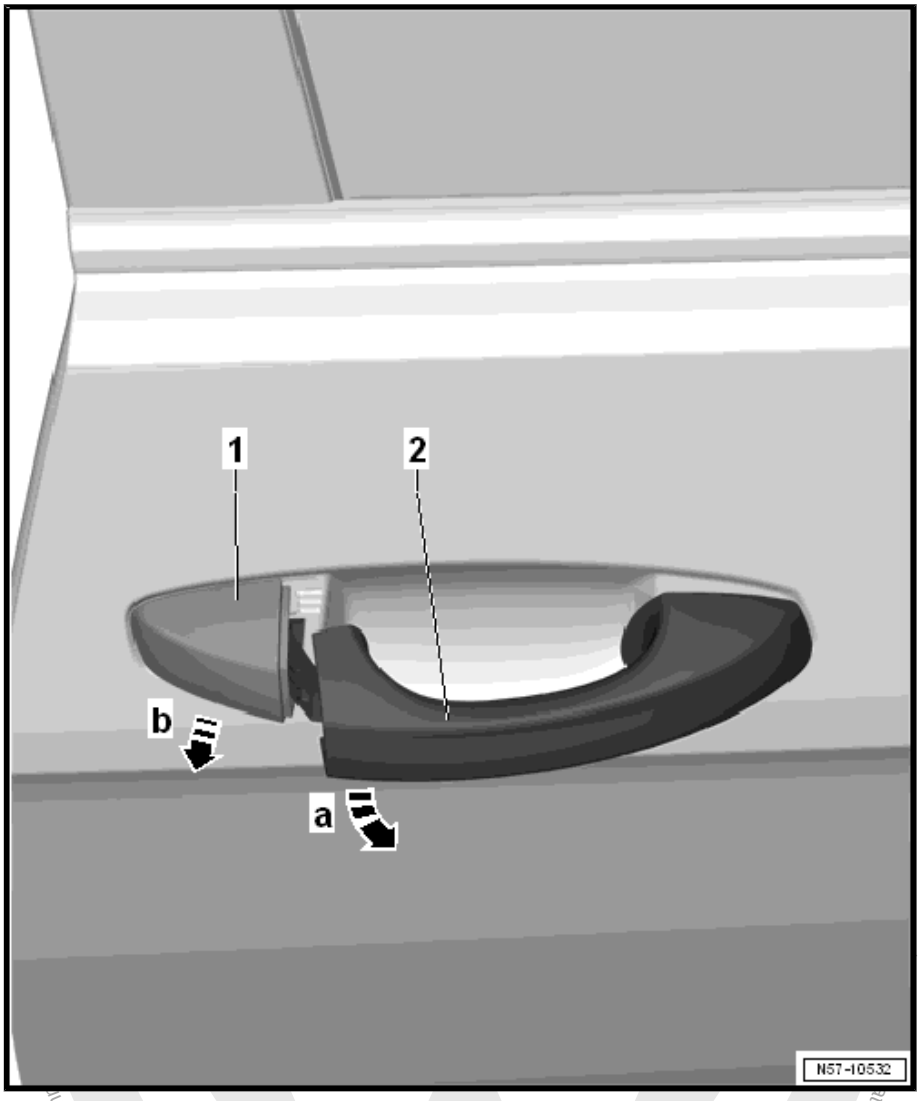
– Remove plugs -3-.

– Insert disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- with marking facing upwards up to locking hook of door handle bracket.

– Pull door handle -2- away from door -arrow b-.

– Push disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- approx. 5 mm towards front -arrow b- until hook is released.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



There must be a gap -arrow a- between door handle -2- and door.

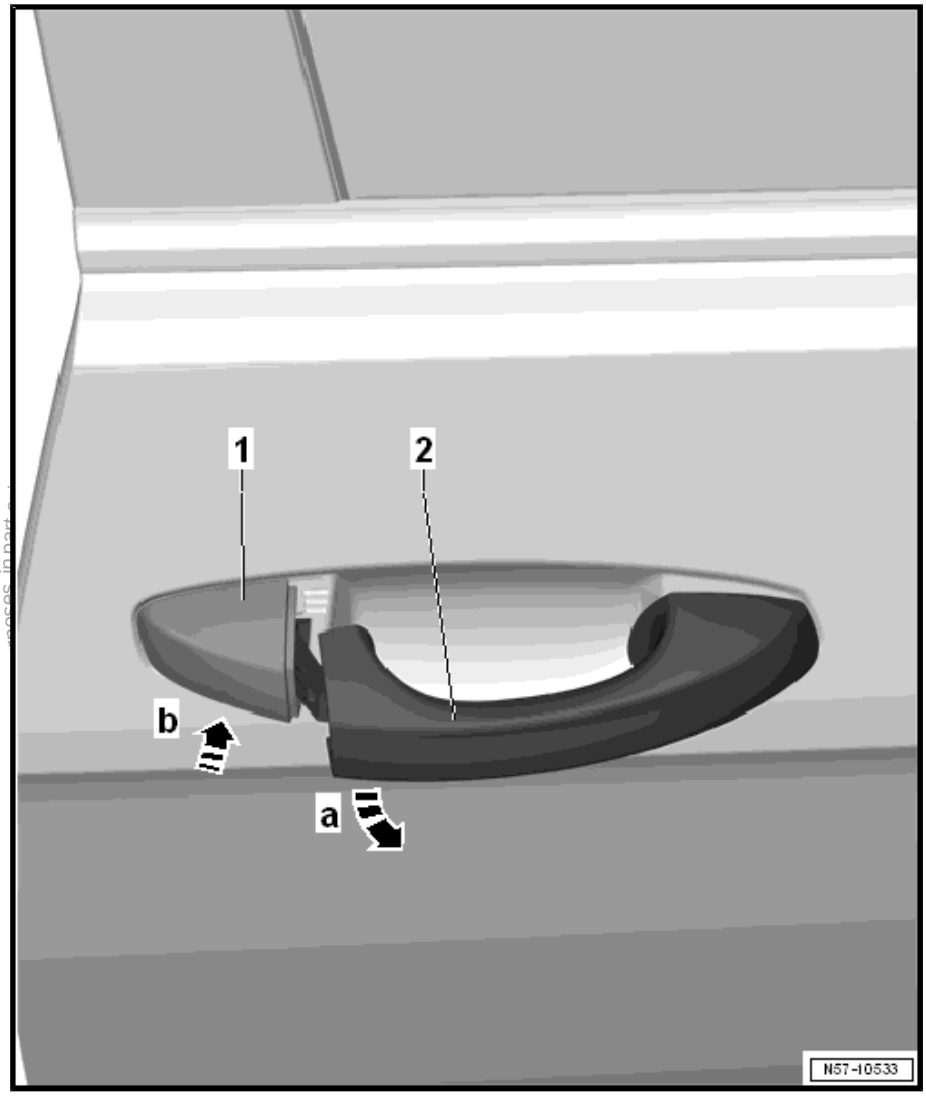
Note

Do not push the door handle into the door. Otherwise the door handle bracket will be damaged.

– Pull cover cap -1- out of door handle bracket -arrow b-.

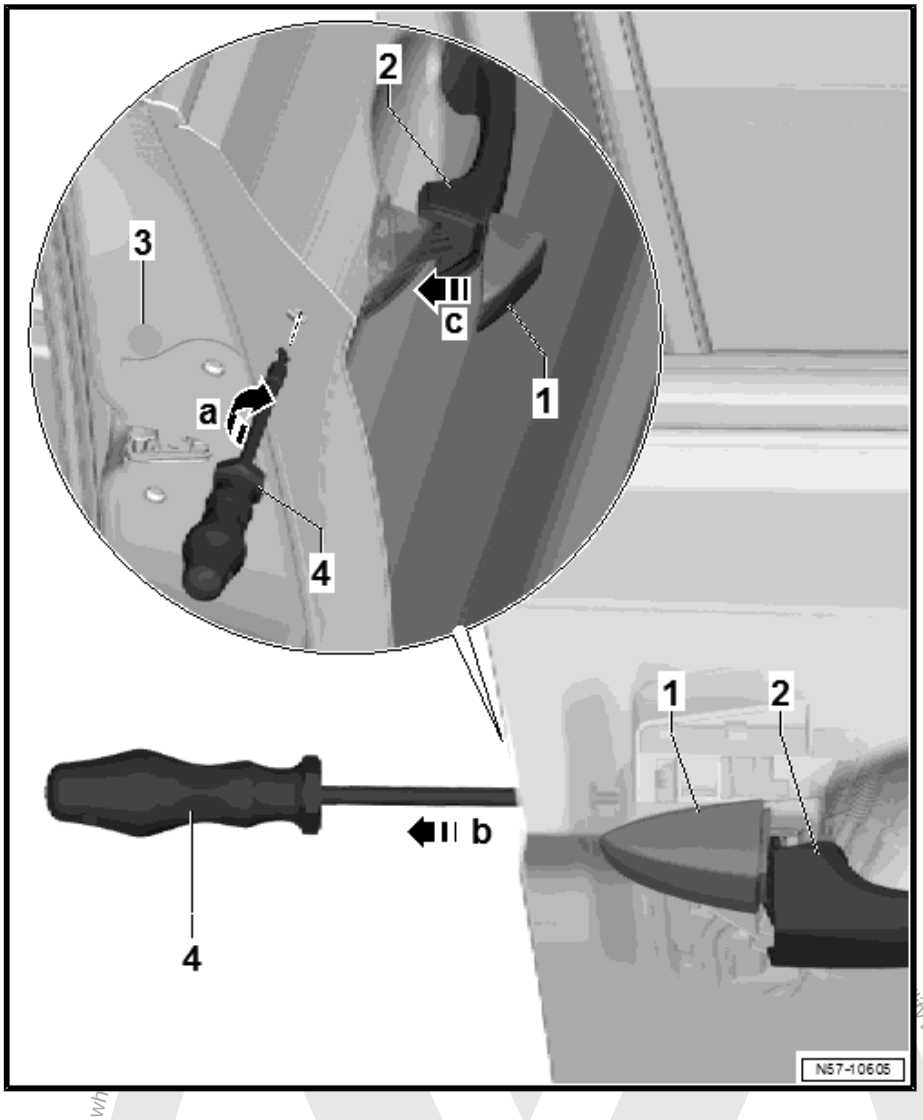
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for privat or comm ation in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



- There is a gap between door handle -2- and door -arrow a-.

– Push cover cap -1- into door handle bracket -arrow b-.



– Slightly press cover cap -1- onto door.
– Insert disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- with marking facing upwards up to locking hook of door handle bracket.
– Turn disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- in locking hook by 90° -arrow a-, and pull it out by approx. 5 mm -arrow b- until hook engages.

Door handle -2- folds down onto door automatically -arrow c-.

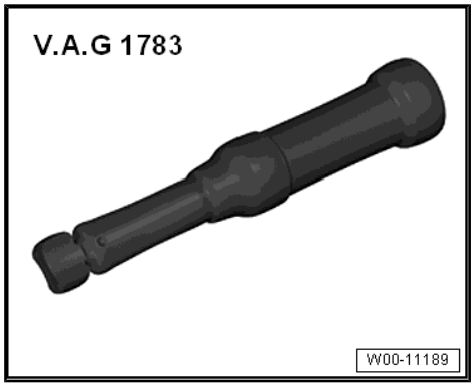
– Turn disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- in locking hook by 90° -arrow a-, and pull it out of door.
– Secure plug -3-.

2.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

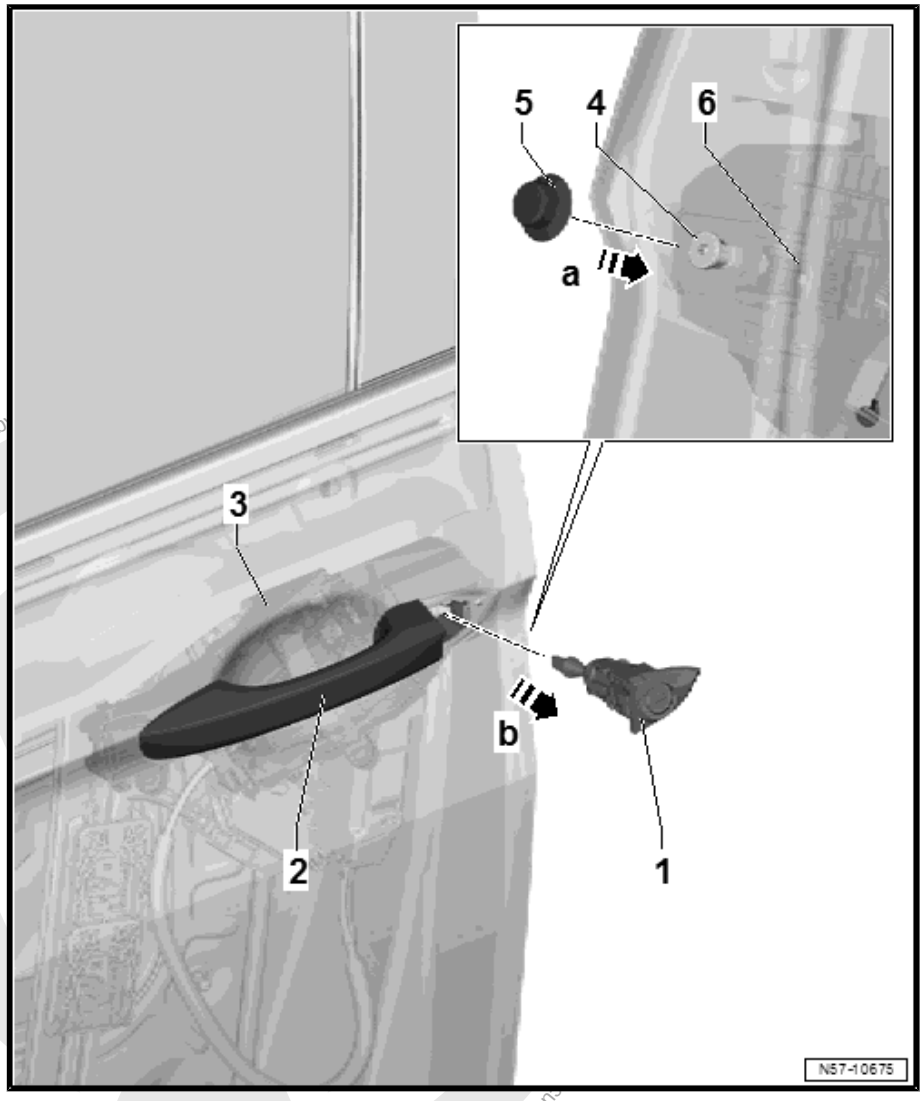


Note

- *The removal and installation sequence is only for the left lock cylinder. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *Door handle stops in “open” state. Do not push in the door handle as otherwise the retaining lug on the bearing bracket will break off and it will no longer be possible to reinstall a removed door handle.*

Removing

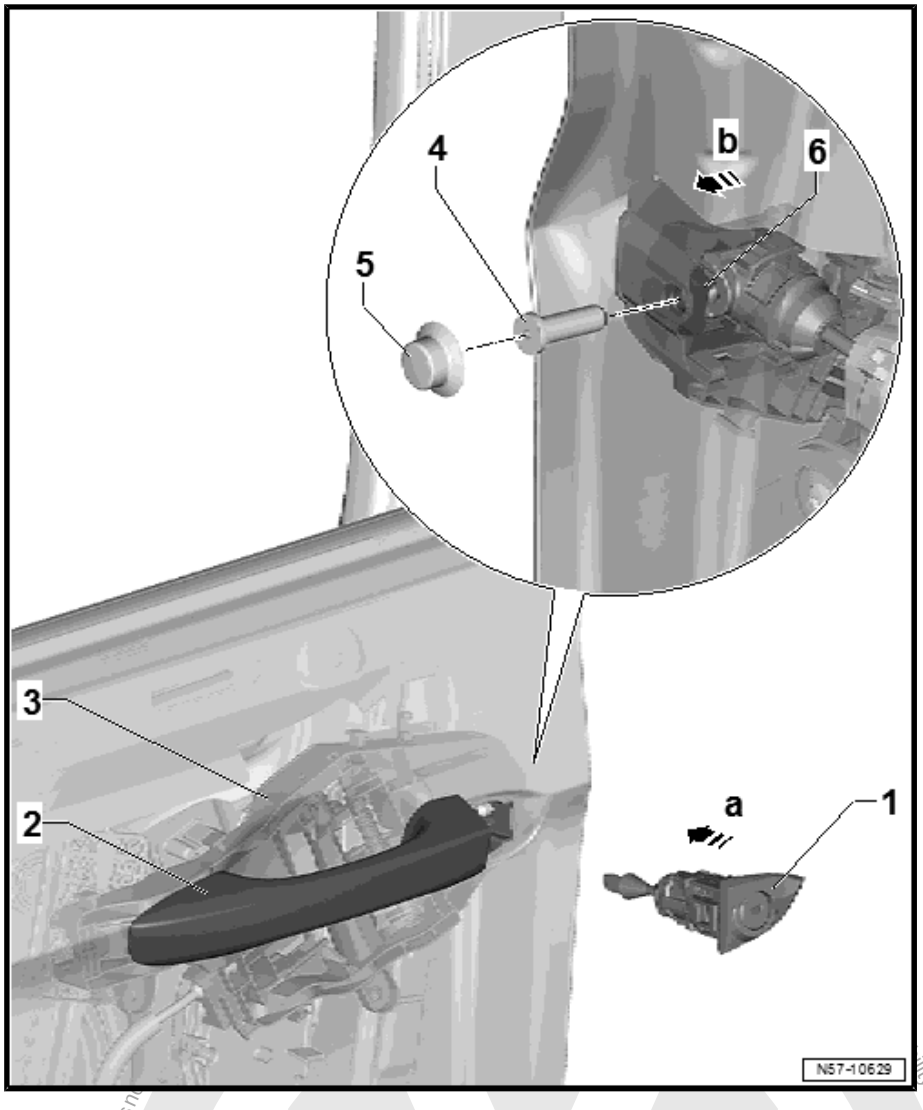
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove cap for lock cylinder ⇒ page 130 .
– Raise cover -5-.
– Pull out door handle -2- as far as it will go.
– Unscrew bolt -4- onto stop.
– Press in bolt -4- with locking element -6- -arrow a-. Only then is the lock cylinder released.
– Pull out lock cylinder housing -1- perpendicular to door -arrow b- from mounting bracket -3-.

Installing



– Push lock cylinder housing -1- into door handle bracket -3- at a right-angle -arrow a-.
– Screw bolts -4- into door handle bracket. While doing this, the locking mechanism -6- is pulled automatically in installation position -arrow b-.

Door handle -2- folds down onto door automatically.

Note

During installation, lock cylinder housing must be pressed against outer door panel.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

- It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

Specified torques

♦ Bolts
⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 120

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.10 Removing and installing door handle

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing door handle”, page 139

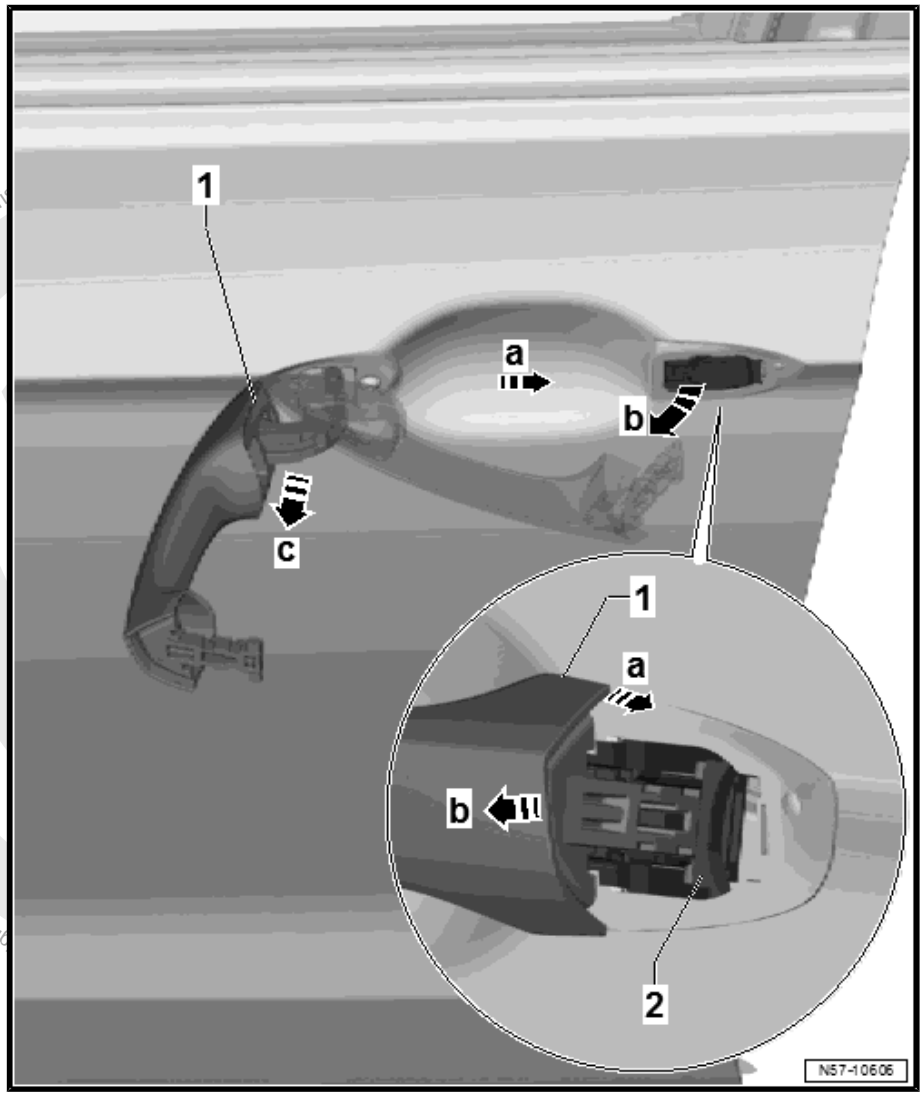
⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing door handle with keyless entry system”, page 141

2.10.1 Removing and installing door handle

Removing

Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the left door handle. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

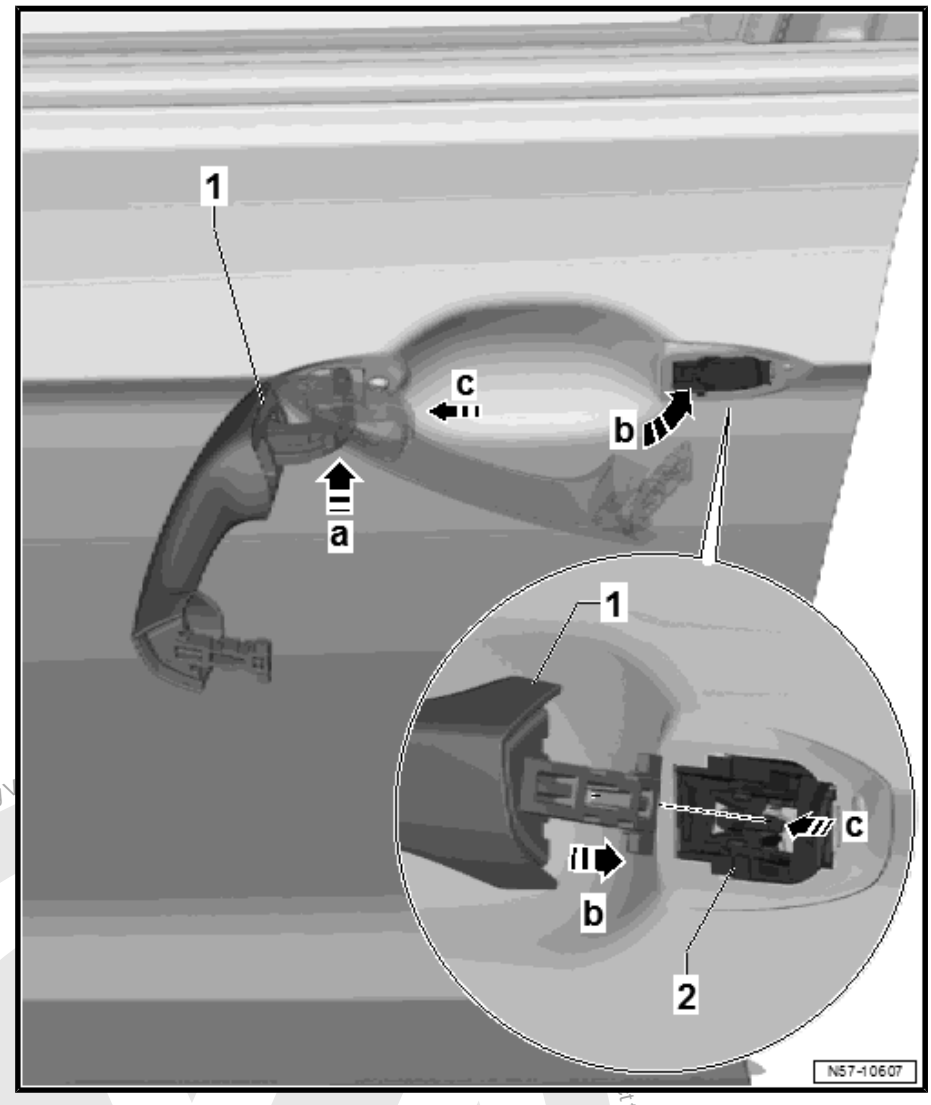


Copyright: Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized

– Depending on version, remove cap for or without lock cylinder ⇒ page 130 and lock cylinder ⇒ page 135 .
– Pull door handle -1- towards rear slightly -arrow a- until it comes out of support for door handle bracket -2-.
– Swivel door handle in direction of -arrow b-.

– Remove door handle from mounting bracket -2-, keeping door handle at right angles to mounting bracket -arrow c-.

Installing



– Insert door handle -1- at right angle -arrow a- in mounting bracket.
– Swing door handle -1- towards door -arrow b-.
– Press door handle forwards -arrow c- into support for door handle bracket -2-.
– It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is accepted with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

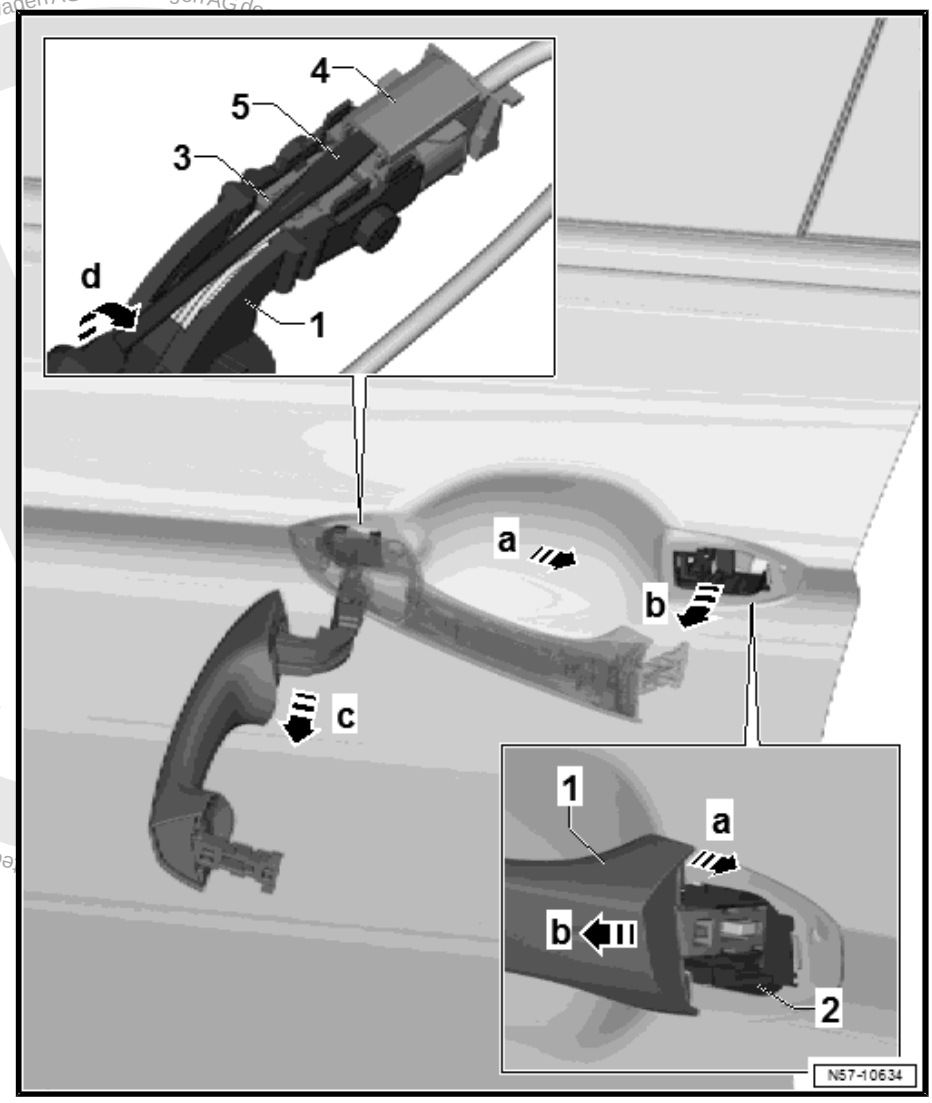
2.10.2 Removing and installing door handle with keyless entry system

Removing

Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the left door handle. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG do

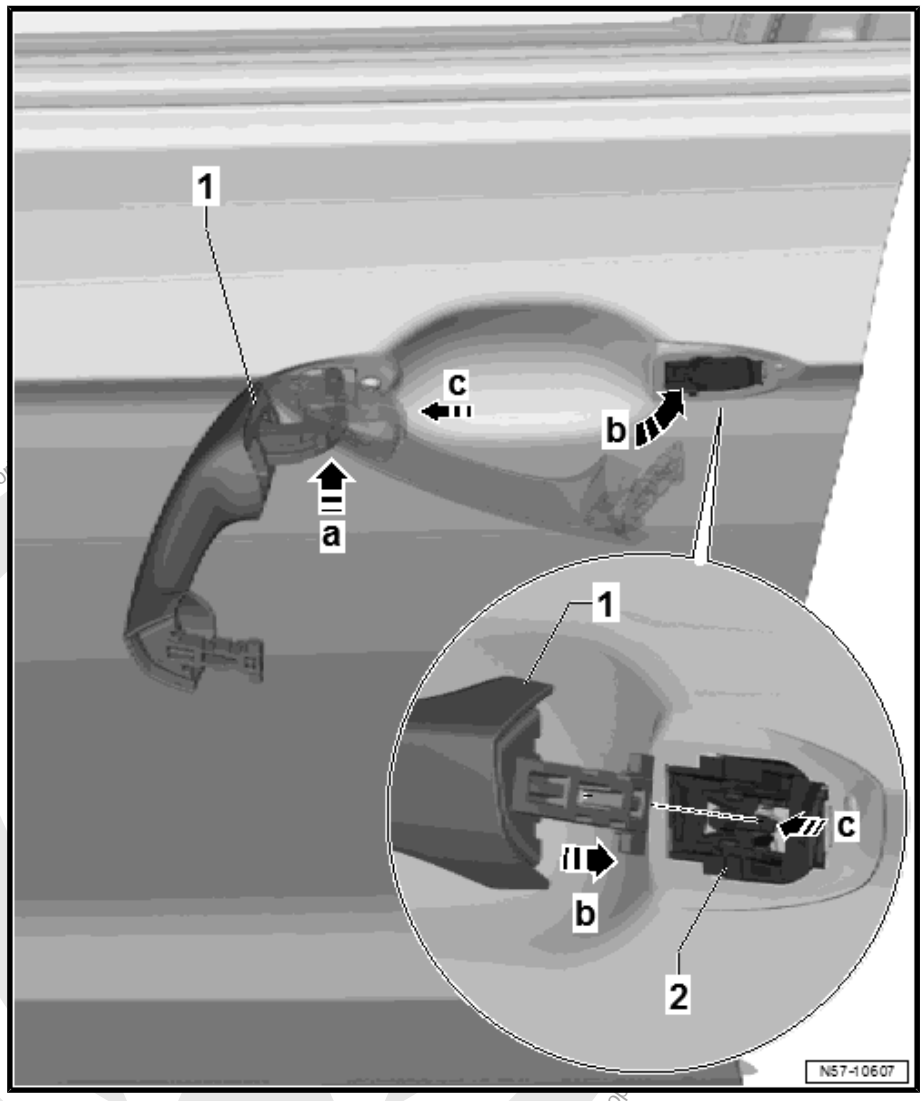


For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

– Depending on version, remove cap for or without lock cylinder ⇒ page 130 and lock cylinder ⇒ page 135 .
– Pull door handle -1- towards rear slightly -arrow a- until it comes out of support for door handle bracket -2-.
– Swivel door handle in direction of -arrow b-.

– Open locking mechanism on connector -4- using a screwdriver -3- -arrow d-.
– Remove door handle from mounting bracket -2-, keeping door handle at right angles to mounting bracket -arrow c-.

Installing



For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

– Insert door handle -1- at right angle -arrow a- in mounting bracket.

The connector for the keyless entry system is connected when the door handle is being inserted.

– Swing door handle -1- towards door -arrow b-.
– Press door handle forwards -arrow c- into support for door handle bracket -2-.
– It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.11 Removing and installing door handle bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

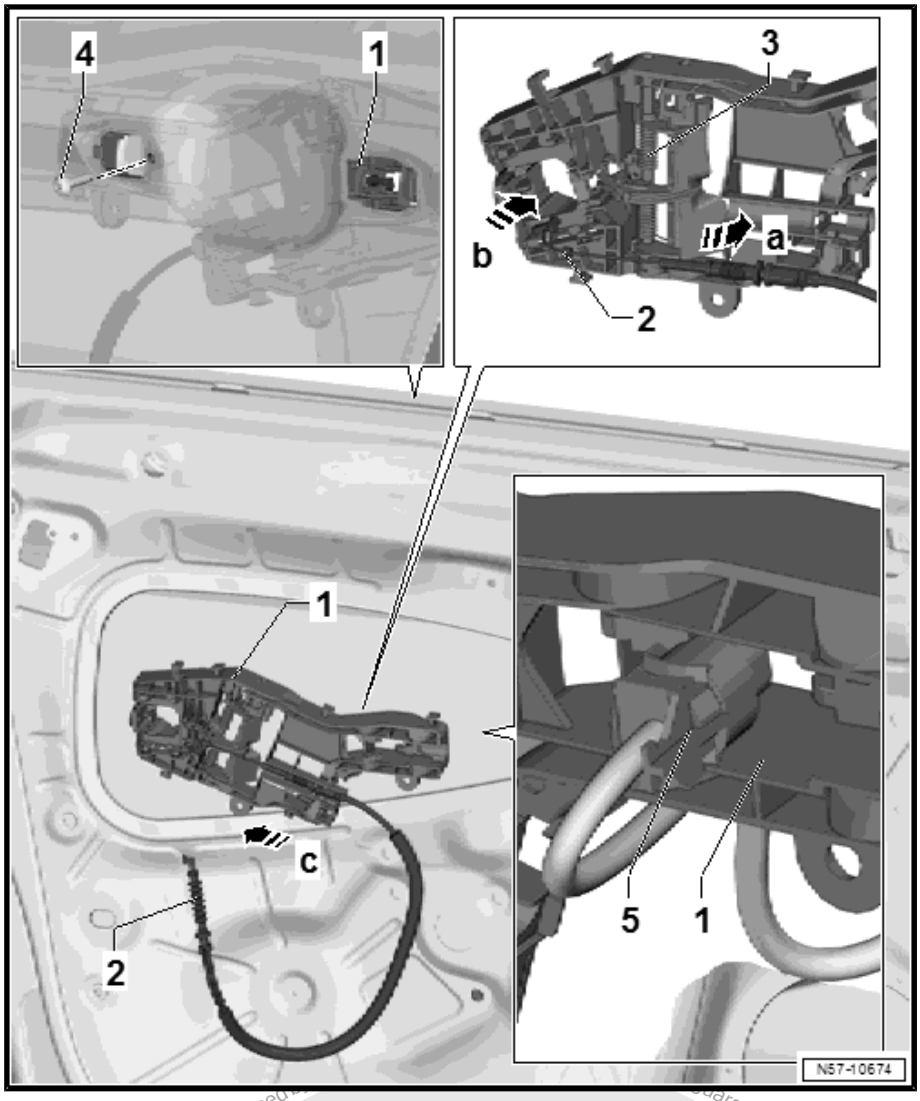


Removing

Note

Removal and installation are only described for the left door handle bracket. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
– Depending on version, remove cap for or without lock cylinder ⇒ page 130 and lock cylinder ⇒ page 135 .
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 139 .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 126 .
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 139 .
– Unscrew bolt -4-.
– Remove bearing bracket -1- from door.

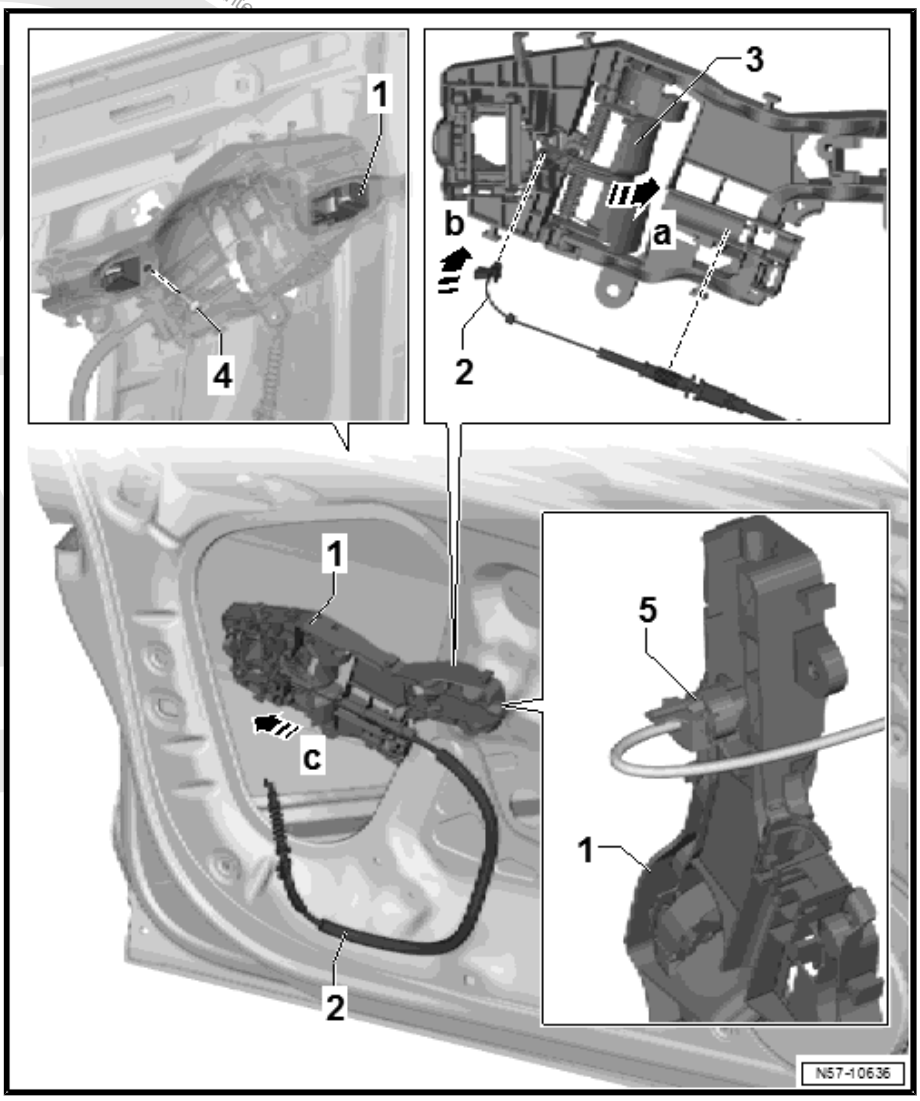
Detach cable

– Slightly swing aside retainer -3- -arrow a-.
– Lift pin of cable -2- out of mounting.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



Attaching cable

Note

Make sure the connector -5- for the keyless entry system is firmly seated.

For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

– Slightly swing aside retainer -3- -arrow a-.
– Push pin of cable -2- into mounting -arrow b-.
– Guide door handle bracket -1- into door -arrow c-.
– Tighten bolt -4-.

Specified torques

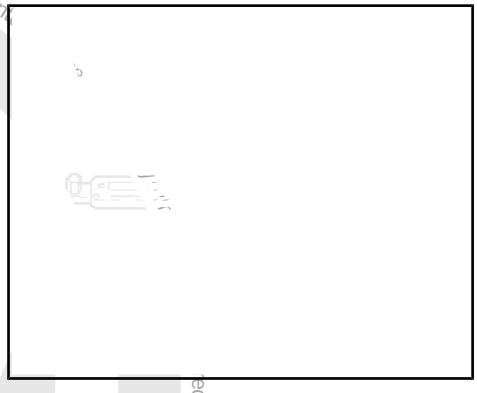
♦ Bolts
⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 120

2.12 Removing and installing door lock

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-

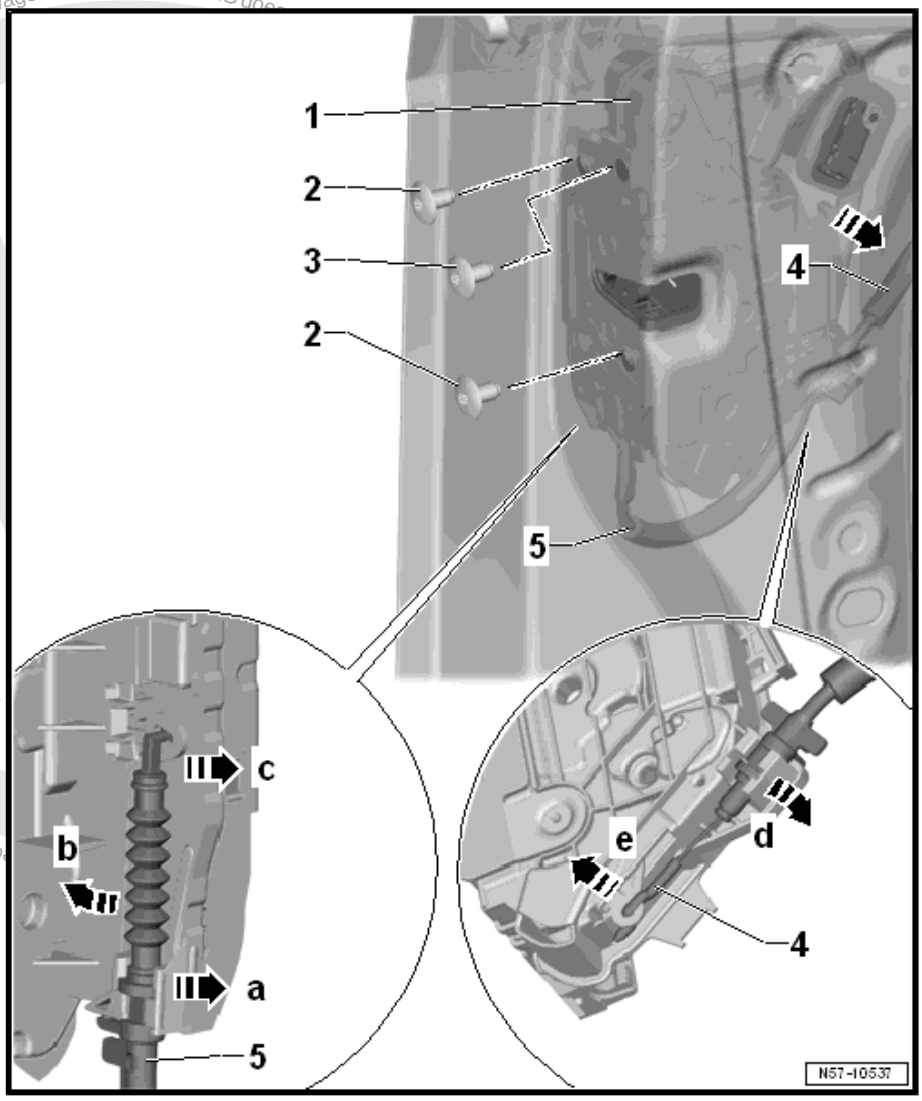


Note

- *The removal and installation are described only for the left door lock. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The door window must be closed for subsequent work.*
- *The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are unscrewed.*

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 126 .
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 139 .
– If fitted, disconnect connector.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove door lock -1- from door -arrow-.

Note

Cables can be detached if this is necessary for subsequent work.

Detach cable from mounting bracket

– Remove cover ⇒ page 148 .
– Turn cable -5- through 90° -arrow a- and take out of holder.
– Swivel cable -arrow b- upwards until cable can be threaded out of eye in door lock -1- -arrow c-.

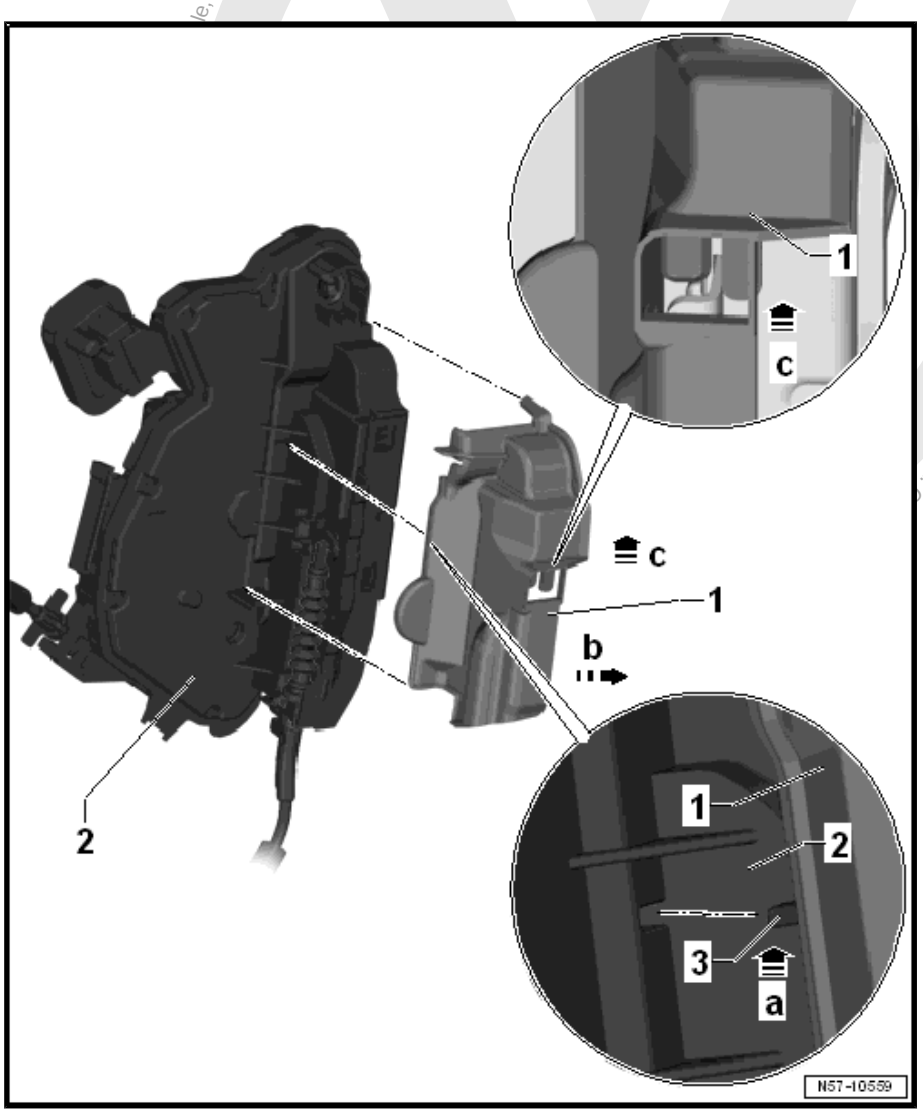
...e, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ...

Detach cable from interior door handle

– Turn cable -4- by 90° and take it out of holding device.

– Swivel cable -arrow d- so far until cable can be threaded out of eye in door lock -1- -arrow e-.

Removing cover



– Disengage hook -3- in -direction of arrow a-.

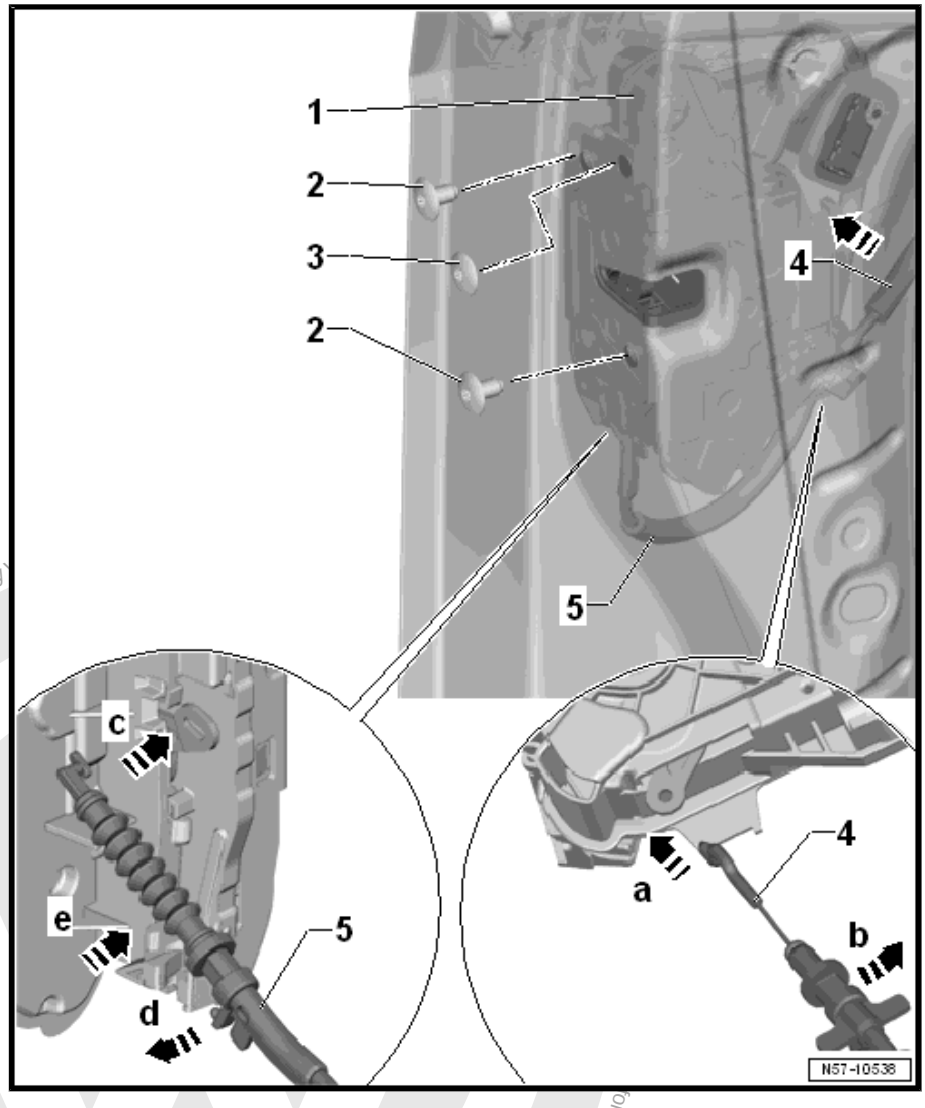
– Use the hook to pull cover -1- out of door lock -2- -arrow b-.

– Pull cover -1- upwards -arrow c- from door lock -2-.

Installing

Note

The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are unscrewed.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

– Attach cables -4- and -5- to door lock -1-.
– Install cover ⇒ page 149 .
– Insert door lock -1- into door.
– If fitted, connect connector.
– Screw in bolts -2-.
– Clip cover -3- in.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

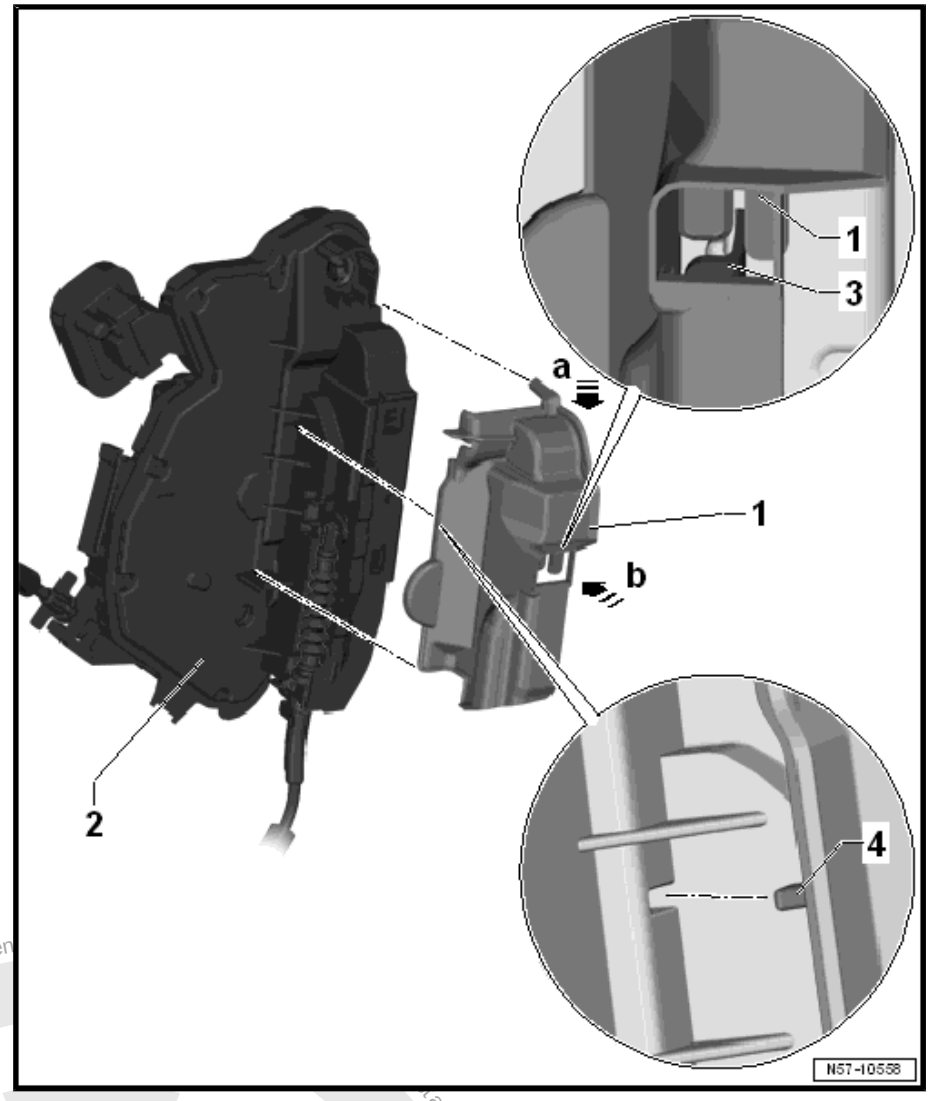
– It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

Only if the cables are adjusted and locked correctly, the door lock can be unlocked and opened properly.

Specified torques

♦ Bolts
⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 120

Fitting cover



– Push cover -1- onto retainer -3- on door lock -2- -arrow a-.
– Engage hook -4- with door lock -2- -arrow b-.

2.13 Removing and installing window channel

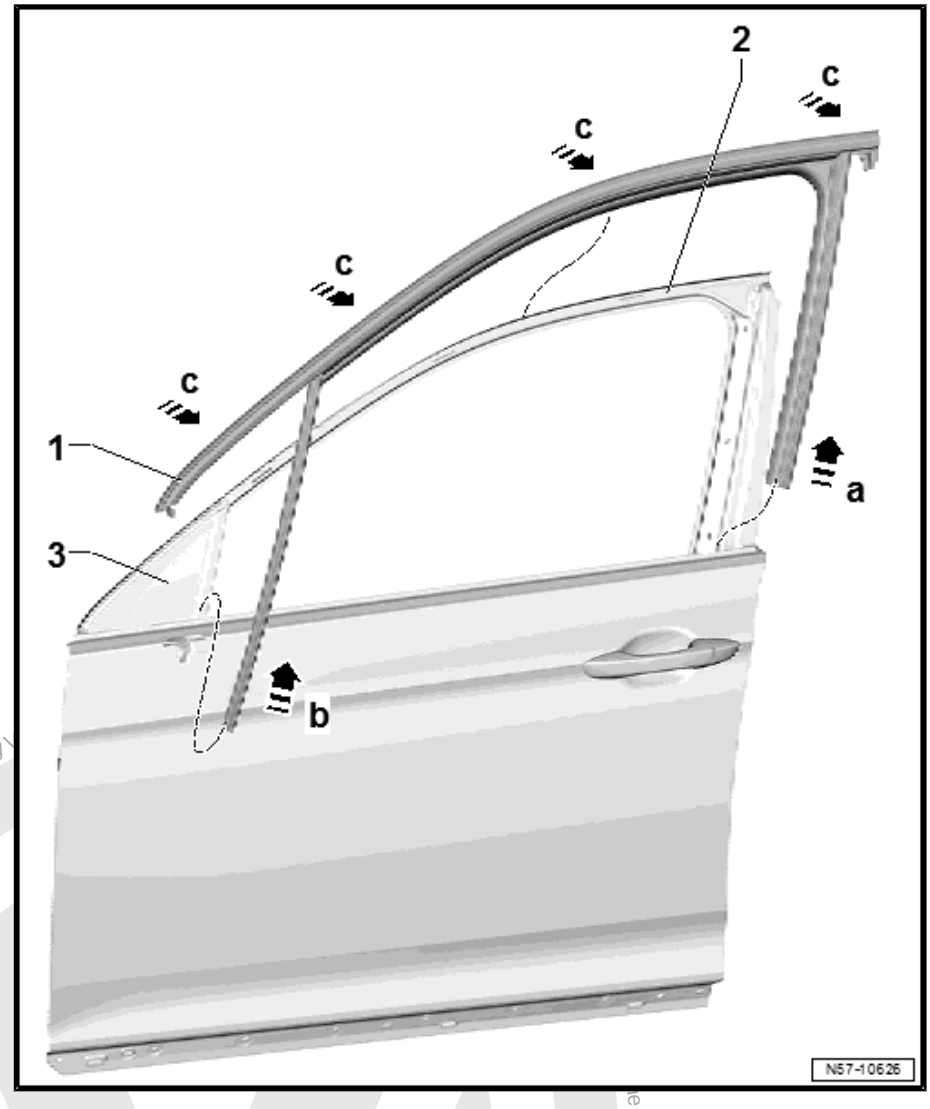
Note

♦ *The removal and installation sequence is only for the left window channel. Removal and installation of the right window channel are similar.*

♦ *Do not bend window channel when removing!*

Removing

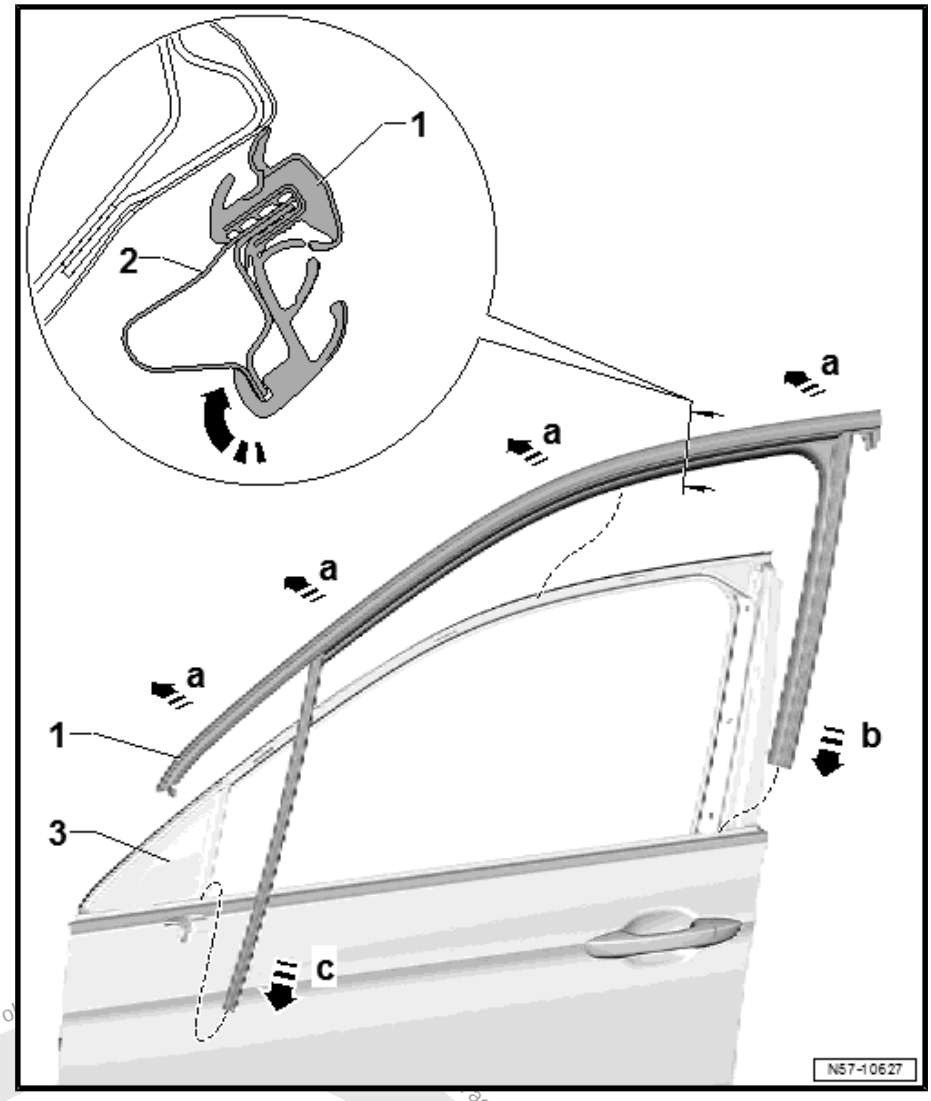
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Remove inner window slot seal ⇒ page 155 .
– Remove outer window slot seal ⇒ page 153 .
– Peel sealing lip of window channel -1- off the door flange from the inside.
– Pull window channel -1- out of mountings on door -arrows a and b-.
– Pull window channel -1- -arrows c- off flange -2- uniformly all around it.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



– Spray window channel with soapy water to facilitate installation.
– Insert window channel -1- into mountings on door -arrows c and b-.
– Fit window channel -1- from rear towards front onto door flange -arrows a-.
– Fold sealing lip of window channel onto door flange -2- from the inside -arrows-.

Note

To prevent wind noise, ensure window channel -1- seats evenly when installing.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

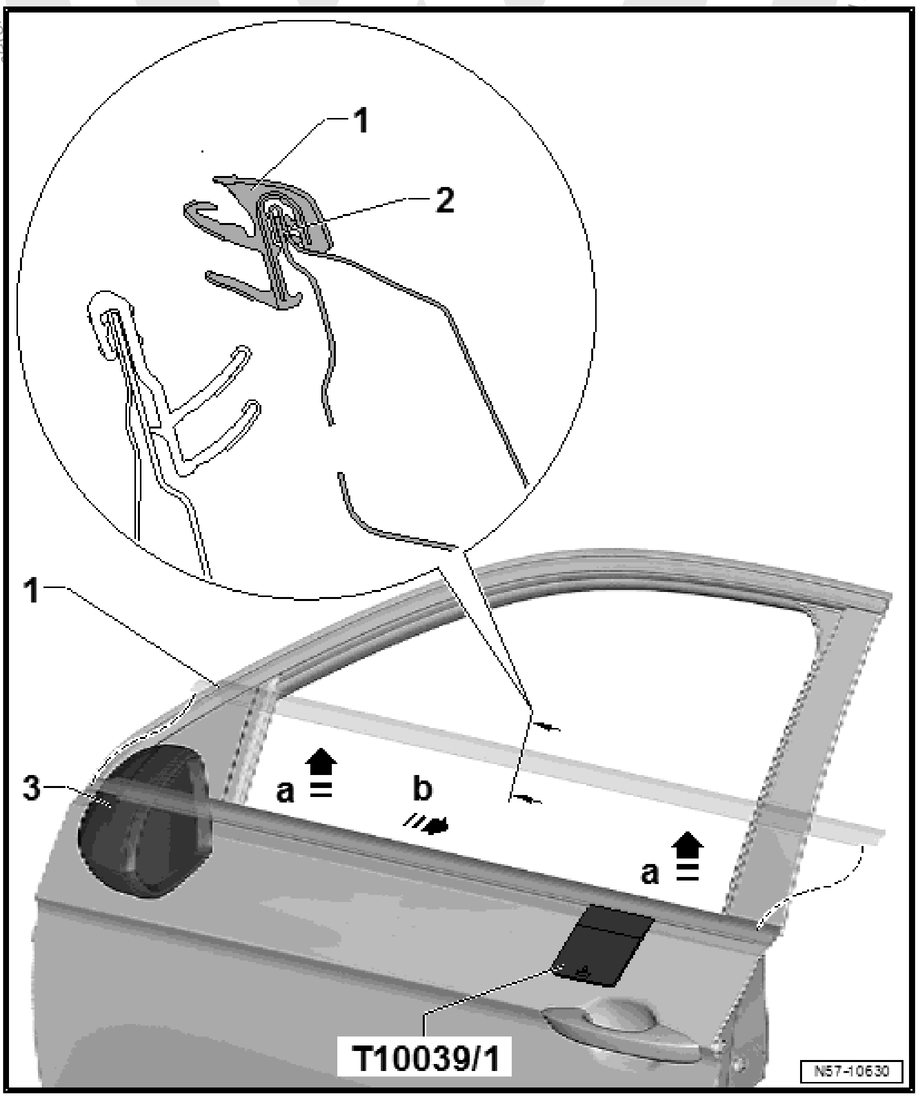
2.14 Removing and installing outer window slot seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of

Removing

Note

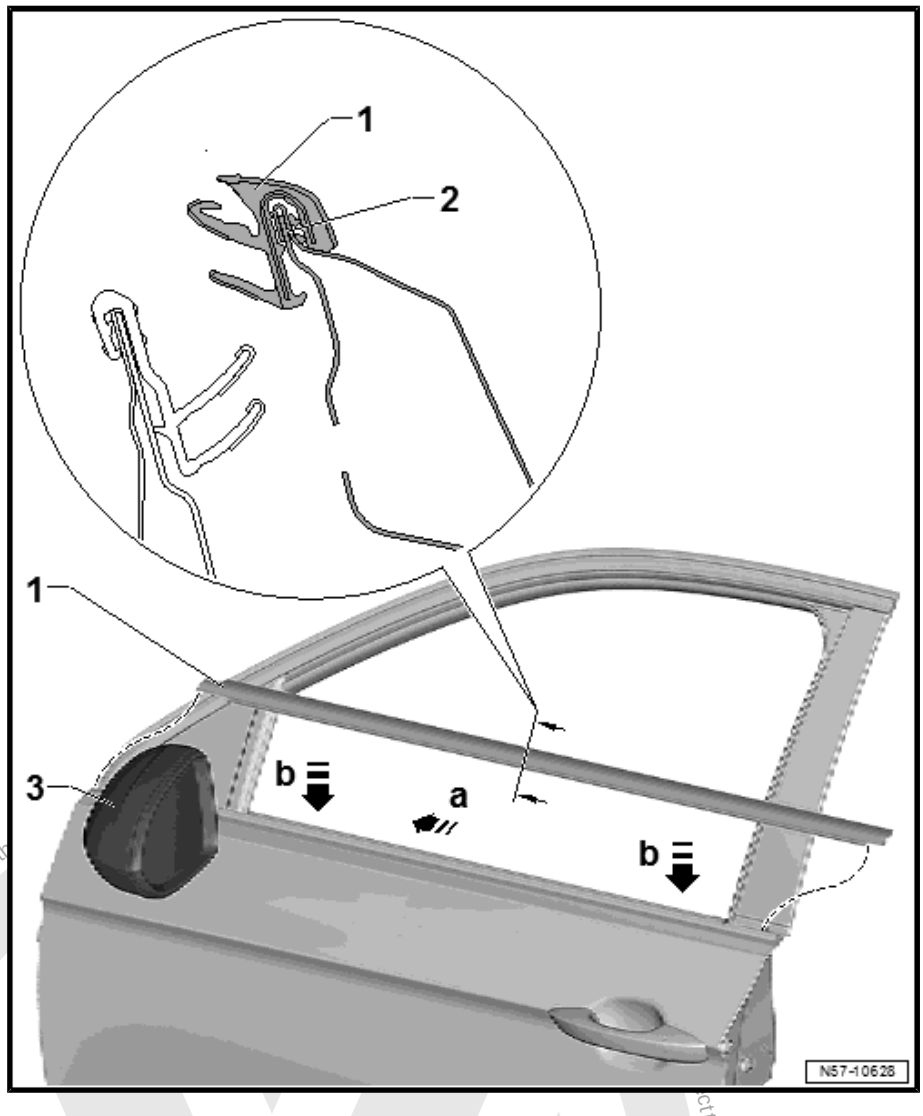
- *The core of the outer window slot seal is a metal insert.*
- *If it is bent or distorted, the outer window slot seal cannot be straightened out anymore. It will remain “wavy”.*
- *Therefore, the outer window slot seal must be pulled off and pressed on evenly, without bending or distorting it.*
- *Removal and installation are only described for the left window slot outer seal. Removal and installation of the right window slot outer seal are similar.*



– Slightly detach outer window slot seal -1- evenly from door flange -2- using wedge - T10039/1- -arrows a-. Make sure not to bend the side strip.

– Pull out window slot outer seal -1- behind exterior mirror -3- -arrow b-.

Installing



Note

- *The use of assembly aid is allowed.*
- *The use of striking tools is not allowed for installing the outer window slot seal.*

– Push window slot outer seal -1- behind exterior mirror -3- -arrow a-.

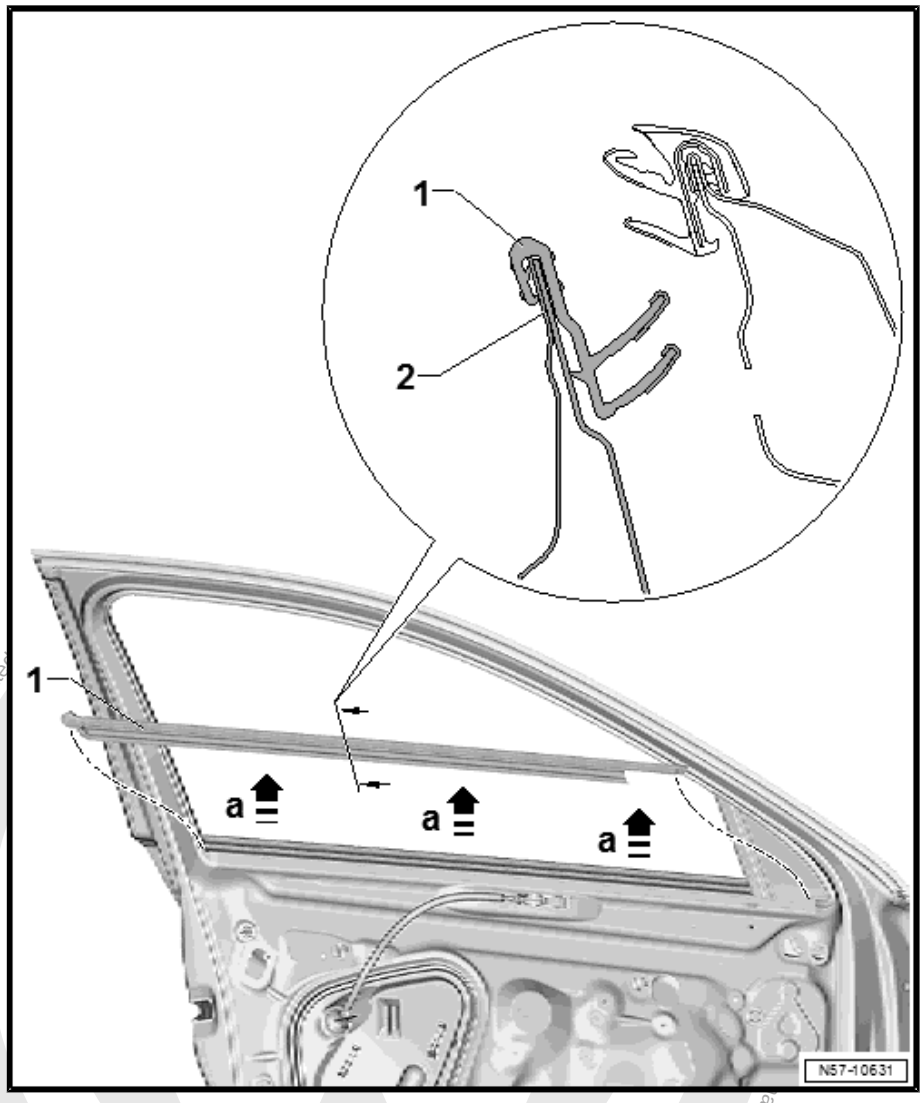
– Align window slot outer seal -1- with B-pillar and press it uniformly and by hand onto door flange-2- -arrows b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ct to the correctness of information in this document.

2.15 Removing and installing inner window slot seal

Note

Removal and installation are only described for the left window slot inner seal. Removal and installation of the right window slot outer seal are similar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Removing

– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .

– Lift inner window slot seal -1- uniformly off flange -2- without bending or distorting it -arrows a-.

Installing

– Centre window slot inner seal -1- and press it evenly onto front door flange -2- by hand.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Any use of this document by commercial undertakings or in the interest of such undertakings, in particular the distribution of all or part of the contents of this document to third parties, is only permitted under the terms of an agreement with Volkswagen AG or with authorised importers or in cases mandatorily required by law. Unauthorised use may result in claims for damages or criminal prosecution.

3 Central locking

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking”, page 156

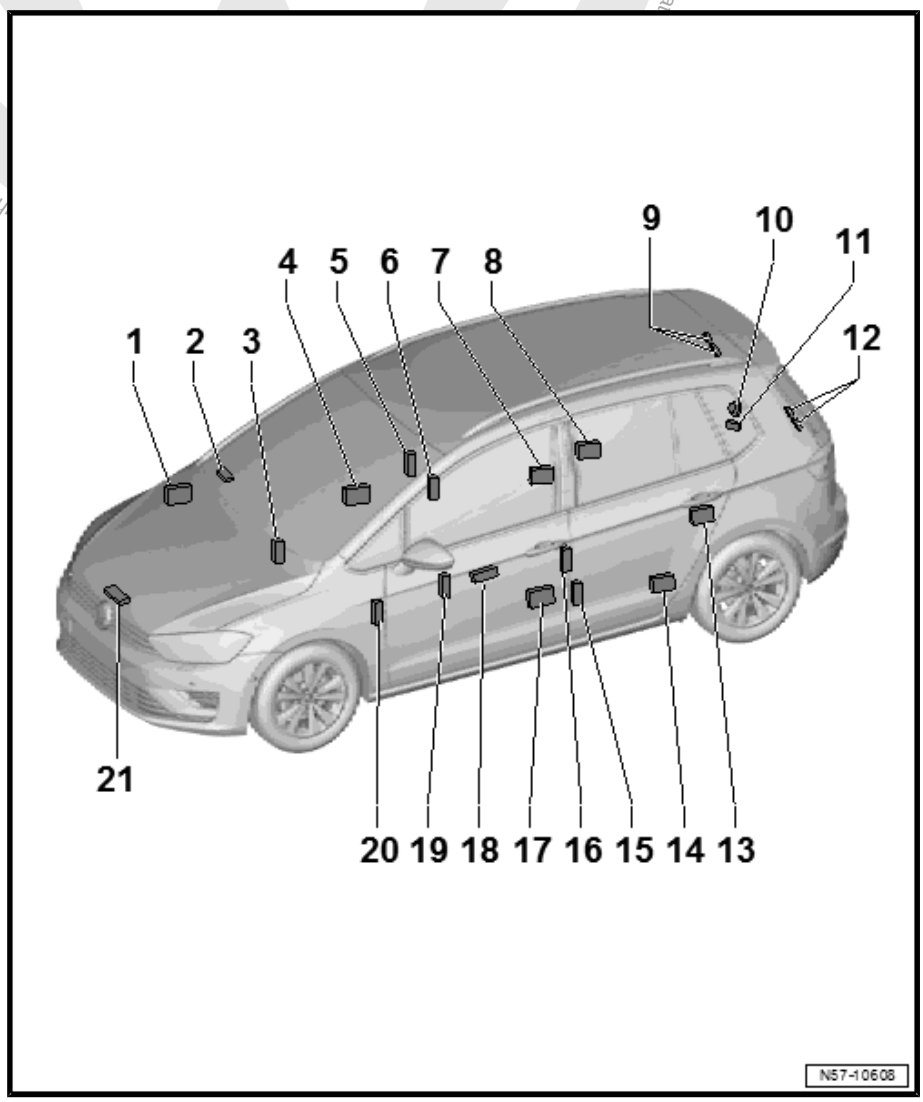
⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 ”, page 158

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 ”, page 159

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing ignition key battery”, page 160

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing cap on ignition key”, page 162

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking



1 - Onboard supply control unit - J519-

- ❑ Location: Under dash panel on driver side.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units .

2 - Alarm horn - H12-

- ❑ Removing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Removing and installing alarm horn H12 .

3 - Coupling station

- ❑ Fitting location: right A-pillar
- ❑ To separate connections, release bellows at pillar.

4 - Front passenger door control unit - J387-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

5 - Front right door lock

- ❑ Door lock is secured to inner part of door.
- ❑ Electric central locking is integrated into door lock.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 145

6 - Coupling station

- ❑ Fitting location: right B-pillar.
- ❑ To separate connections, release bellows at pillar.

7 - Driver door control unit - J386-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

8 - Rear right door lock

- ❑ Door lock is secured to inner part of door.
- ❑ Electric central locking is integrated into door lock.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 204

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, duplication or commercial distribution of this document in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

9 - Right connector point

- ❑ Location: behind C-pillar trim
- ❑ Remove and install ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

10 - Release element with button

- ❑ Location: Bolted to rear lid.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 80

11 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Location: bolted to rear lid
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 68

12 - Left connector point

- ❑ Location: behind C-pillar trim
- ❑ Remove and install ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

13 - Rear left door lock

- ❑ Door lock is secured to inner part of door.
- ❑ Electric central locking is integrated into door lock.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 204

14 - Rear left door control unit - J388-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

15 - Coupling station

- ❑ Location: left B-pillar
- ❑ To separate connections, release bellows at pillar.

16 - Front left door lock

- ❑ Door lock is secured to inner part of door.
- ❑ Electric central locking is integrated into door lock.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 145

17 - Driver door control unit - J386-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

18 - Central switch for window regulators

- ❑ Location: installed in door panel
- ❑ Remove and install central switch for window regulator ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

19 - Button for central closing

- ❑ Location: installed in door panel
- ❑ Remove and install button for central closing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors .

20 - Coupling station

- ❑ Location: left A-pillar
- ❑ To separate connections, release bellows at pillar.

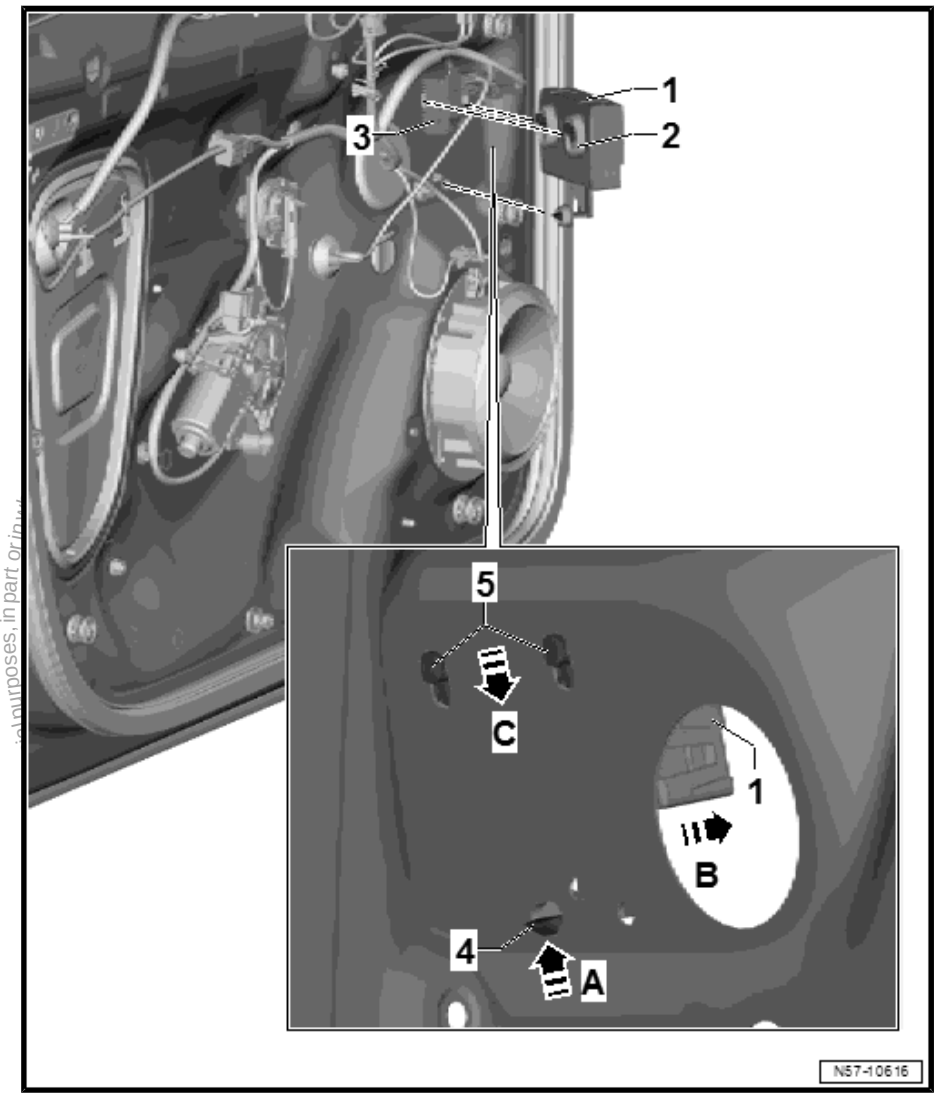
21 - Bonnet contact switch - F266-

- ❑ Contact switch for anti-theft alarm.
- ❑ Location: on lid lock.
- ❑ Removing ⇒ page 40

3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit - J386- and front passenger door control unit - J387-

Note

If a new door control unit is installed, the additional functions and the excess force limitation feature have to be coded!



...purposes, in part or in...

Removing

– Separate electrical connectors -3-.

– Release retaining hook from outside -arrow A-.

– Push control unit -1- downwards -arrow C-, and remove it from door -arrow B-.

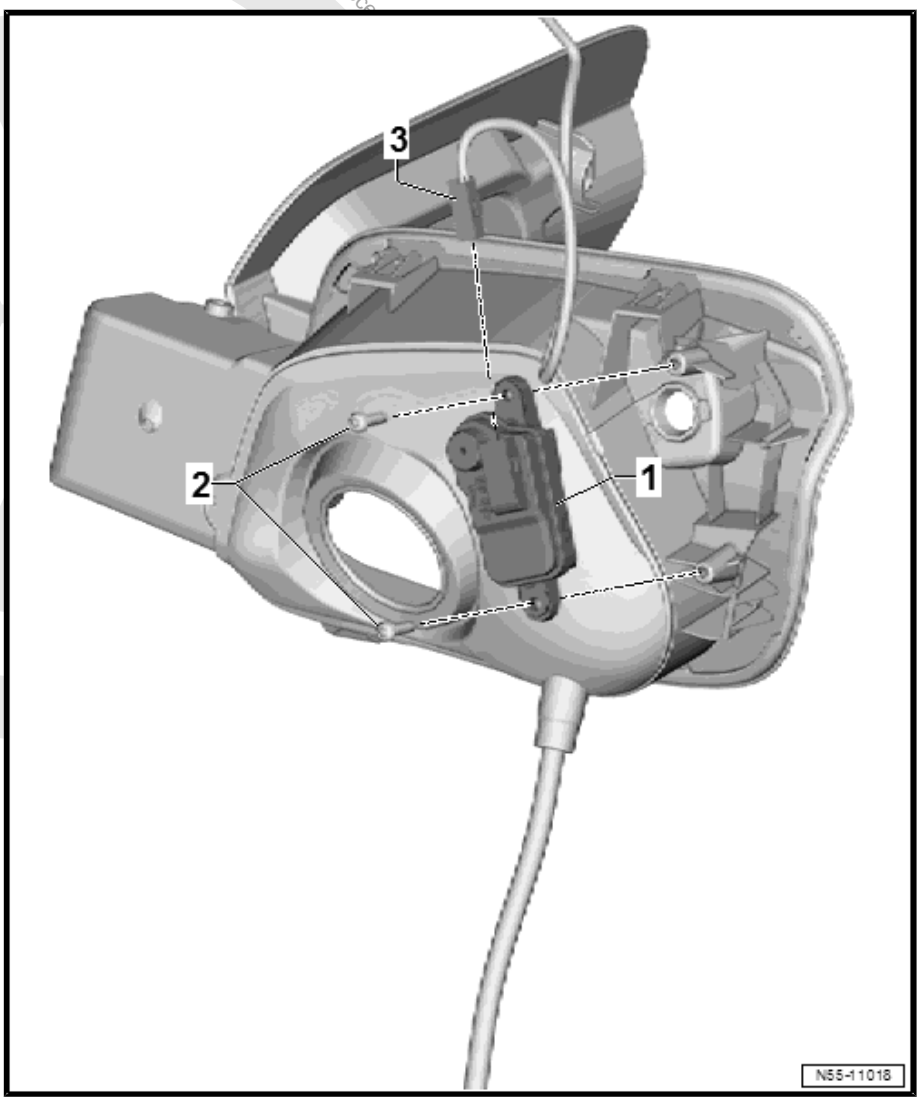
Installing

– Check seals -2- for damage, and renew them as necessary.

– Place control unit -1- in mounting holes and push upwards.

– Push retaining hook -4- into hole until it engages.
– Attach connectors -3-.

3.3 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor - V155-



Removing

– Remove fuel tank flap unit ⇒ page 94 .
– Separate electrical connector -3-.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove tank flap locking motor -1- from tank flap unit.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Attach electrical connector -3-.
– Place tank flap locking motor -1- on tank flap unit.
– Screw in bolts -2-.
– Installing tank flap unit ⇒ page 94

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Specified torques

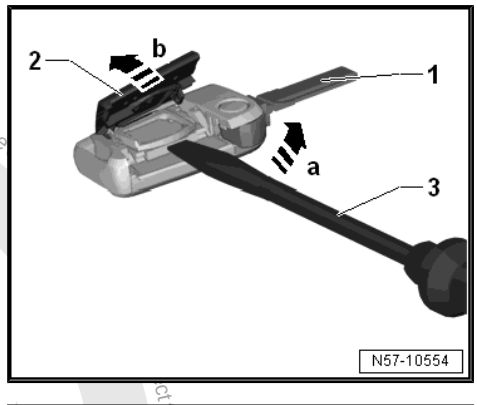
- ⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - tank flap unit”, page 94

3.4 Removing and installing ignition key battery

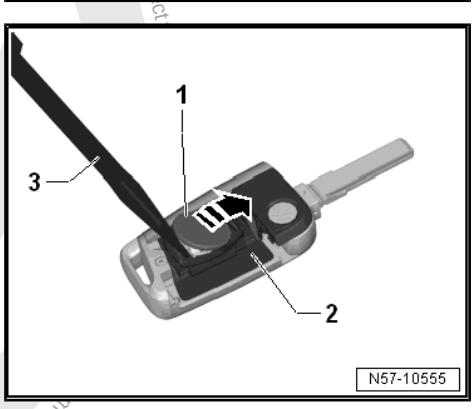
Removing

– Folding out key bit -1- -arrow a-.

– Use a small screwdriver -3- to raise the cover of battery compartment -2- -arrow b-.



– Use a small screwdriver -3- to lift battery -1- out of battery compartment -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Note

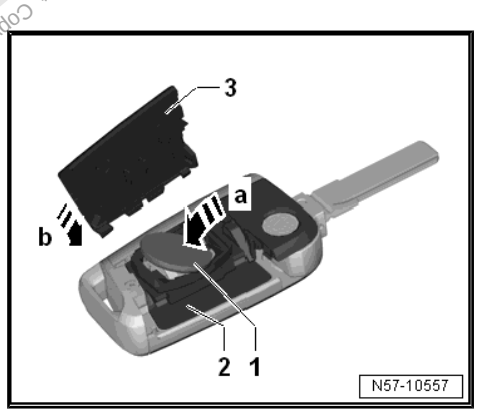
- *Before installing battery, always press any key once.*
- *This resets the transmitter unit so that it can detect a new battery.*

Ensure correct polarity and mounting position when installing battery. The positive pole is marked.

– Insert battery -1- into battery compartment -2- by pressing slightly -arrow a-.

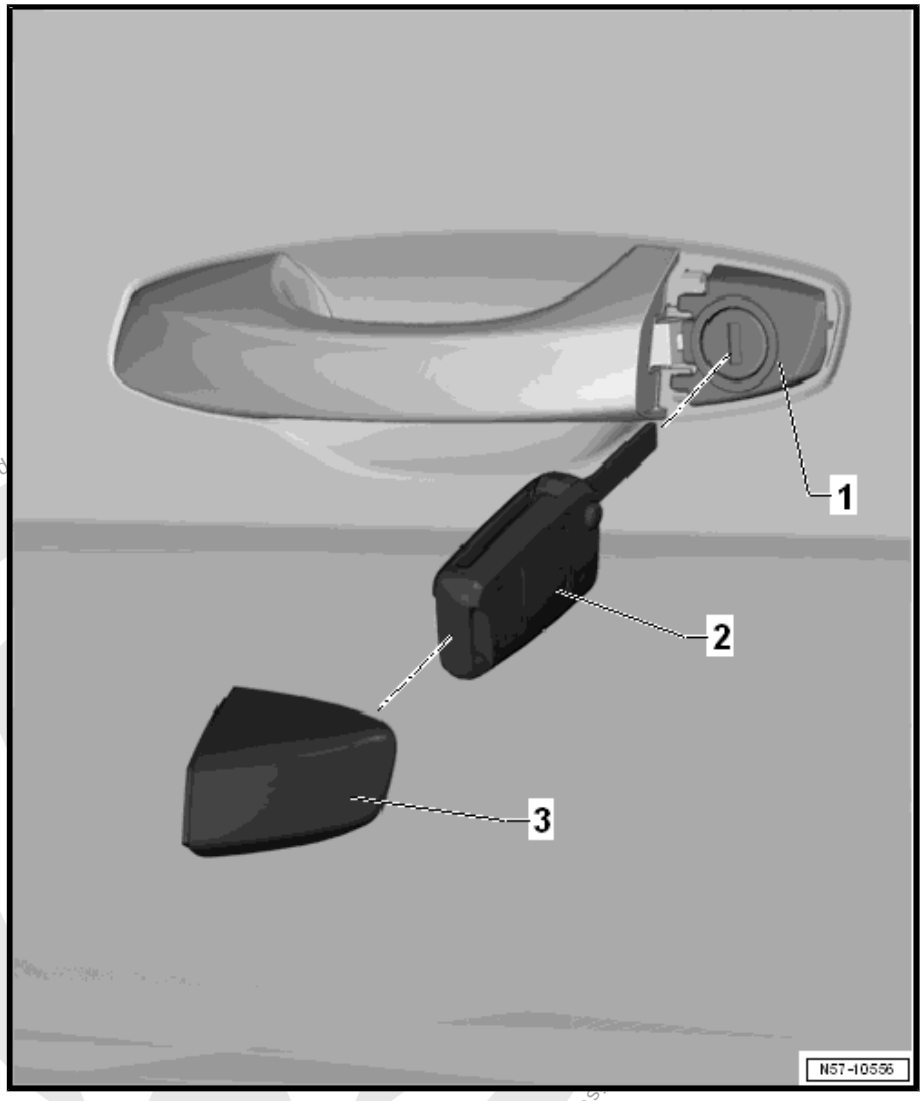
– Assemble cover of battery compartment -3- and transmitter unit -arrow b-.

– The ignition key must be synchronised now ⇒ page 160 .



Synchronizing ignition key

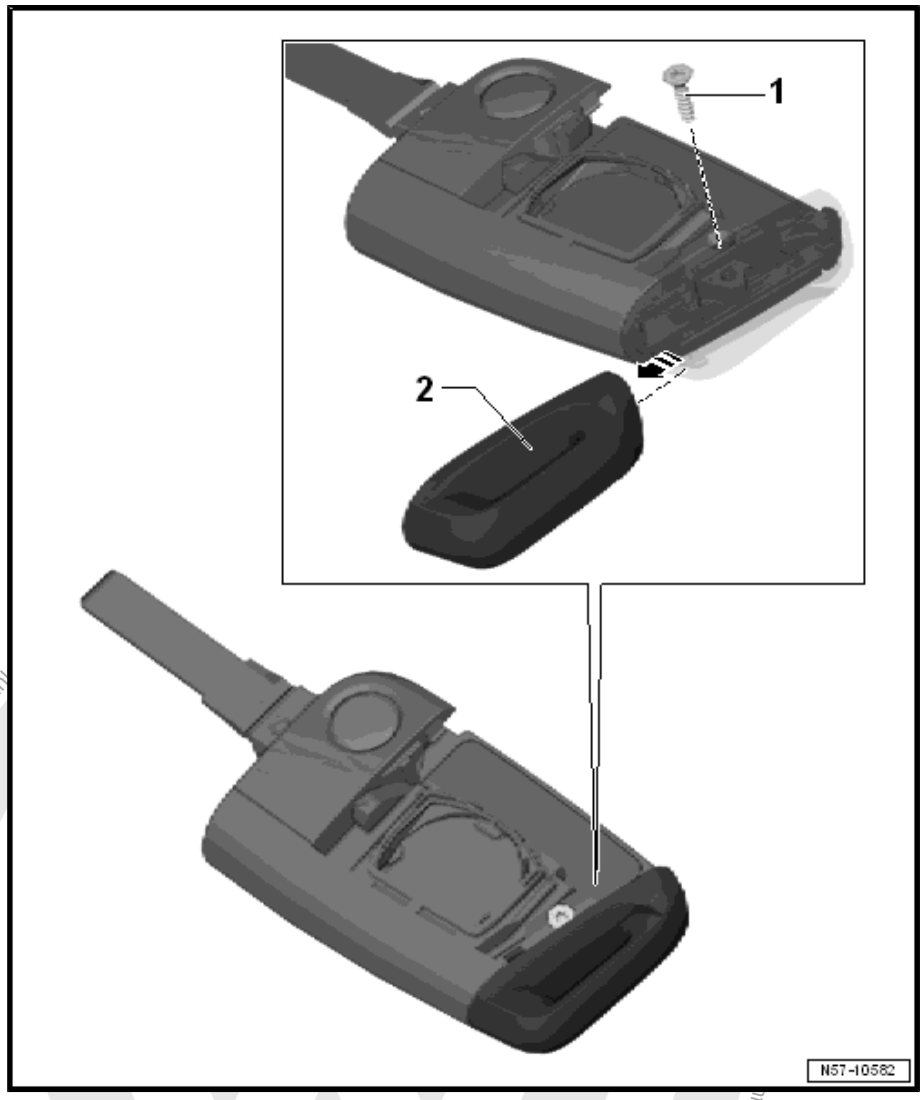
Volkswagen AG, Volkswagen Aktiengesellschaft does not guarantee the accuracy of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove cap for lock cylinder -3- ⇒ page 130 .
– Hold ignition key -2- on lock cylinder -1-, and press “Open” button.
– Unlock vehicle with the ignition key -2- via lock cylinder -1- within a minute.

Protected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.5 Removing and installing cap on ignition key



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Removing

– Lift off cover for battery compartment ⇒ page 160 .
– Unscrew bolt -1-.
– Push cap -2- out from the ignition key laterally -arrow-.

Installing

Note

Use the screw -1- to cut the thread in on a new cap.

– Push cap -2- laterally onto the ignition key.
– Screw in screw -1-.
– Press cover onto battery compartment

58 – Rear doors, door components

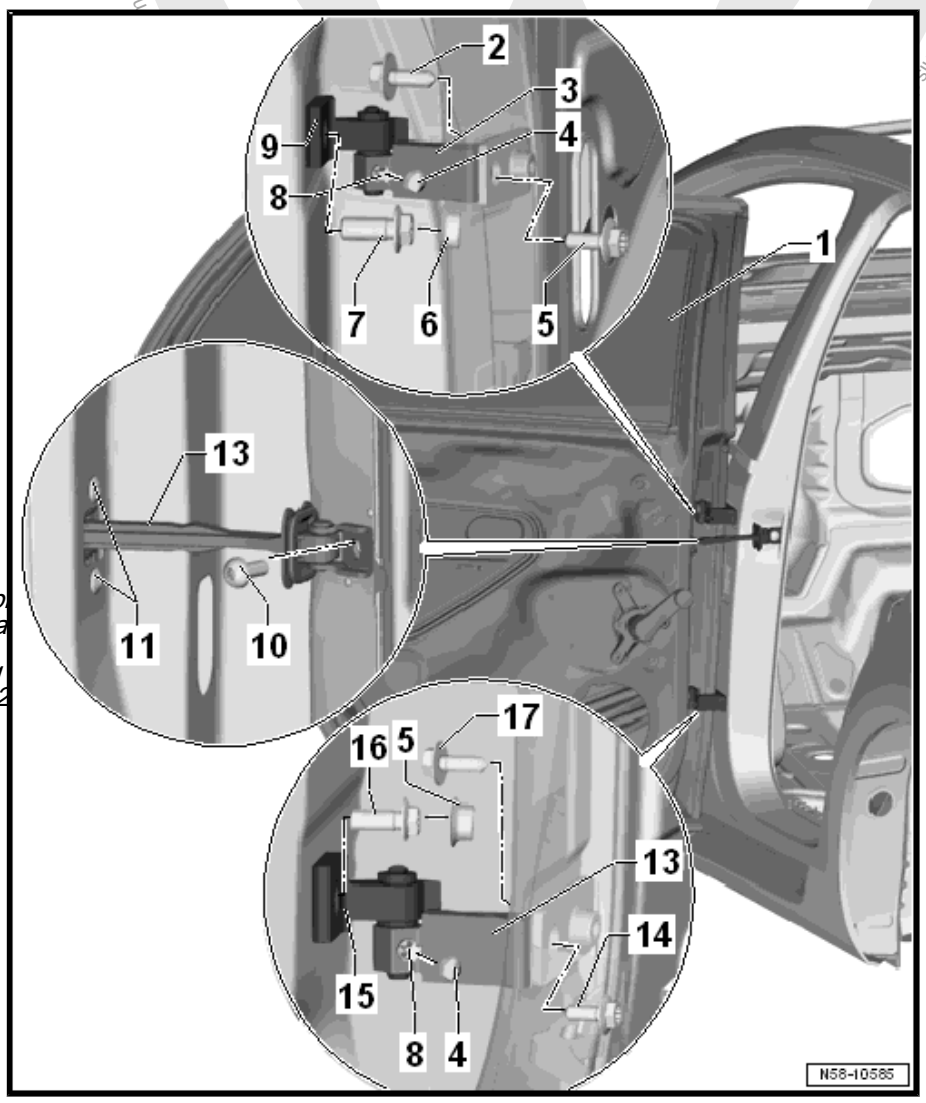
1 Door

⇒ "1.1 Assembly overview - door", page 163
⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing door", page 165
⇒ "1.3 Adjusting door", page 167
⇒ "1.4 Adjusting striker pin", page 170
⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing door arrester", page 172
⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal", page 174
⇒ "1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal", page 177

1.1 Assembly overview - door

Note

- *The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *After renewal of B-pillar, the specified torque for bolts -2 and 5- as well as for -14 and 17- changes.*



1 - Rear door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 167

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ Installed from inside vehicle.
- ❑ To remove and install, B-pillar lower trim must be removed first.
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- *After renewal of A-p specified torque cha*
- *Specified tightening renewal of A-pillar: 2*

3 - Door hinge

- ❑ The hinge is split.
- ❑ Lower part is secured to hinge upper part with bolt -8-.

4 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt -8-.

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permit-

Commercial use, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

ted. Always renew otherwise.

- ❑ Installed from inside vehicle.
- ❑ To remove and install, B-pillar lower trim must be removed first.
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- ♦ *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- ♦ *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

6 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt -7-.

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Always renew, loosening it once to adjust door is allowed.
- ❑ 50 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Connects upper part of hinge to bottom part of hinge.
- ❑ 23 Nm

9 - Door hinge

- ❑ The hinge is split.
- ❑ Upper part is secured to hinge lower part with bolt -8-.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Door arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 172

13 - Door hinge

- ❑ The hinge is split.
- ❑ Lower part is secured to hinge upper part with bolt -8-.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
- ❑ Installed from inside vehicle.
- ❑ To remove and install, B-pillar lower trim must be removed first.
- ❑ 50 Nm

Note

- ♦ *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- ♦ *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

15 - Door hinge

- ❑ The hinge is split.
- ❑ Upper part is secured to hinge lower part with bolt -8-.

16 - Bolt

- ❑ Always renew, loosening it once to adjust door is allowed.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

❑ 50 Nm

17 - Bolt

❑ Loosening once to adjust the door is permitted. Always renew otherwise.
❑ Installed from inside vehicle.
❑ To remove and install, B-pillar lower trim must be removed first.
❑ 50 Nm

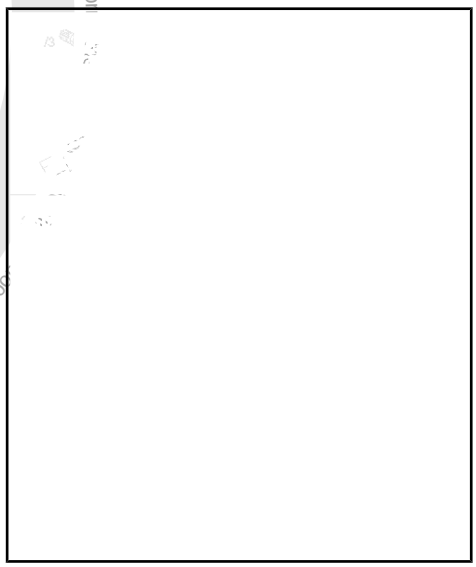
Note

- *After renewal of A-pillar the specified torque changes.*
- *Specified tightening torque after renewal of A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

1.2 Removing and installing door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Key (for door alignment) - 3320-
- Universal joint for 3320 - 3320/1-
- Bit for 3320 - 3320/2-
- Bit for 3320 - 3320/3-
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-
- Setting gauge - 3371-
- Removal wedge - 3409-

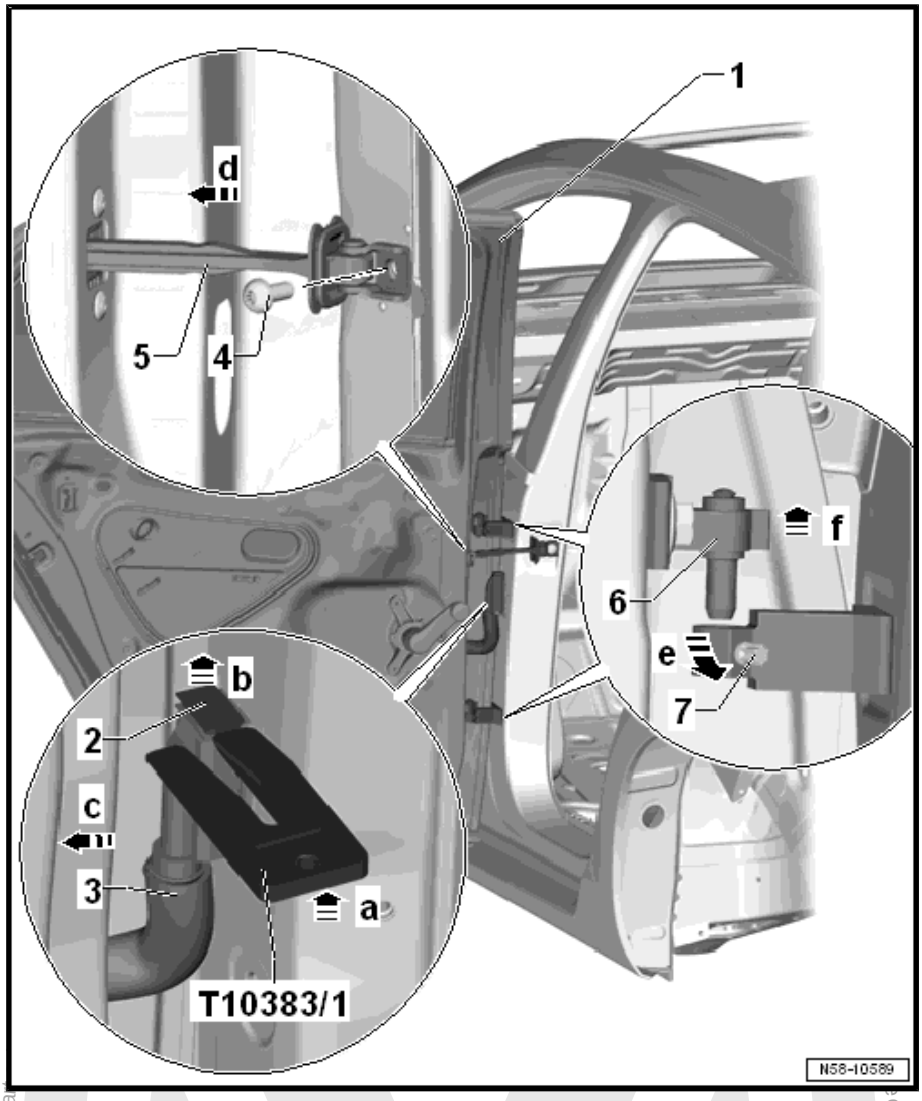


Note

The removal and installation sequence is described for the rear left door only. Removal and installation of the rear right door are similar.

Removing

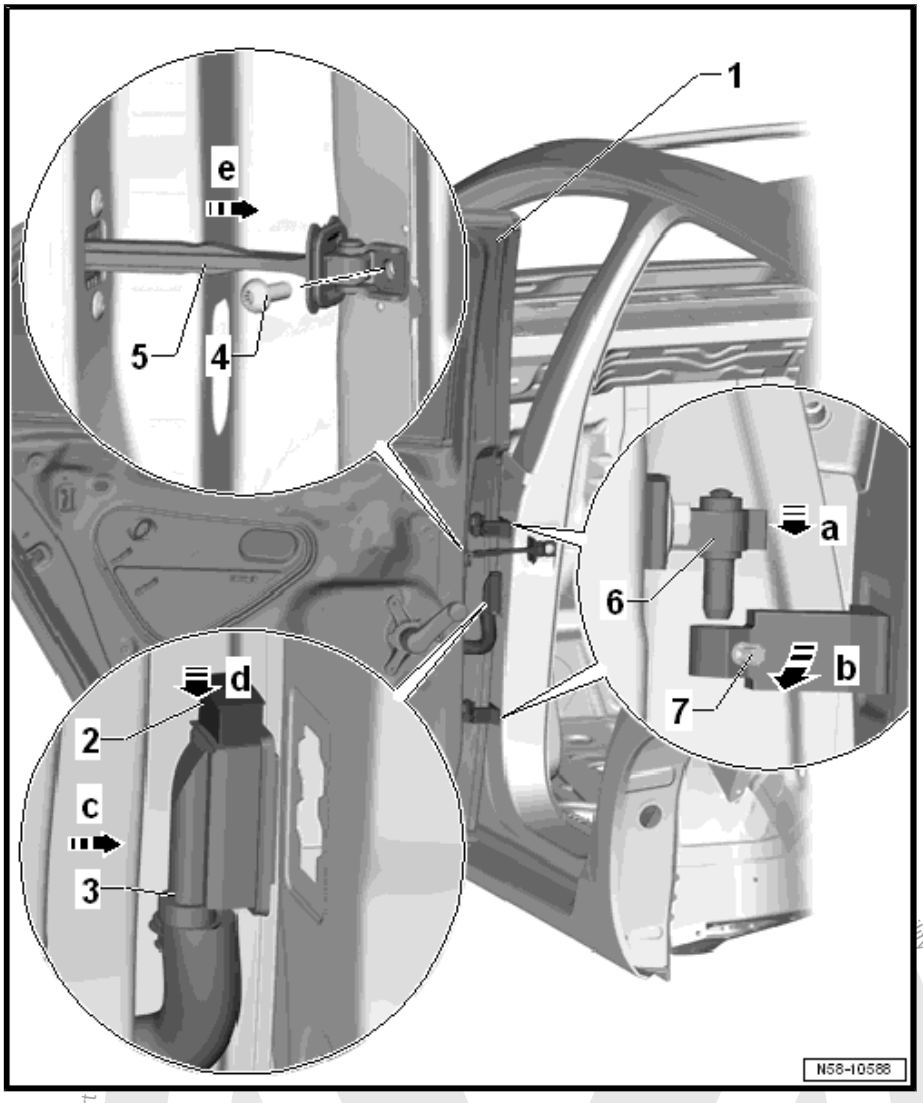
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Press wedge - T10383/1- between bellows -3- and locking element -2- -arrow a-.
– Push locking element upwards -2- with wedge - T10383/1- -arrow b- and separate electrical connector -3- from coupling station -arrow c-.
– If fitted, remove covers of bolts -7-.
– Loosen bolts -7- at hinges -arrow e-, but do not remove them.
– Unscrew bolt -4- for door retaining strap -6-.
– Push door retaining strip -6- inwards -arrow d-.
– Lift front door -1- with upper parts of hinges -6- upwards -arrow f- out of lower parts of hinges.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.



Installation is carried out in the reverse sequence of removal. To this end, the following should be observed:

- The door retaining strap -6- must have been pushed inwards -arrow d-.
- After installing rear door, the hinge arms must be flush one above the other.

– Adjust rear door -1- ⇒ page 167 .

– Observe front door shut lines -1- ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - middle .

Specified torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - door”, page 163

1.3 Adjusting door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Key (for door alignment) - 3320-

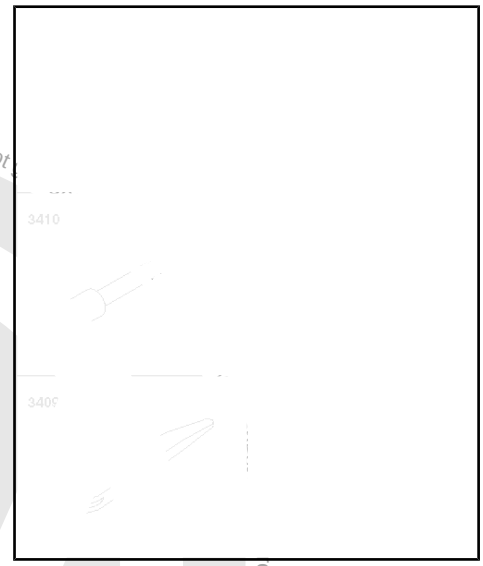
♦ Universal joint for 3320 - 3320/1-

♦ Bit for 3320 - 3320/2-

♦ Bit for 3320 - 3320/3-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

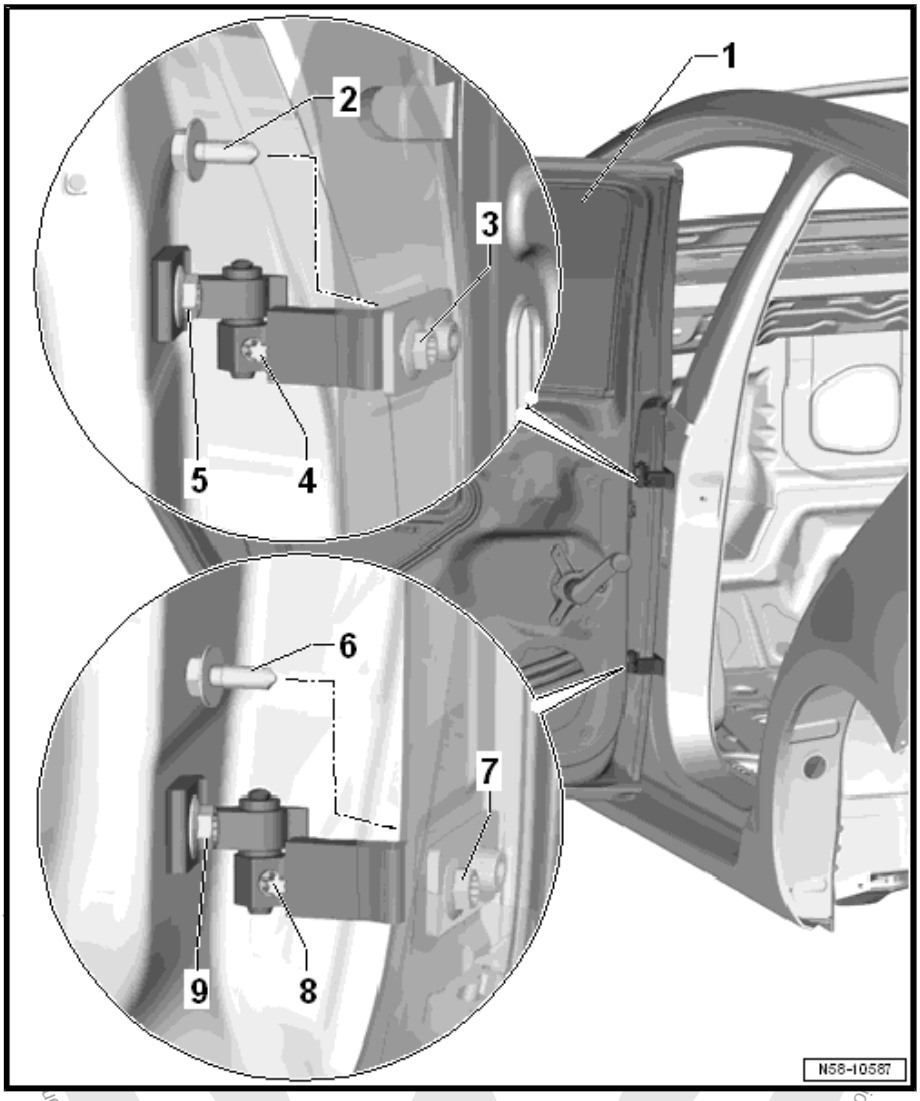
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-
- Setting gauge - 3371-
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *Only the adjustment for the left front door is described. The adjustment of the right front door is similar.*
- *Vehicle must be standing on its wheels when front door adjustment is performed.*
- *The rear door is correctly adjusted when all shut lines are even when closed. it is not protruding too far inwards or outwards, and when the contours are flush with each other.*
- *For checking gaps/shut lines refer to ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Body panel gaps/shut lines; Body - middle .*
- *After installing or alignment, carry out corrosion protection measures on hinges and screws/bolts.*



Adjusting shut lines

To be able to adjust gaps correctly, bolts -2-, -3-, -6- and -7- on B-pillar must be loosened.

– The B-pillar lower trim must be removed for bolts -3 and 7-.

Adjusting for flush fitting

In order to adjust flushness correctly, bolts -5- and -9- must be loosened.

Use door alignment tool - 3320- with appropriate bit for this.

Note

Other measures, such as raising the rear door, will prove pointless. Subsequent pressure from above will cause the door to sink again at the back.

– Adjusting striker pin ⇒ page 170 .

Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - door”, page 163

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

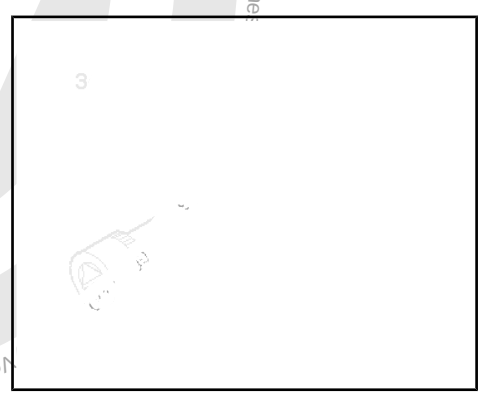
1.4 Adjusting striker pin

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



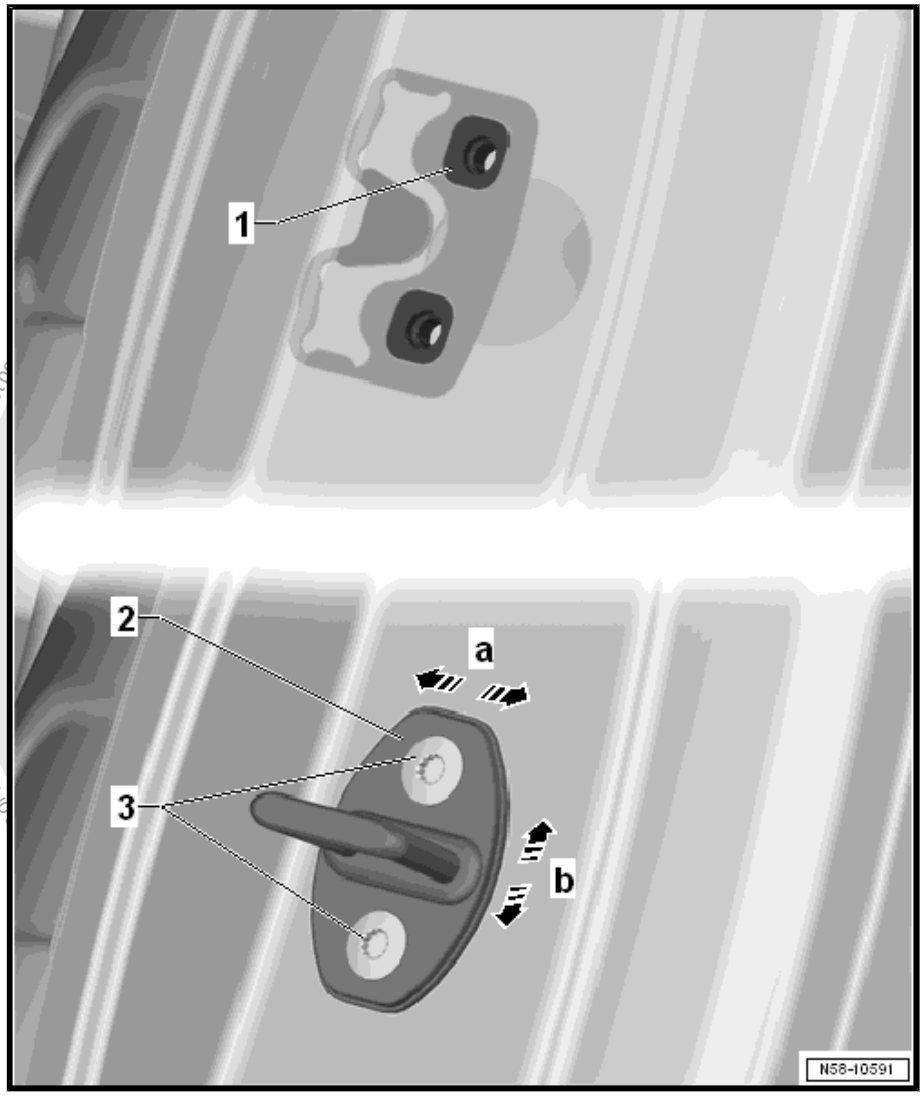
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

Note

- *Threaded plate -1- of striker pin is secured in pillar using a method which differs from the previous method.*
- *Bow outside of threaded plate is welded firmly to pillar. Webs to threaded plate are plastically deformable.*
- *Greater forced has to be applied so that position of striker pin -2- can be adjusted when bolts -3- are loosened.*



...of commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not...

Note

- *Only the adjustment for the left front door is described. The adjustment of the right front door is similar.*
- *The rear door must lock fully when closing without any additional force being required and must not have any play.*
- *The rear door must not be pushed up or down as a result of the striker pin adjustment.*

Striker pin can be used to align rear door flush with side panel (to prevent wind noise) -arrows-.

– Loosen striker -2- by loosening bolts -3- in C-pillar.

Note

Greater forced has to be applied so that position of striker pin -2- can be adjusted when bolts -3- are loosened.

– Tighten bolts -23- of striker pin -2-.

Component	Specified torques
Striker	20 Nm

1.5 Removing and installing door arrester

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

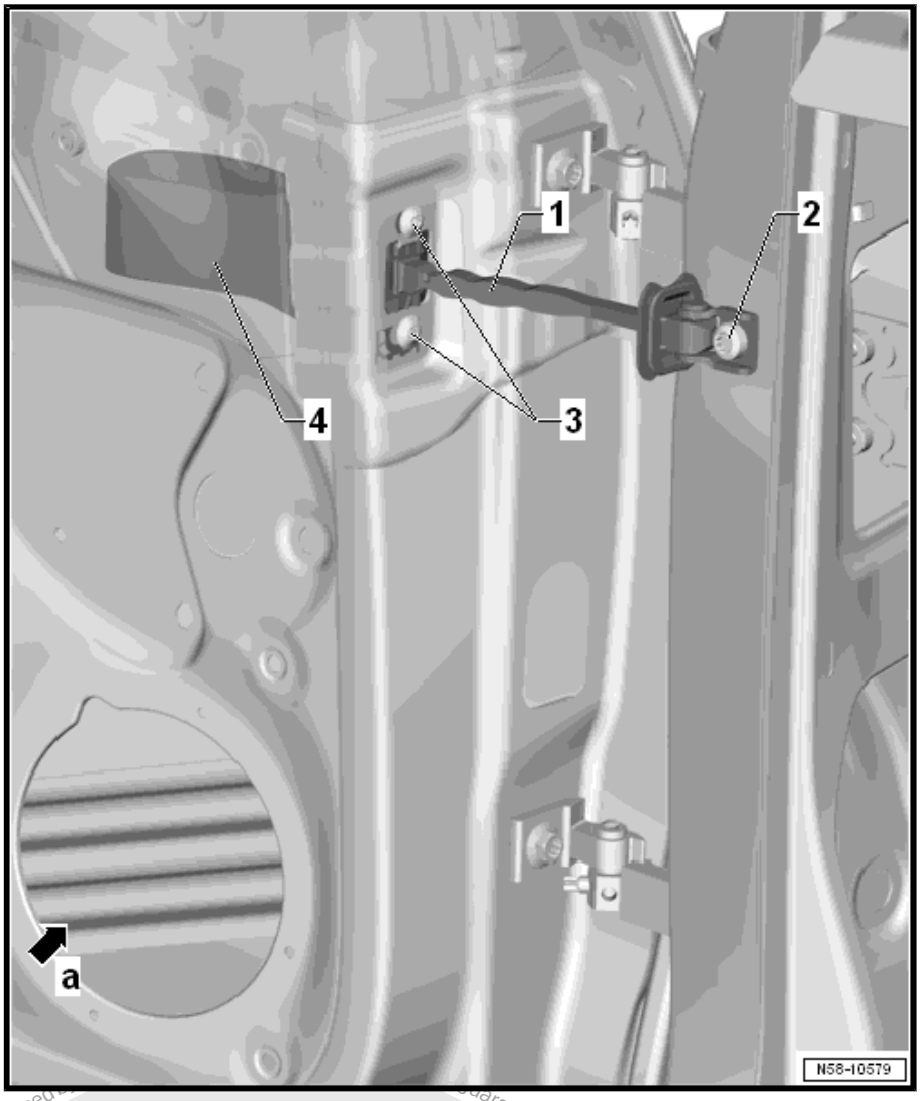


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

Removal and installation are only described for the left door retaining strap. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

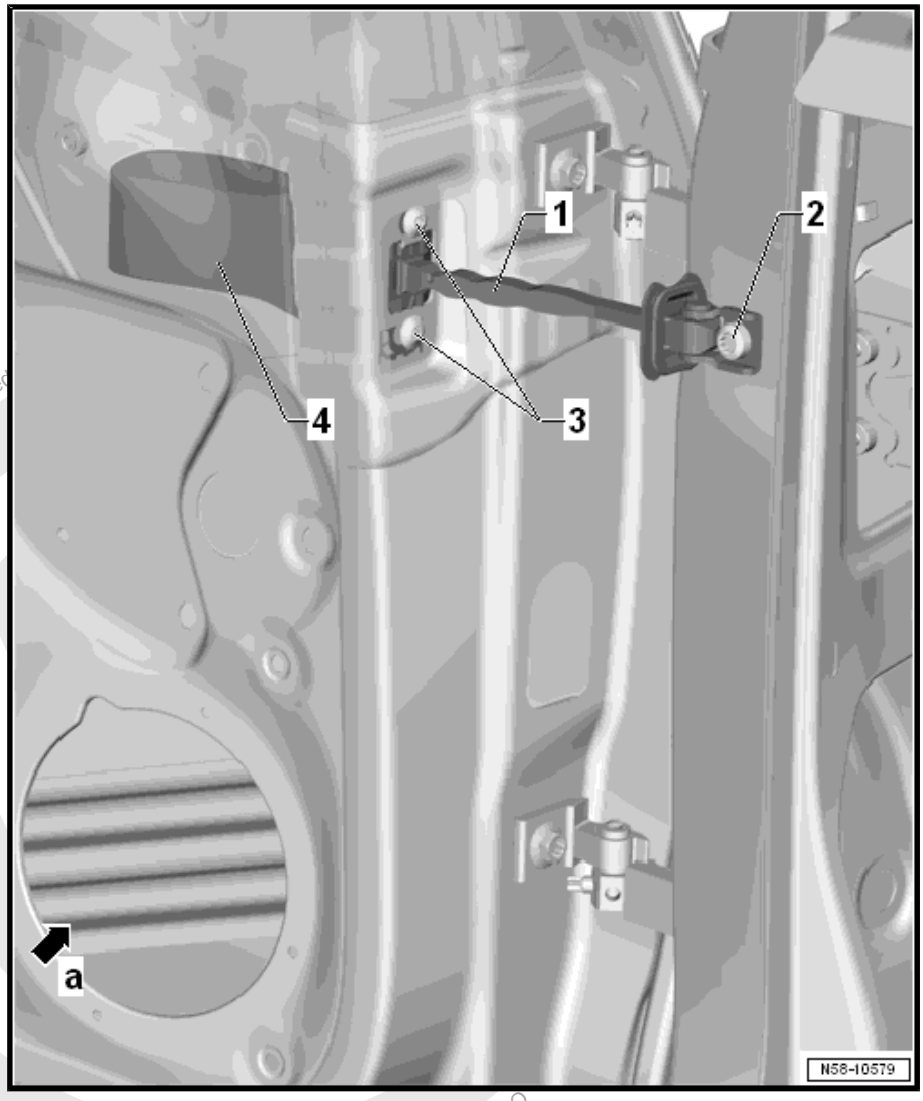
Removing



– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Pull off self-adhesive cover.
♦ For models without loudspeaker pull off self-adhesive cover and remove door retaining strap through opening for loudspeaker -arrow c-.
♦ For models with loudspeaker detach inner door cover ⇒ page 189 and remove through this opening.
– Unscrew bolt -2- on B-pillar.
– Remove screws -3- and remove door retaining strap -1-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Specified torques

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - door”, page 163

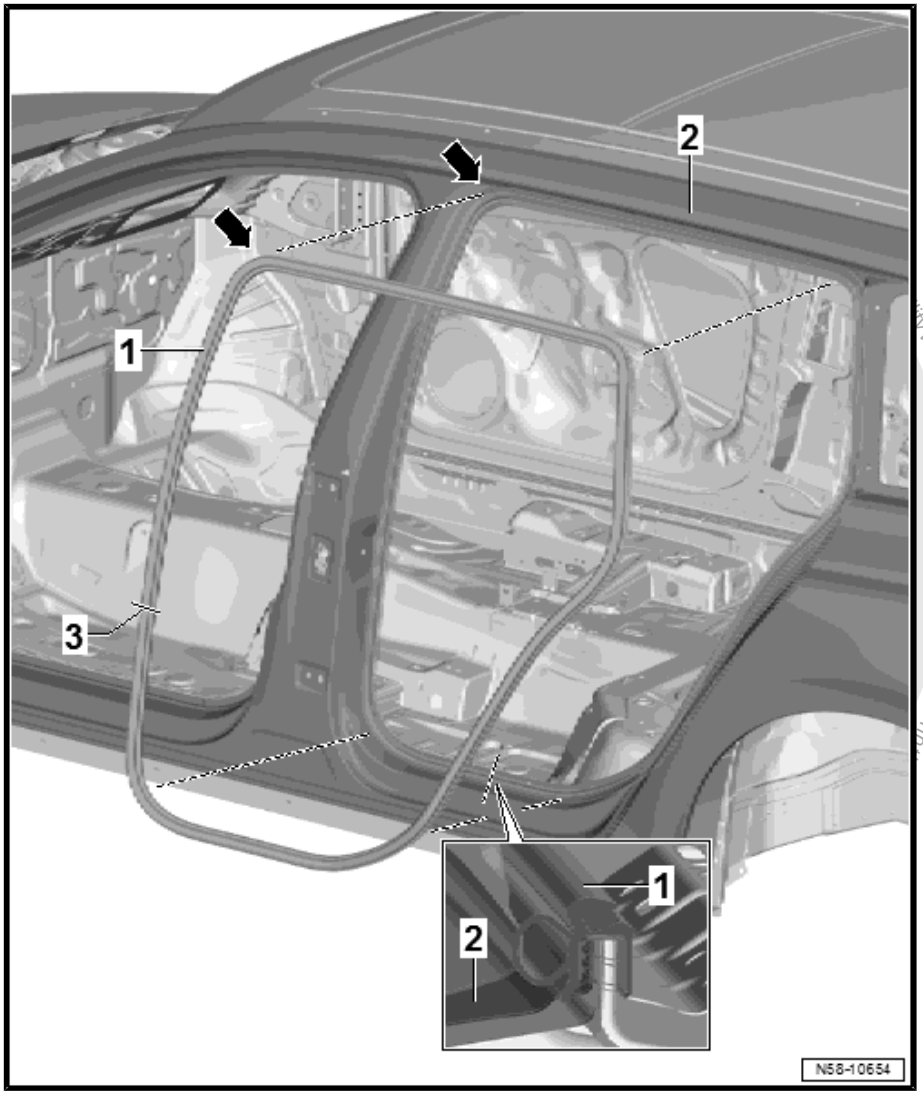
1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal

During production, a sealant is applied to the door seals, which are then placed on the door flange and rolled on.

Note

- *When removing the door seal, the sealant is distributed across the inside of the door seal. The sides are bent upwards slightly when this is being done. If the door seal is then refitted, sealing and firm seating are no longer guaranteed.*
- *Therefore, each door seal which has been removed completely must be replaced by a "tap-on seal".*
- *If a door seal has been partially removed, squeeze sides of door seal together before installing.*
- *Removal and installation are only described for the left inner door seal. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *For reasons of clarity, the rear door is shown removed.*

Removing



– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing sill panel trim .

www.with respect to the correctness of information

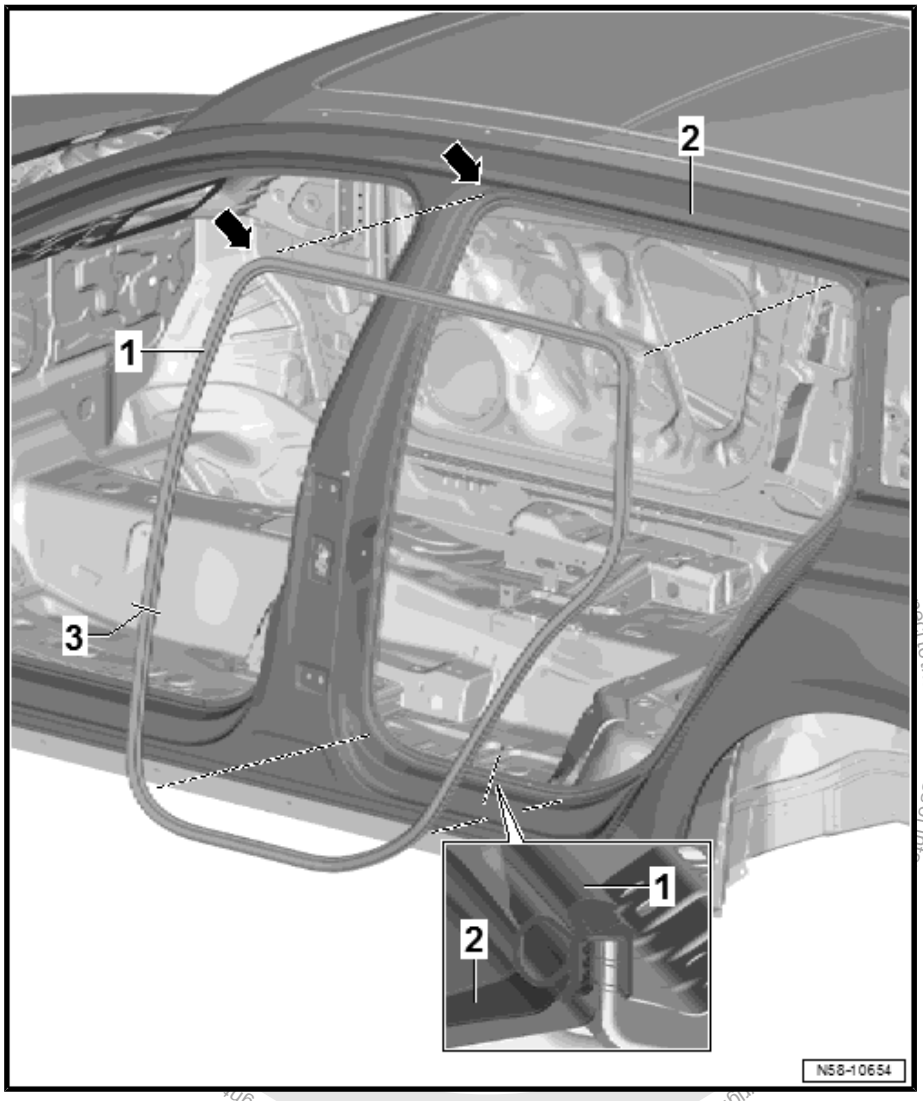
– To remove inner door seal, remove pillar trims as required ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Overview of fitting locations – trims, interior .

– Pull door seal -1- off body flange -2-.

Installing

Note

Do not kink vulcanised point -3-.



Protected by copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Start installing door seal -1- at top radius of door aperture -arrows-.

– Align vulcanised point -3- between hinges.

– Press door seal -1- onto body flange -2-.

– Install pillar trims ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior .

– Install sill panel strip ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing sill panel strip .

1.7 Removing and installing outer door seal

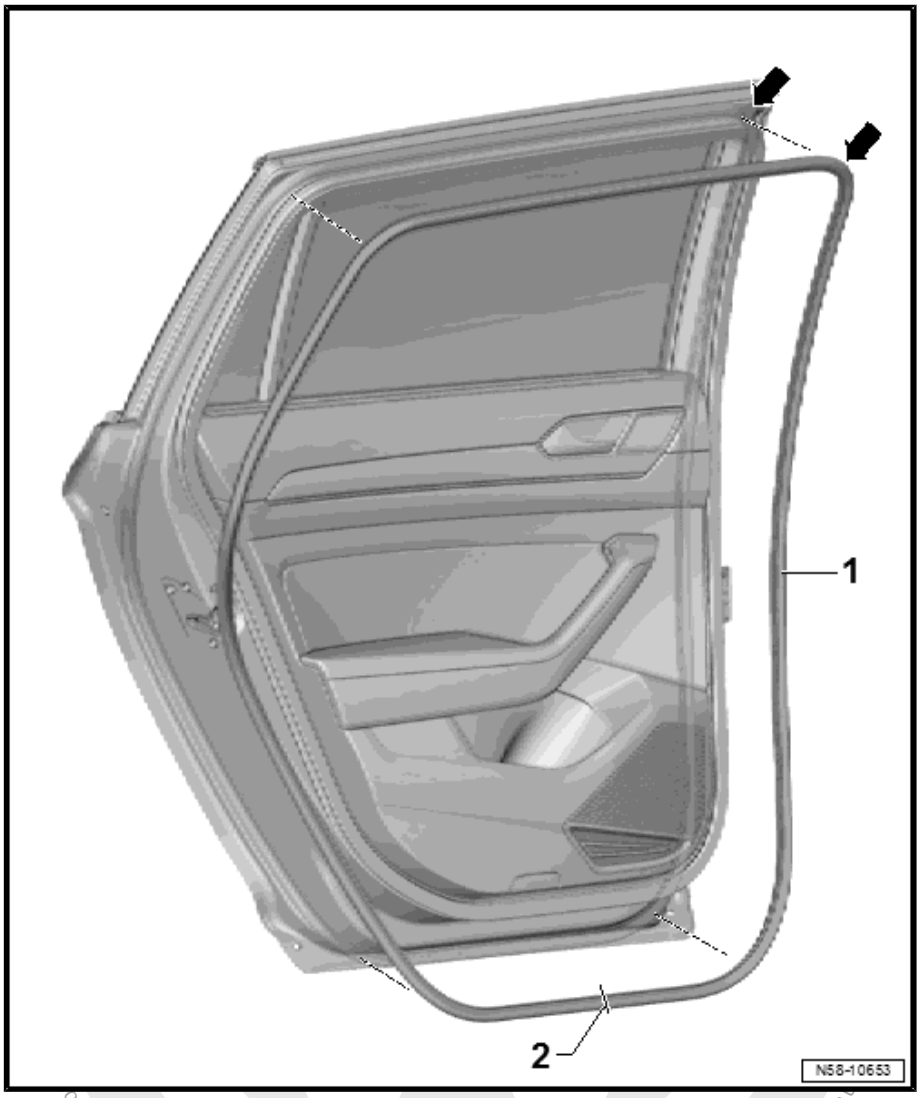
⇒ “1.7.1 Removing and installing outer door seal”, page 177

⇒ “1.7.2 Removing and installing door seal”, page 178

1.7.1 Removing and installing outer door seal

Note

- *Removal and installation are only described for the left inner door seal. The removal and installation of the right inner door seal are similar.*
- *Remove backing only immediately before installation. Working temperature approx. 20°C.*



Removing

– Pull door seal -1- off door.

Installing

– Remove remaining adhesive residue with eraser disc for adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. This document.

– Immediately before bonding door seal, clean bonding surface thoroughly with adhesive remover D 002 000 10.

• Bonding surfaces must be free of dust and grease and there should be no adhesive residues.

– Vulcanised point -2- of door seal must be in centre area of side member.

– Pull off protective backing, and start fitting door seal -1- in upper rear radius -arrows- of door. Do not pull door seal excessively to avoid stretching seal.

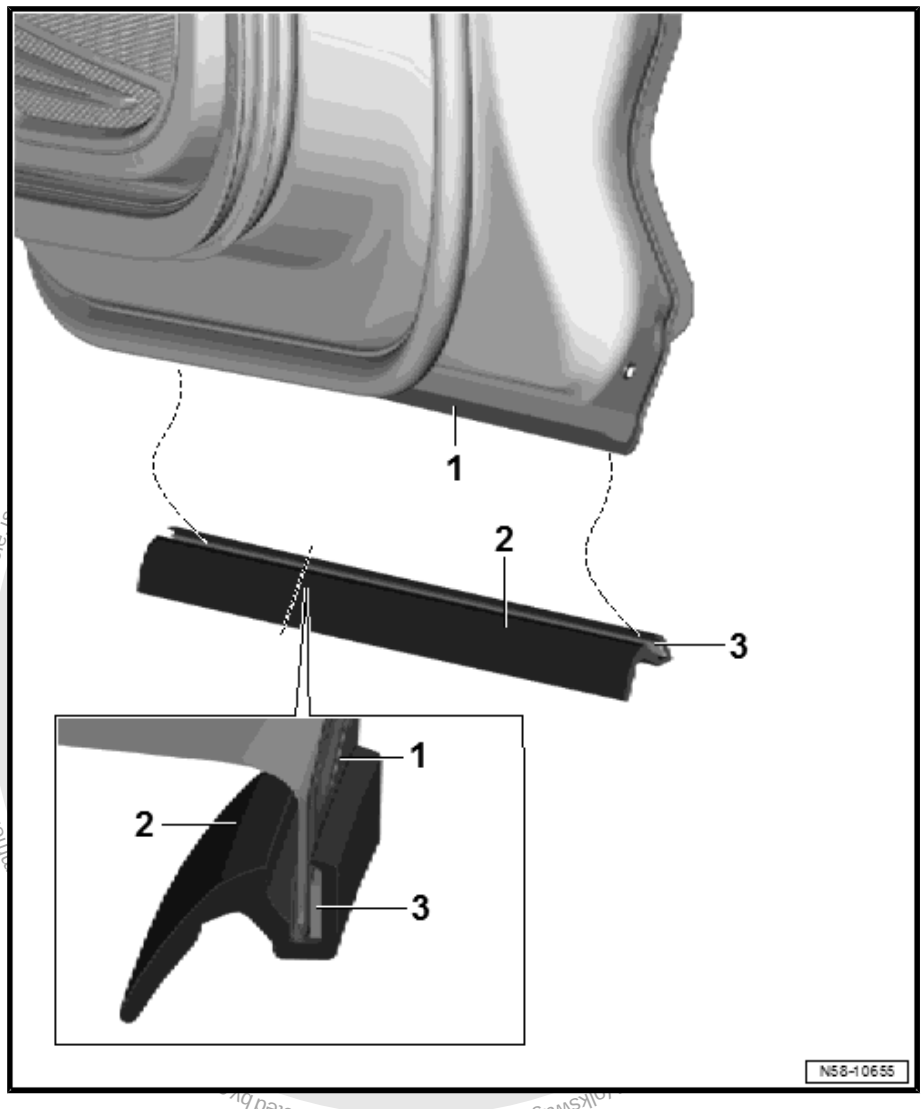
– Press bonding surface of door seal firmly onto door -1- all around using roller - 3356- .

1.7.2 Removing and installing door seal

Note

♦ *The removal and installation sequence is described only for the right door seal. The removal and installation of the left door seal are similar.*

♦ *Remove backing only immediately before installation. Working temperature approx. 20°C.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Pull door seal -1- off door.

Installing

– Remove remaining adhesive residue with eraser disc for adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Immediately before bonding door seal, clean bonding surface thoroughly with adhesive remover D 002 000 10.

• Bonding surfaces must be free of dust and grease and there should be no adhesive residues.

– Vulcanised point -2- of door seal must be in centre area of side member.

– Pull off protective backing, and start fitting door seal in upper rear radius -arrow- of door. Do not pull door seal excessively to avoid stretching seal.

– Press bonding surface of door seal -3- firmly onto door -1- all around using roller - 3356- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Door components

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - door components”, page 180

⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 183

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 183

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 186

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover”, page 189

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing striker pin”, page 191

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle”, page 193

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing door handle”, page 198

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing door handle bracket”, page 201

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing door lock”, page 204

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing window channel”, page 208

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing outer window slot seal”, page 211

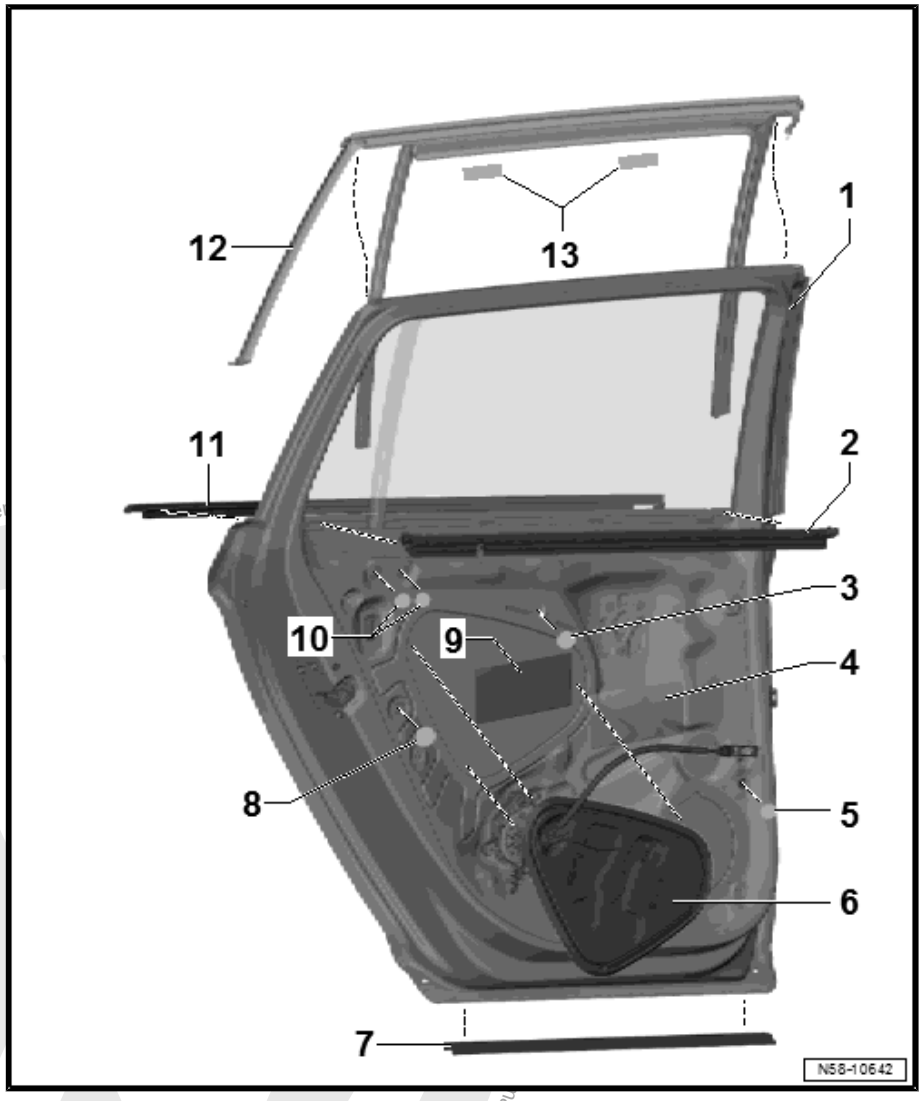
⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing inner window slot seal”, page 213

2.1 Assembly overview - door components

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.



1 - Rear door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 167

2 - Inner window slot seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

3 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ Diameter 28 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.

4 - Dampers

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:

– Cut to size if required, 250 mm x 160 mm Position as shown in illustration.

– Warm using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- and push on to outer door panel with force.

5 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ Diameter 32 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.

6 - Inner door cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 189

7 - Door seal

8 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ Diameter 42 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.

9 - Dampers

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:

– Cut to size if required, 250 mm x 160 mm Position as shown in illustration.

– Warm using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- and push on to outer door panel with force.

10 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Diameter 28 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.

11 - Outer window slot seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

Copyright by Volkswagen. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen.

12 - Window channel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

13 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 15 mm x 50 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.

2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

2 - Hexagon nut

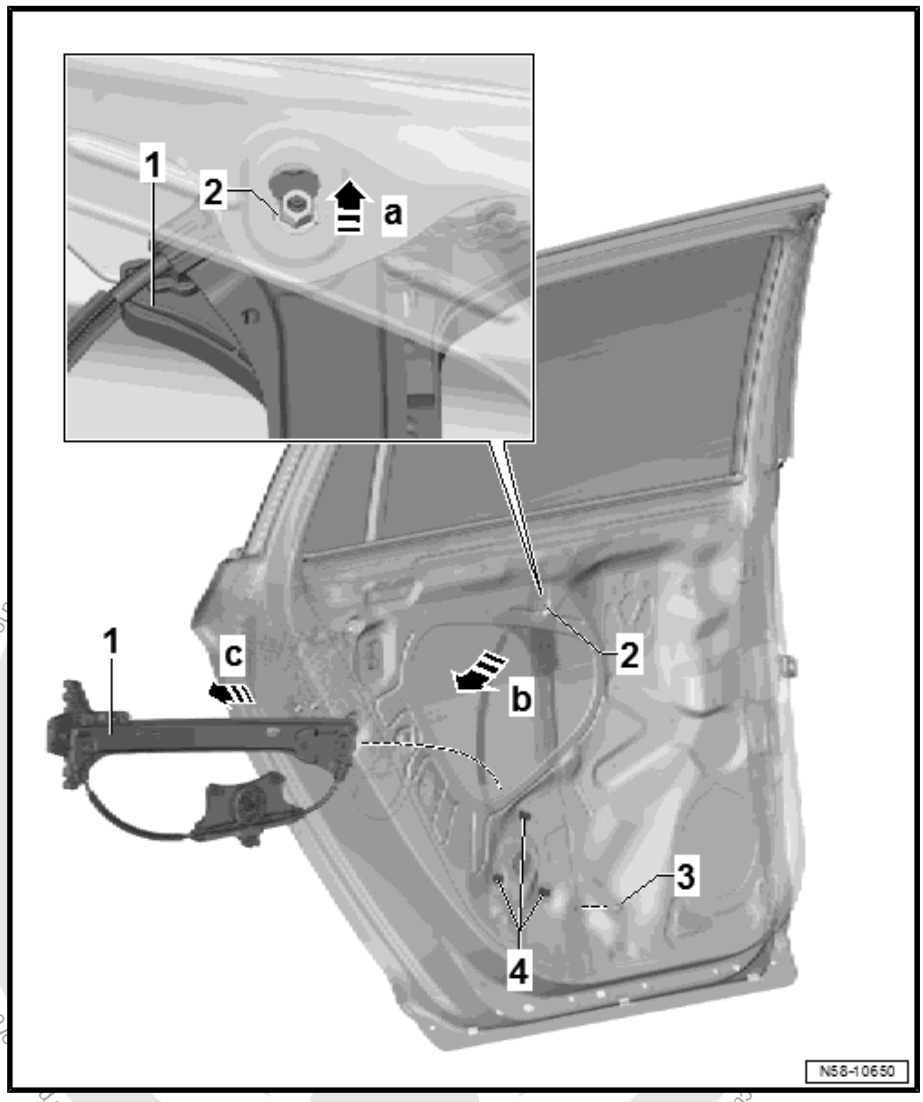
- ❑ Qty. 1 top
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Hexagon nut

- ❑ Qty. 1 bottom
- ❑ 6 Nm

4 - Retaining hooks for cable drum

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ Mounting for window regulator motor
- ❑ Specified torque of window regulator motor bolts: 3 Nm

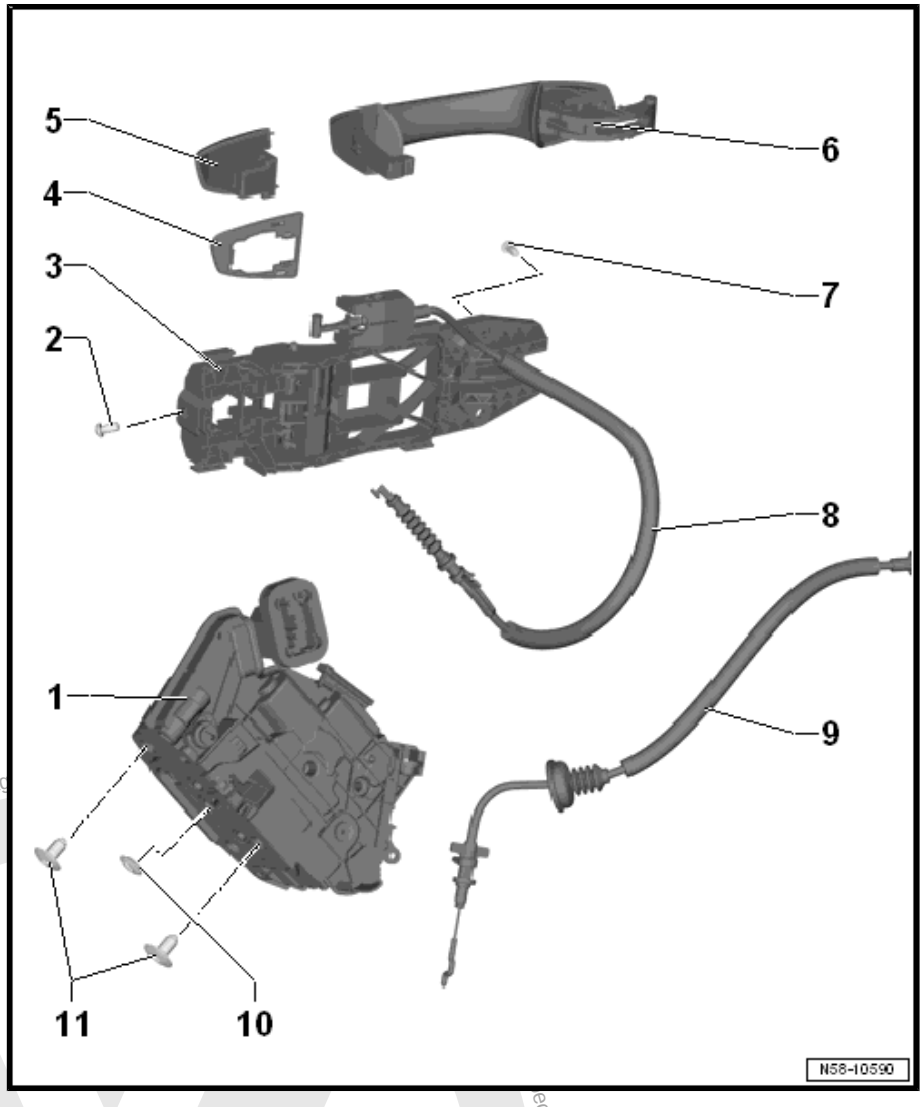


Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.



1 - Door lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 204

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ For locking bar in door handle bracket.

3 - Bearing bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 201

4 - Carrier

5 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

6 - Door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Bearing plate is loosened from door when this bolt is loosened

8 - Bowden cable

- ❑ From door lock -1- to door handle bracket -3-

9 - Bowden cable

- ❑ From inner door handle to door lock -1-
- ❑ With grommet to passage on cover.

10 - Cover

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 18 Nm

Note

The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are unscrewed.

2.4 Removing and installing window regulator motor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



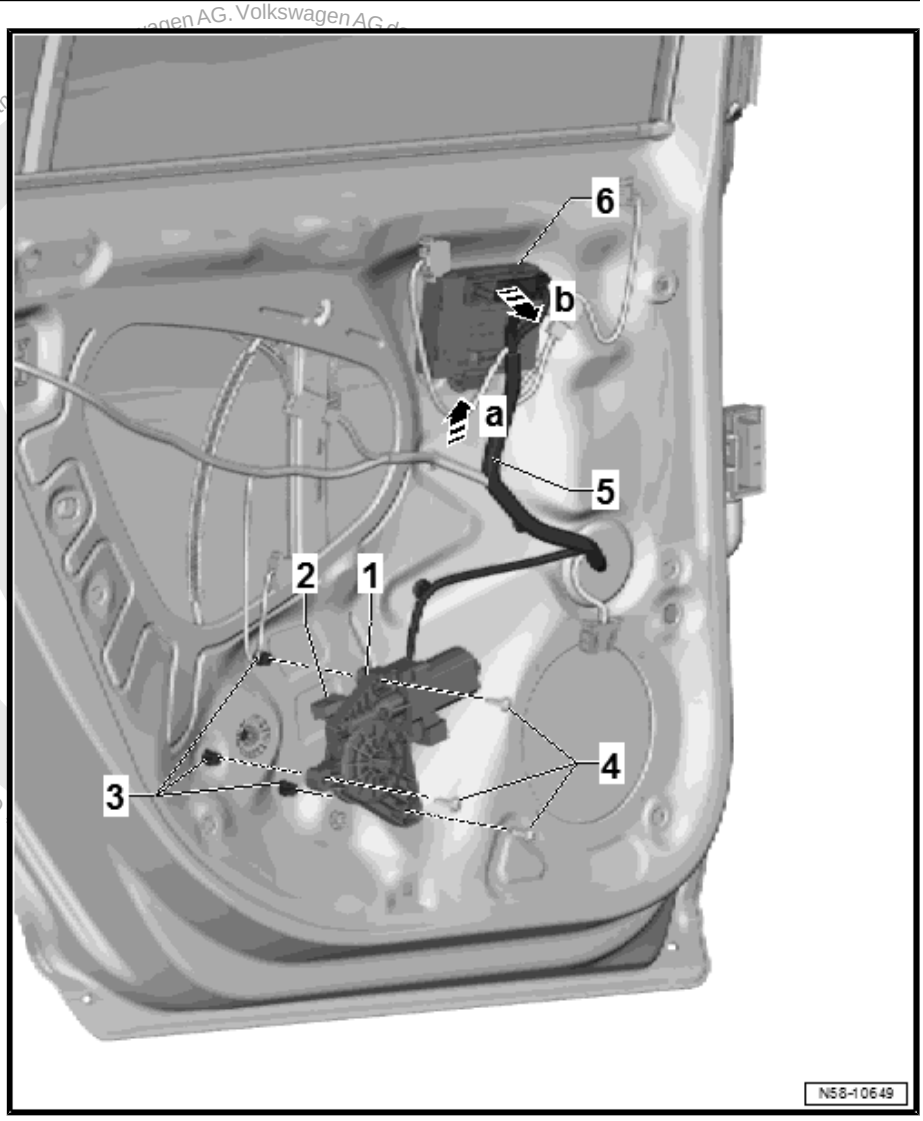
Note

- *Removal and installation are only described for the left window regulator motor. Removal and installation of the right window regulator motor are similar.*
- *The door control unit -6- is clipped into door separated from window regulator motor.*

Removing

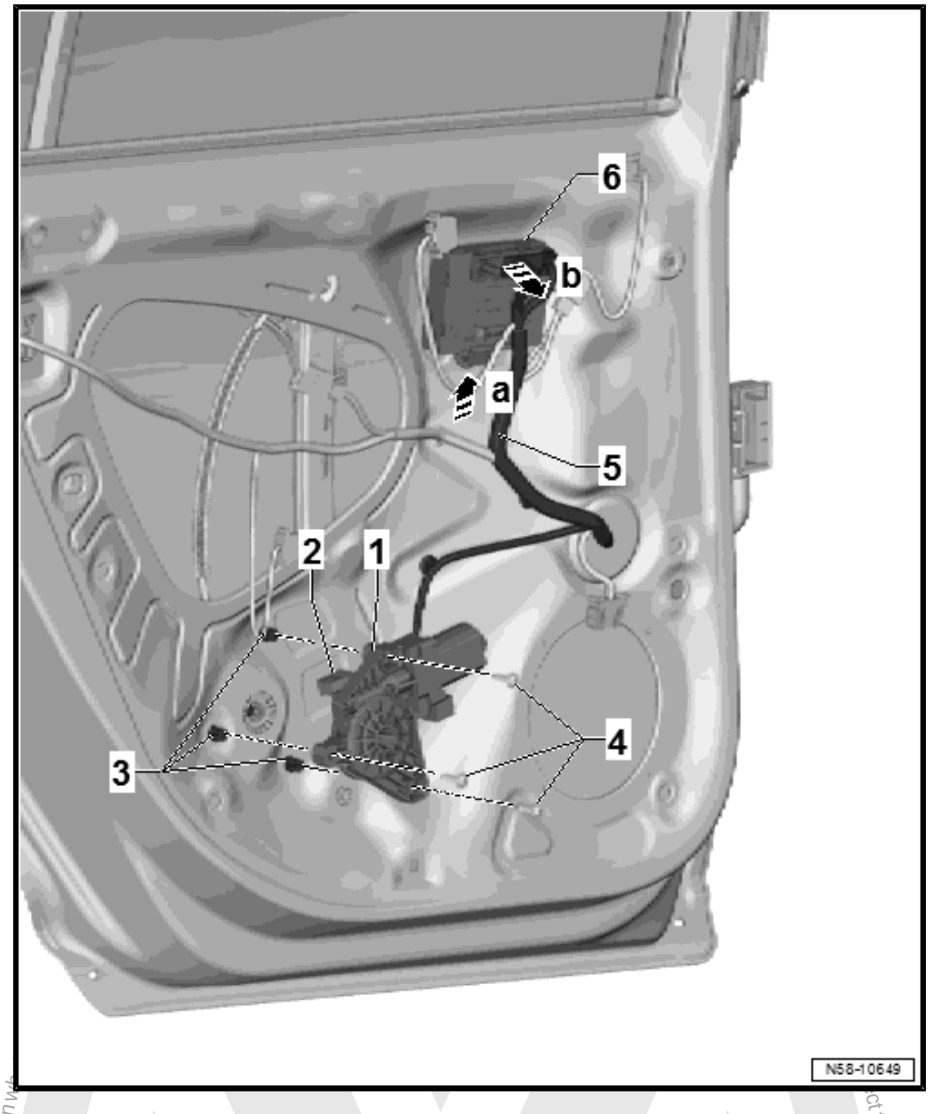
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Tape up door window to prevent it from sliding down.
– Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers. Withdraw ignition key.
– Separate electrical connector -2-.
– Remove bolts -4- (qty. 3).
– Remove window regulator motor -1- from mounting brackets of cable drum -3-.

Installing



– Slot window regulator motor -1- onto mounting brackets of cable drum -3-. Move door window up and down slightly so that the splines between window regulator motor and cable drum engage more easily.
– Tighten bolts -4-.
– Connect connector -2-.
– A new window regulator motor must be coded using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
– The work procedure and notes on the automatic window raising and lowering system as well as on the excess-force limitation feature can be found in ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Specified torques

♦ Door handle bracket
⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator”, page 182

2.5 Removing and installing window regulator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Commercial purposes or in whole or in part not permitted. Protected by copyright. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.

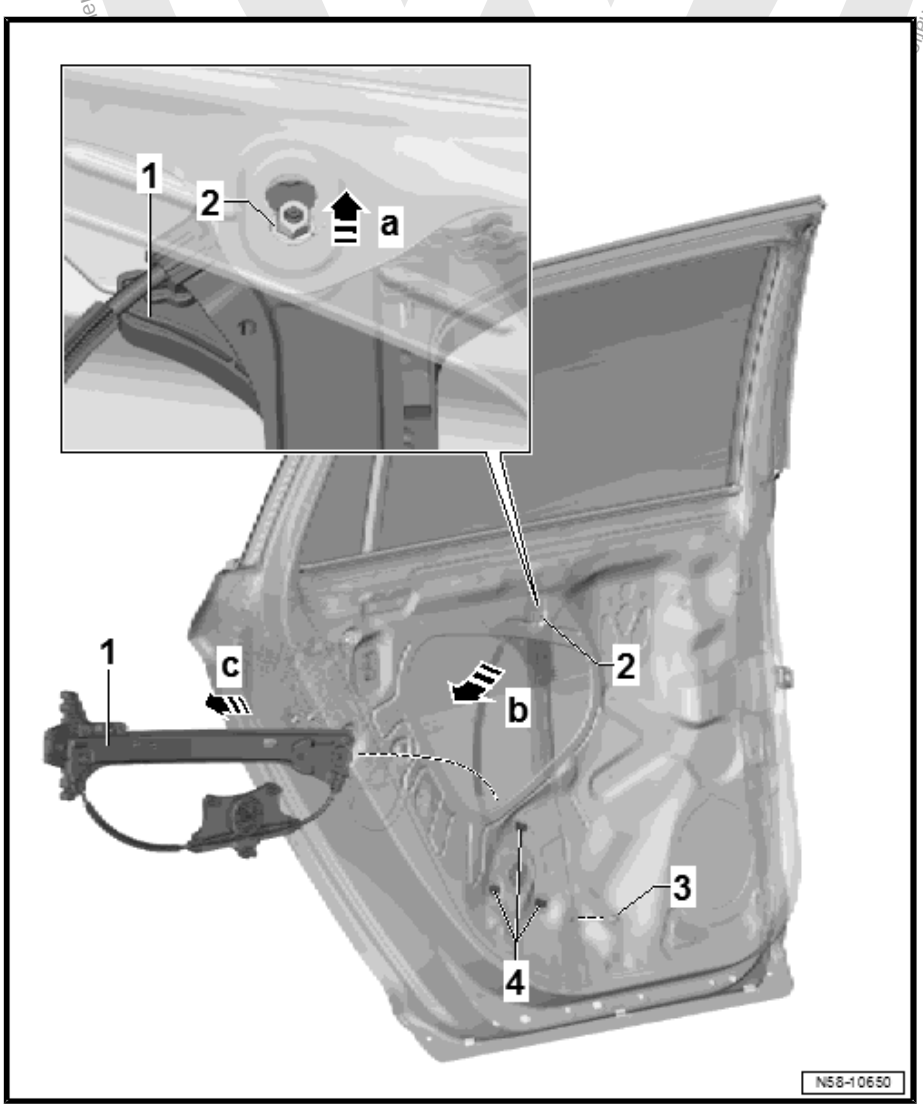
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left window regulator. Removal and installation of the right window lifter mechanism are similar.

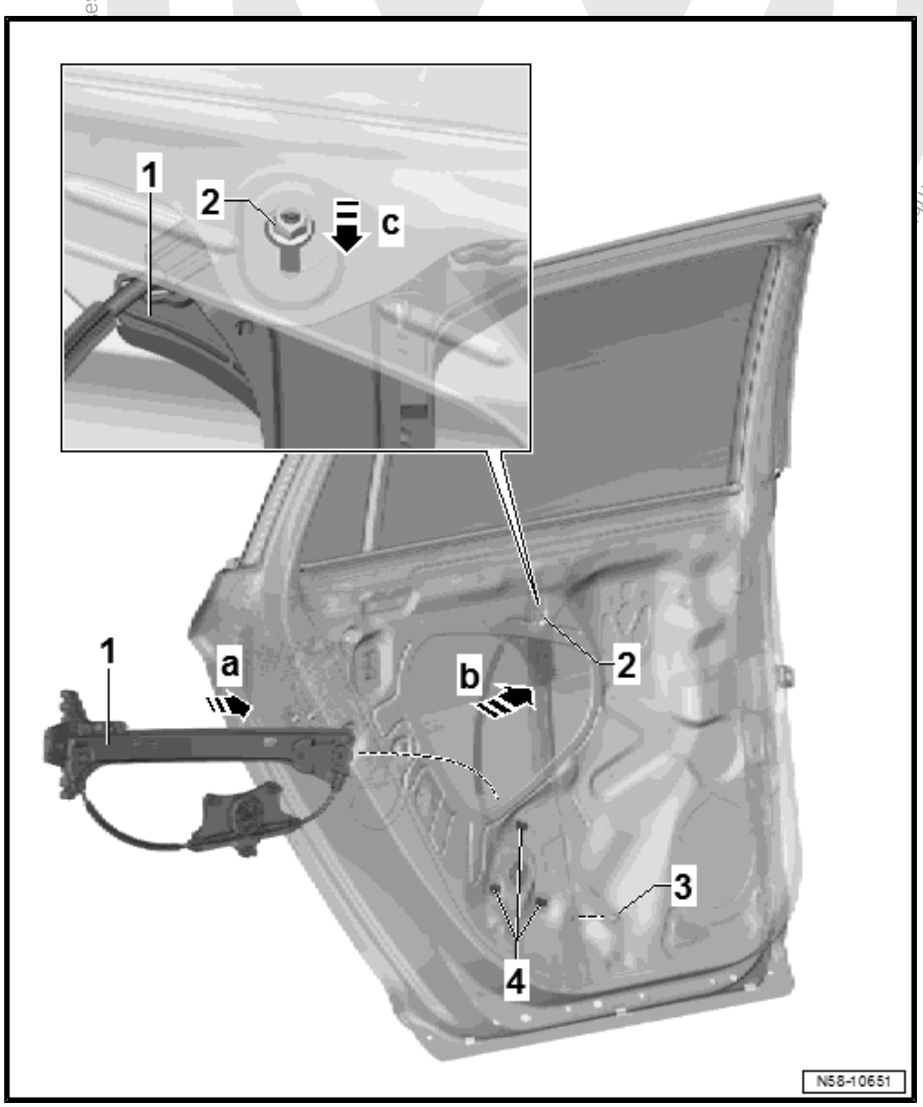
Removing



...ercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen A...
...respect to the correctness of information...

– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Detach door window from window regulator. Do not remove it ⇒ page 333 .
– Move door window upwards, and secure it in place.
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 183 .
– Release locking hook of cable drum -4- and insert into door.
– Unscrew lower hexagon nut -3- and insert threaded studs of window regulator into door.
– Loosen upper hexagon nuts -2-, do not remove.
– Slightly push window regulator upwards in door -arrow a-, and guide it into door.
– Turn window regulator -1- 90° -arrow b-, and remove it through opening in door -arrow c-.

Installing



– Insert window regulator -1- through opening in door -arrow a-, and swing it to installation position -arrow b-.

es, in part or in whole, not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t

– Insert studs of window regulator into inner door panel, and guide them downwards -arrow c-.
– Tighten hexagon nuts -2 and 3-.
– Press cable drum against door inner part until locking devices -4- engage audibly.
– Install window regulator motor ⇒ page 183
– Installing door window

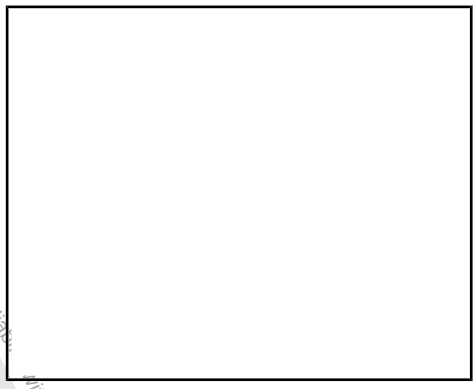
Specified torques

♦ Window regulator
⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - window regulator”, page 182

2.6 Removing and installing inner door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

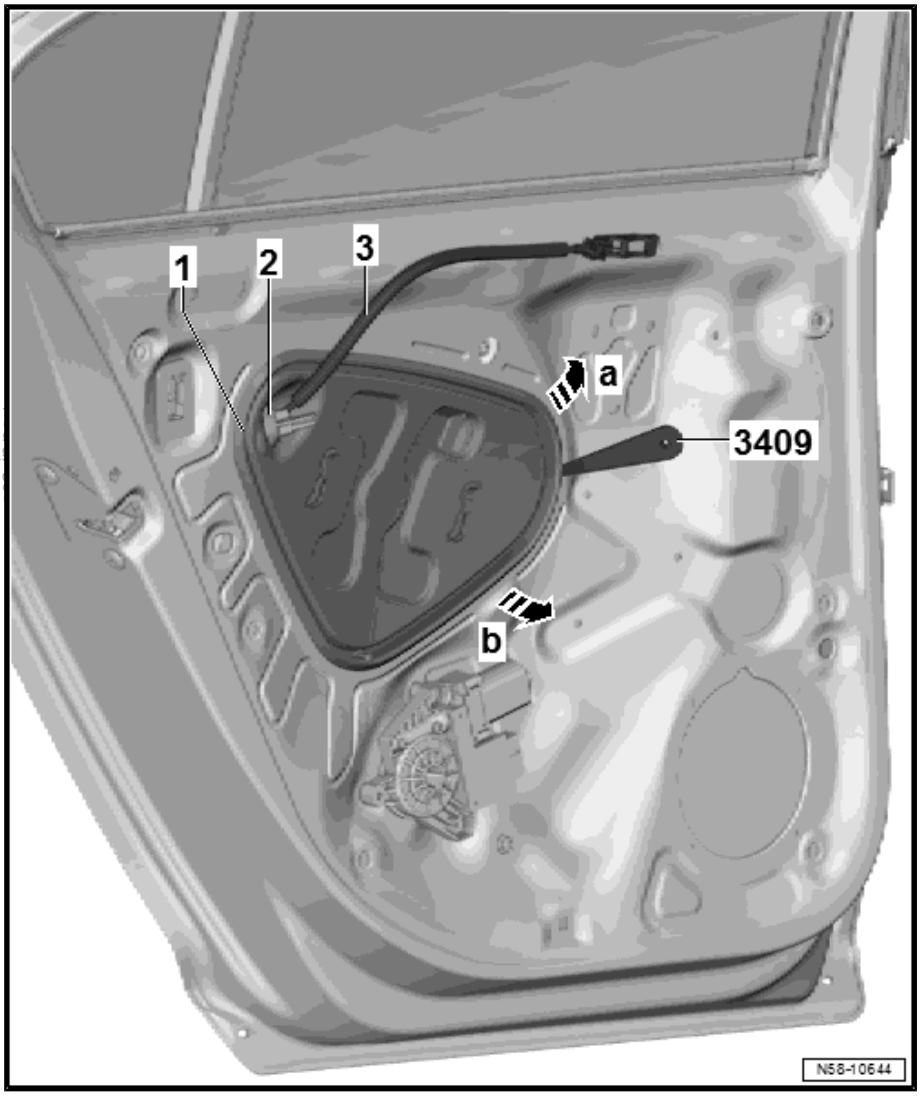


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left cover. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

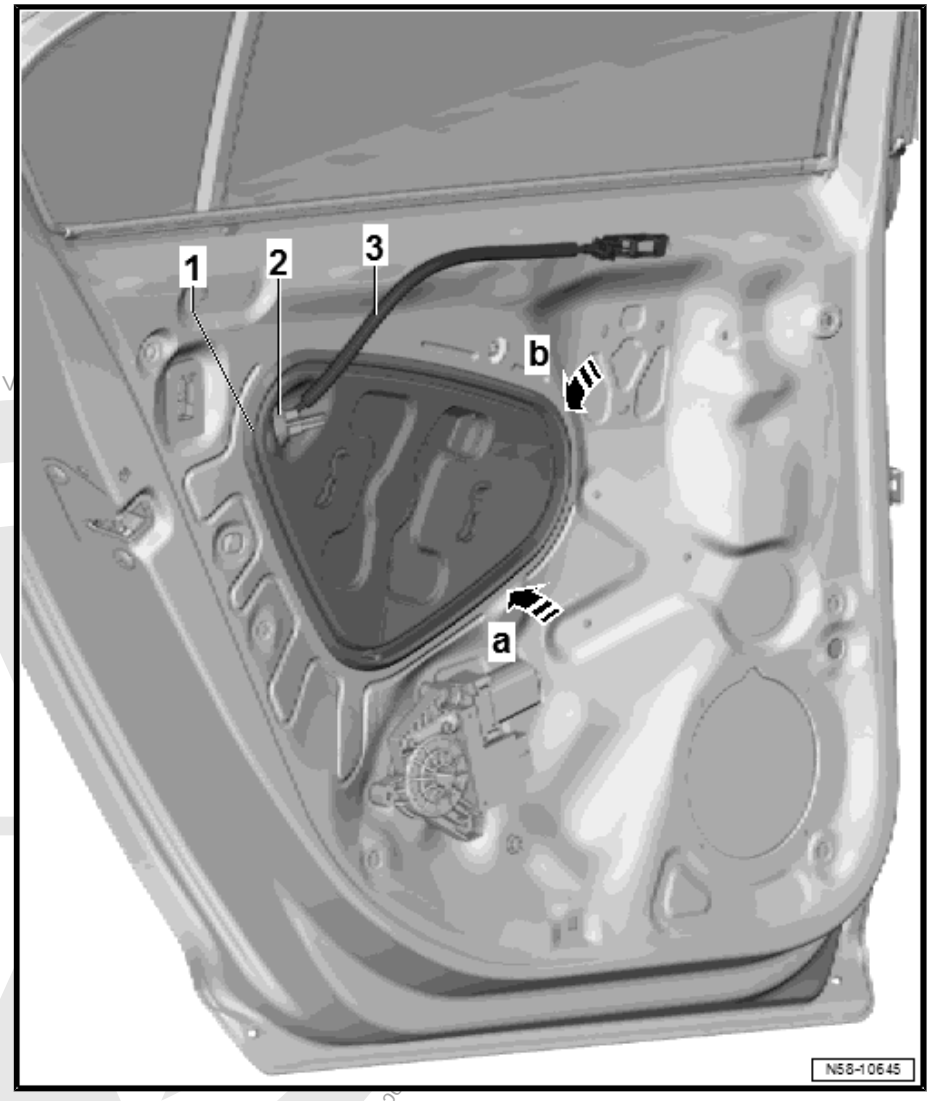


– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Lift cover -1- at front -arrow a-.
– Pull cover -1- downwards out of door -arrow b-.

Note

If required for subsequent work, pull cable -3- with grommet -2- out of cover -1-. Separate connector at grommet (if there is one).

Installing



– Fit cable -3- together with grommet -2- into cover -1-.
– Attach grommet -2- to cover -1-.
– Insert cover -1- into door -2- -arrow a-.
– Engage cover -1- around circumference -arrow b-.

Note

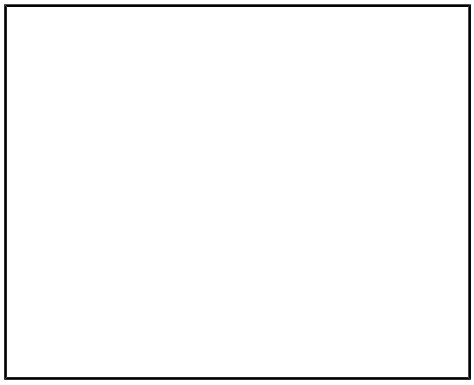
- *Check proper seating of cover by pressing with fingers around circumference.*
- *If fitted, join electrical connector at grommet.*

2.7 Removing and installing striker pin

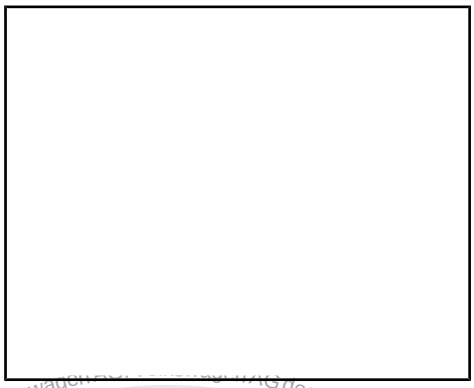
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



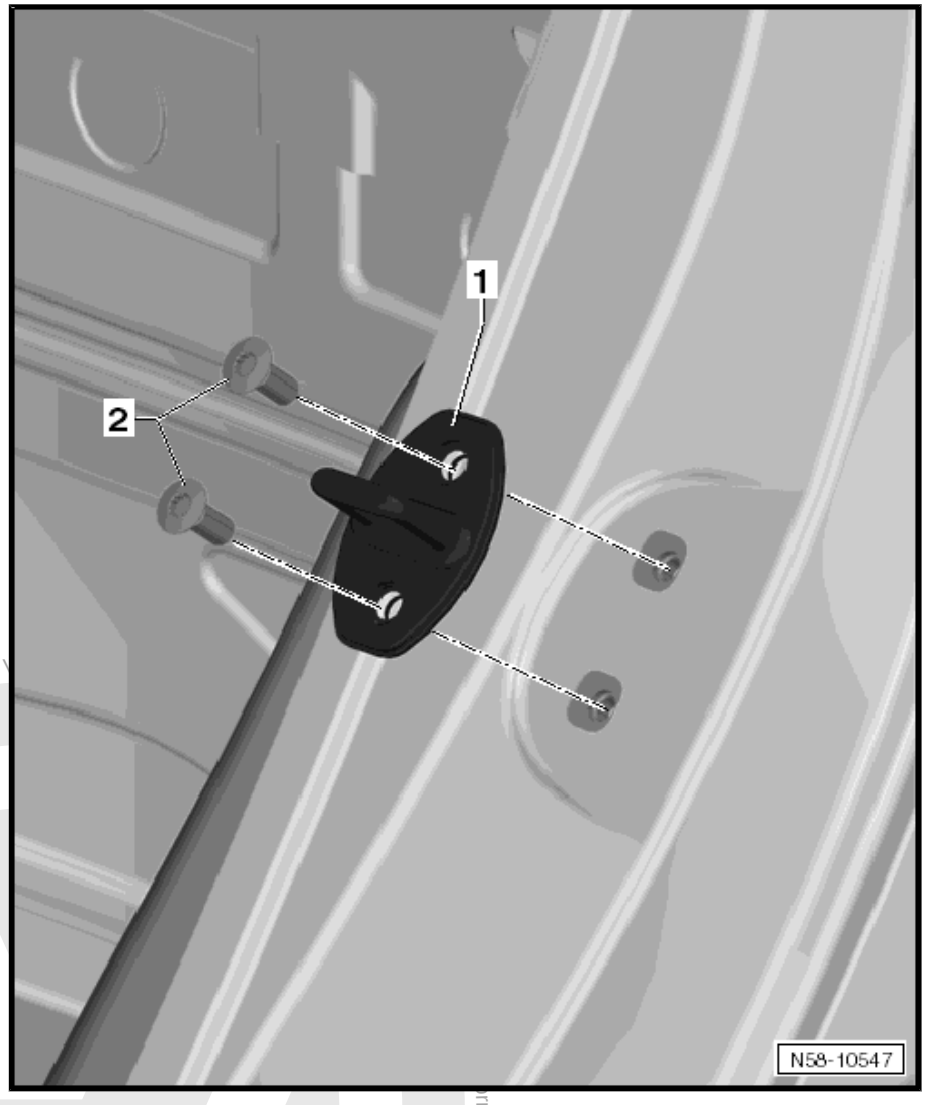
- Multipoint extended bit - 3410-



Note

Removal and installation are described only for the right door striker pin. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove bolts -2- and remove striker -1-.

Installing

– Position striker pin -1- on B-pillar -3- and tighten bolts -2-.

– Adjust striker pin ⇒ page 170 .

	Component	Specified torques
Striker	20 Nm	

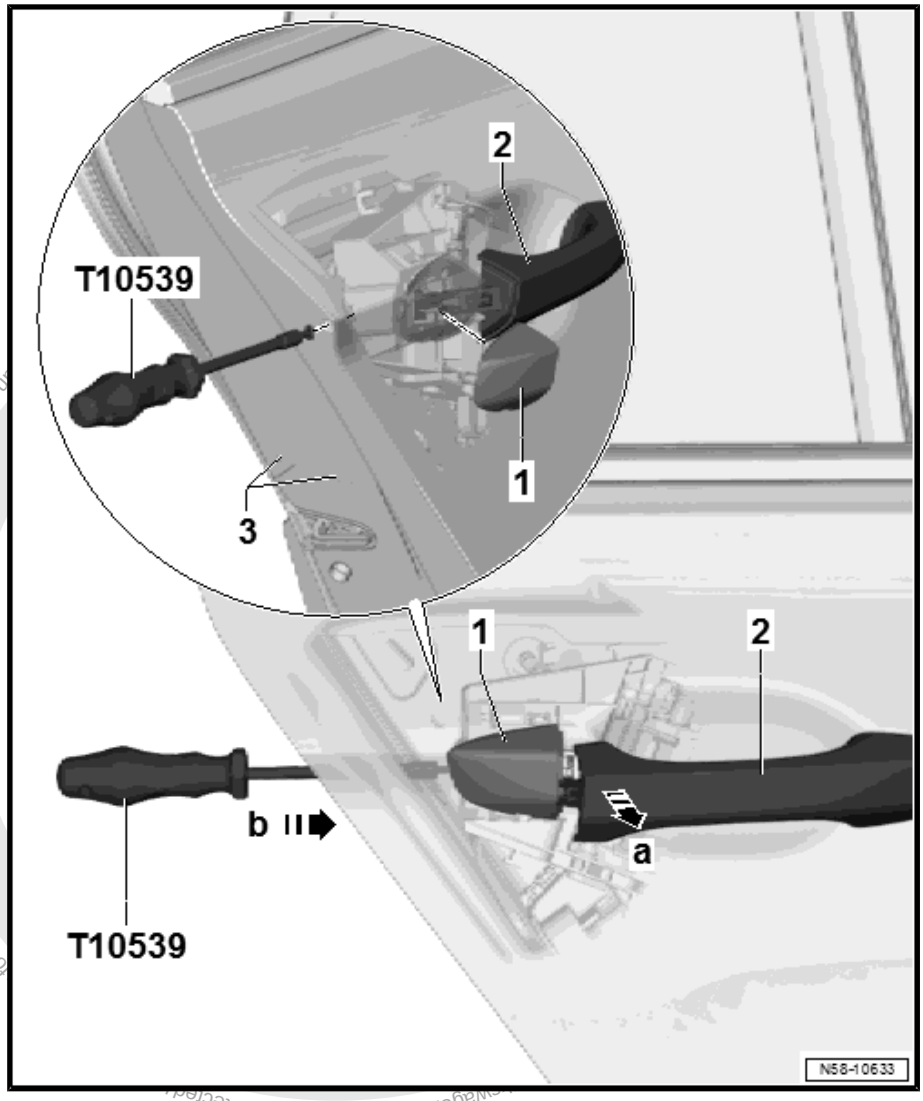
2.8 Removing and installing cap on door handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Disassembly and assembly tool - T10539-

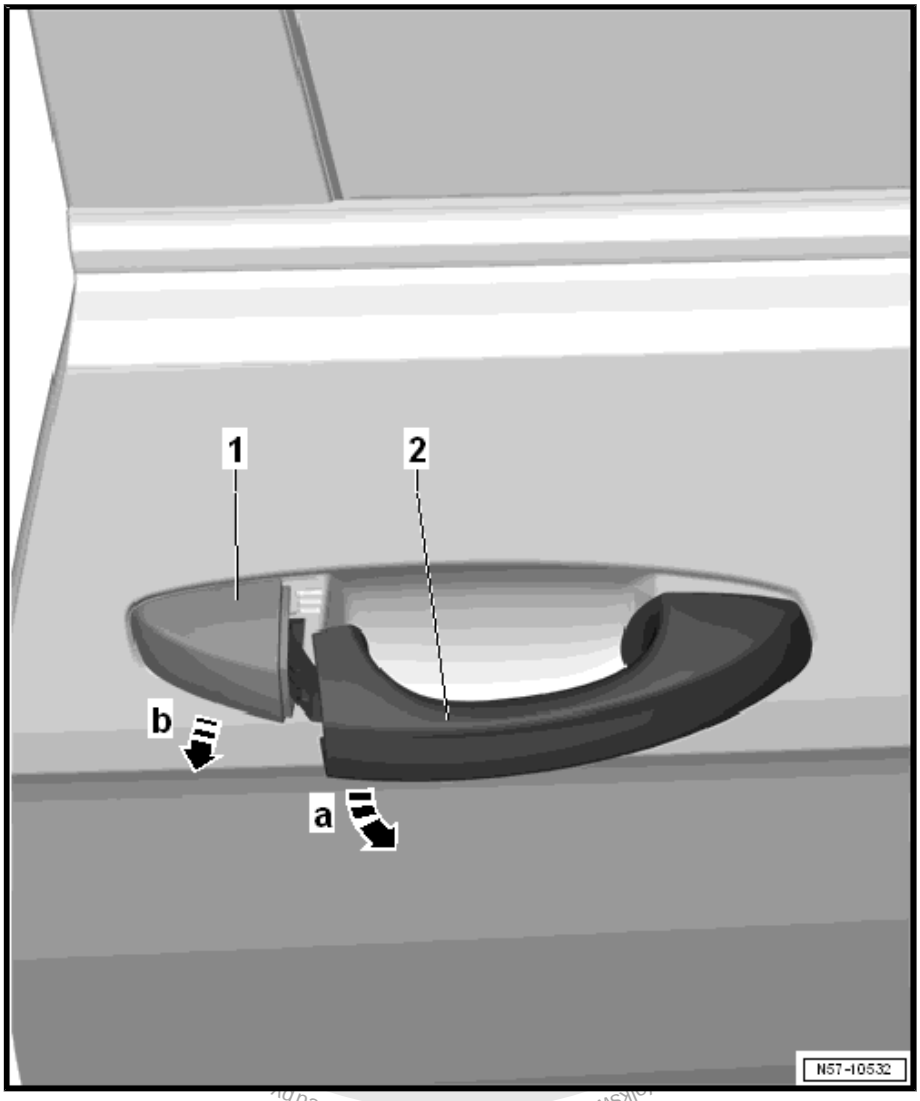
Removing

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted
Protected
Volkswagen AG

– Remove plugs -3-.
– Insert disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- with marking facing upwards up to locking hook of door handle bracket.
– Pull door handle -2- away from door -arrow b-.
– Push disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- approx. 5 mm towards front -arrow b- until hook is released.



Protected by Volkswagen AG.

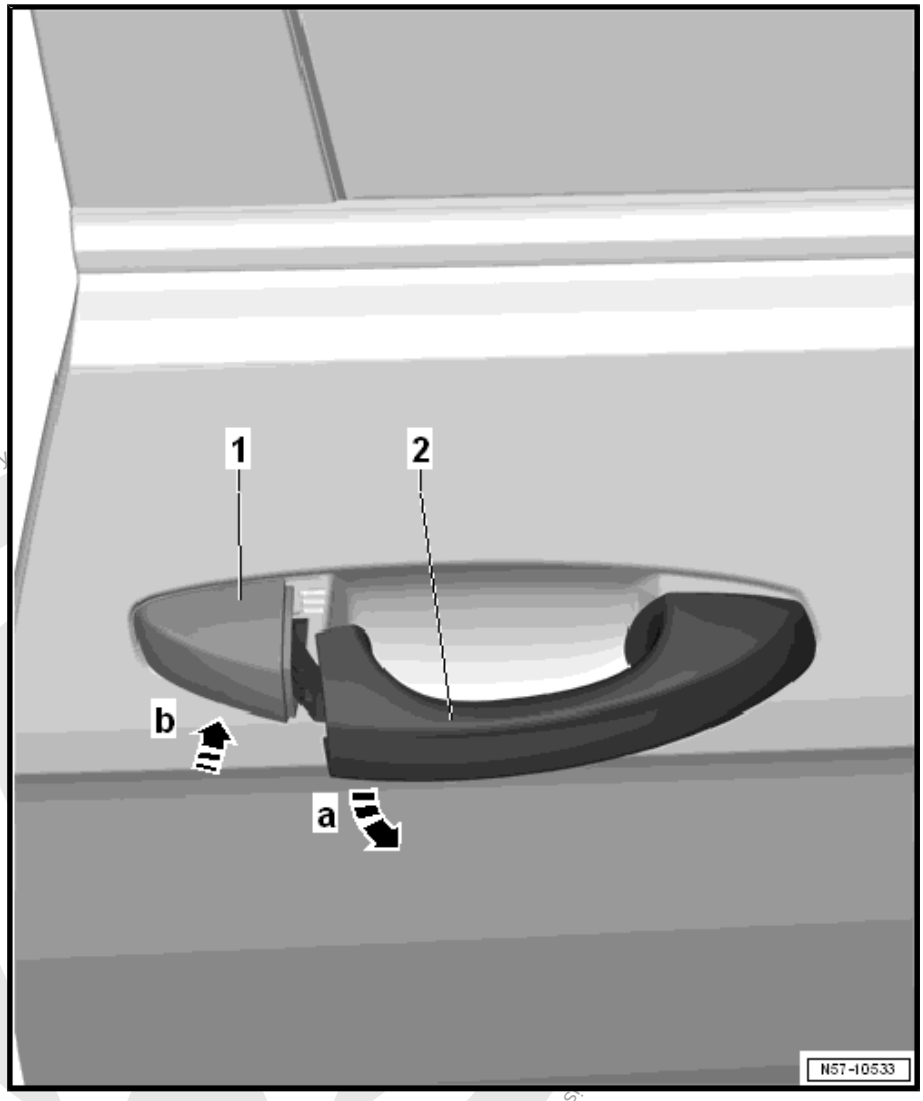
– There must be a gap -arrow a- between door handle -2- and door.

Note

Do not push the door handle into the door. Otherwise the door handle bracket will be damaged.

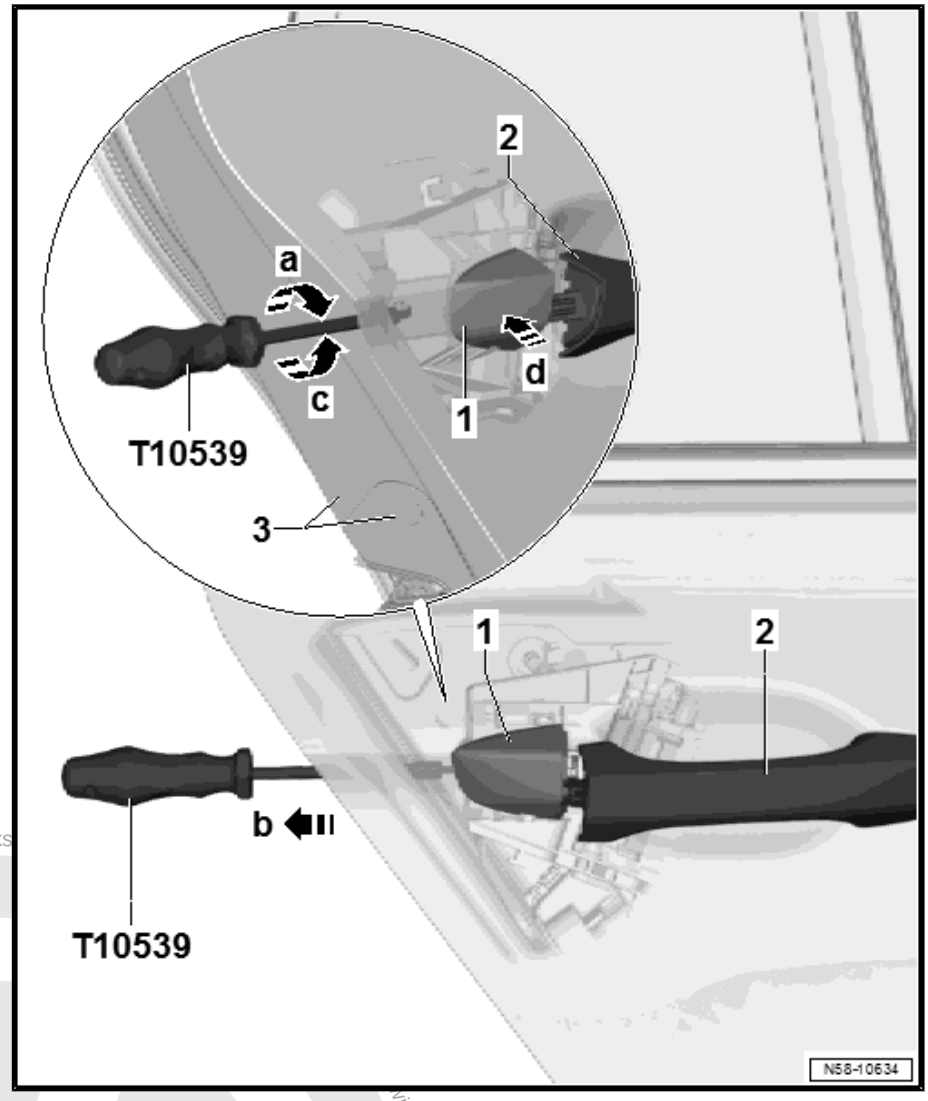
– Pull cover cap -1- out of door handle bracket -arrow b-.

Installing



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. This document is not to be reproduced or modified in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by

– There is a gap between door handle -2- and door -arrow a-.
– Push cover cap -1- into door handle bracket -arrow b-.



– Slightly press cover cap -1- onto door.
– Insert disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- with marking facing upwards up to locking hook of door handle bracket.
– Turn disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- in locking hook by 90° -arrow a-, and pull it out by approx. 5 mm -arrow b- until hook engages.

Door handle -2- folds down onto door automatically -arrow c-.

– Turn disassembly and assembly tool - T10539- in locking hook by 90° -arrow c-, and pull it out of door.
– Secure plug -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.9 Removing and installing door handle

⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing door handle”, page 198

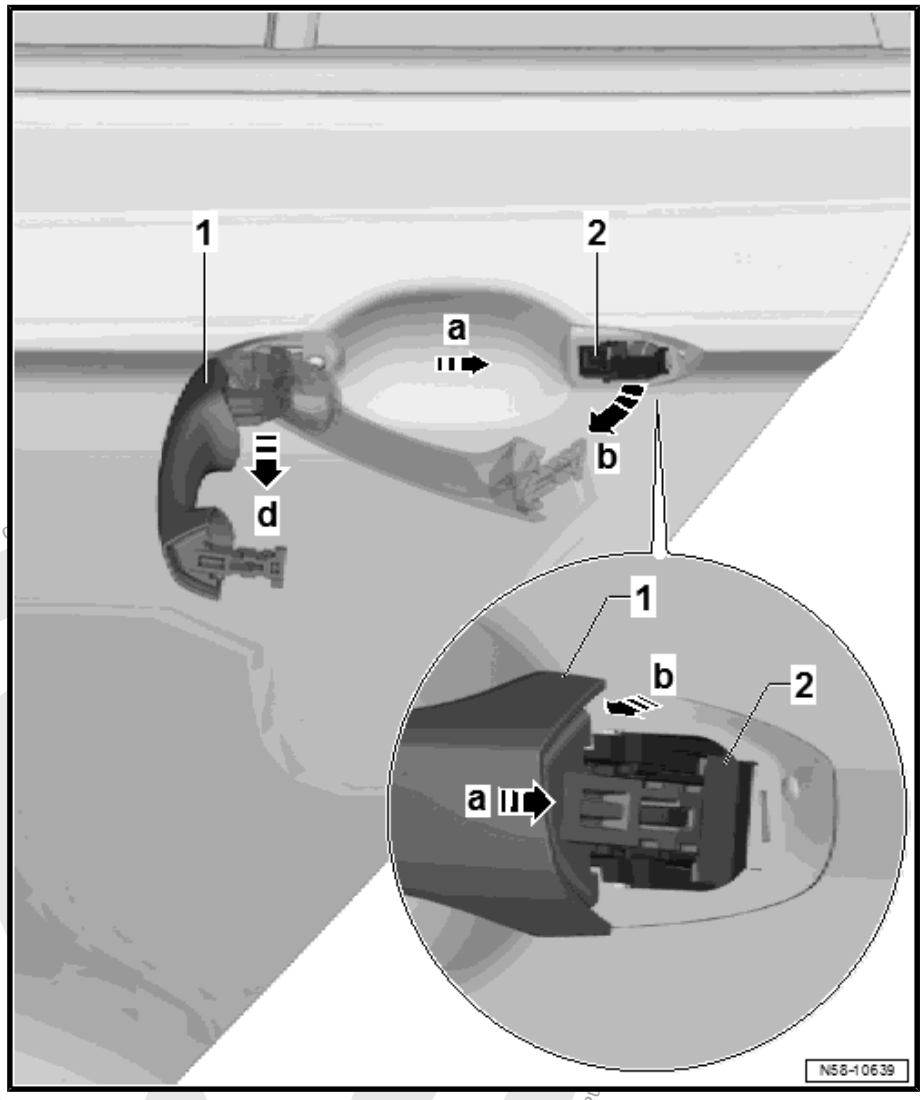
⇒ “2.9.2 Removing and installing door handle with keyless entry system”, page 199

2.9.1 Removing and installing door handle

Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the right door handle. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

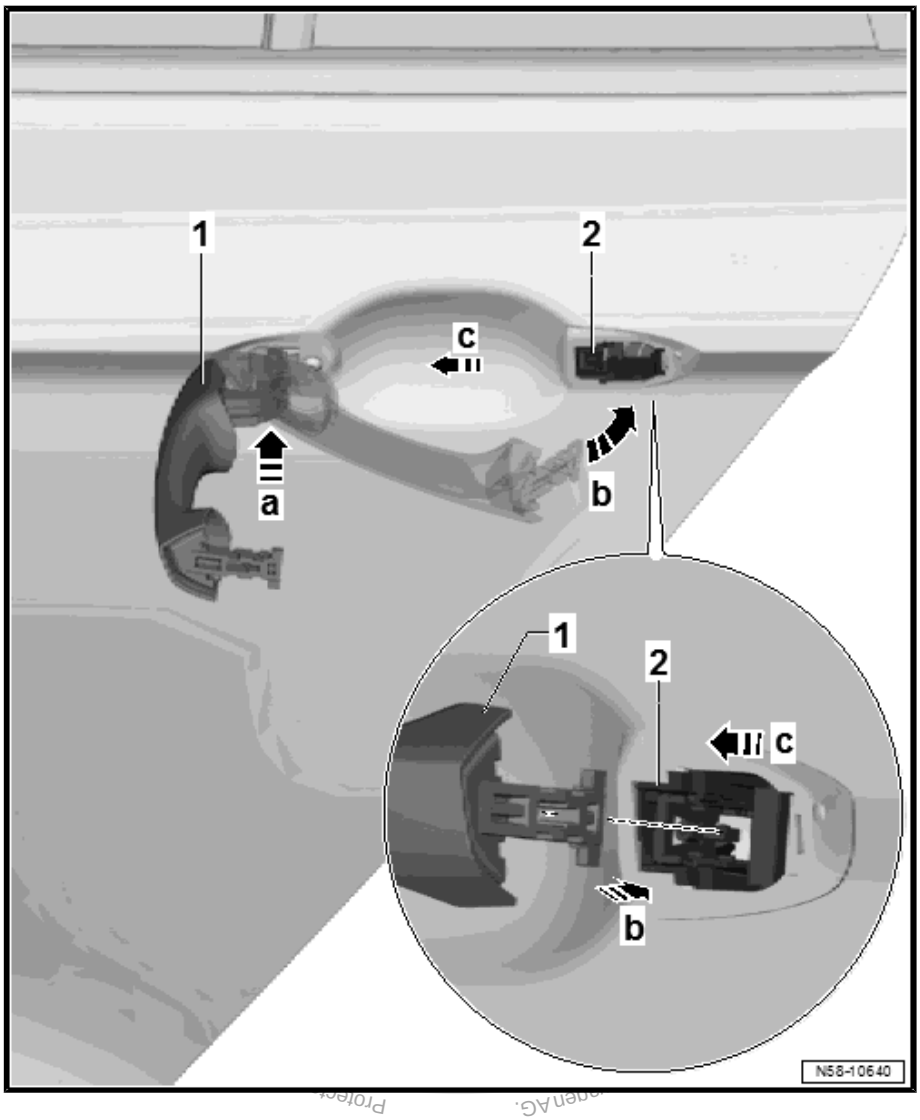
Removing



– Remove cap ⇒ page 193 .
– Pull out door handle -1- backwards slightly -arrow a- from support for mounting bracket.
– Swivel door handle in direction of -arrow b-.
– Pull door handle -1- out of door handle bracket -2- -arrow c-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing



– Insert door handle -1- at right angle -arrow a- in mounting bracket.

– Swing door handle -1- into door -arrow b-.

– Press door handle forwards -arrow c- into support for door handle bracket -2-.

Installing cover cap ⇒ page 193

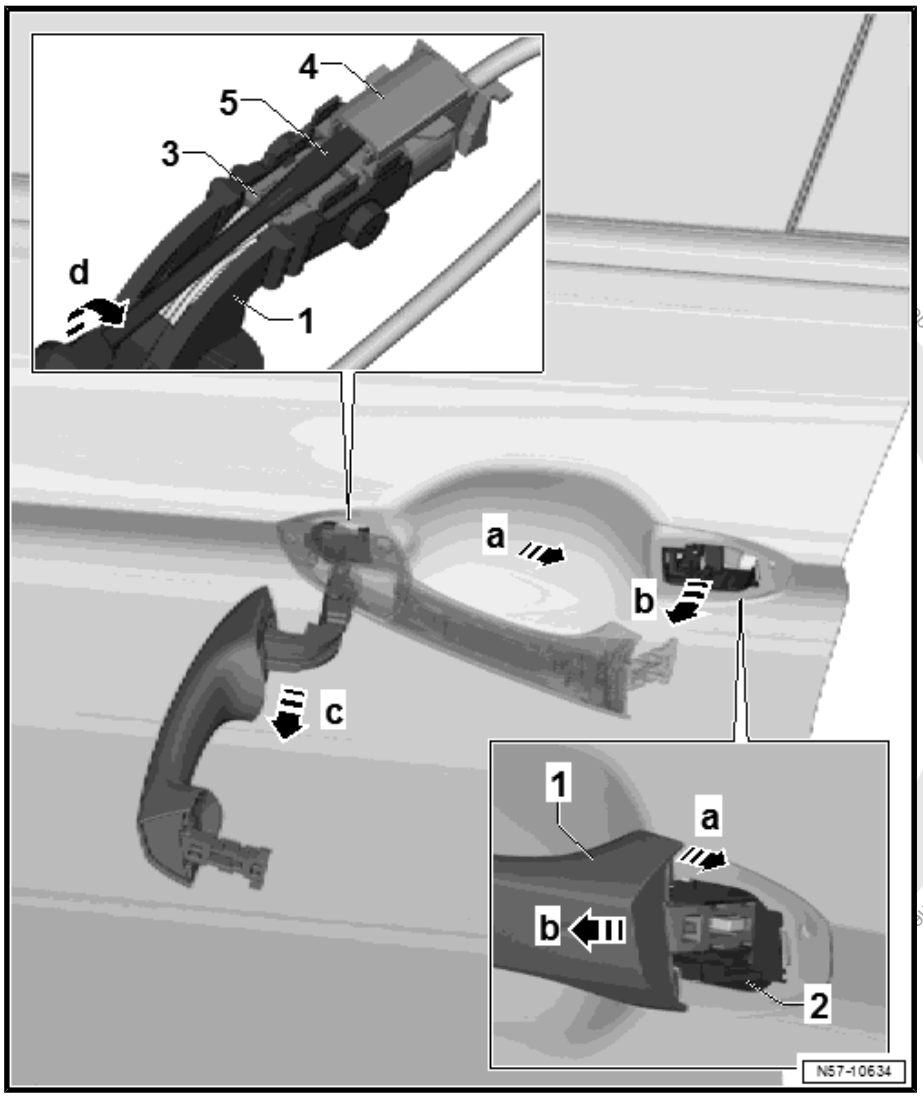
- It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

2.9.2 Removing and installing door handle with keyless entry system

Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the left door handle. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

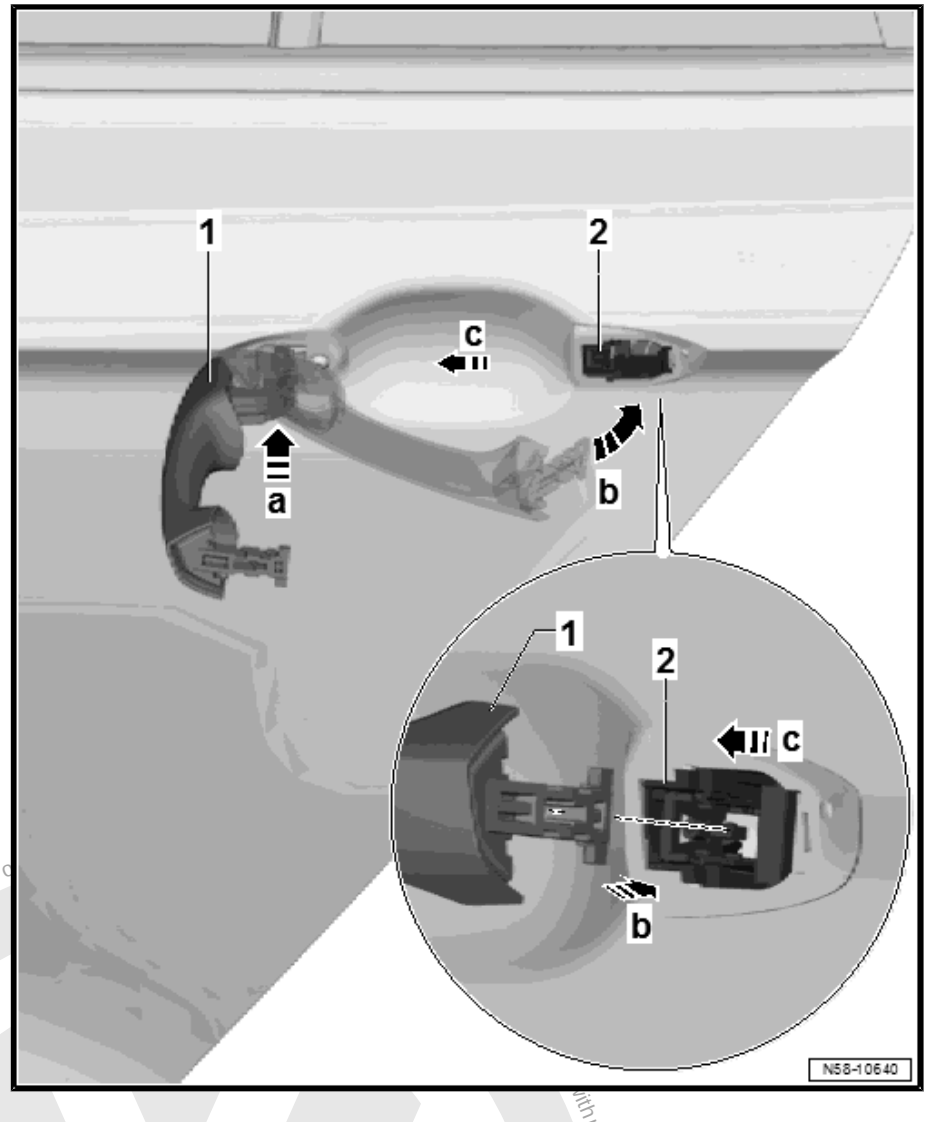


For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

– Remove cap ⇒ page 193 .
– Pull door handle -1- towards rear slightly -arrow a- until it comes out of support for door handle bracket -2-.
– Swivel door handle in direction of -arrow b-.
– Open locking mechanism on connector -4- using a screwdriver -3- -arrow d-.
– Remove door handle from mounting bracket -2-, keeping door handle at right angles to mounting bracket -arrow c-.

Installing

...pt any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document...



For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

– Insert door handle -1- at right angle -arrow a- in mounting bracket.

The connector for the keyless entry system is connected when the door handle is being inserted.

– Swing door handle -1- into door -arrow b-.

– Press door handle forwards -arrow c- into support for door handle bracket -2-.

Installing cover cap ⇒ page 193

• It is essential that a functional check is then performed with the door open.

2.10 Removing and installing door handle bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is assumed with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

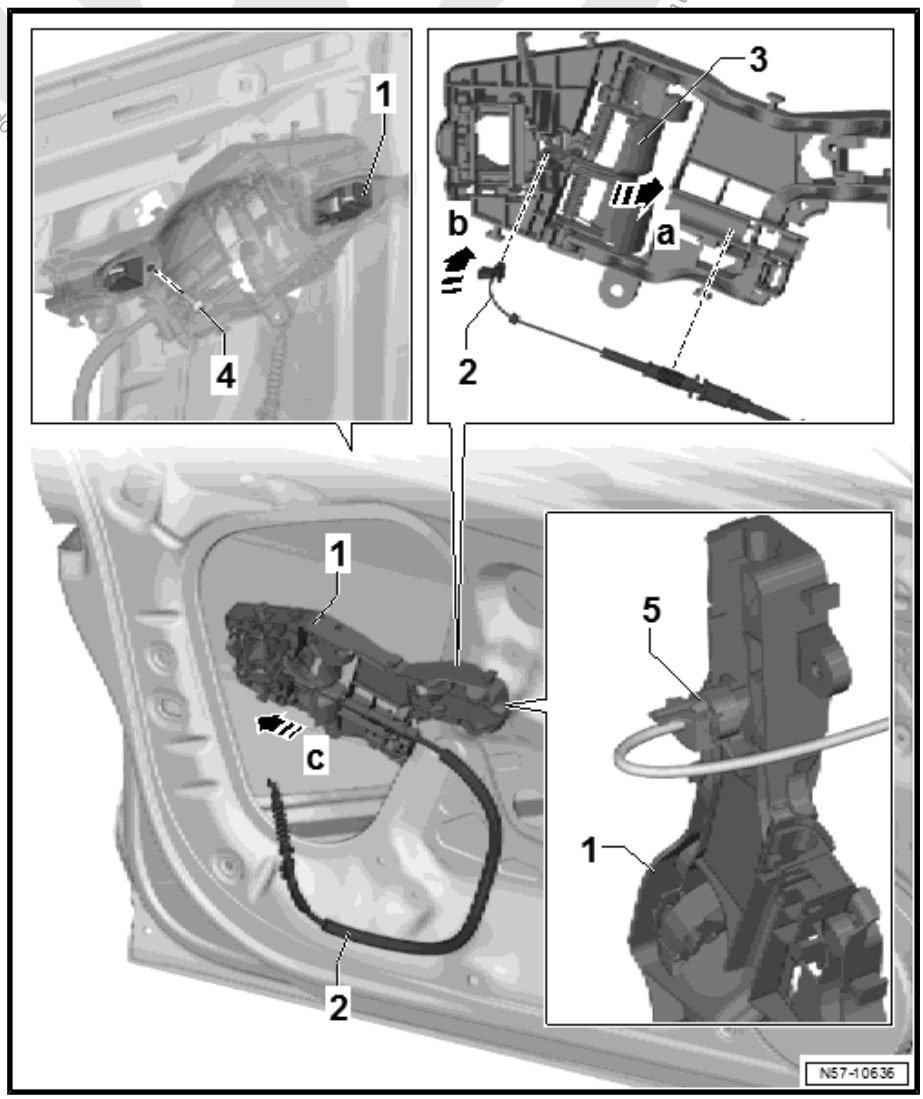


Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the right door handle bracket. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Removing

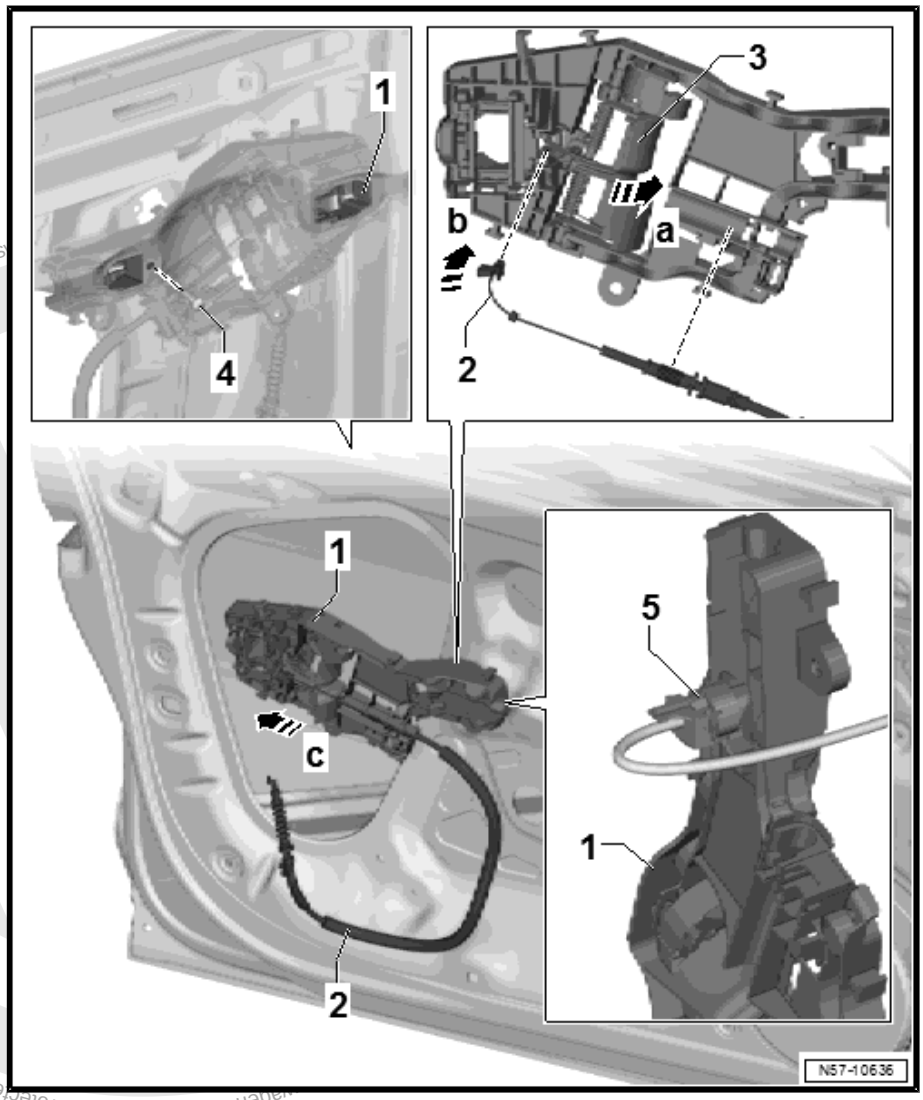


– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 189 .
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 198 .
– Unscrew bolt -4-.
– Push door handle bracket -1- slightly towards rear, and remove it from door.

Detach cable

– Slightly swing aside retainer -3- -arrow a-.
– Lift pin of cable -2- out of mounting.

Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volks

Note

Make sure the connector -5- for the keyless entry system is firmly seated.

For general information and work instructions for the door handle with keyless entry system refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation system .

Attaching cable

– Slightly swing aside retainer -3- -arrow a-.

– Push pin of cable -2- into mounting -arrow b-.

– Guide door handle bracket -1- into door -arrow c-.

– Tighten bolt -4-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

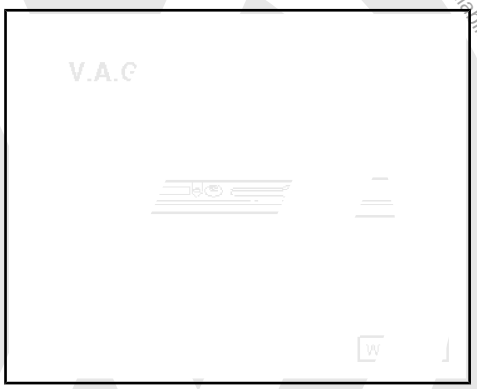
Specified torques

♦ Door handle bracket
⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 183

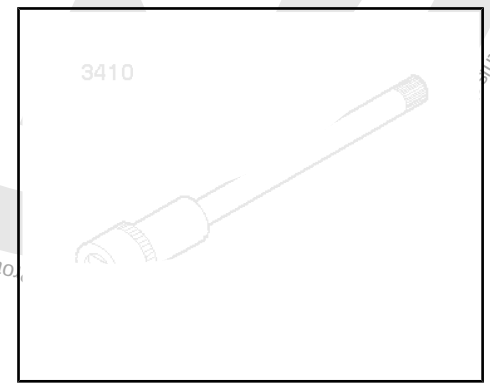
2.11 Removing and installing door lock

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



♦ Multipoint extended bit - 3410-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

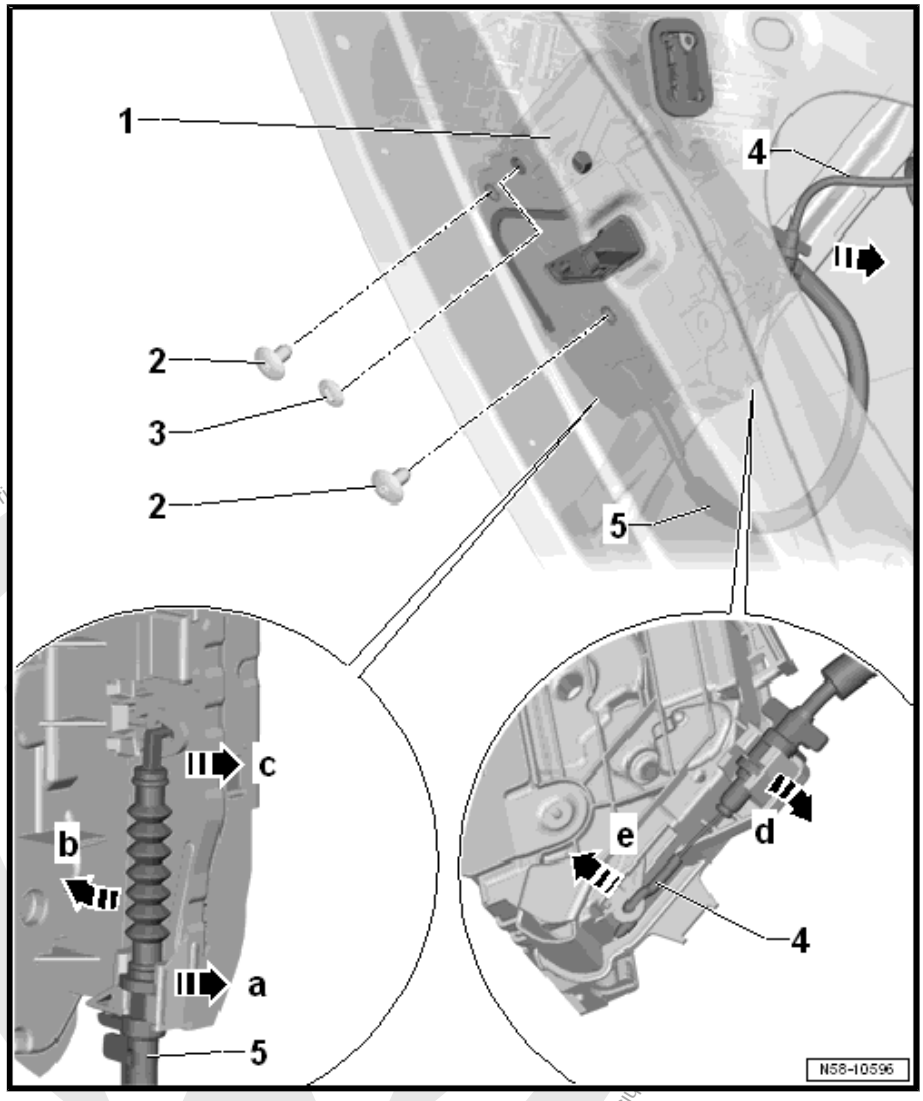
Note

♦ *The removal and installation are described only for the left door lock. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*

♦ *The door window must be closed for subsequent work.*

♦ *The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are unscrewed.*

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 189 .
– If fitted, disconnect connector.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove door lock -1- from door -arrow-.

Note

Cables can be detached if this is necessary for subsequent work.

Detach cable from mounting bracket

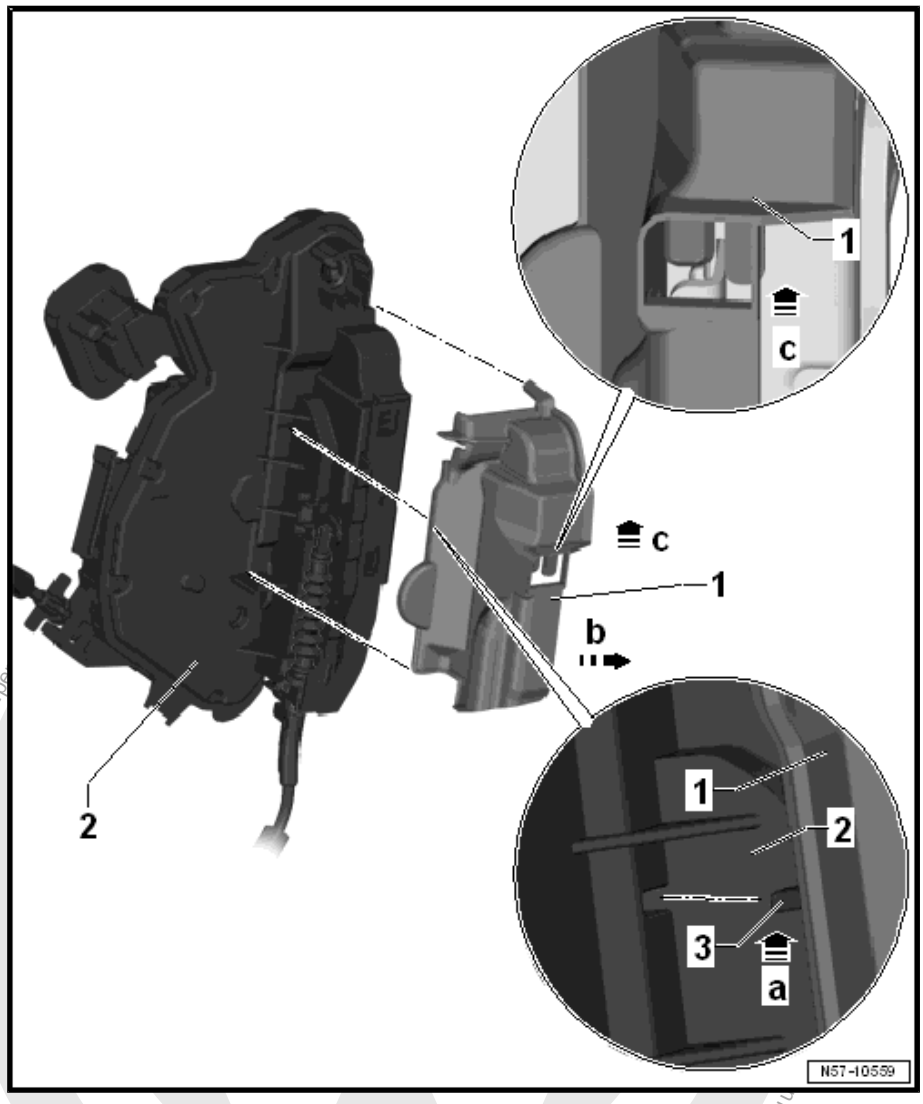
– Remove cover ⇒ page 206 .
– Turn cable -5- 90° and take out of holder -arrow a-.
– Swivel cable -arrow b- so far until cable can be threaded out of eye in door lock -1- -arrow c-.

Detach cable from interior door handle

– Turn cable -4- by 90° and take it out of holding device.

– Swivel cable -arrow d- so far until cable can be threaded out of eye in door lock -1- -arrow e-.

Removing cover



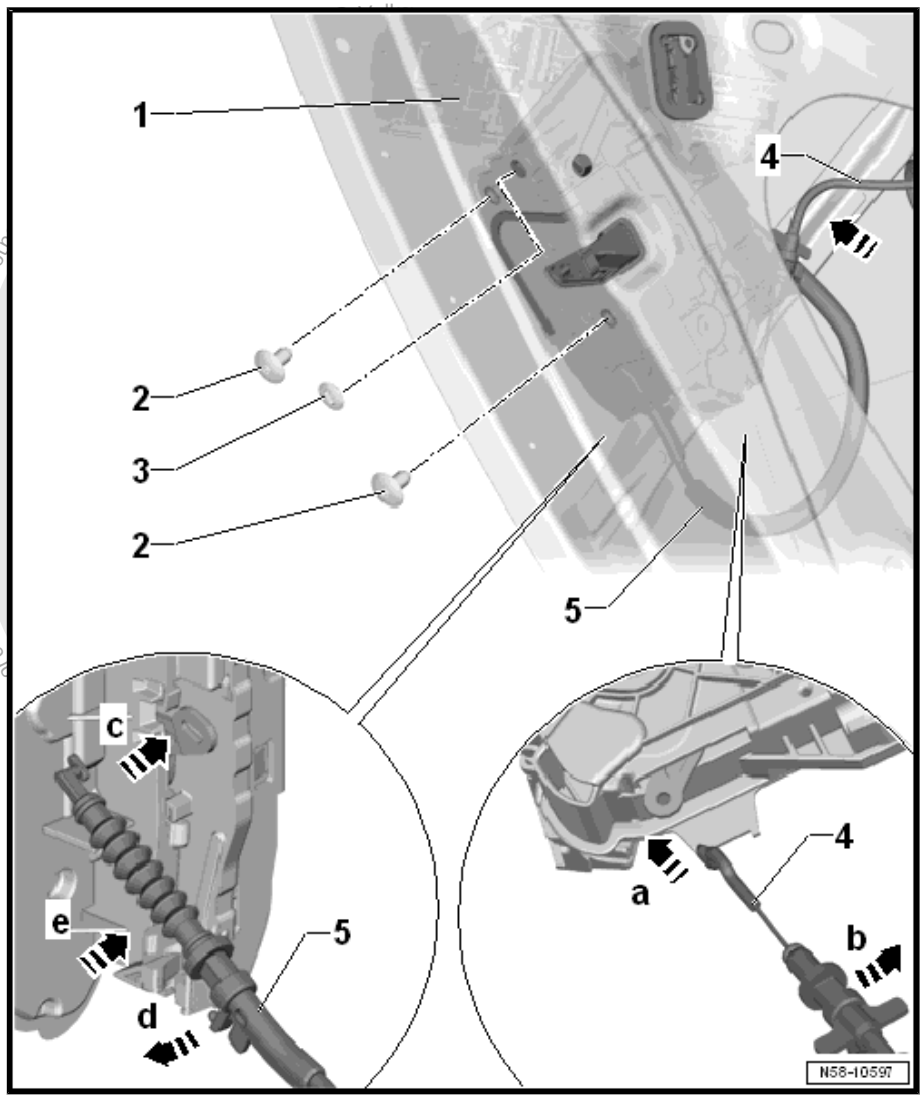
– Disengage hook -3- in -direction of arrow a-.
– Use the hook to pull cover -1- out of door lock -2- -arrow b-.
– Pull cover -1- upwards -arrow c- from door lock -2-.

Installing

Note

The bolts are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are unscrewed.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Attach cables -4- and -5- to door lock -1-.
– Fit cover ⇒ page 207
– Insert door lock -1- into door -arrow f-.
– If fitted, connect connector.
– Screw in bolts -2-.
– Clip cover -3- in.

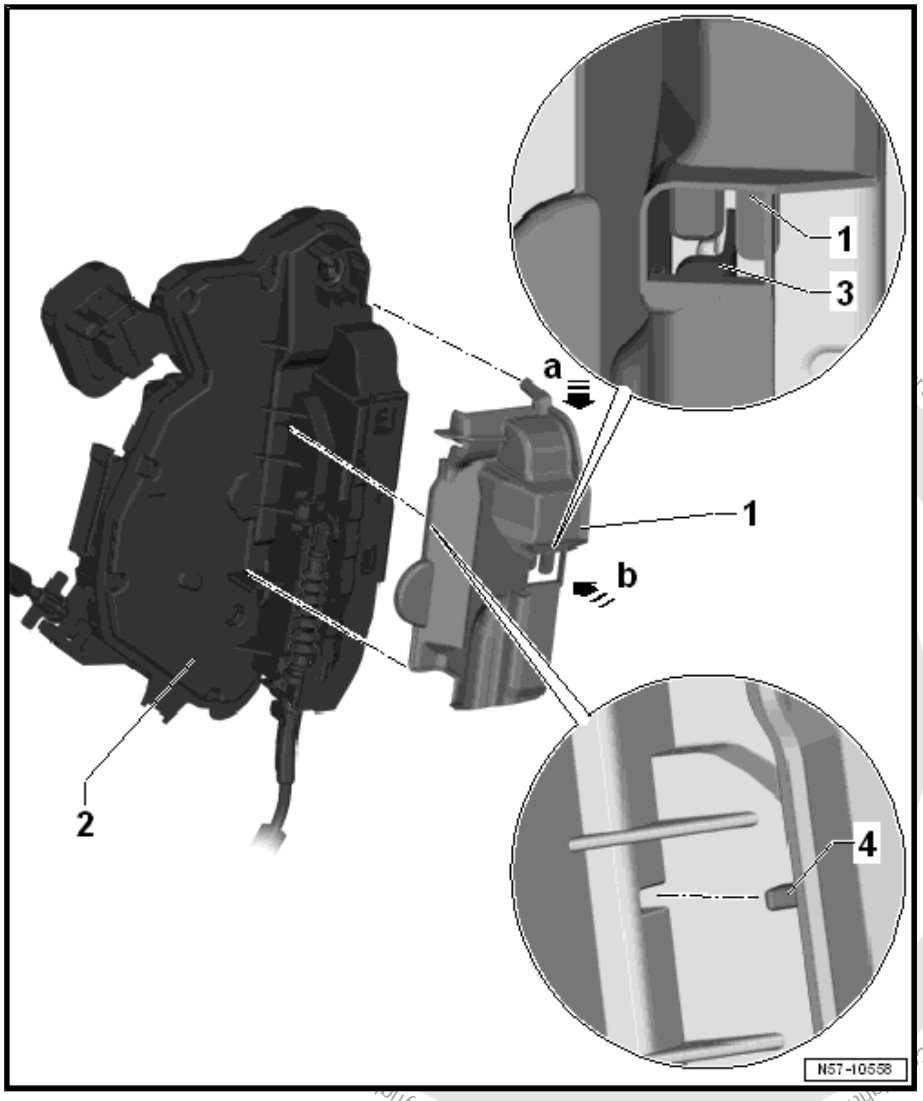
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

– It is essential to perform a functional check.
• Only if the cables are adjusted and locked correctly, the door lock can be unlocked and opened properly.

Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - door handle and door lock”, page 183

Fitting cover



Protected by copyright. For acceptany liability with respect to the correctness of information in this documen. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

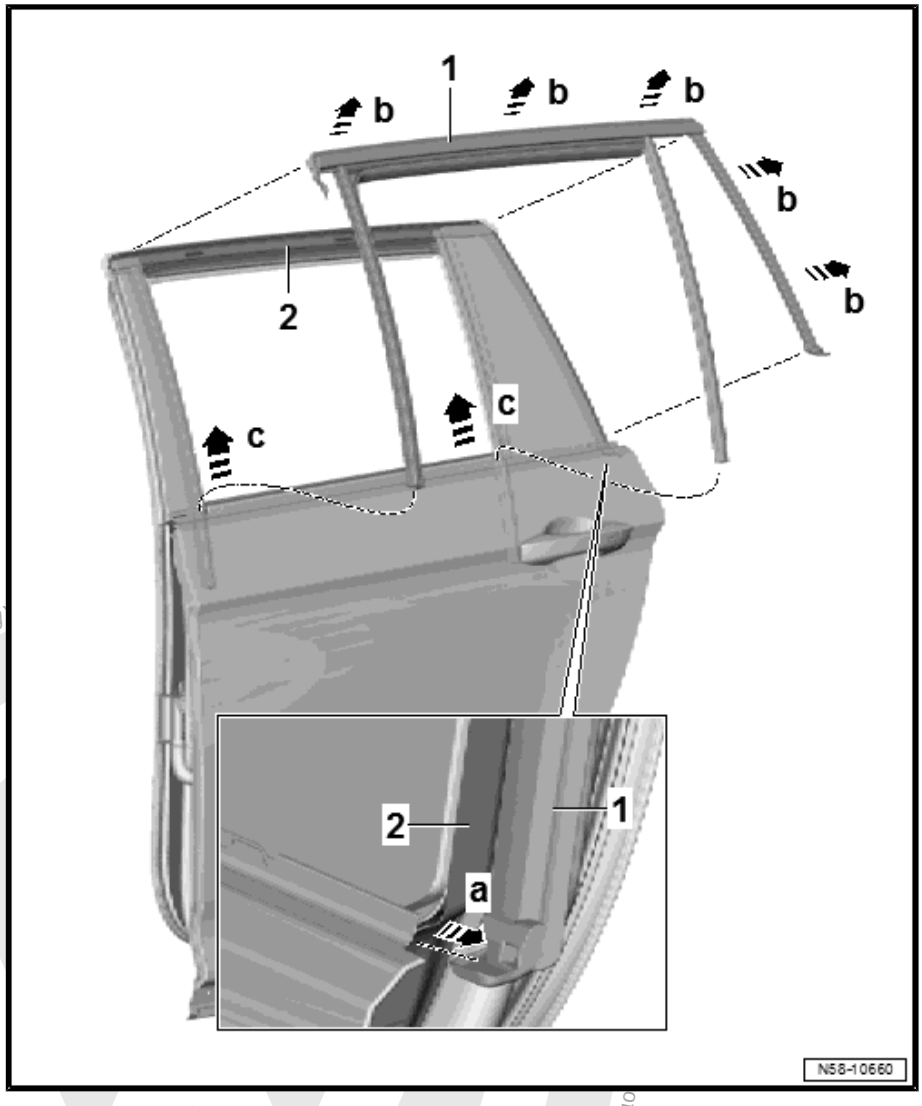
– Push cover -1- onto retainer -3- on door lock -2- -arrow a-.
– Engage hook -4- with door lock -2- -arrow b-.

2.12 Removing and installing window channel

Note

- *The removal and installation sequence is only for the left window channel. Removal and installation of the right window channel are similar.*
- *Do not bend window channel when removing!*

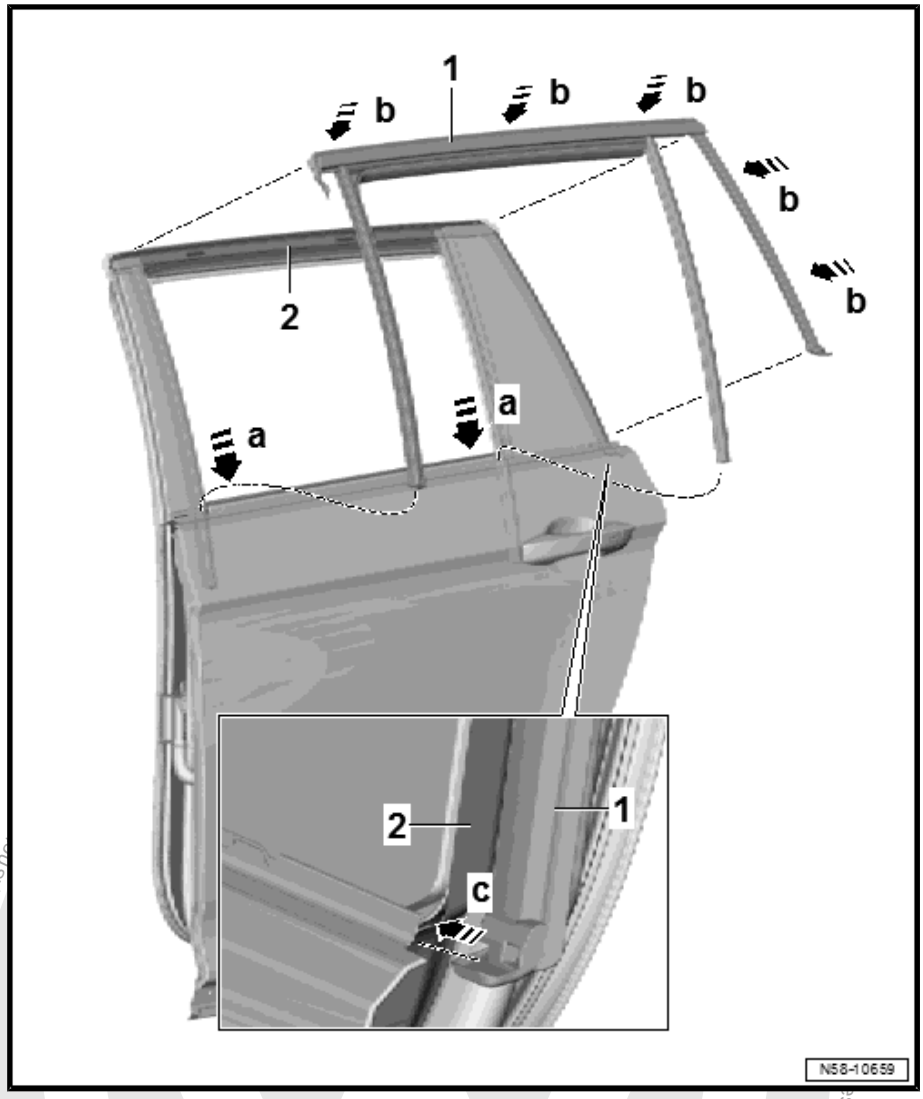
Removing



– Remove inner window slot seal ⇒ page 213 .
– Remove outer window slot seal ⇒ page 211 .
– Detach window channel -1- at rear end from door -arrow a-.
– Peel sealing lip of window channel -1- off the door flange -2- from the inside.
– Pull window channel -1- out of mountings on door -arrows c-.
– Pull window channel -1- -arrows b- evenly all around off door flange -2-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Use of information in this documen



– Spray window channel with soapy water to facilitate installation.
– Push window channel -1- into mountings on door -arrows a-.
– Attach window channel at rear end to door -arrow c-.
– Fit window channel -1- all around onto door flange -2- -arrows b-, and press it on.
– Fold sealing lip of window channel onto door flange from the inside.

Note

To prevent wind noise, ensure window channel -1- seats evenly when installing.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

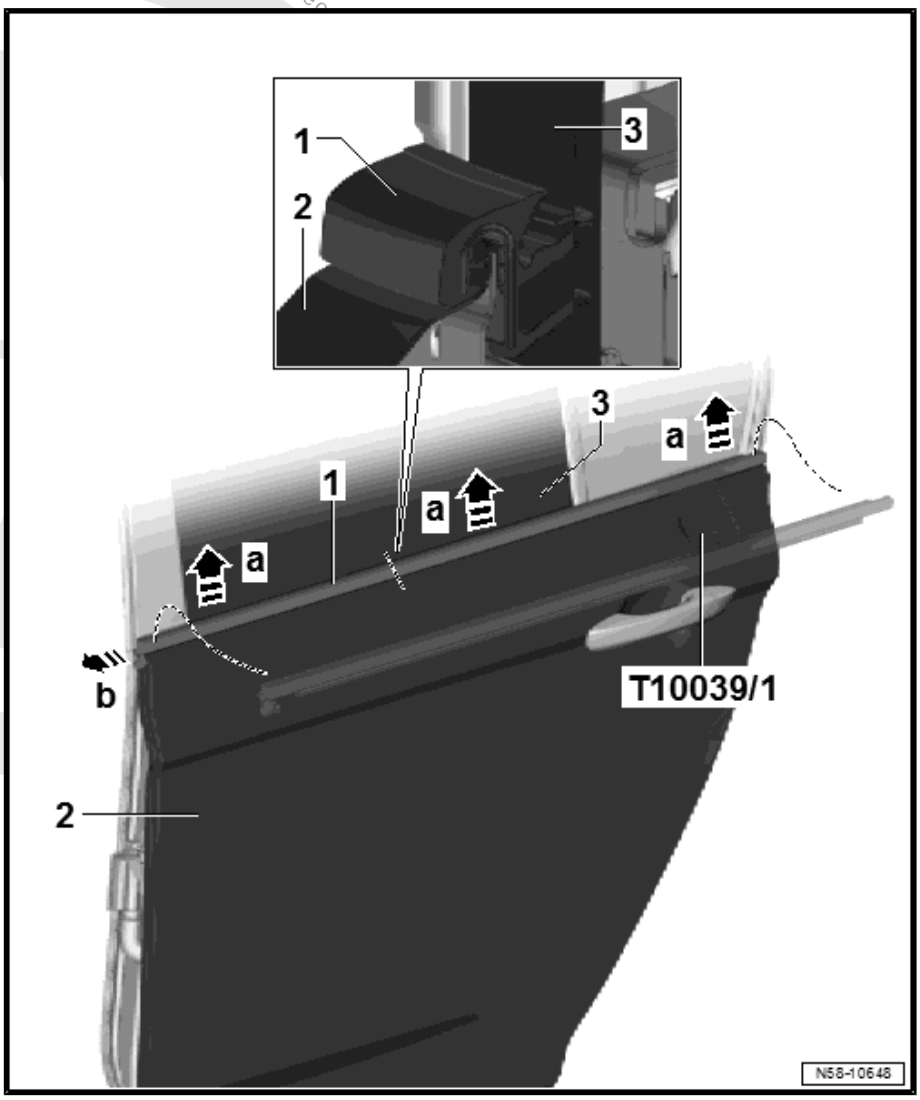
2.13 Removing and installing outer window slot seal

Note

- *The core of the outer window slot seal is a metal insert.*
- *If it is bent or distorted, the outer window slot seal cannot be straightened out anymore. It will remain “wavy”.*
- *Therefore, the outer window slot seal must be pulled off and pressed on evenly, without bending or distorting it.*
- *Removal and installation are only described for the left window slot outer seal. Removal and installation of the right window slot outer seal are similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

Removing

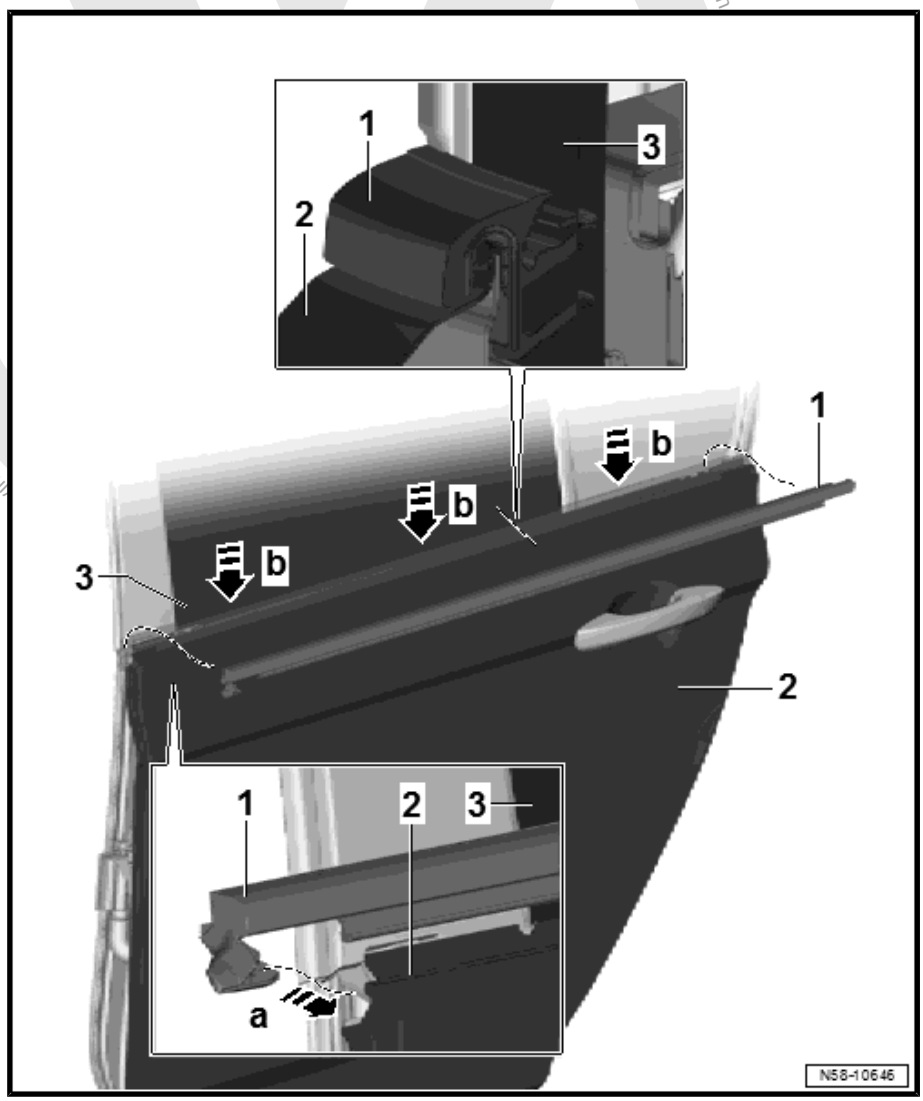


– Slightly detach outer window slot seal -1- evenly from door flange -2- using wedge - T10039/1- -arrows a-. Make sure not to bend the side strip.

Printing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with

– Push outer window slot seal -1- towards front out of door -arrow b-.

Installing



Note

- *The use of assembly aid is allowed.*
- *The use of striking tools is not allowed for installing the outer window slot seal.*

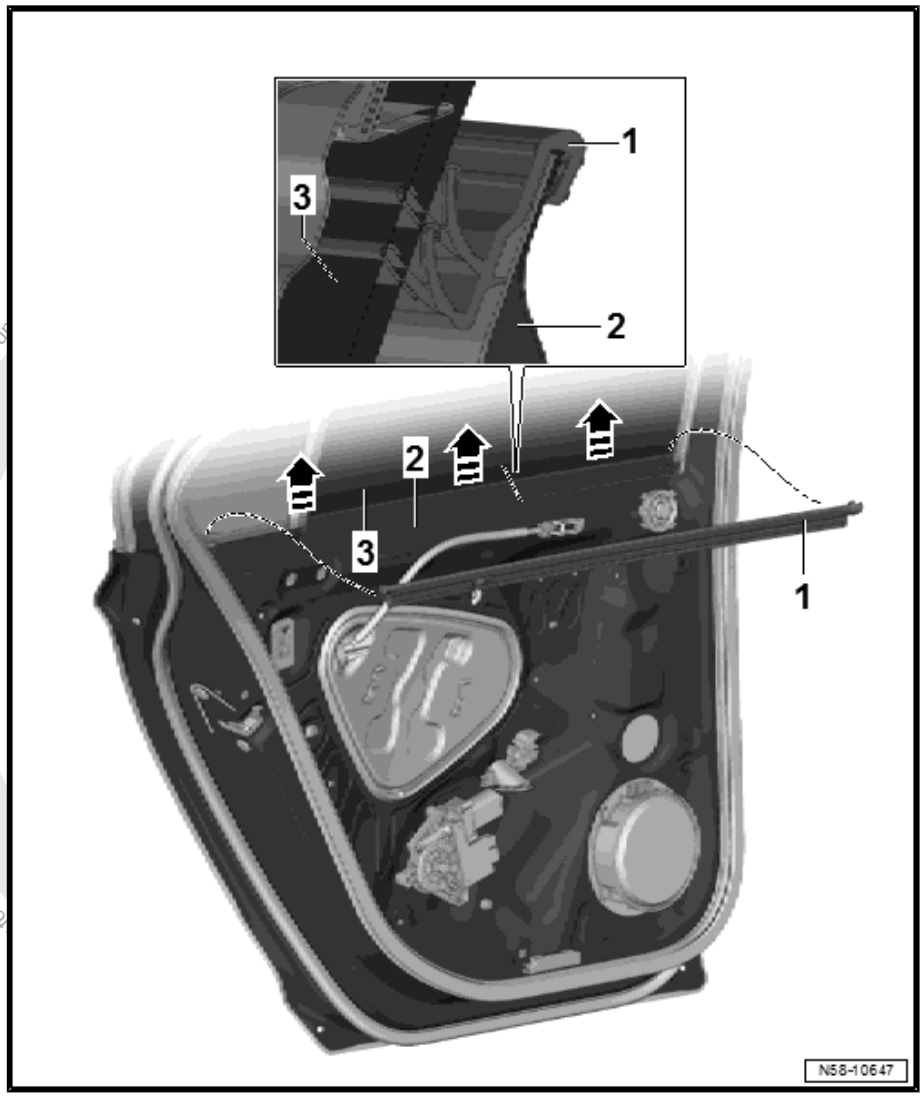
– Push outer window slot seal -1- at front end into door -arrow a-.

– Press outer window slot seal -1- evenly onto door flange -2- by hand.

2.14 Removing and installing inner window slot seal

Note

Removal and installation are only described for the left window slot inner seal. Removal and installation of the right window slot outer seal are similar.



for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted

Removing

– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .

– Lift inner window slot seal -1- evenly off flange -2- without bending or distorting it -arrows-.

Installing

– Centre window slot inner seal -1- and press it evenly onto front door flange -2- by hand.

60 – Sunroof

1 Sliding sunroof

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - wind deflector”, page 216

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing sunroof panel”, page 216

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing rear sunroof panel”, page 220

⇒ “1.5 Adjusting sunroof panel”, page 227

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing sliding sunroof seals”, page 231

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing wind deflector”, page 235

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing sunroof motor V1 ”, page 236

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 ”, page 239

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind control unit J394 ”, page 240

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 ”, page 241

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind”, page 242

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing sliding sunroof frame”, page 247

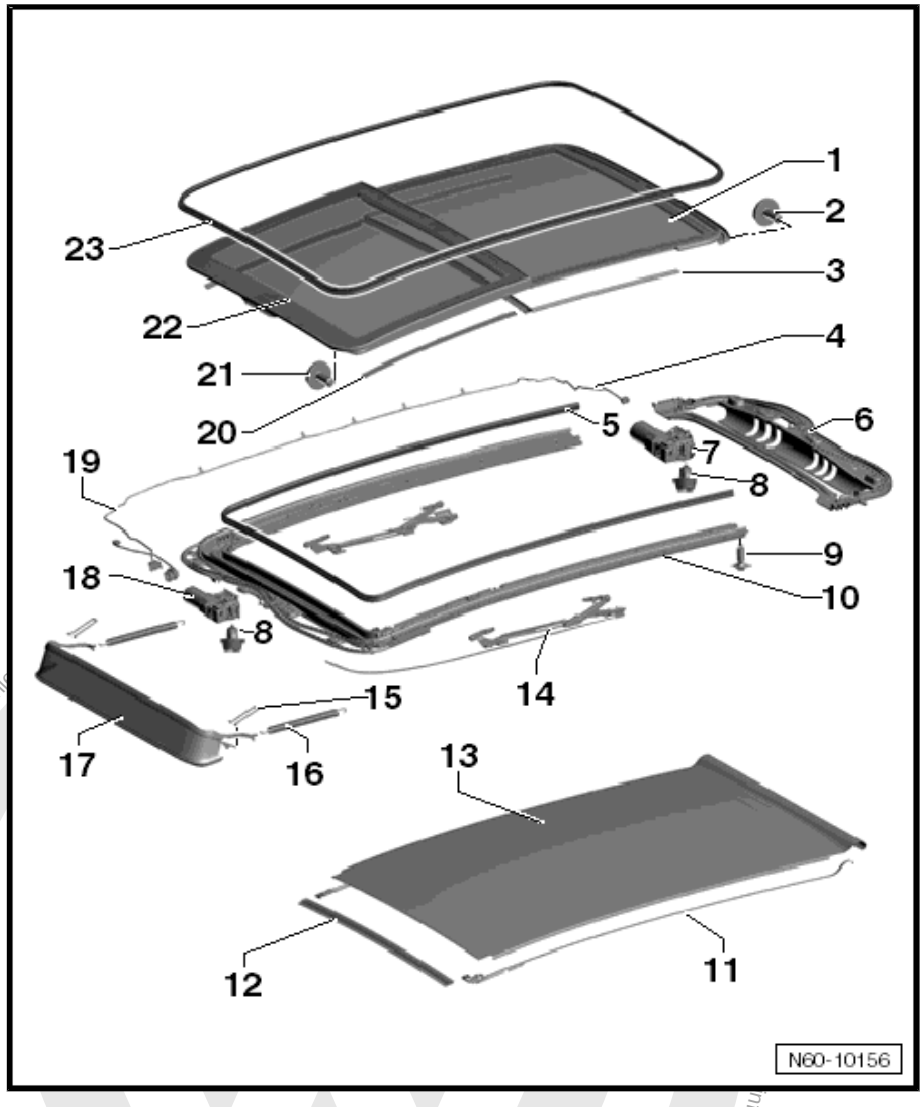
⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing rear part”, page 250

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing tilt mechanism for sliding sunroof”, page 255

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind cables”, page 257

⇒ “1.17 Operating without current”, page 260

1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof



1 - Rear glass panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

Adjusting ⇒ page 230

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 12
- ❑ 7 Nm

3 - Seal
- ❑ For rear glass panel.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231

4 - Wire

5 - Inner seal
- ❑ Positioned on assembly frame.

6 - Rear part
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 250

7 - Motor for sliding roller blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239

8 - Bolt
- ❑ For securing motors.
- ❑ Qty. 3 per motor.
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ For securing assembly frame.
- ❑ Qty. 22
- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Sliding roof frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 247

11 - Bowden cable
- ❑ For sun blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 257

12 - Bracing hoop

13 - Sunroof roller blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 242

14 - Tilting mechanism
- ❑ For front glass panel, with Bowden cables.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

15 - Supporting bow

16 - Spring

17 - Wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 235

18 - Sliding sunroof motor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

19 - Electrical connectors

20 - Trim

21 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 6
- ❑ 7 Nm

22 - Front glass panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 229

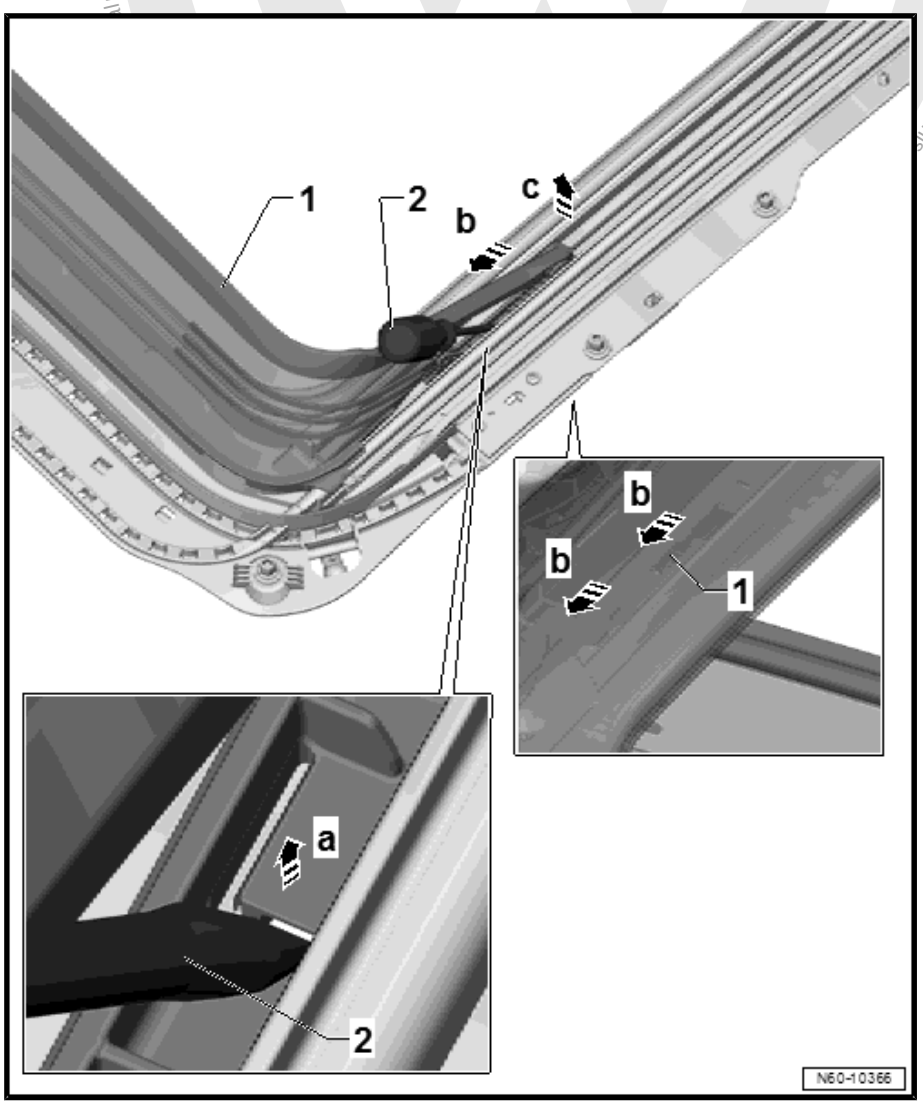
23 - Exterior seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232

1.2 Assembly overview - wind deflector

1 - Wind deflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 235



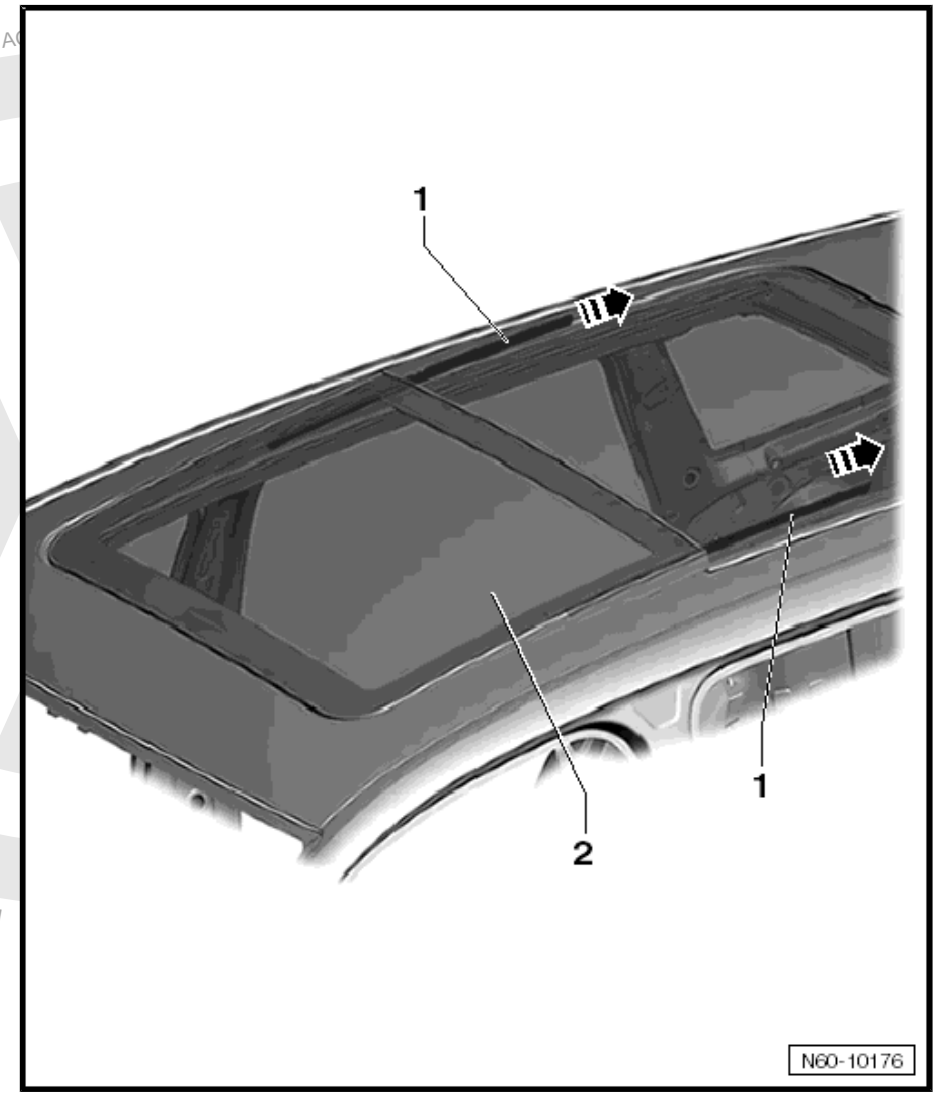
1.3 Removing and installing sunroof panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copyright purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

Removing

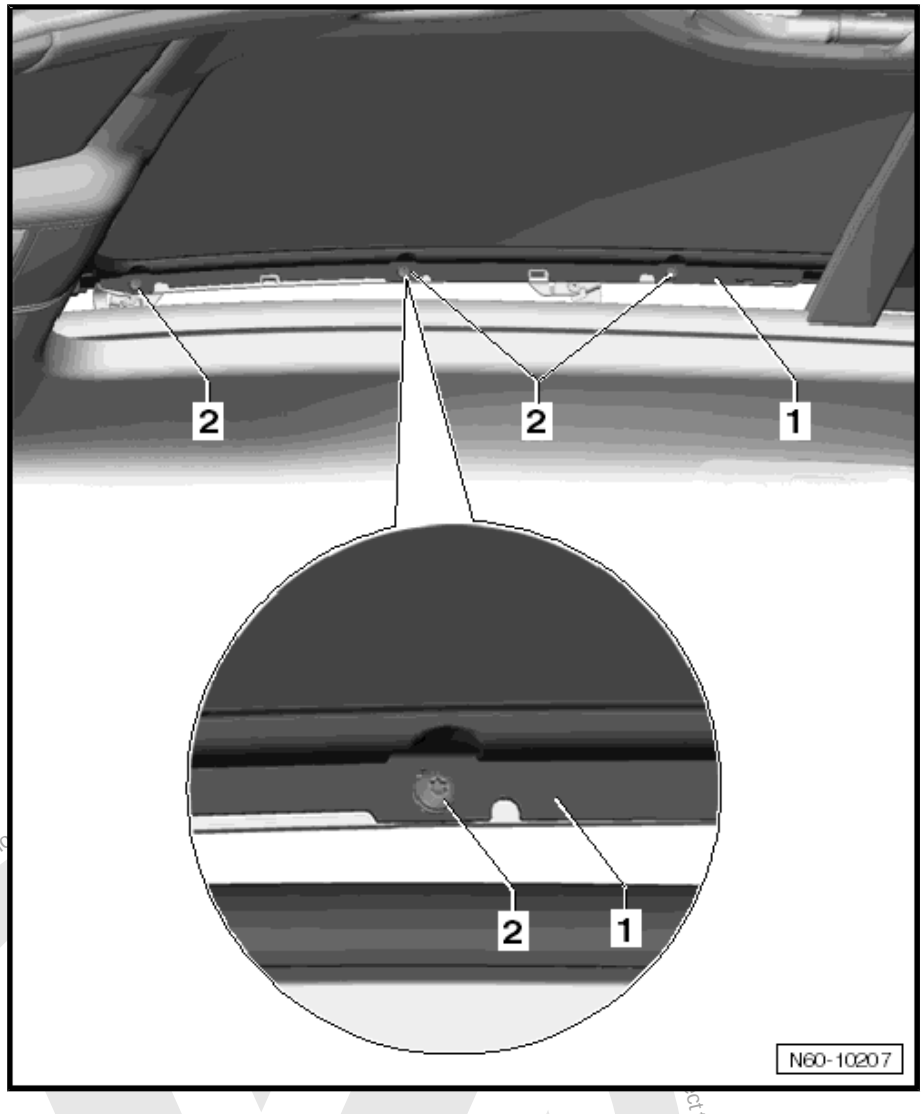


– Open glass panel -2- until trims -1- are accessible.
– Slide interior trims -1- out towards rear in -direction of arrow-.

Note

To unscrew bolts, use a magnetic tool so that bolts do not fall into mechanism of panoramic sliding roof.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG



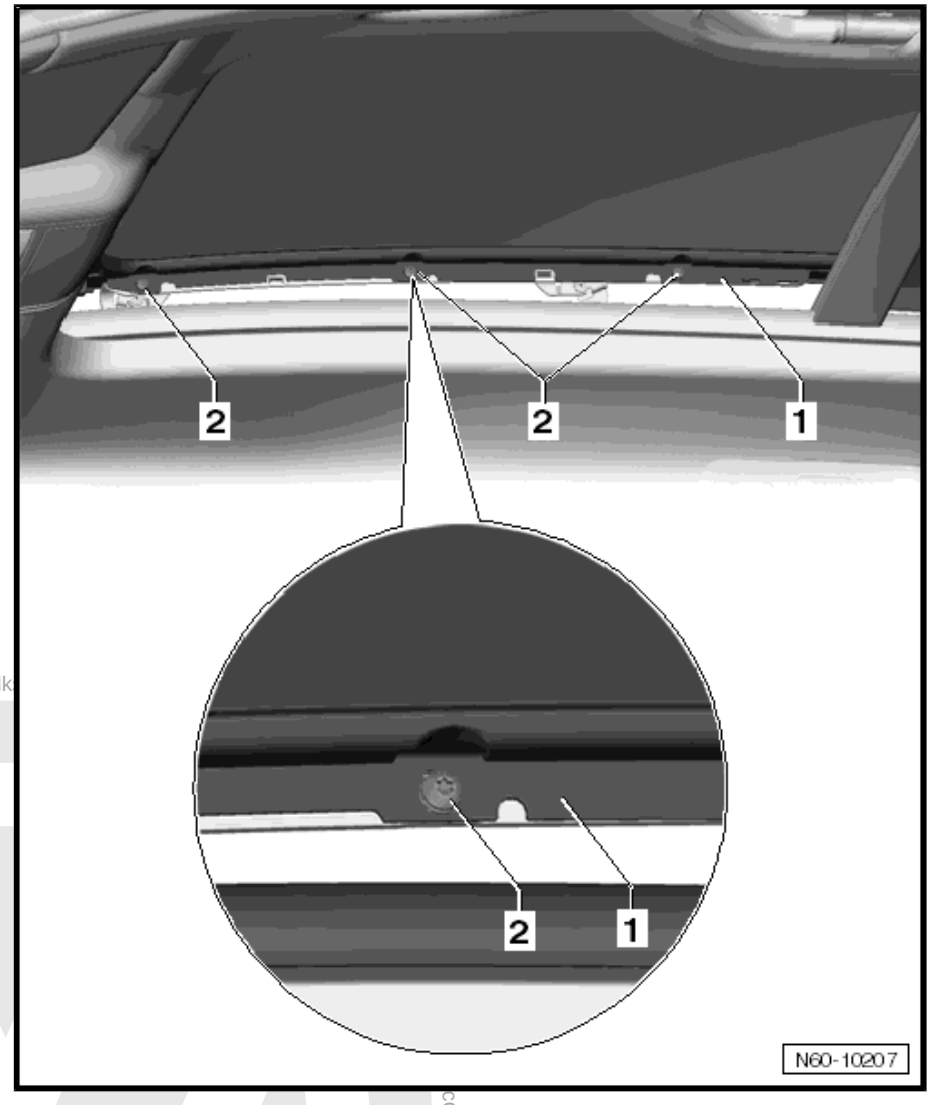
– Pull seal -3- from assembly frame.
– Unscrew bolts -2- from glass panel -1- on left and right.
– Remove glass panel upwards -arrows-.

Installing

Note

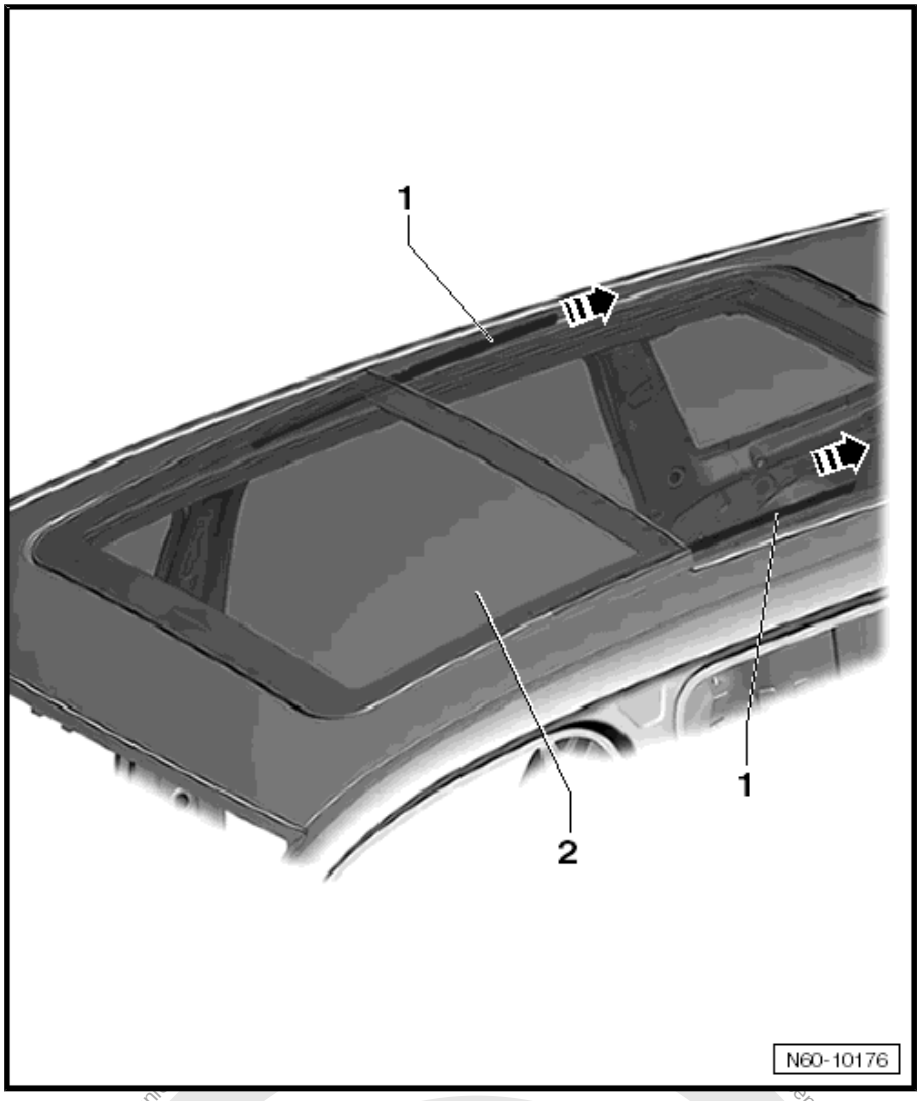
- *New bolts must always be used when installing glass panel.*
- *To screw in bolts, use a magnetic tool so that bolts do not fall into panoramic sliding roof guide.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is accepted with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– If necessary, shift tilting mechanism -3- on both sides until tilt mechanism has lowered completely.
– Insert glass panel -1- from above -arrows a- into tilting mechanism -3- and screw in bolts -2-; do not tighten.
– Adjusting front glass panel ⇒ page 227 .
– Tighten bolts -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volk
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. correctness of information in this document.



– Place trim -2- onto glass panel -1- and push onto fasteners.

Note

- *After the glass panel has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Specified torques

- Bolts for front glass panel
  ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

1.4 Removing and installing rear sunroof panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

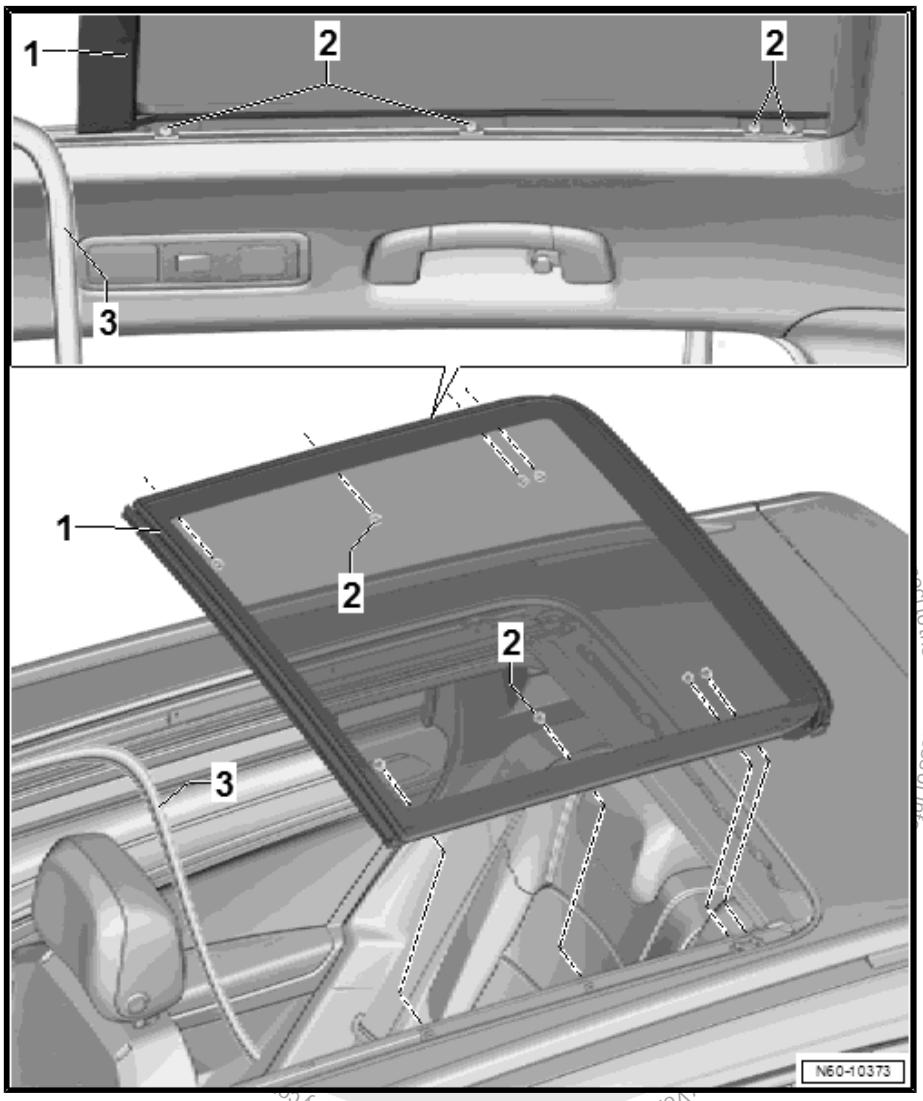
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

Removing

Note

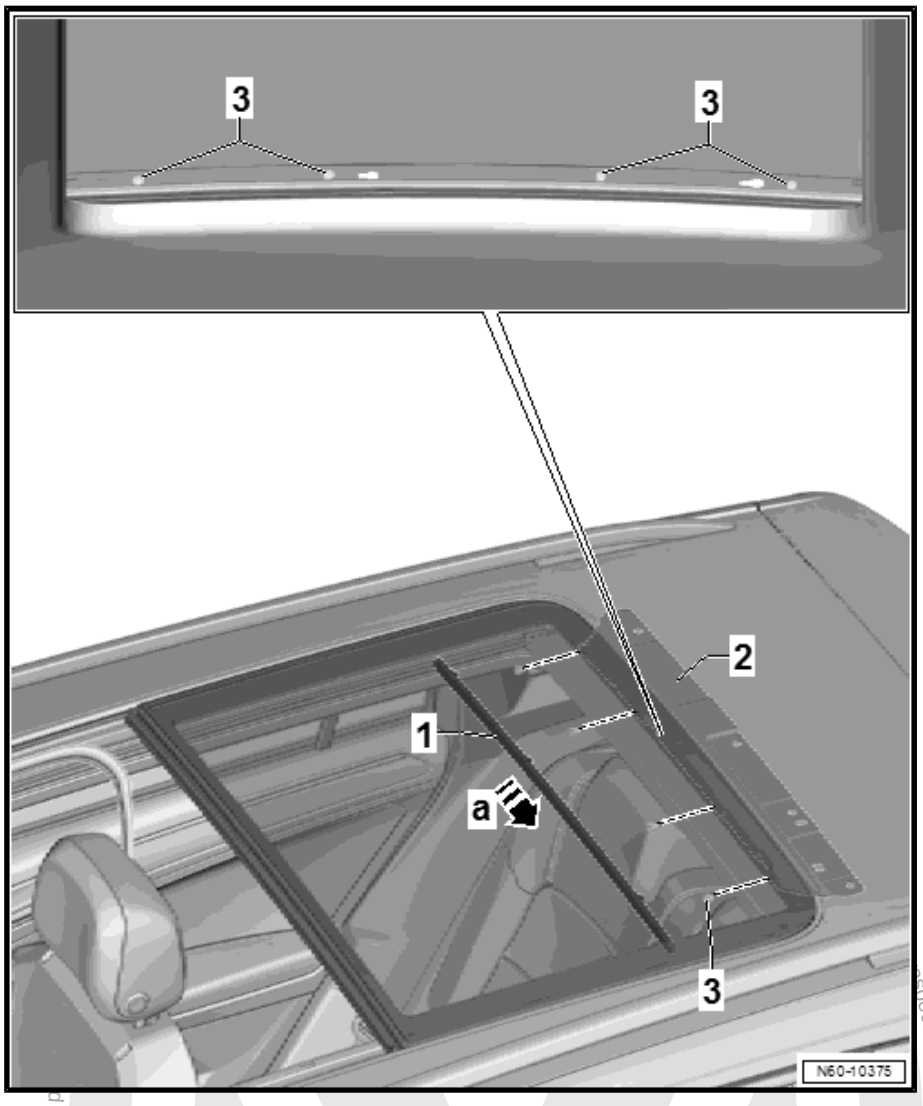
To unscrew bolts, use a magnetic tool so that bolts do not fall into panoramic sliding roof guide.



Protected by ... Volkswagen AG.
...ct to the correctness of ...

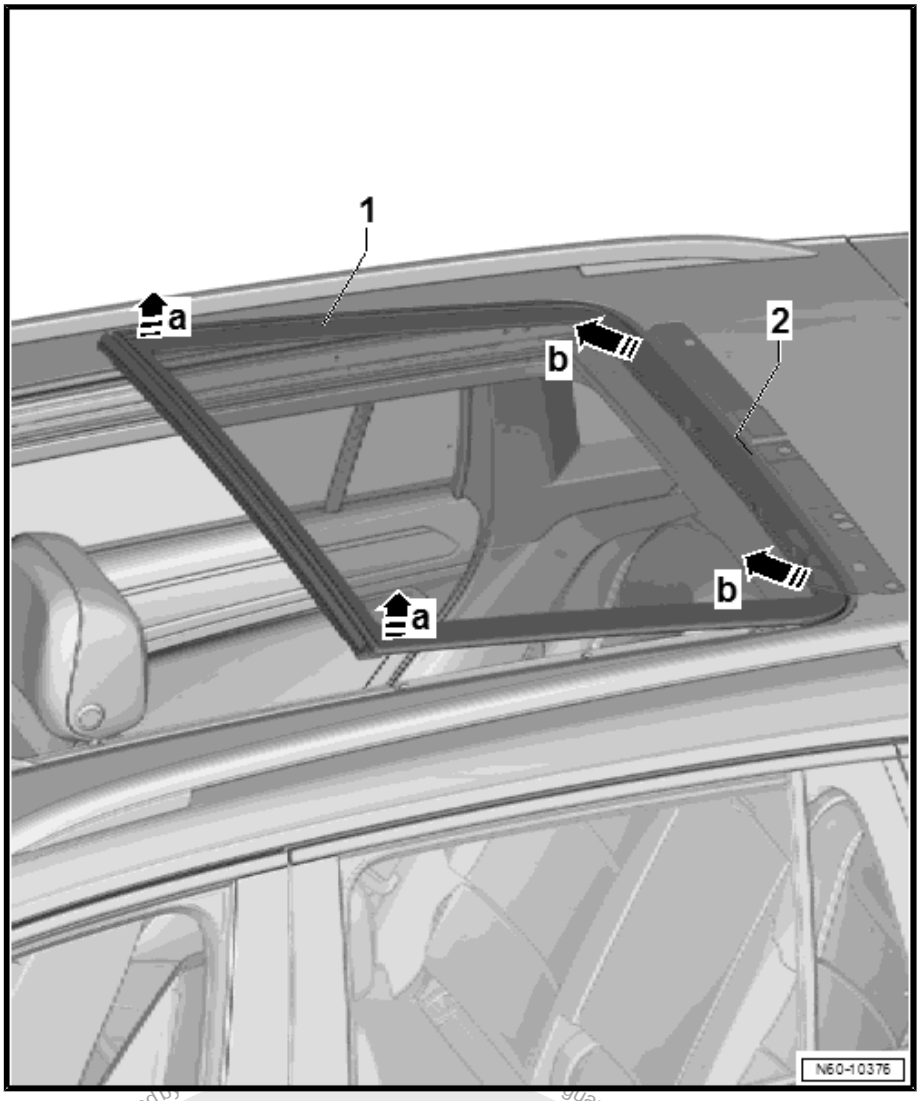
– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Pull seal -3- from assembly frame.

– Unscrew bolts -2- from glass panel -1- on left and right.



– Unclip trim -1- in direction of -arrow a- and remove.
– Unscrew bolts -3- from retaining plate -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...spect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Lift rear glass panel -1- at front -arrows a-.
– Swing out rear glass panel -1- upwards -arrows b- under panel flange -2-.

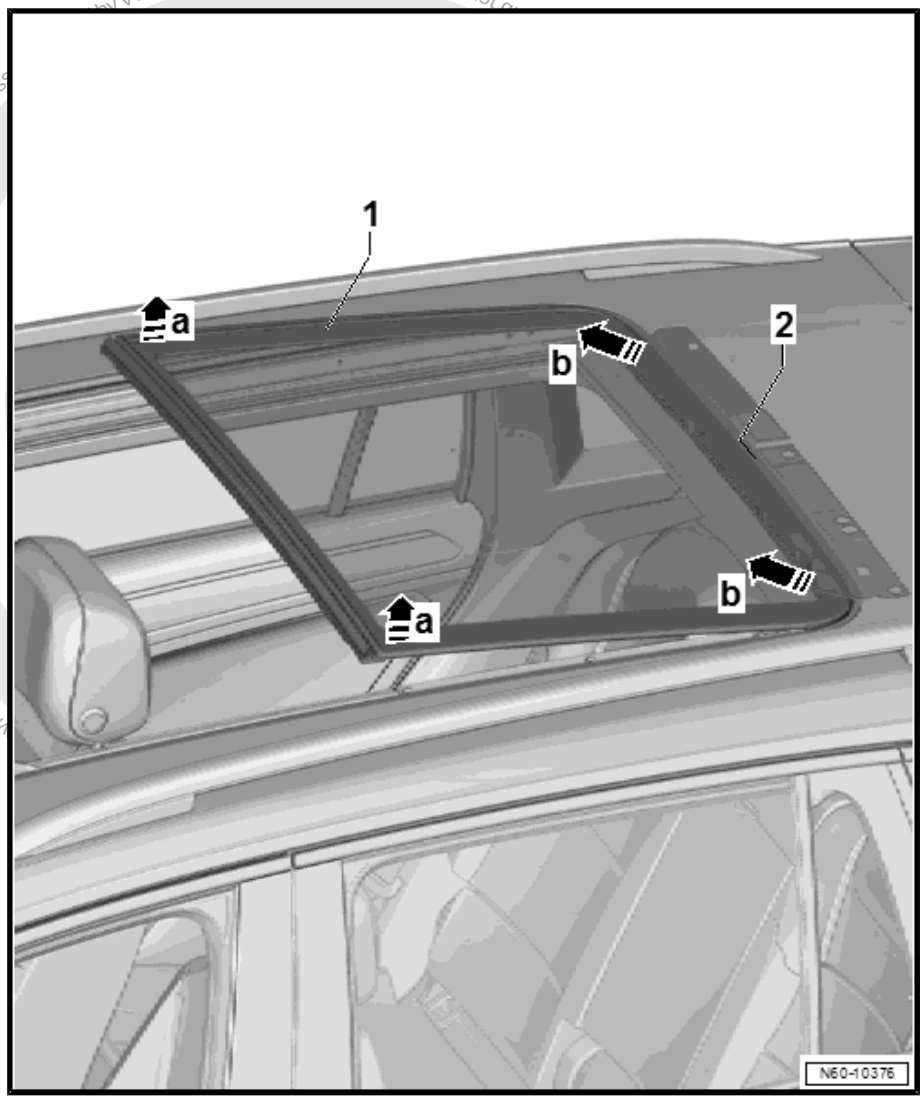
Installing

Note

- *New bolts must always be used when installing glass panel.*
- *To screw in bolts, use a magnetic tool so that bolts do not fall into panoramic sliding roof guide.*

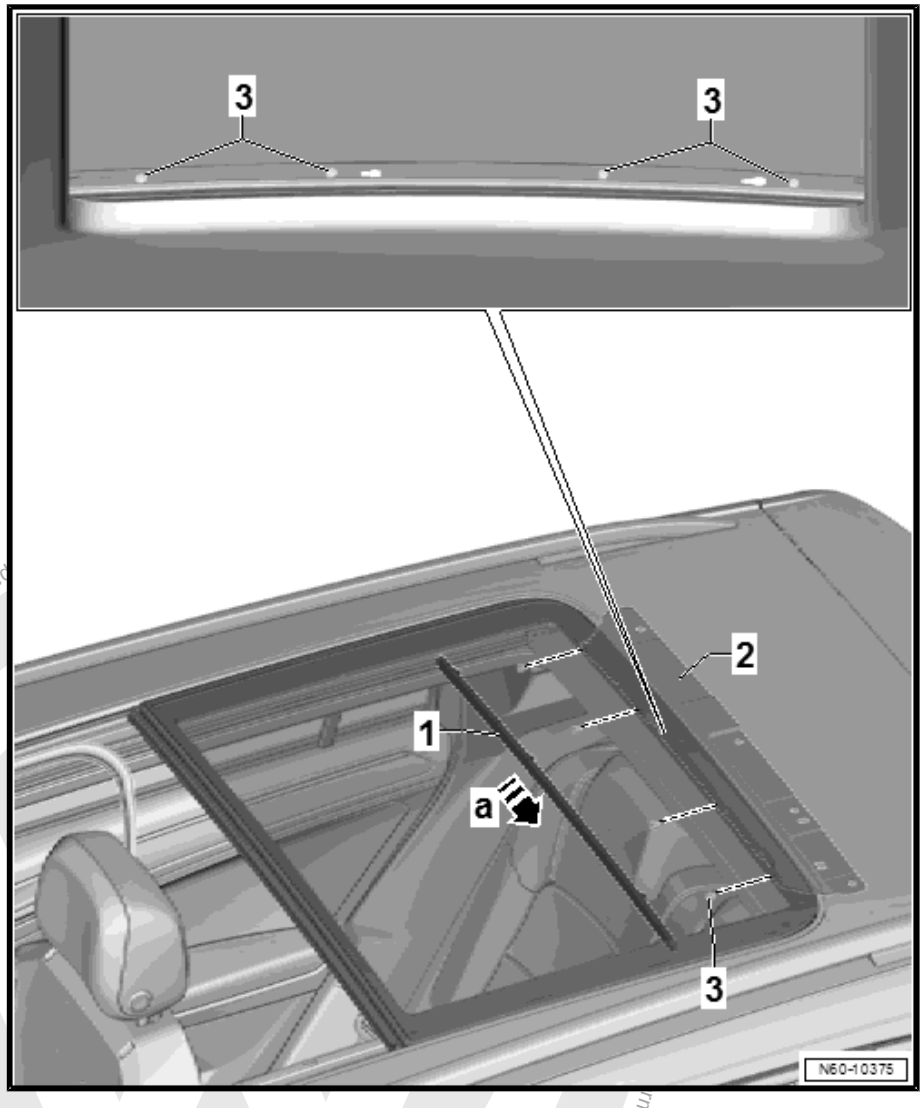
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG does not ... for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless ...



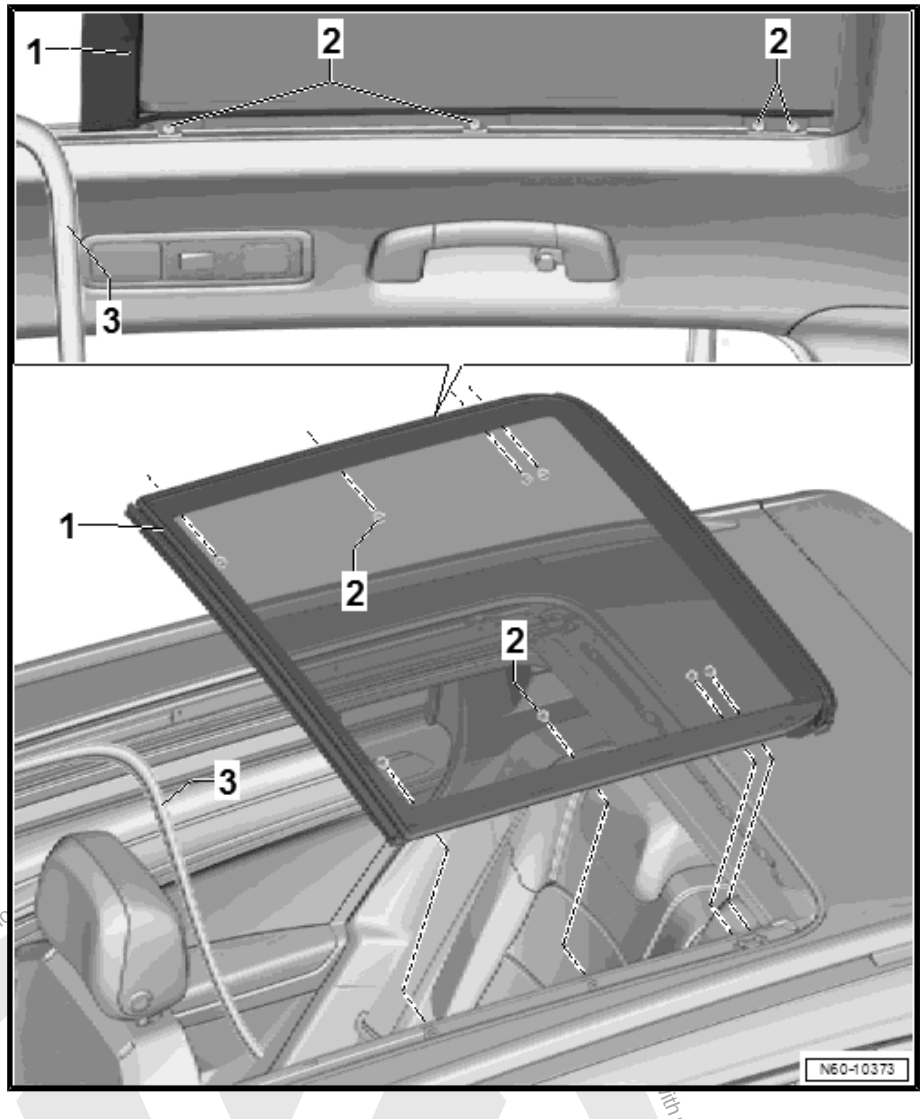
Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Swing in rear glass panel -1- at an angle from above under panel flange -2-.
– Insert rear glass panel -1- in roof aperture and align.



– Insert bolts -2-; do not tighten.
– Trim -1- is not installed until all bolts have been tightened.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Insert bolts -2-; do not tighten.
– Install front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Adjusting rear glass panel -1- ⇒ page 227 .
– After adjusting rear glass panel, tighten bolts.
– Press seal -3- onto assembly frame.

Note

- *After the glass panel has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Specified torques

- Bolts for rear glass panel
  ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. With respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.5 Adjusting sunroof panel

⇒ “1.5.1 Checking height adjustment”, page 227

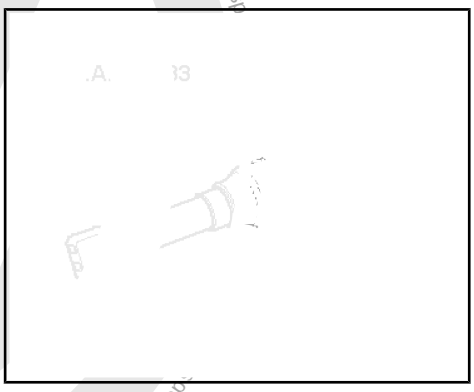
⇒ “1.5.2 Adjusting front glass panel”, page 229

⇒ “1.5.3 Adjusting rear glass panel”, page 230

1.5.1 Checking height adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

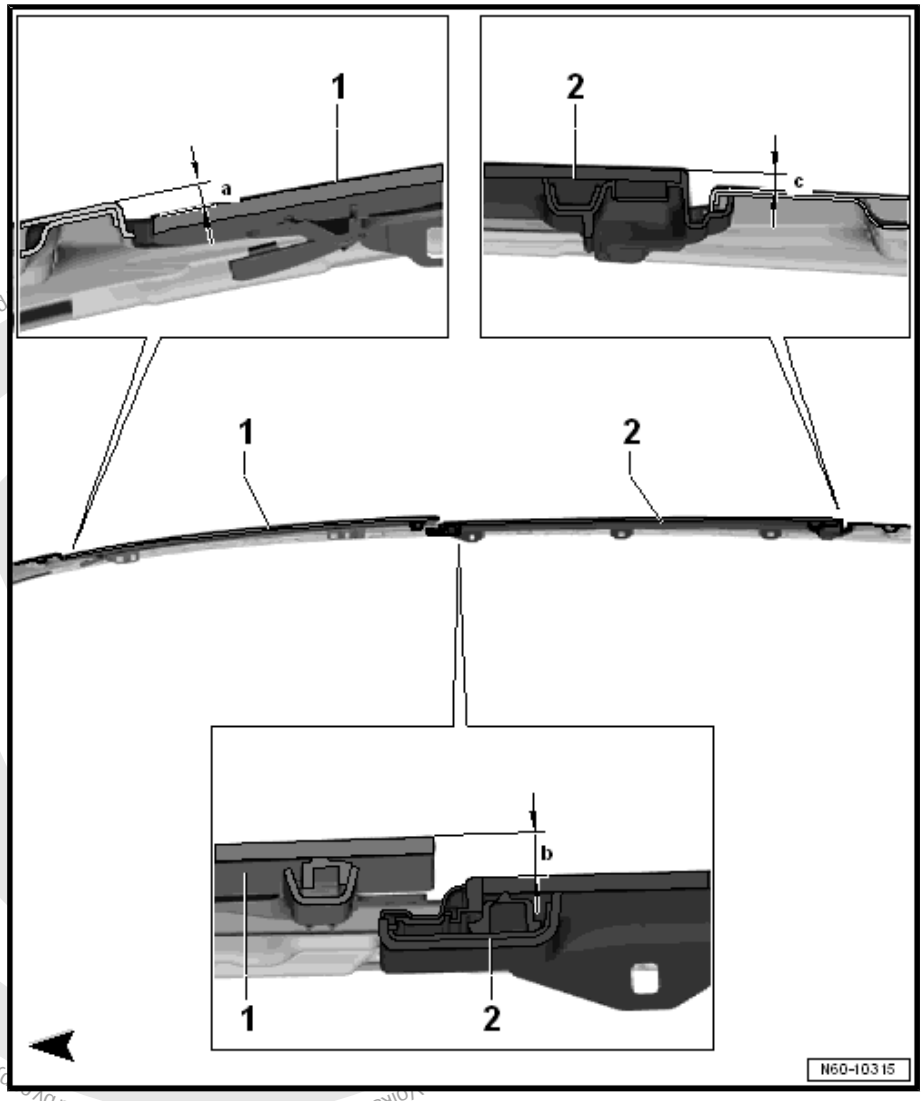
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

- *The front glass panel is adjusted at the front edge only and the rear glass panel is adjusted at the rear edge only.*
- *To achieve the best possible optical appearance, ensure that adjustments on left and right are uniform (symmetrical).*
- *The arrow in the illustration points in direction of normal travel.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Checking height adjustment

– Check adjustment of front glass panel -1- and rear glass panel -2- with a depth gauge.

♦ Dimension -a-: 1.5 ± 1 mm

♦ Dimension -b-: 1 ± 1 mm

♦ Dimension -c-: 1 ± 1 mm

If measured values differ from specifications, respective glass panel must be adjusted.

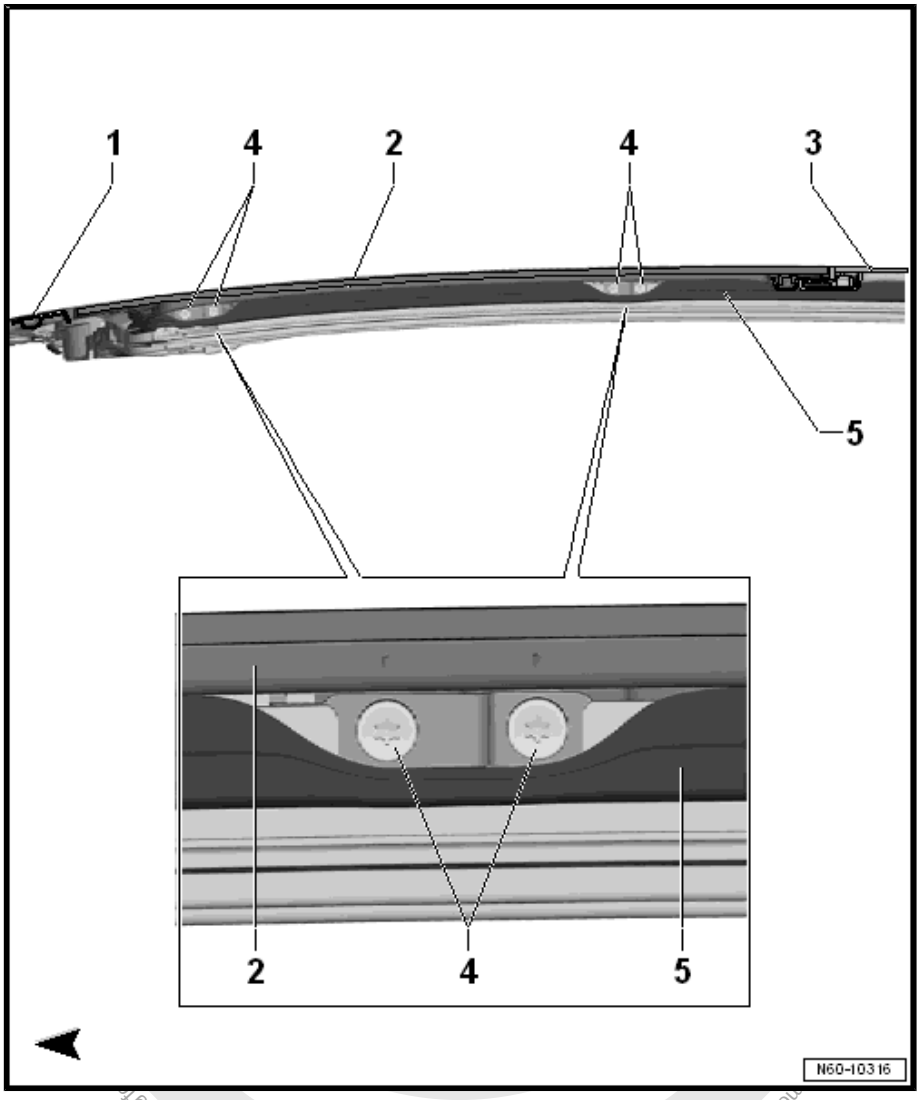
♦ Adjusting front glass panel ⇒ page 229

♦ Adjusting rear glass panel ⇒ page 230

1.5.2 Adjusting front glass panel

Note

The glass panel height adjustment is performed after the glass panel has been closed from slide open position.



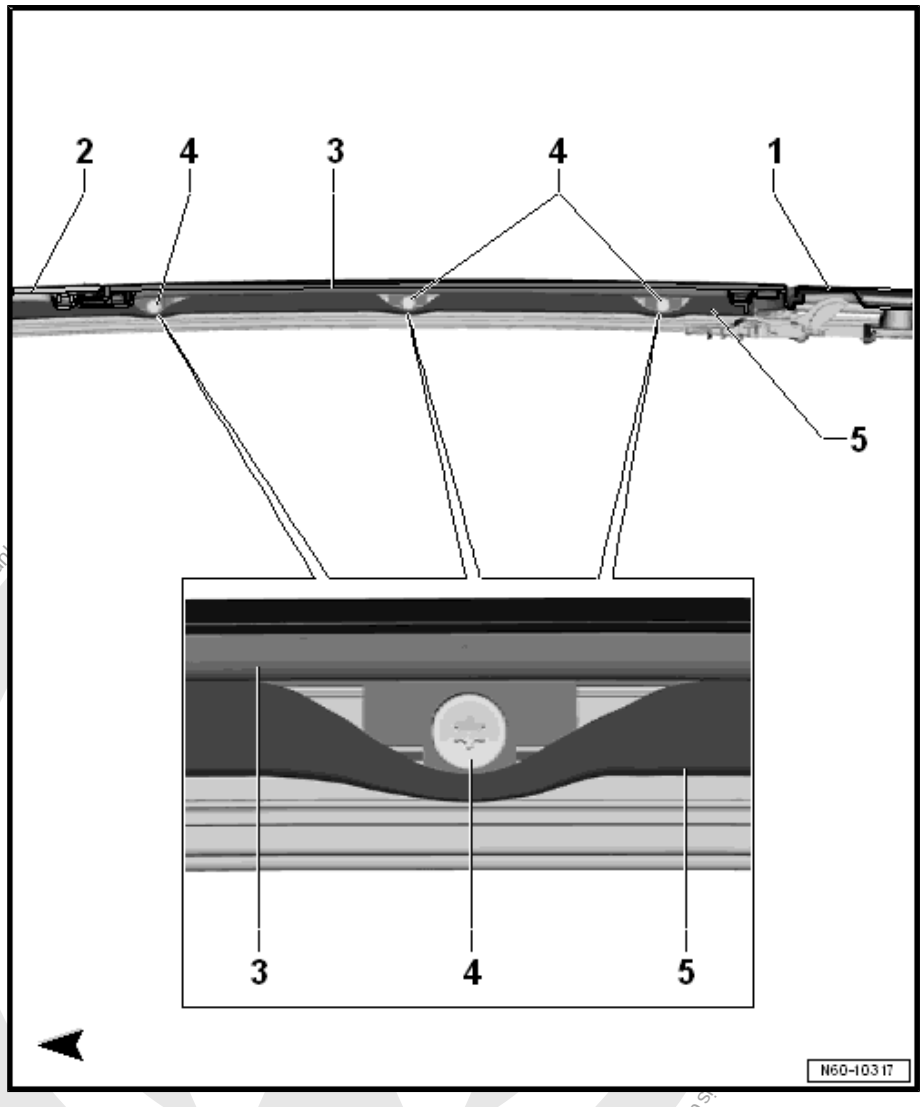
– Remove trim ⇒ page 216 .
– Pull seal -5- off assembly frame.
– Loosen only bolts -4- on left and right for front glass panel -2-.
– Adjust front glass panel -2- according to dimensions ⇒ page 227 .
– Tighten bolts -4-.
– Installing trim ⇒ page 216 .
– Position seal -5- on assembly frame.

Specified torques

♦ Bolts for front glass panel
⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.5.3 Adjusting rear glass panel



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
This document is not permitted unless for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted or private

– Pull inner seal -5- off assembly frame.
– Loosen bolts -4- for rear glass panel -3-.
– Adjust rear glass panel -3- according to dimensions ⇒ page 227 .
– Tighten bolts on left and right -4-.
– Position seal -5- on assembly frame.

Specified torques

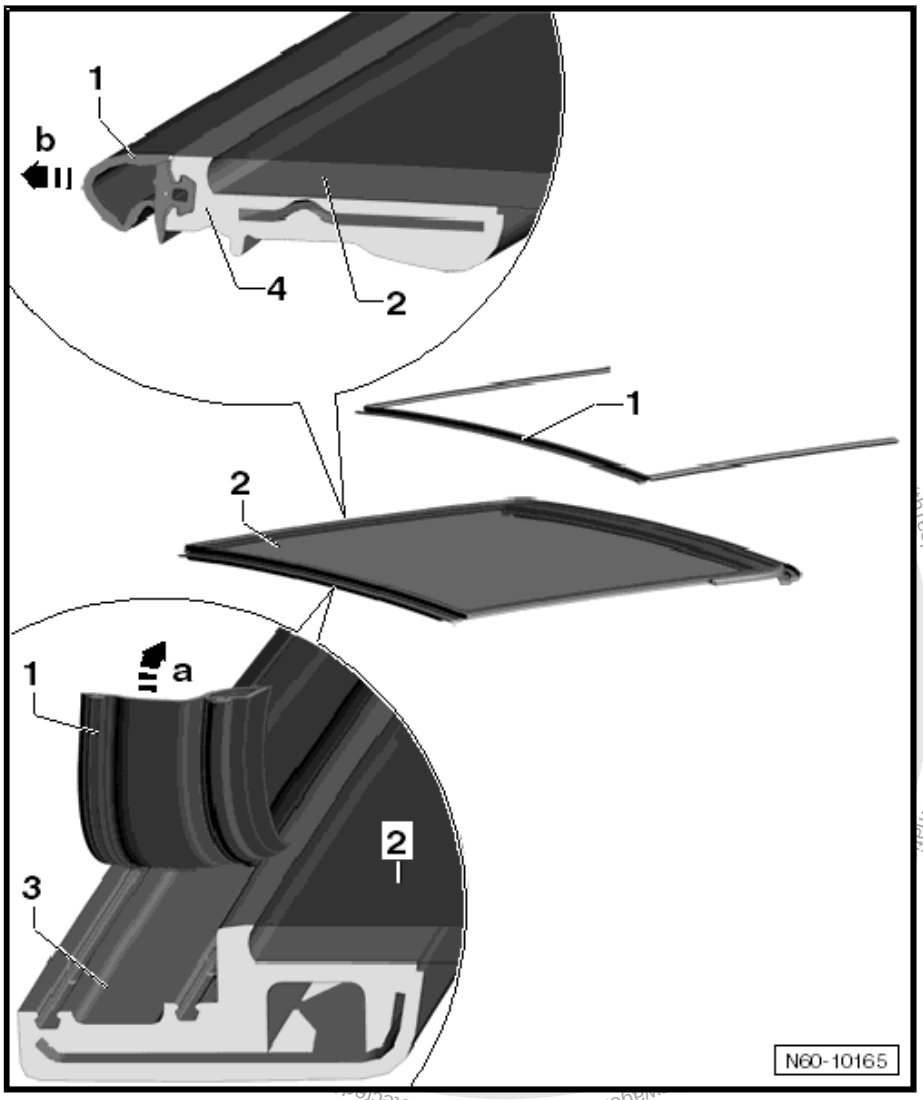
♦ Bolts for rear glass panel
⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

1.6 Removing and installing sliding sunroof seals

⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing rear panel seal”, page 231

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing the exterior seal”, page 232

1.6.1 Removing and installing rear panel seal



Removing

– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .

– Pull off seal in side area -4- of rear glass panel -1- to side -arrow b-.

– Pull off seal in front area -3- of rear glass panel -1- upwards -arrow a-.

Installing

– To ensure that seal slides into mounting bracket more easily, it is sprayed with a soap and water solution.

– Press seal in front area -3- from above into glass panel mounting bracket -1-.

– Press seal in side area -4- into glass panel mounting bracket -1-.

– Install rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .

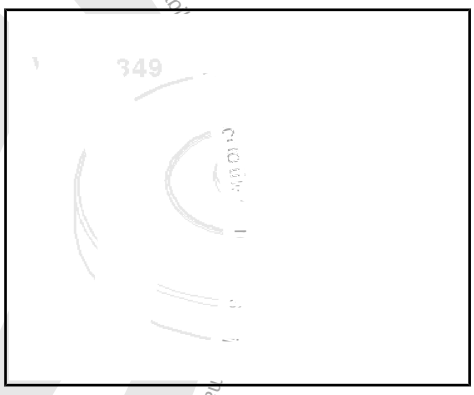
1.6.2 Removing and installing the exterior seal

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - T10563-

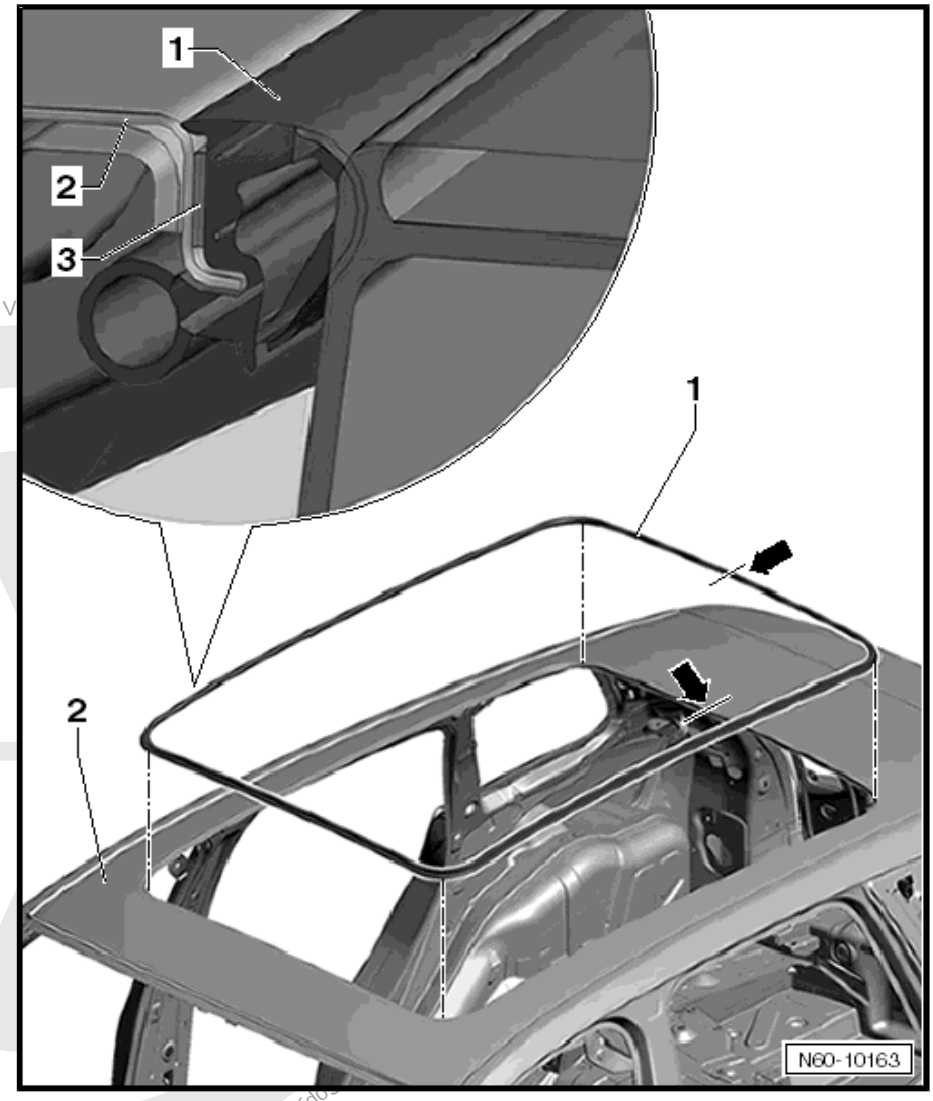


♦ Adhesive residue remover - VAS 6349-



Removing

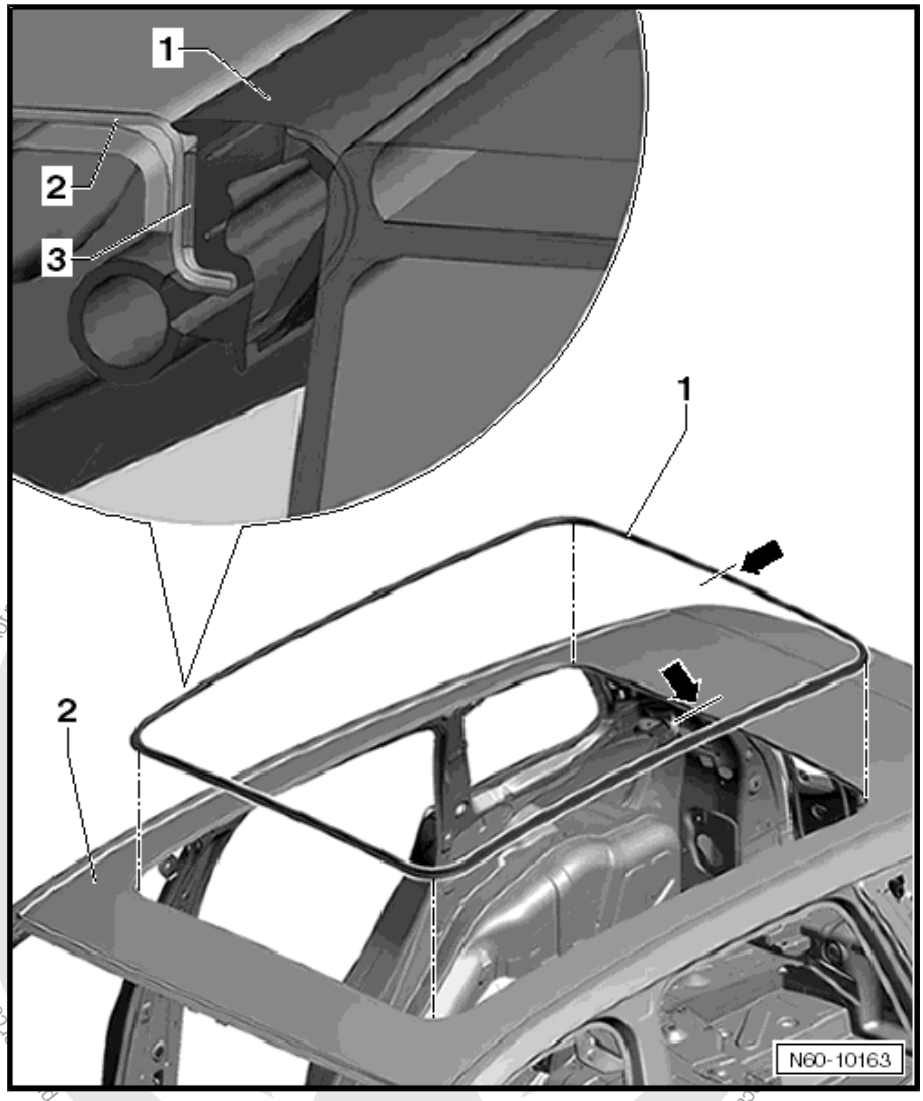
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not g
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Pull exterior seal -1- with bonding area -3- from roof -2-.

Installing

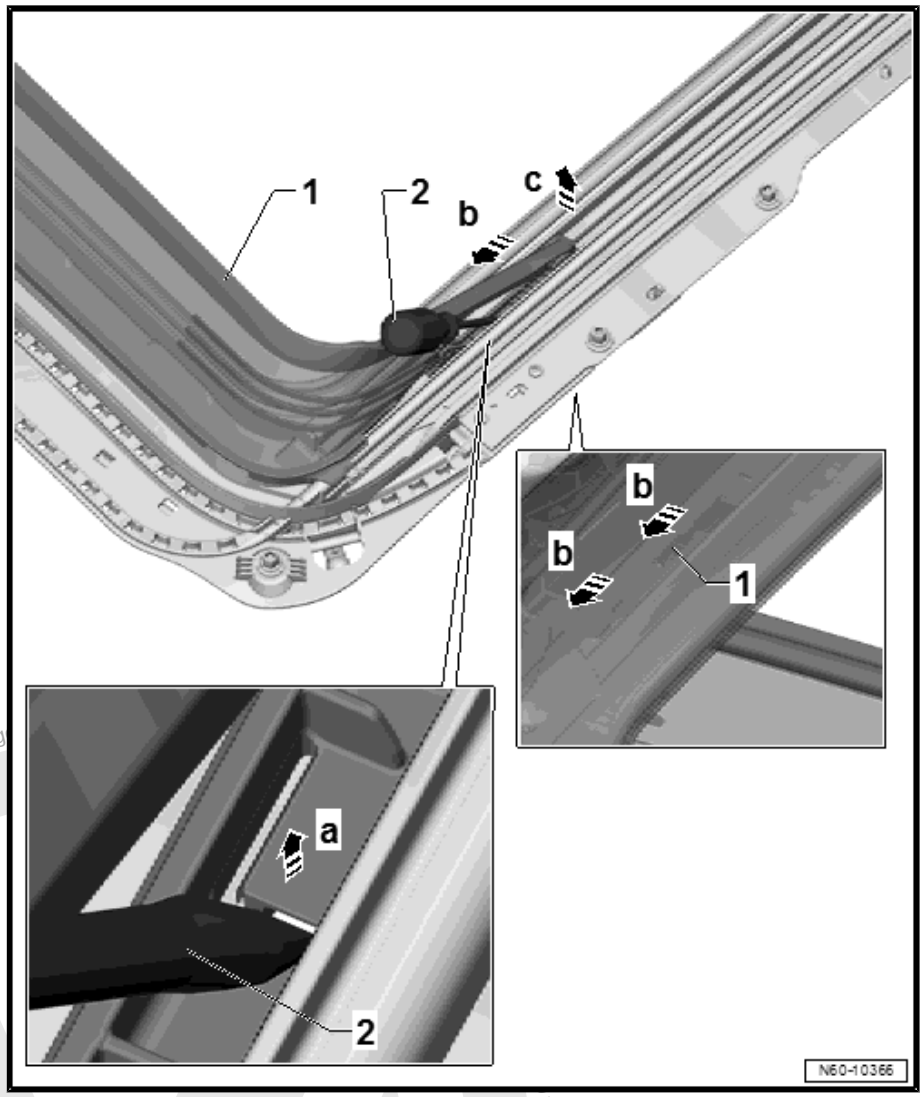


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove existing adhesive residues with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
– Entire bonding surface on roof cut-out must be free of dust and grease.
– Clean complete bonding area with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
– Prime bonding areas on roof cut-out using plastic primer - D 366 PR1 A1- .
– Observe flash-off time of 10 minutes.
– Centre new exterior seal -1- with joint -arrows- to centre of rear roof cut-out.
– Pull protective film from adhesive tape -3- and press seal onto roof -2-.
– If the exterior seal is excessively long, any excess length is evenly compressed.
– Press exterior seal on firmly and evenly 2x around circumference using roller - 3356- .
– Install assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .

1.7 Removing and installing wind deflector

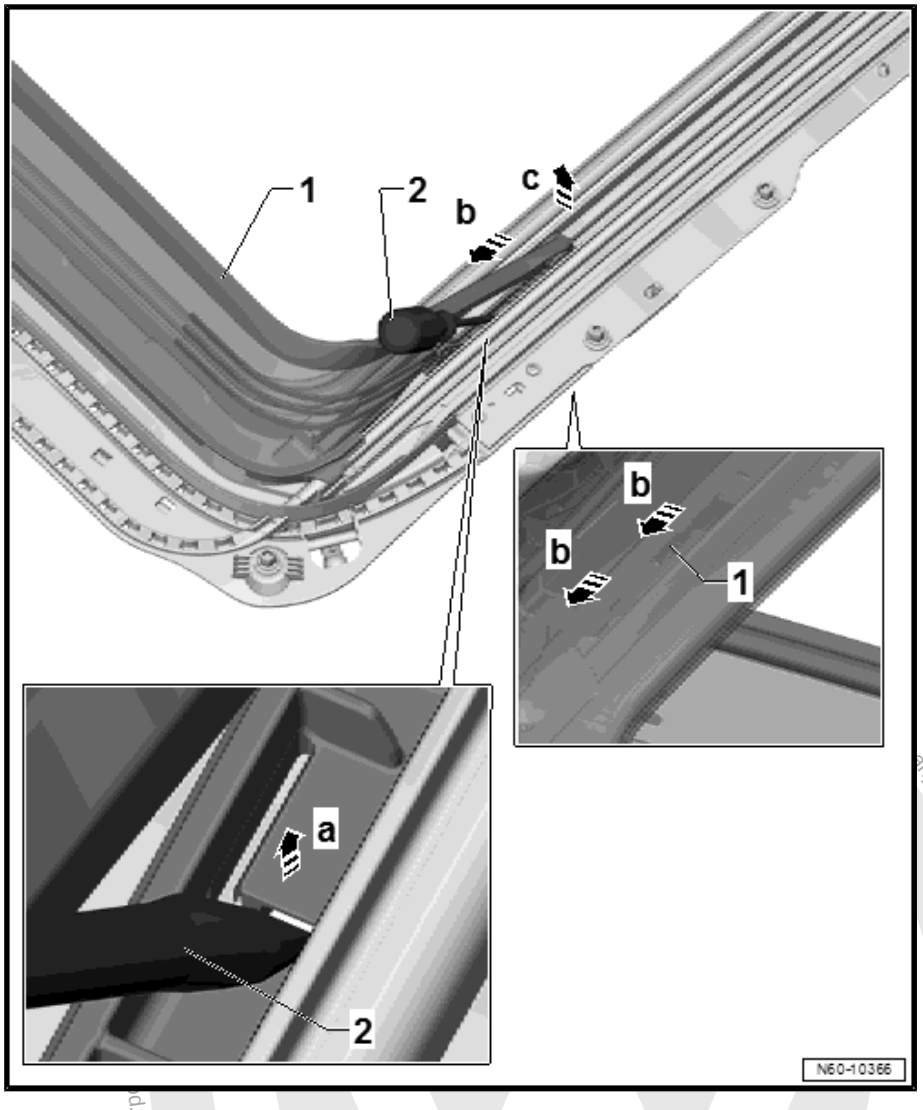
Removing



– Open front glass panel completely.
– Using a screwdriver -2-, lift out retaining hook from frame -arrow a-.
– Push wind deflector -1- towards front as far as stop -arrows b-.
– Lift out wind deflector from installation frame.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. the correctness of information in this document.

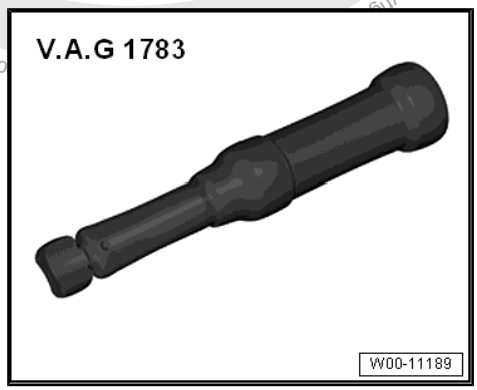


– Position wind deflector -1- with retaining hooks in holes.
– Push wind deflector backwards until retaining hooks engage audibly in frame.

1.8 Removing and installing sunroof motor - V1-

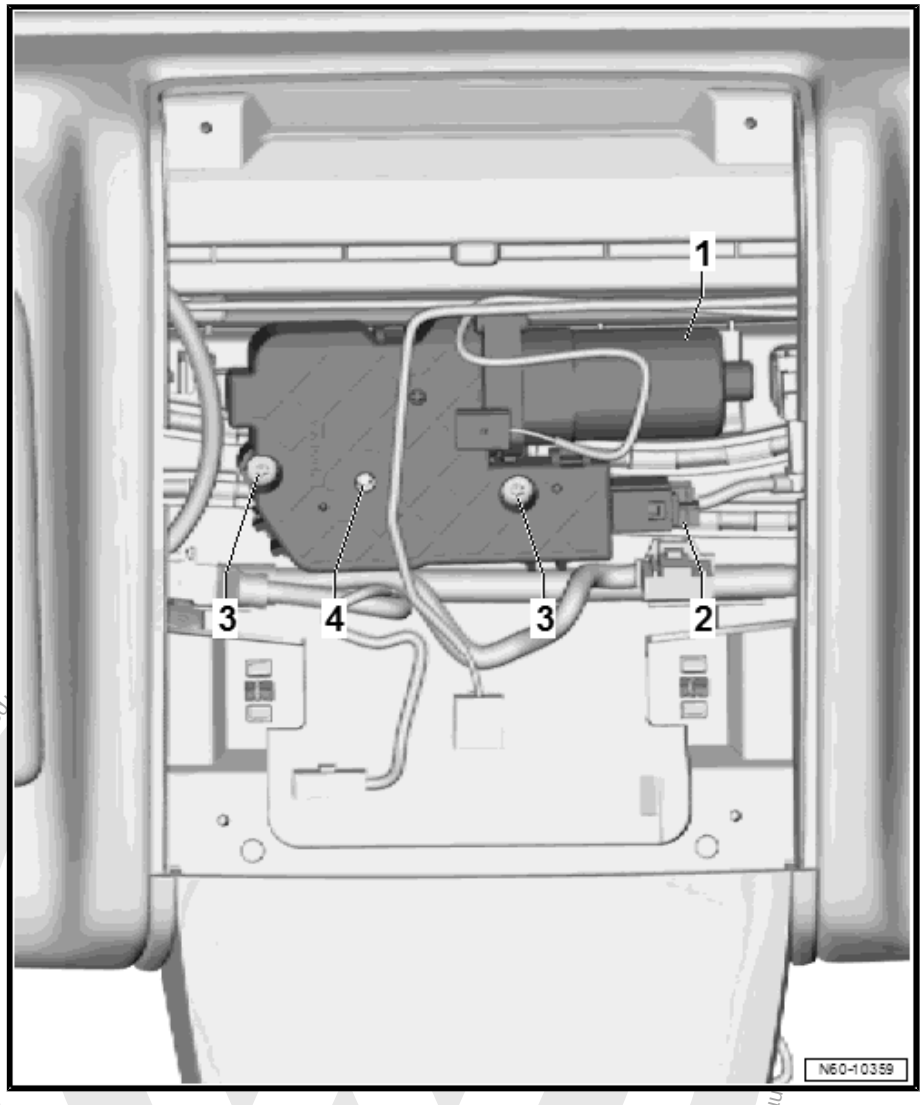
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

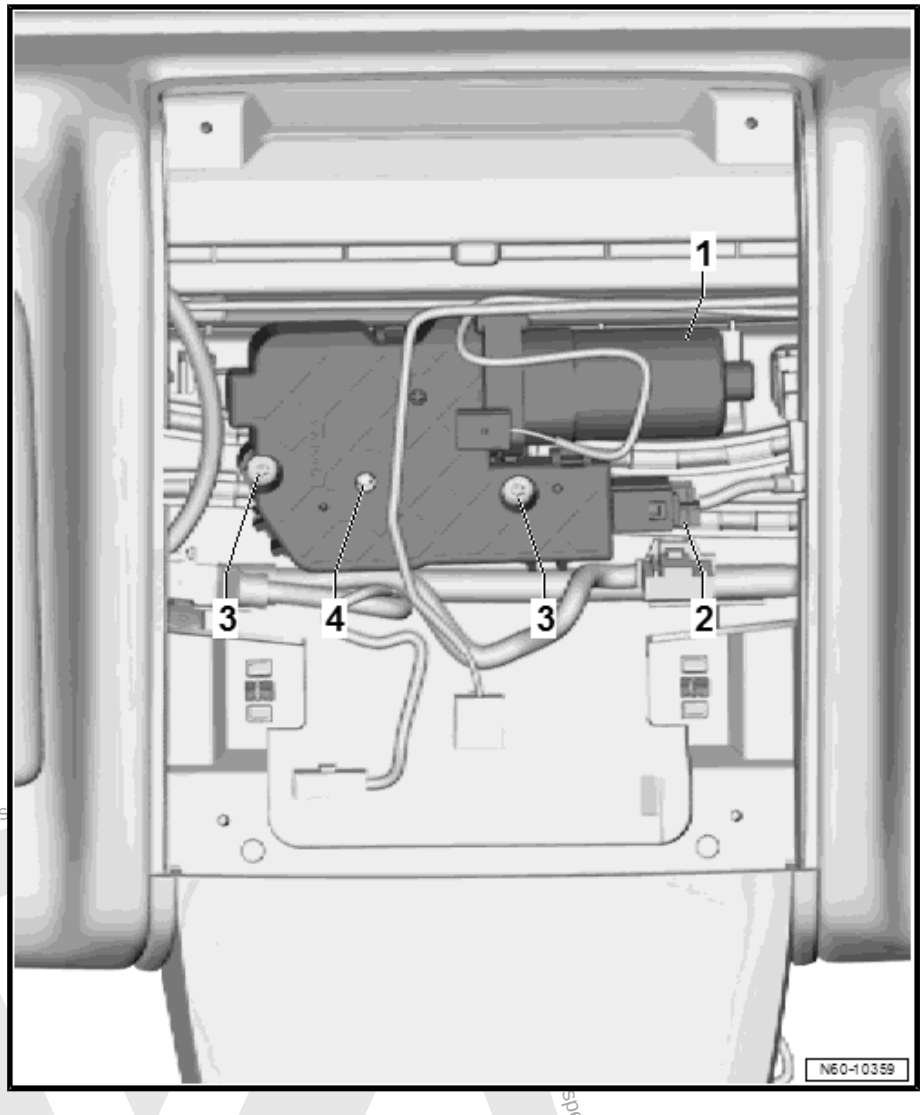
Created by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



– Removing lights and front operating unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights and switches in roof trim .
– Unscrew bolts -3-.
– Lower sliding roof motor -1- slightly and tilt out to rear.
– Separate electrical connector -2-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.



With front glass panel removed:

– Push tilt mechanism fully forwards on both sides until it is completely lowered.
– Install sunroof motor -1- and tighten bolts -3-.
– Fit electrical connector -2-.
– Install moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

Note

- *After the motor has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Specified torques

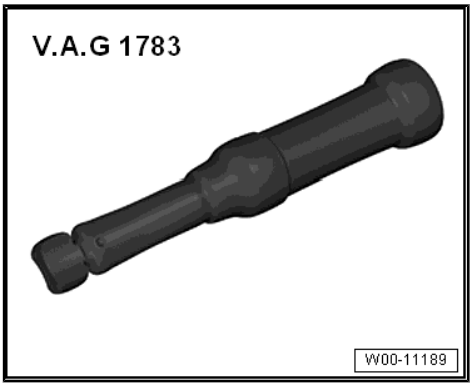
- Bolts for sunroof motor
⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.9 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

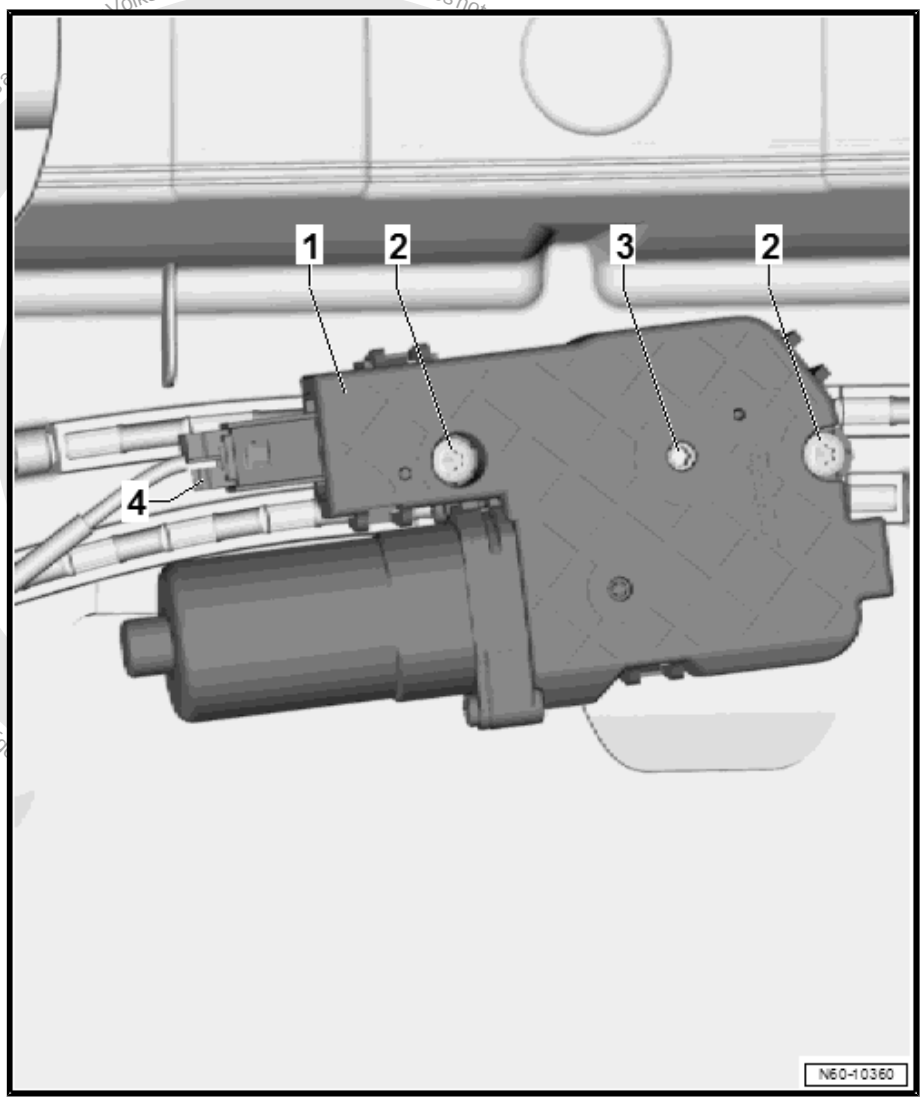
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not
copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless



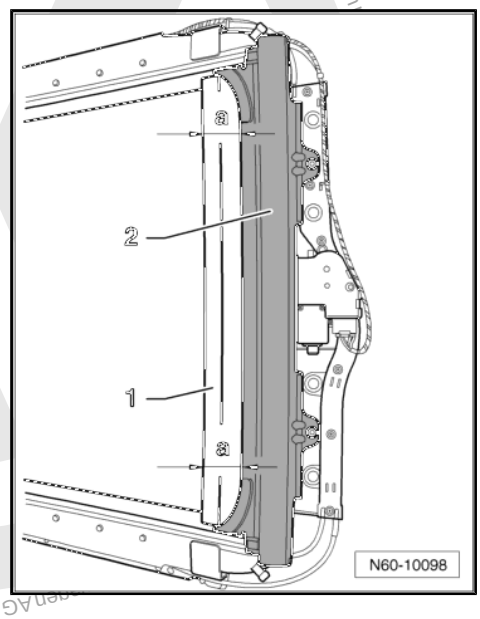
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Separate electrical connector -4- on roller blind motor -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Remove sunroof roller blind motor -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Before installing roller blind motor, roller blind must be aligned parallel.
– Measure and adjust distance -dimension a- between blind brace -1- and blind cassette -2-.



Note

- *After the motor has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Specified torques

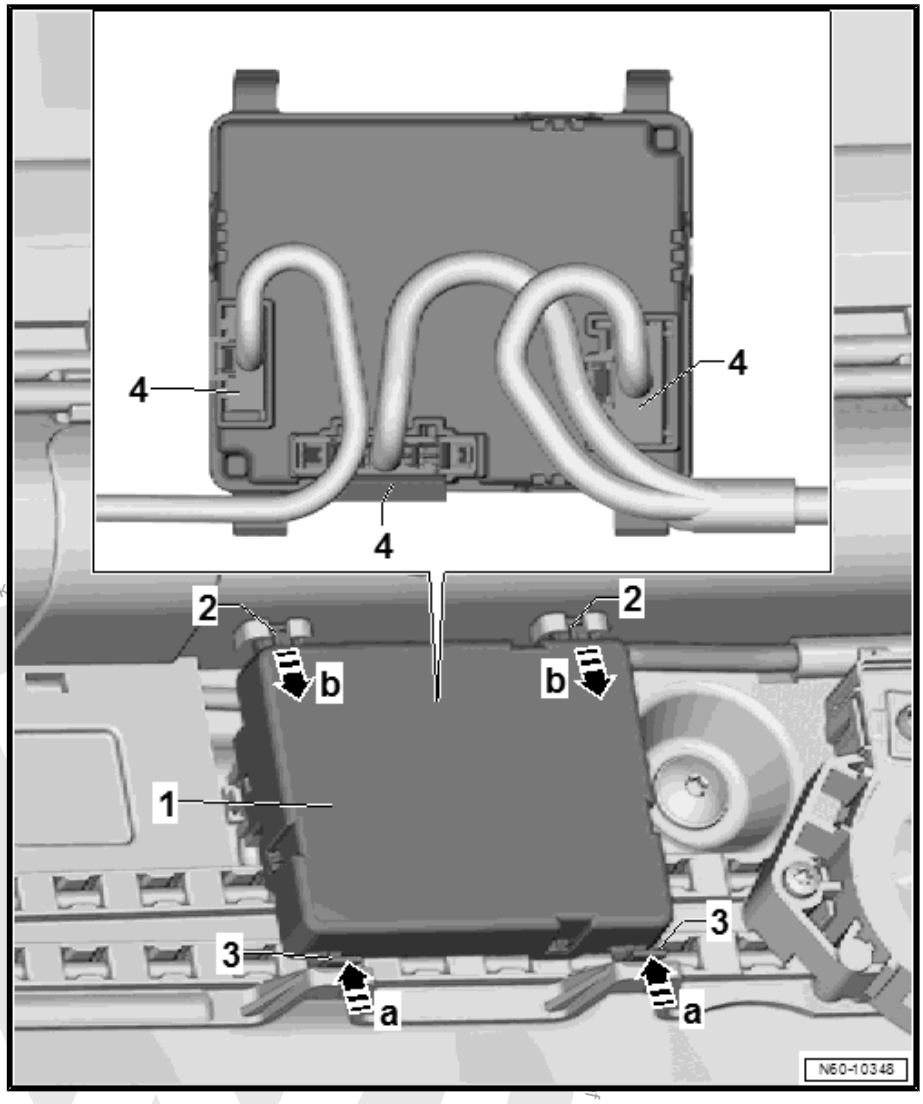
- Bolts for roller blind motor
  ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

1.10 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind control unit - J394-

Note

The sunroof roller blind control unit - J394- is integrated in the sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with



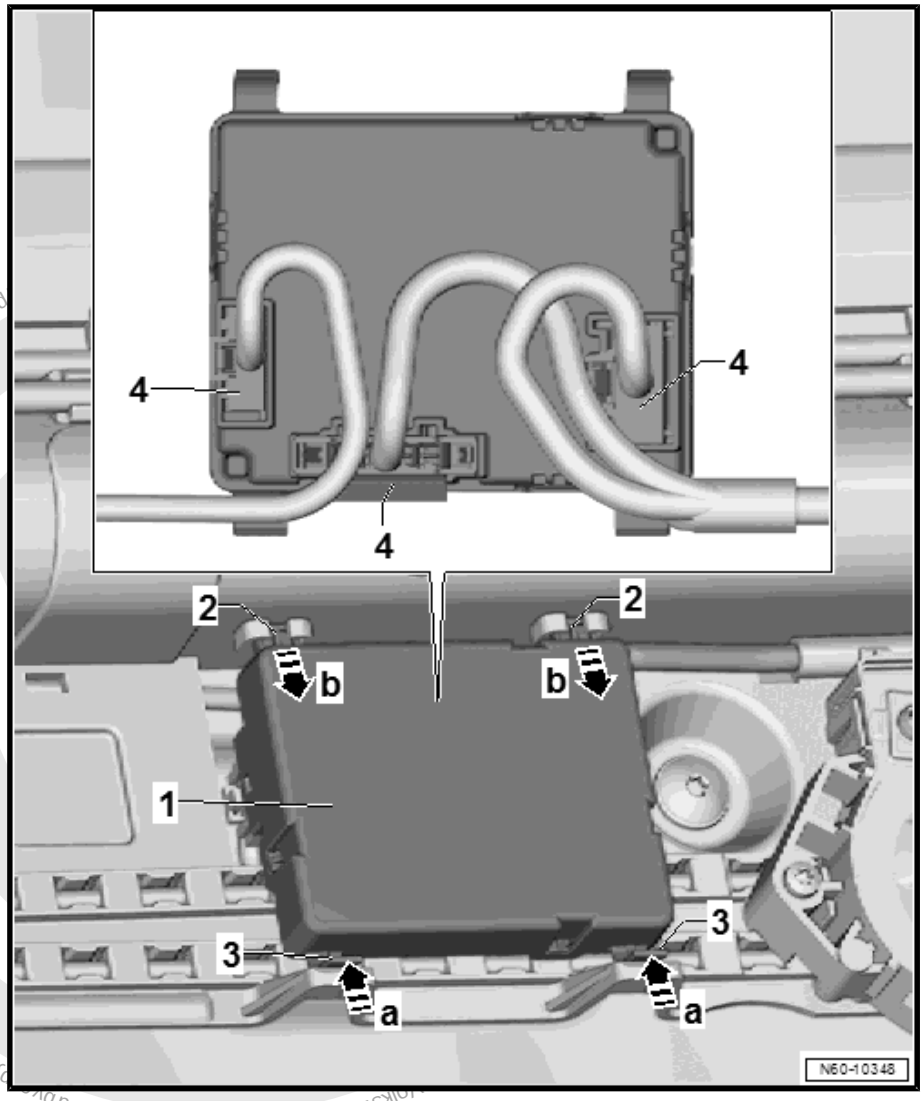
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .
– Release retaining hooks -3- -arrows a-.
– Slightly lift control unit -1-, and pull it out of bracket -2- -arrows b-.
– Disconnect connectors -4- from control unit -1-.
– Code new control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.11 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

Note

Integrated in the sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- is the sunroof roller blind control unit - J394- .

Copyright by Volkswagen. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

– Release retaining hooks -3- -arrows a-.

– Slightly lift control unit -1-, and pull it out of bracket -2- -arrows b-.

– Disconnect connectors -4- from control unit -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

– Code new control unit. ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

1.12 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind

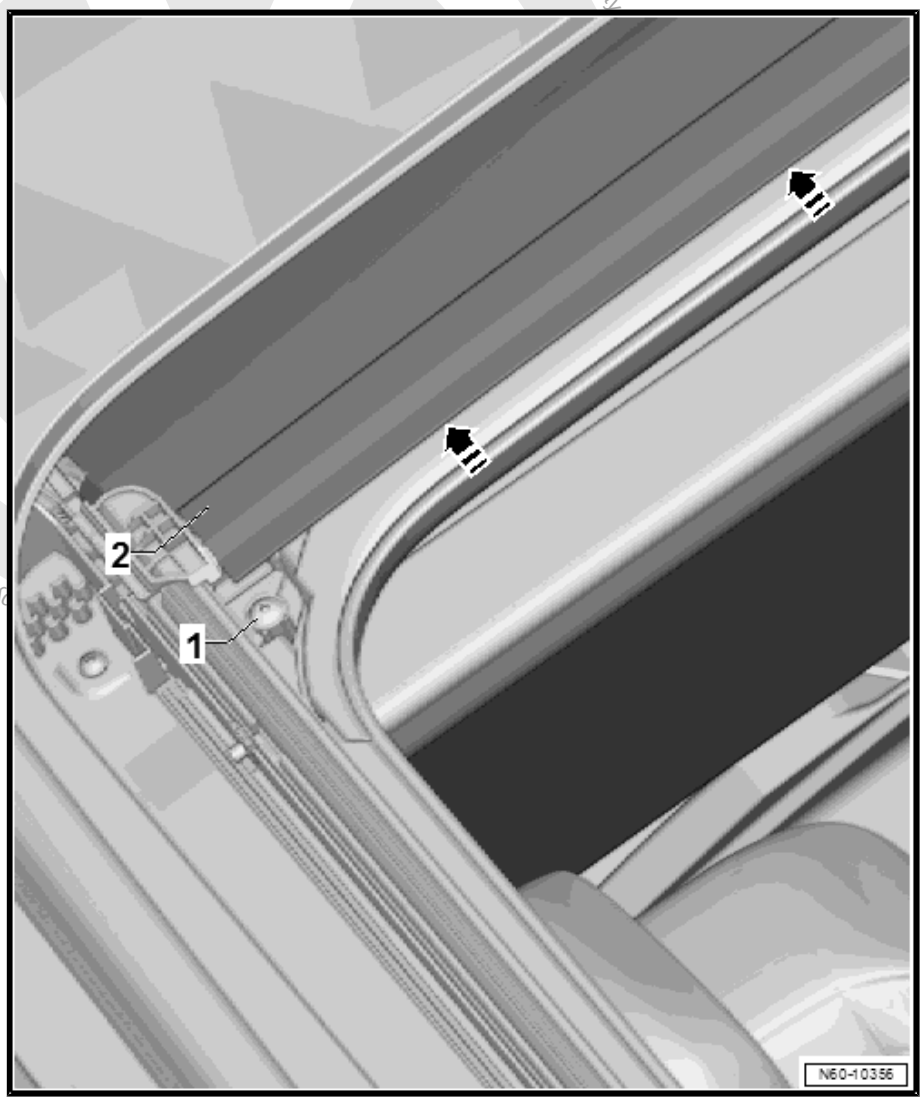
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

Removing

Note

In the event of power failure, the sunroof sun blind can be moved by turning the sunroof sun blind motor with a commercially available hexagon key to removal position (fully open). *⇒ page 260*

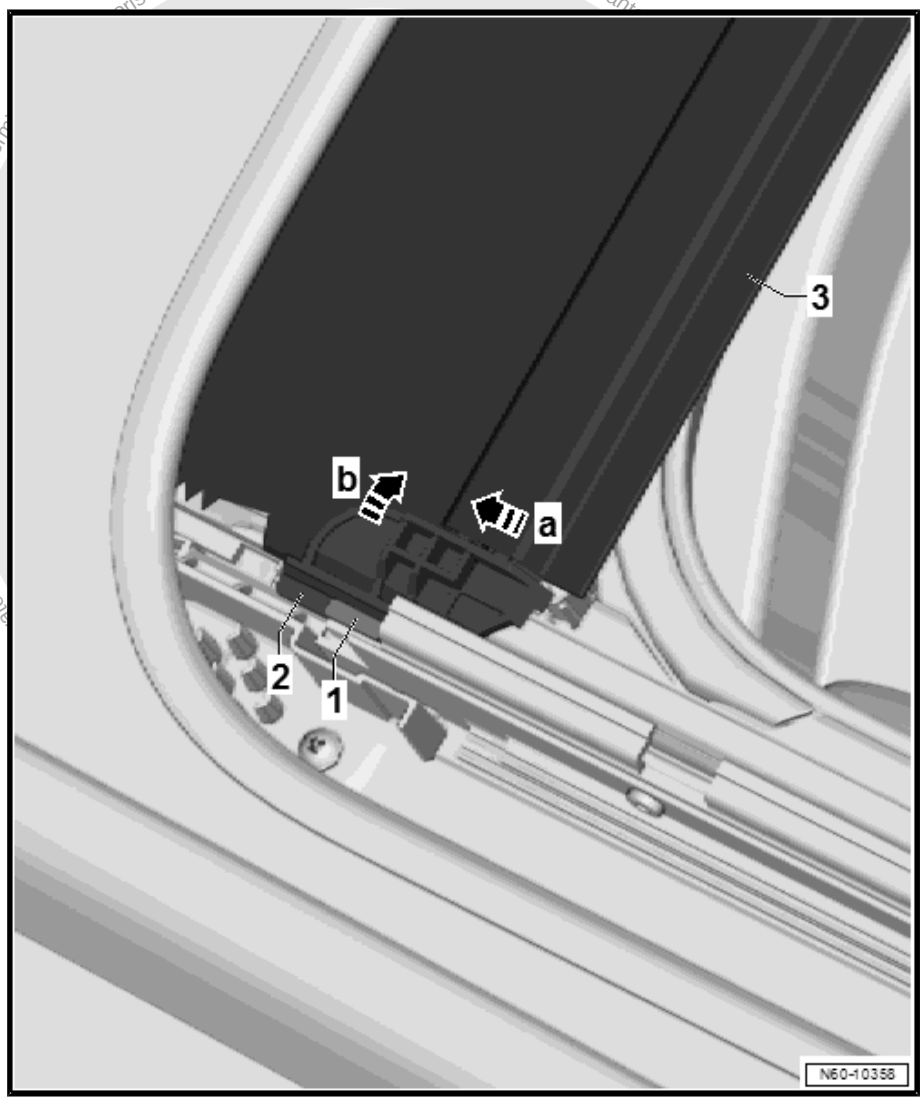


– Move sun blind to fully open position -arrows-.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

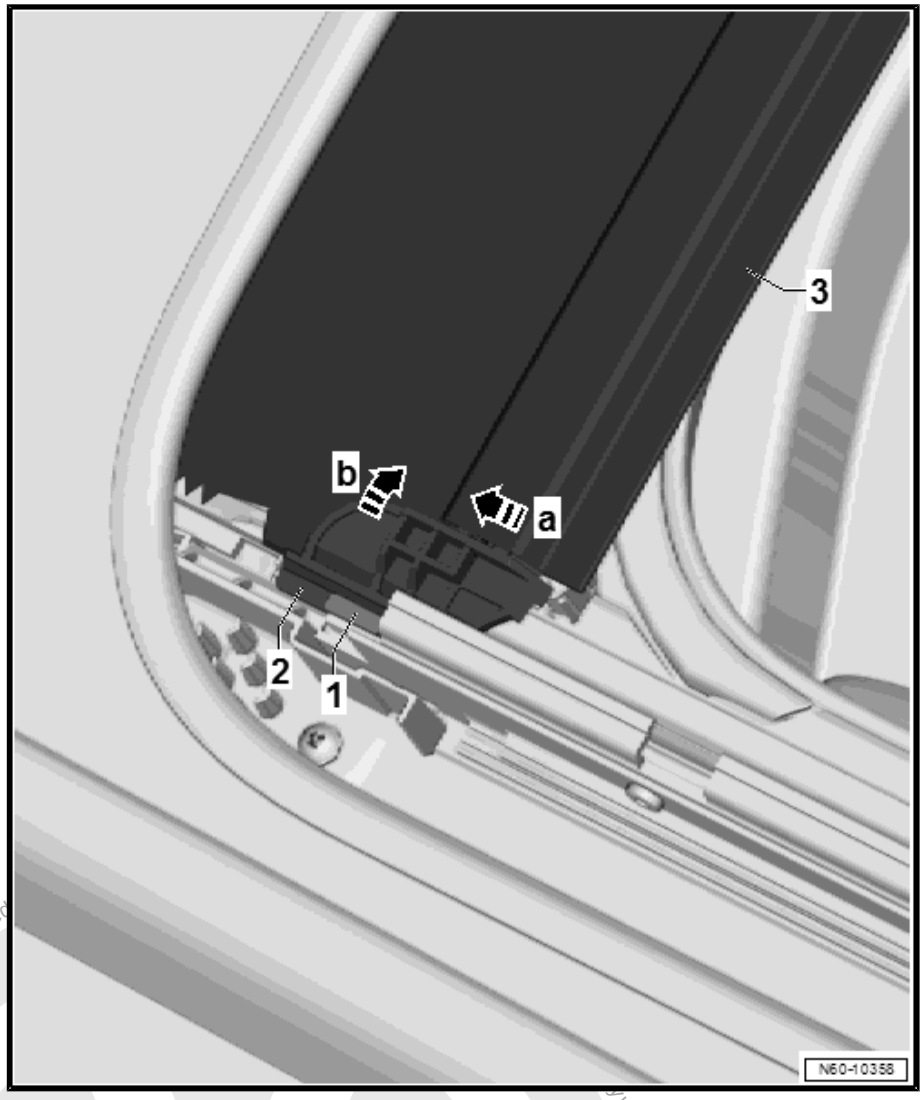
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .
– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Remove roller blind motor ⇒ page 239 .
– Unscrew bolts on left and right -1-.
– Push roller blind -2- completely towards rear -arrows- by hand.

...rised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarant...
...e or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not perm...



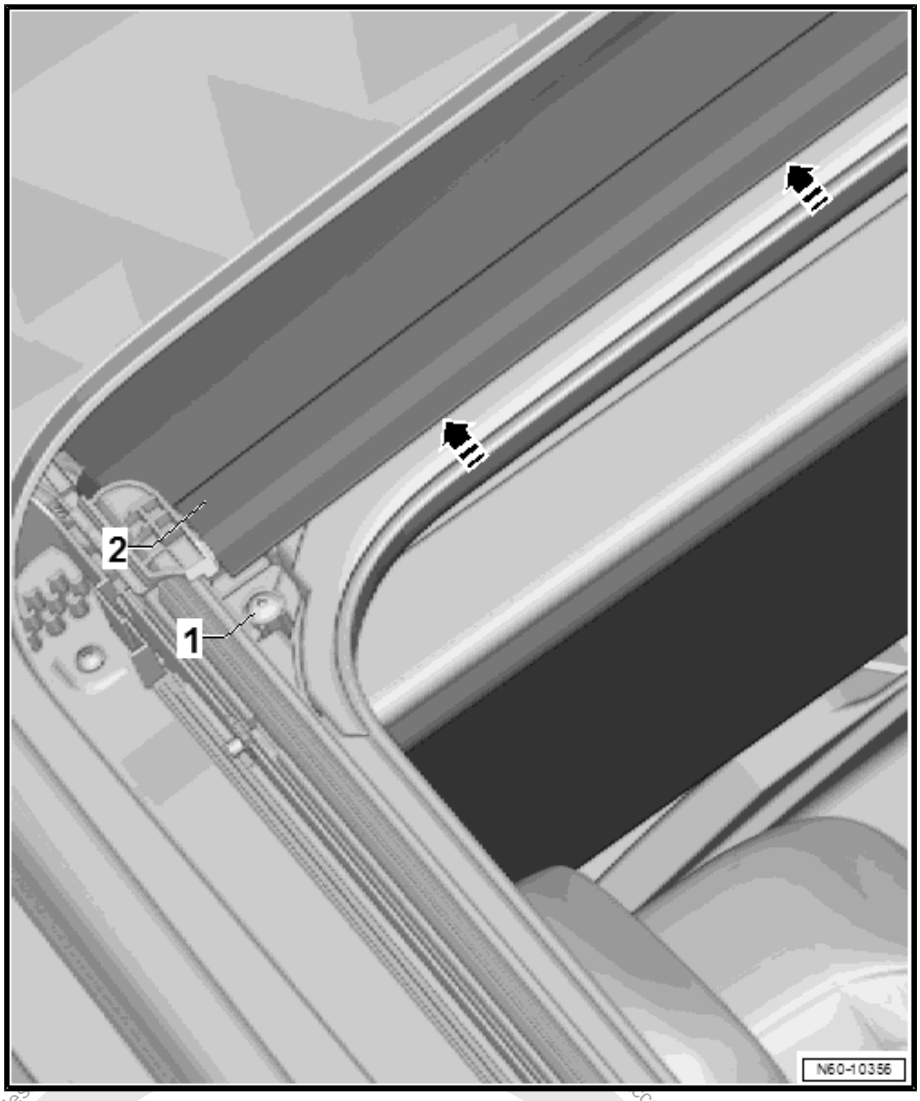
– Push roller blind -2- completely towards rear -arrow a- parallel by hand.
– Tilt roller blind at front and lift out of assembly frame -arrow b-.

Installing



– Guide roller blind into assembly frame from above at an angle.
– Pull roller blind -2- into guide rails parallel by hand.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Tighten bolts on left and right -1-.
– Install roller blind motor ⇒ page 239 .
– Install assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Install rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Install front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Install moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

Note

- *After the roller blind has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

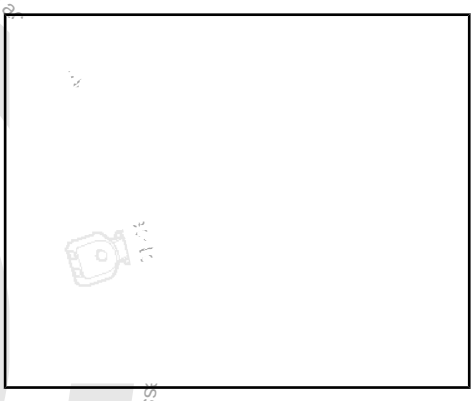
Component	Specified torques
Sun blind	6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.13 Removing and installing sliding sunroof frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

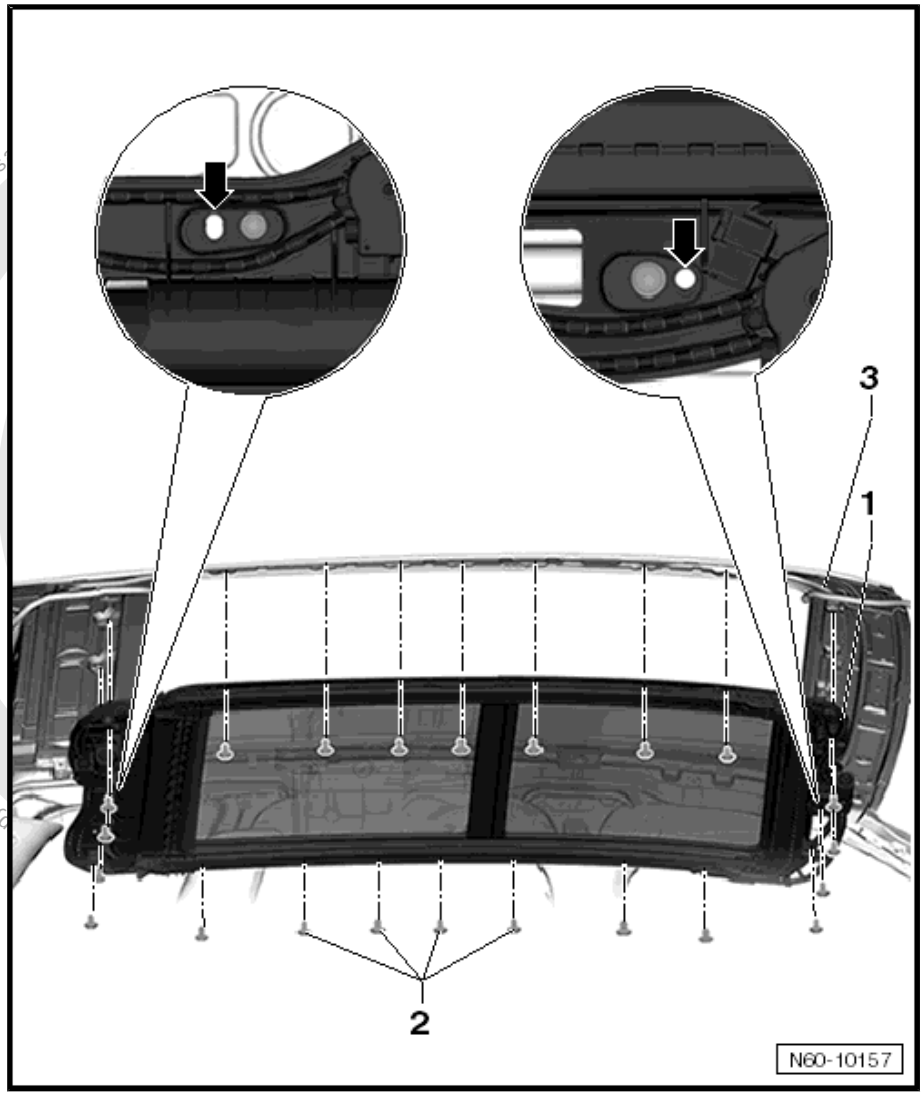


Removing

Note

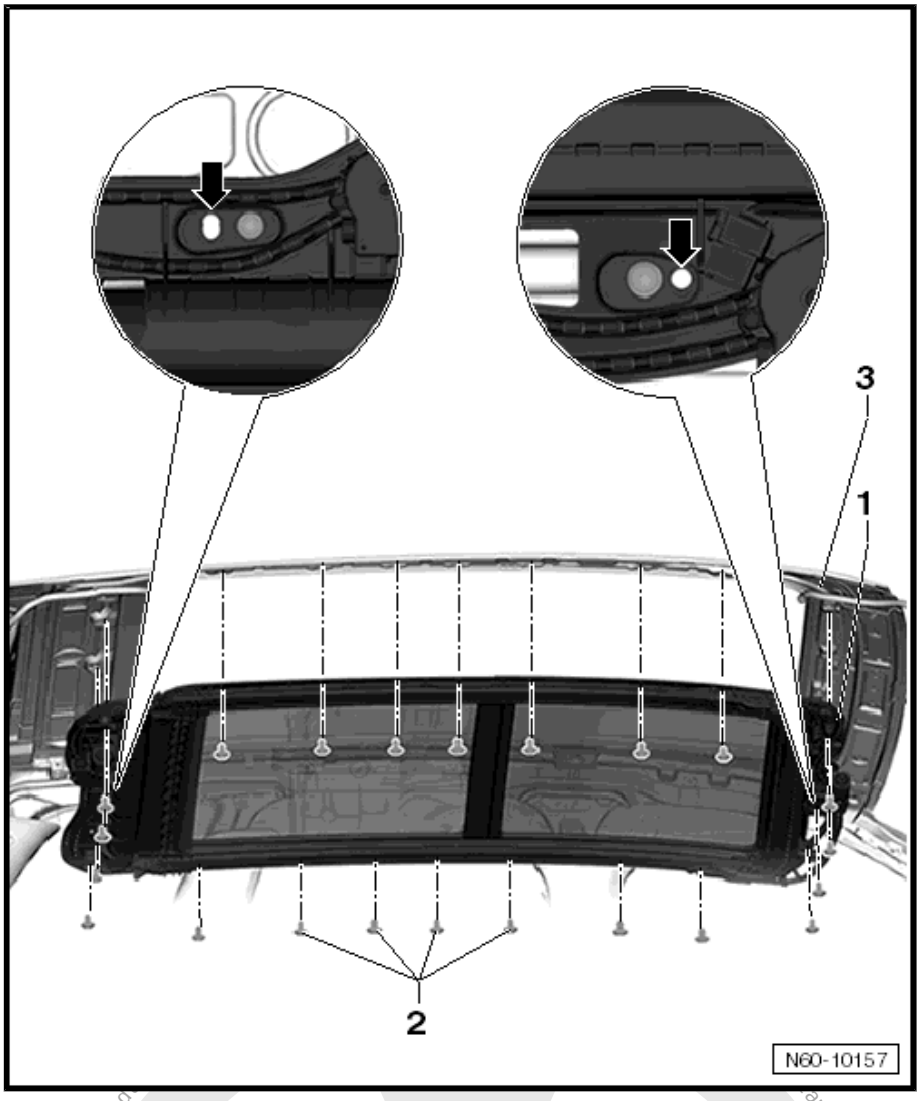
A second mechanic is required for removing and installing assembly frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



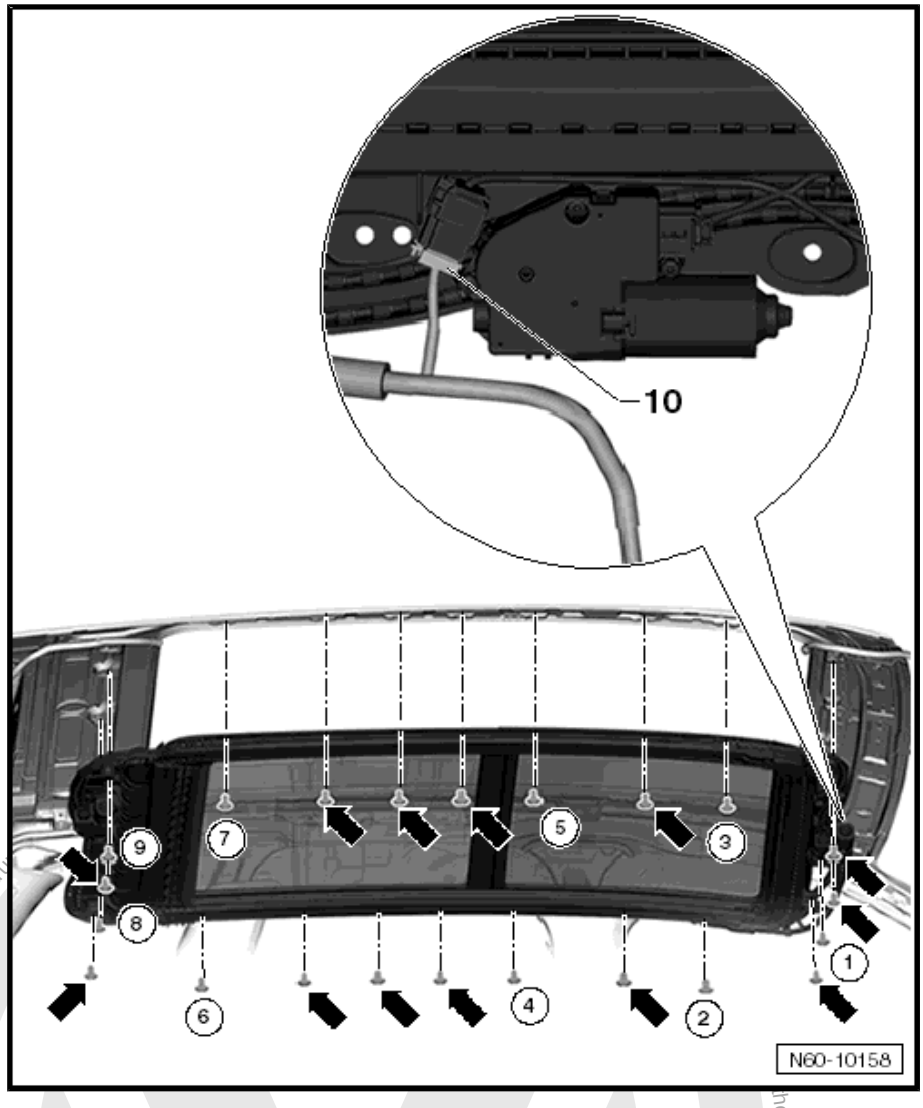
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .
– Pull water drain hoses from fittings.
– Disconnect connector to wiring harness on sliding roof motor.
– Unscrew bolts -2- for assembly frame -1- and lift assembly frame out of vehicle with the help of at least a second mechanic.

Installing



– Lift assembly frame -1- into vehicle with the help of at least a second mechanic.
– When bolting assembly frame -1-, use 2 cylindrical pins (reversed drill bits ∅ 10 mm) to centre at front and rear centring holes -arrows- and to roof.
– Screw in bolts -2-, but do not tighten.
– Connect all water drain hoses -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Tighten numbered bolts following the specified sequence -1 to 9-.

– Tighten remaining bolts -arrows- in any sequence.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

Note

- *After the assembly frame has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Specified torques

- Bolts for assembly frame
  ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - sliding sunroof”, page 214

1.14 Removing and installing rear part

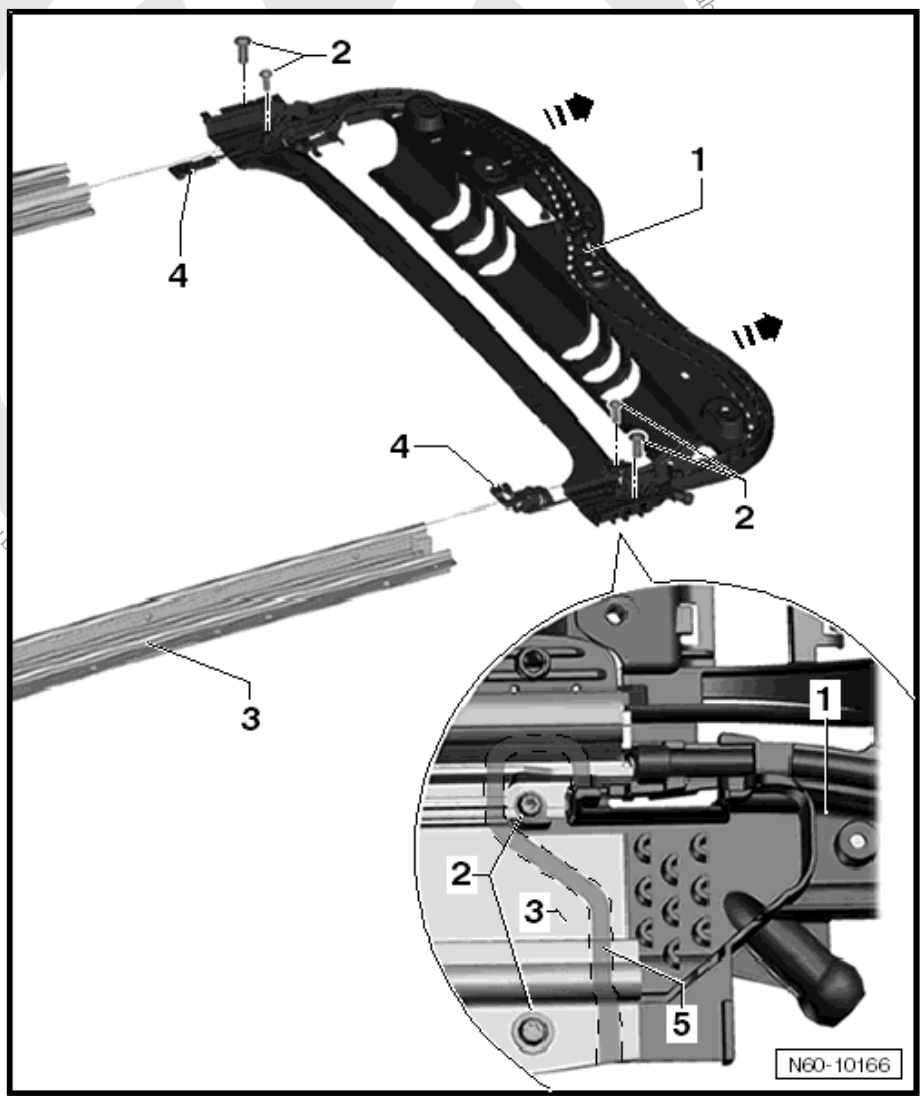
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is assumed for the correctness of information in this document.

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG d

Removing

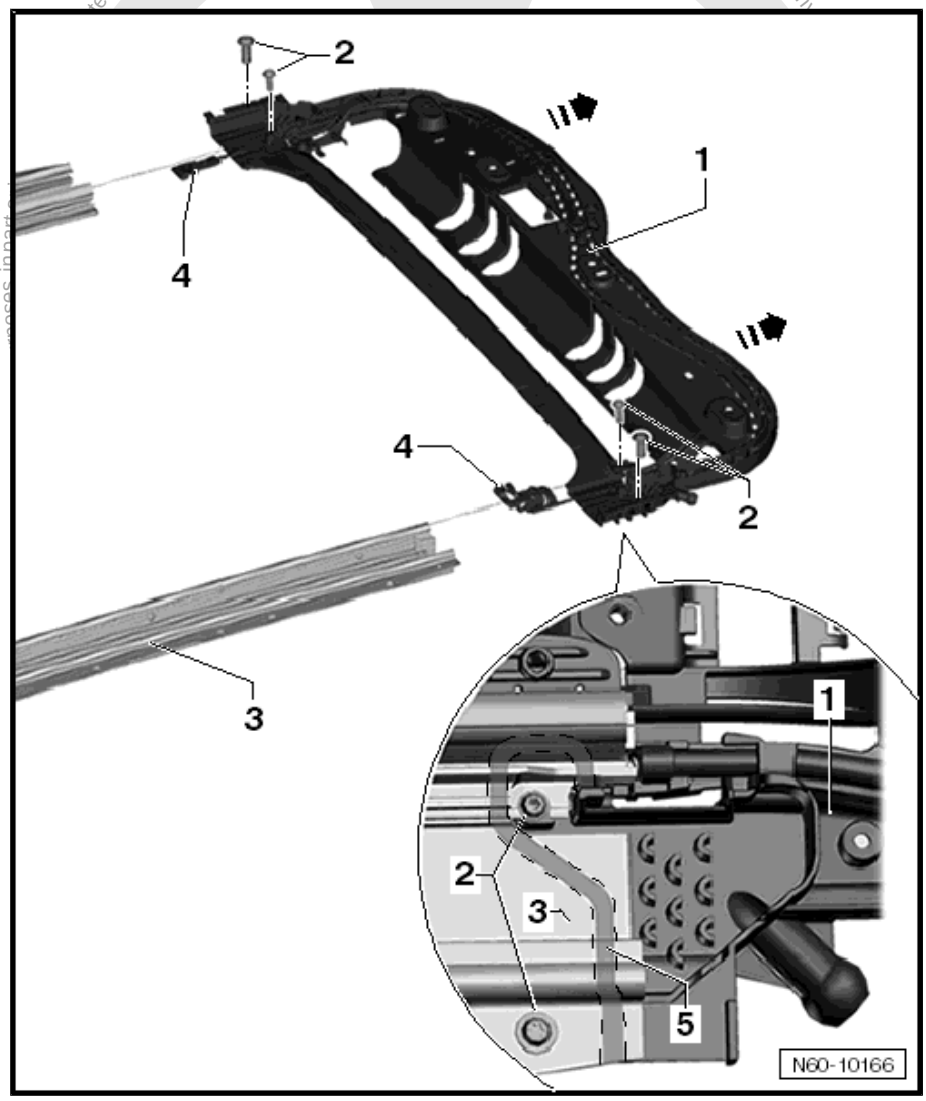


– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .
– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove sunroof roller blind ⇒ page 242 .
– Remove sunroof frame ⇒ page 247 .

– Release wiring harness from rear section.
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Separate bonded joint -5- with a knife.
– Pull entire rear section -1- with followers -4- from assembly frame -3- in -direction of arrow-.

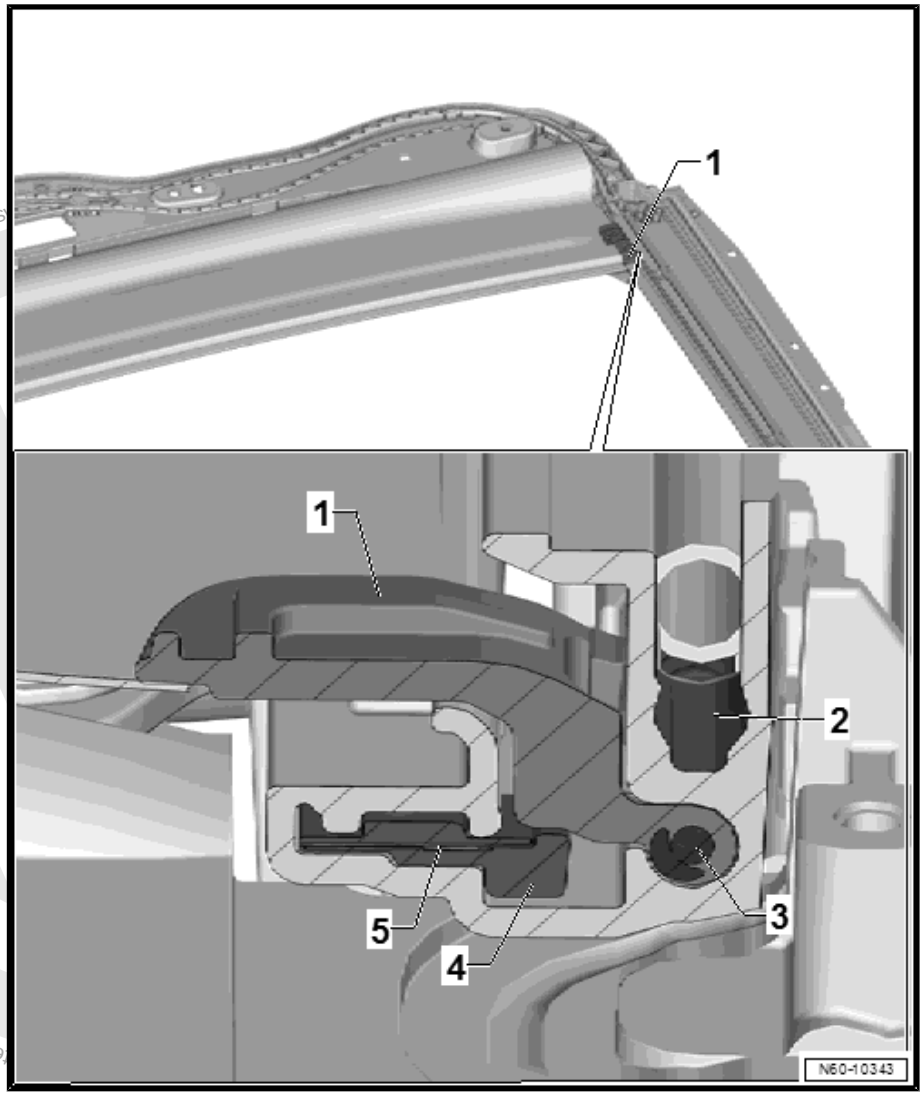
Installing

...ed unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any...



– Remove existing adhesive residues with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
– Thoroughly clean bonded areas on rear section -1- and on assembly frame -3- with cleaning solution -D 009 401 04- .
– Insert a 3.5 mm butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKD 497 010 04 R10- ∅ into bonding channel -5- on rear section -1-.
– Push rear section -1- with followers -4- onto assembly frame -3-.
– Tighten bolts -2-.

Component	Specified torques
Rear part	2 Nm

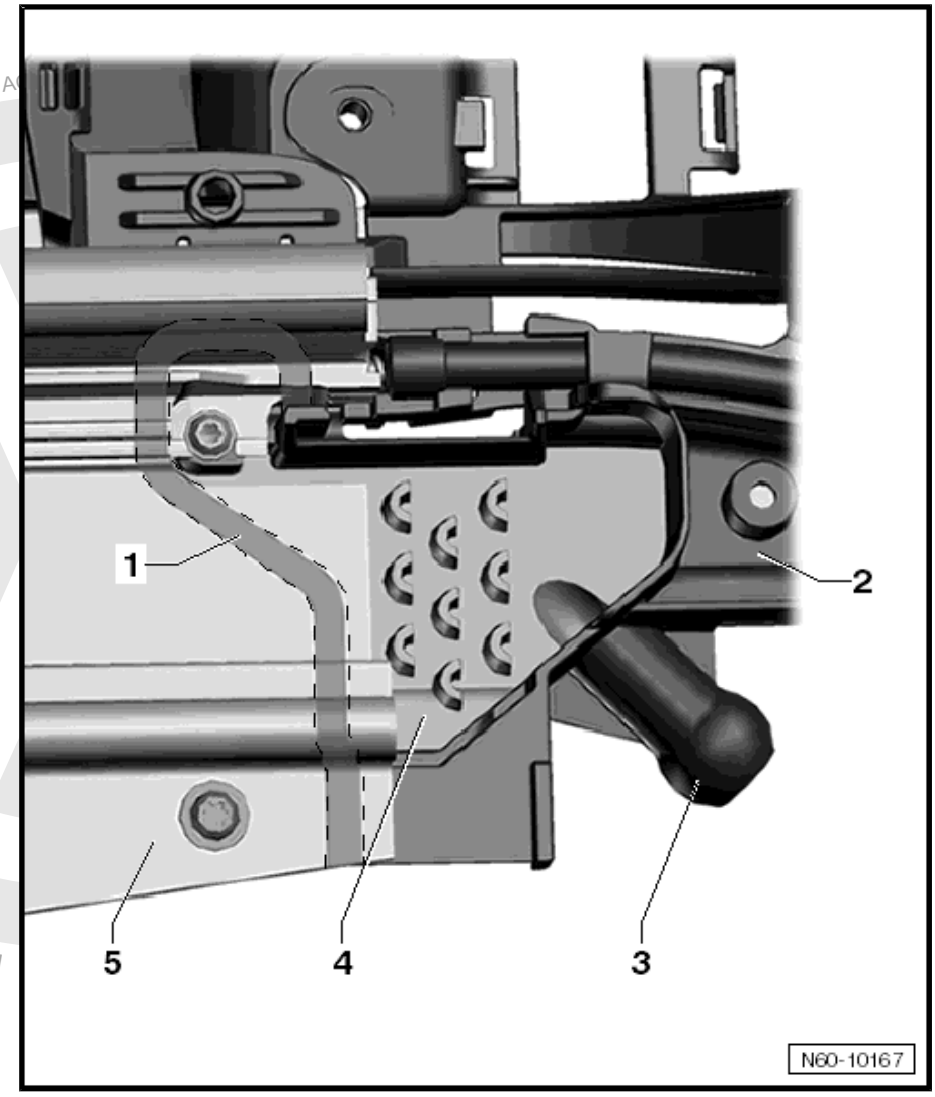


Copyright by Volkswagen. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen.

Follower -1- and cable for roller blind -3- are located in lower guide channel.

Cable for glass panel -2- is located in upper guide channel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen A



Note

Before installation, checking assembly frame for leaks is recommended.

- Seal water drain fitting -3-.
- Fill marked area -4- between rear section -2- and assembly frame -5- with water.
- Wait for at least 5 minutes and check for leaks.
- Seal any leaks with butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKD 497 010 04 R10- .
- Install sun blind ⇒ page 242 .
- Install roller blind motor ⇒ page 239 .
- Install assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .

Note

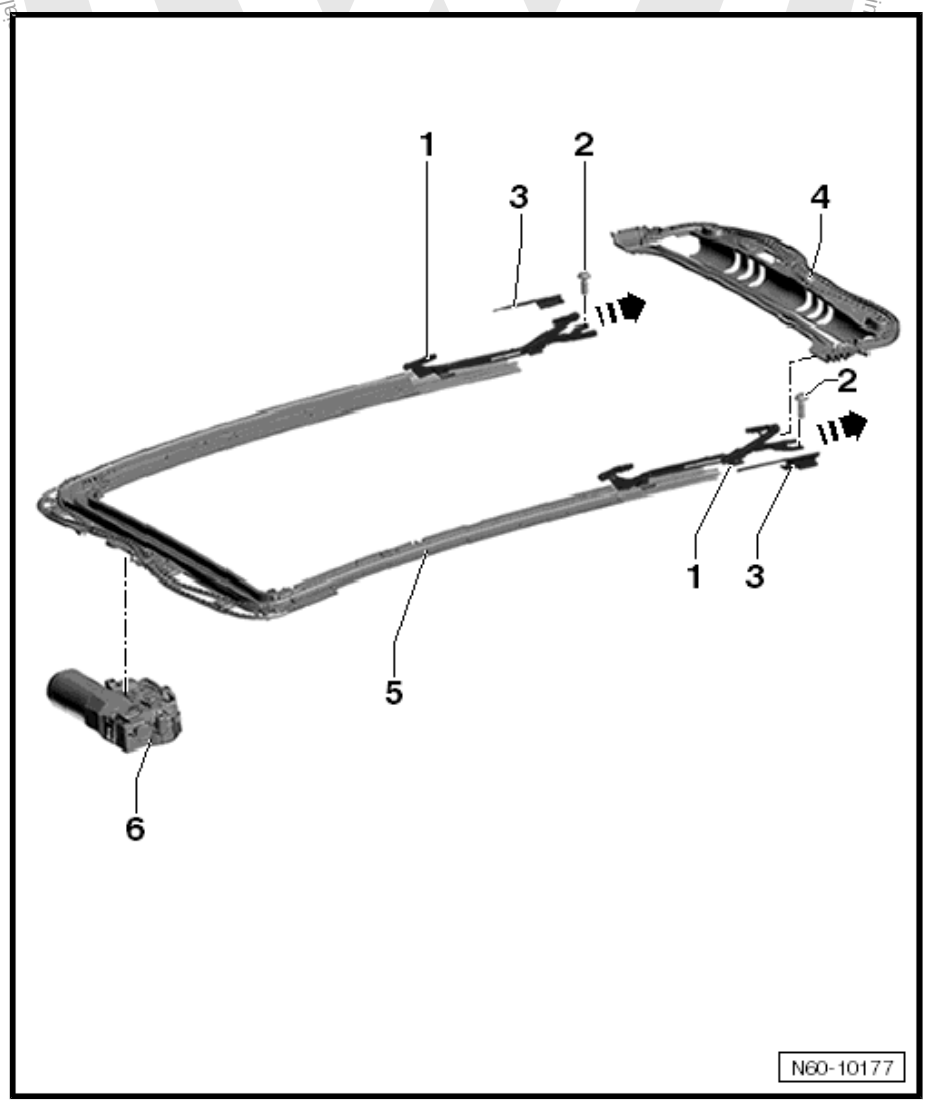
- *A basic setting should be carried out after completing the work.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

1.15 Removing and installing tilt mechanism for sliding sunroof

Removing

Note

Observe the position of the Bowden cables before removal to avoid any errors when installing.



– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove roller blind ⇒ page 242 .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Any use or distribution, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Remove sliding roof motor ⇒ page 239 .
– Remove rear section from assembly frame ⇒ page 250 .
– Slide tilting mechanism -1- out to rear -arrows- together with Bowden cables and followers -3-.

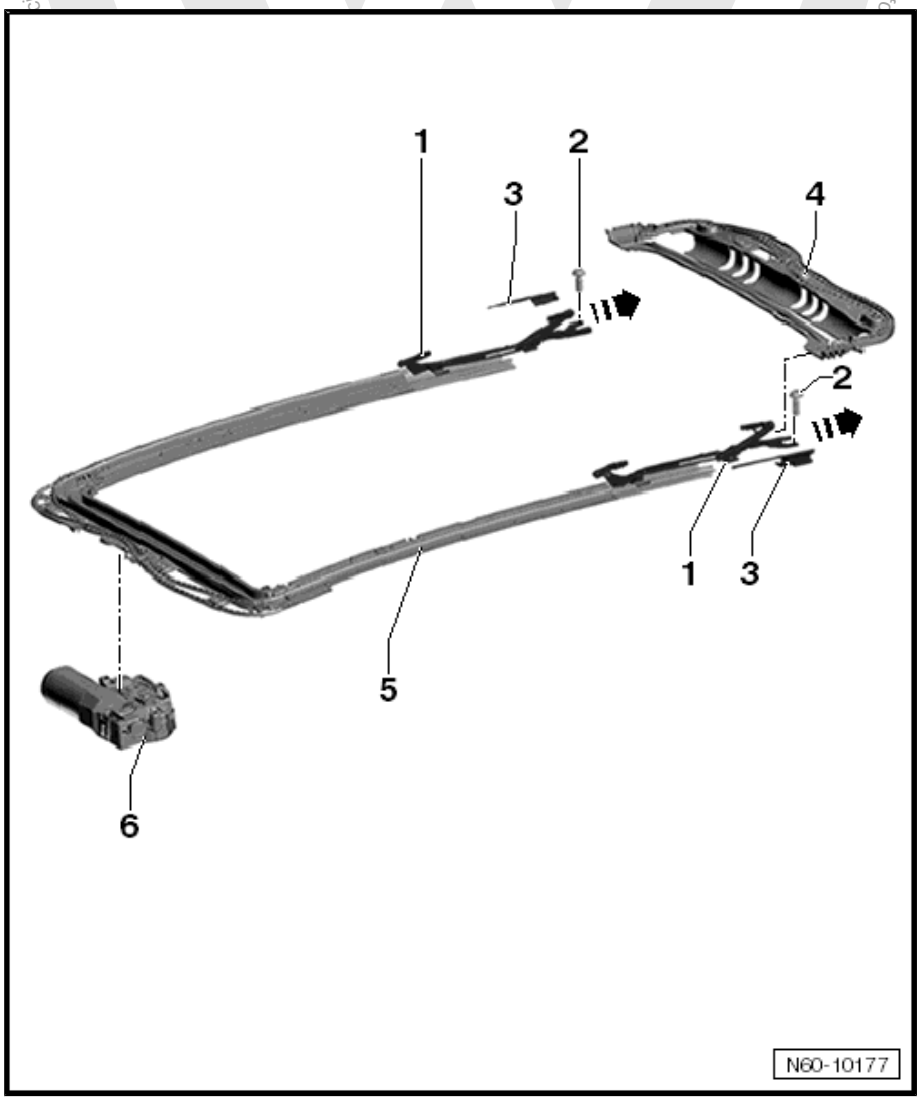
Note

Tilting mechanism must not tilt during sliding.

Installing

Note

- *Clean and lubricate guide rails ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet ; Panorama tilting/sliding roof with rear panorama roof: Check function, clean and grease guide rails, and clean wind deflector .*
- *Do not grease cables.*
- *Bowden cables and tilting mechanism must only be renewed in pairs.*



Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in whole, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Slide tilting mechanism -1- into guide rails -5- together with Bowden cables and followers -3-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

– Attach rear section to assembly frame ⇒ page 250 .
– Install sliding roof motor ⇒ page 236 .
– Install assembly frame in vehicle ⇒ page 247 .
– Install rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Install front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .

Note

- *After the tilt mechanism has been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

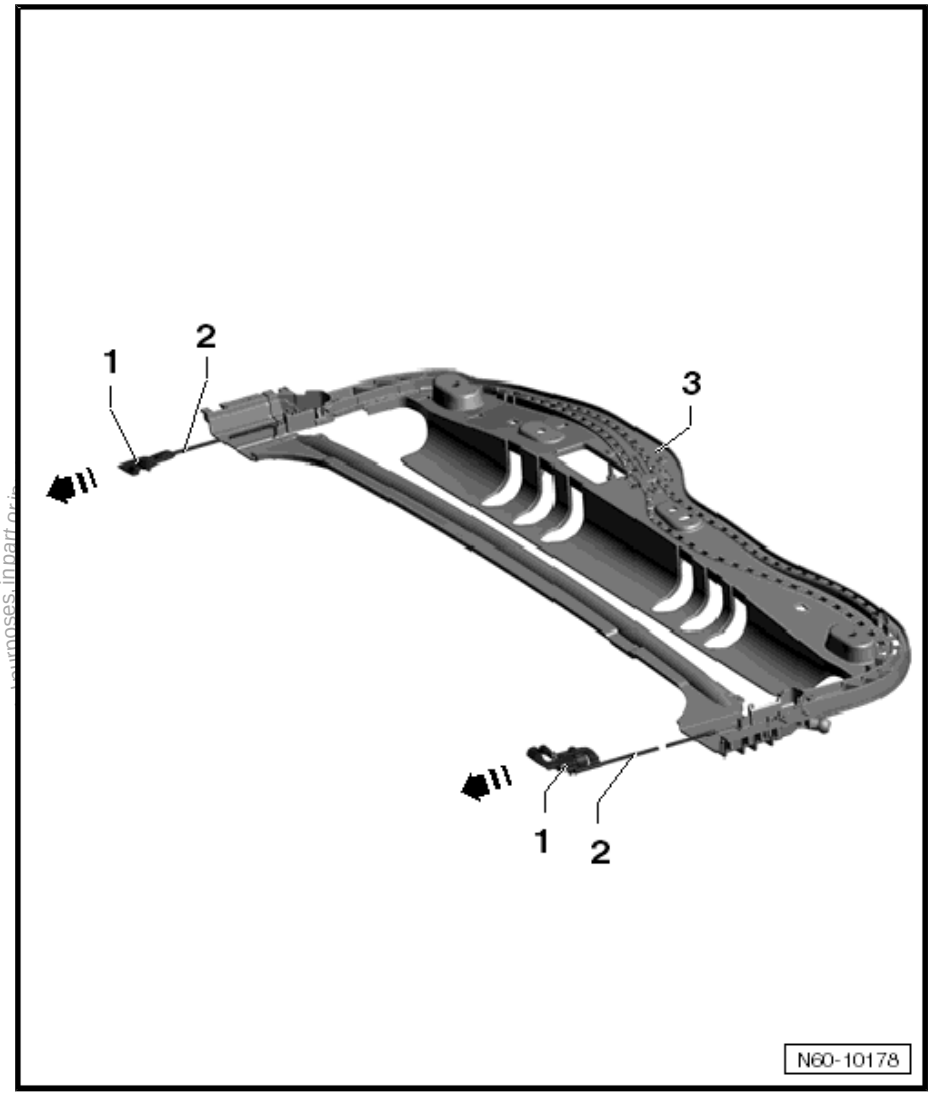
1.16 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind cables

Removing

Note

Observe the position of the Bowden cables before removal to avoid any errors when installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



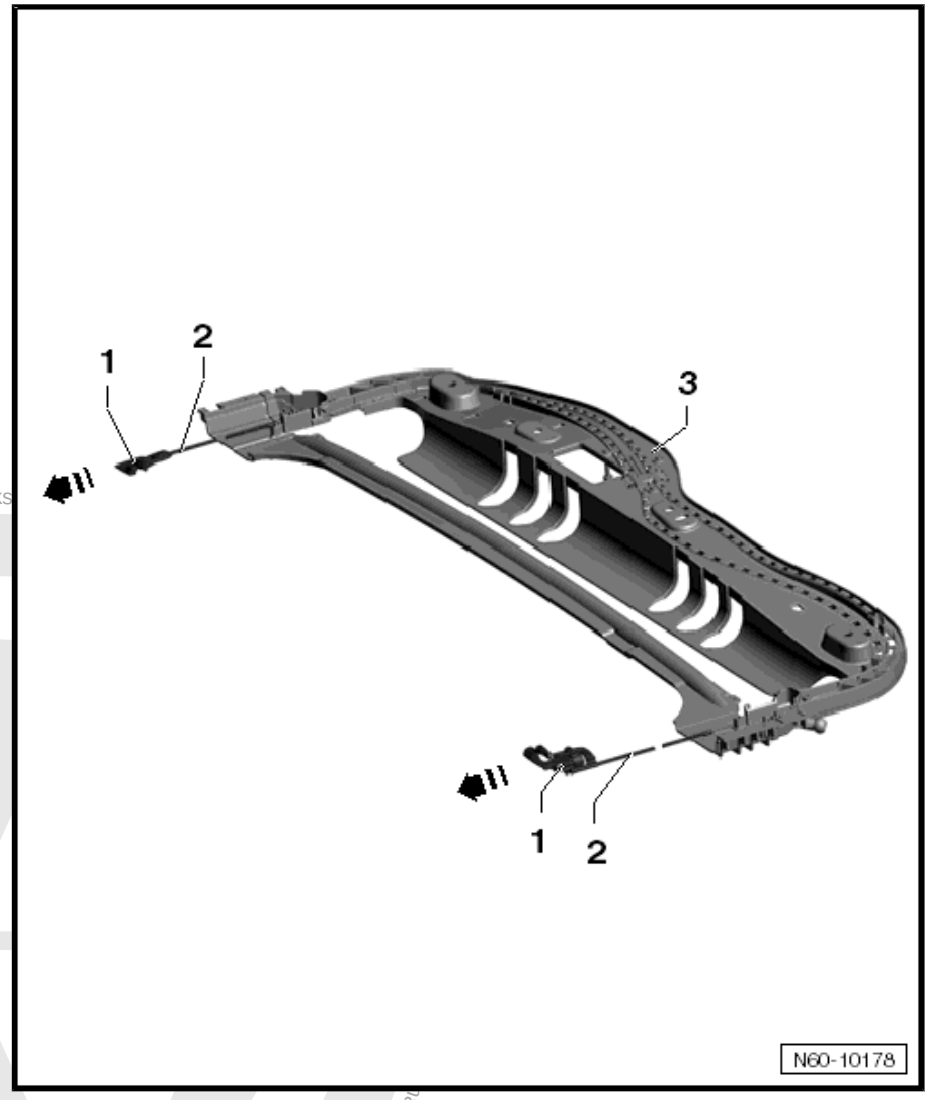
Lawfully purchased in part Orig

– Remove front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .
– Remove rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Remove roller blind ⇒ page 242 .
– Remove assembly frame ⇒ page 247 .
– Remove roller blind motor ⇒ page 239 .
– Remove rear section from assembly frame ⇒ page 250 .
– Pull Bowden cables -2- out of rear section -3- together with followers -1- -arrows-.

Installing

Note

- *Clean and lubricate guide rails ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet ; Panorama tilting/sliding roof with rear panorama roof: Check function, clean and grease guide rails, and clean wind deflector .*
- *Do not grease cables.*
- *Bowden cables must only be renewed in pairs.*



– Slide Bowden cables -2- into guide rails together with followers -1-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

– Attach rear section to assembly frame ⇒ page 250 .
– Install roller blind motor ⇒ page 239 .
– Install assembly frame in vehicle ⇒ page 247 .
– Install rear glass panel ⇒ page 220 .
– Install front glass panel ⇒ page 216 .

Note

- *After the cables have been replaced, a basic setting must be performed.*
- *The roll-back function is disabled during the basic setting process.*
- *The basic setting is carried out with the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volks... This document is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. ...in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. ...for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. ...for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

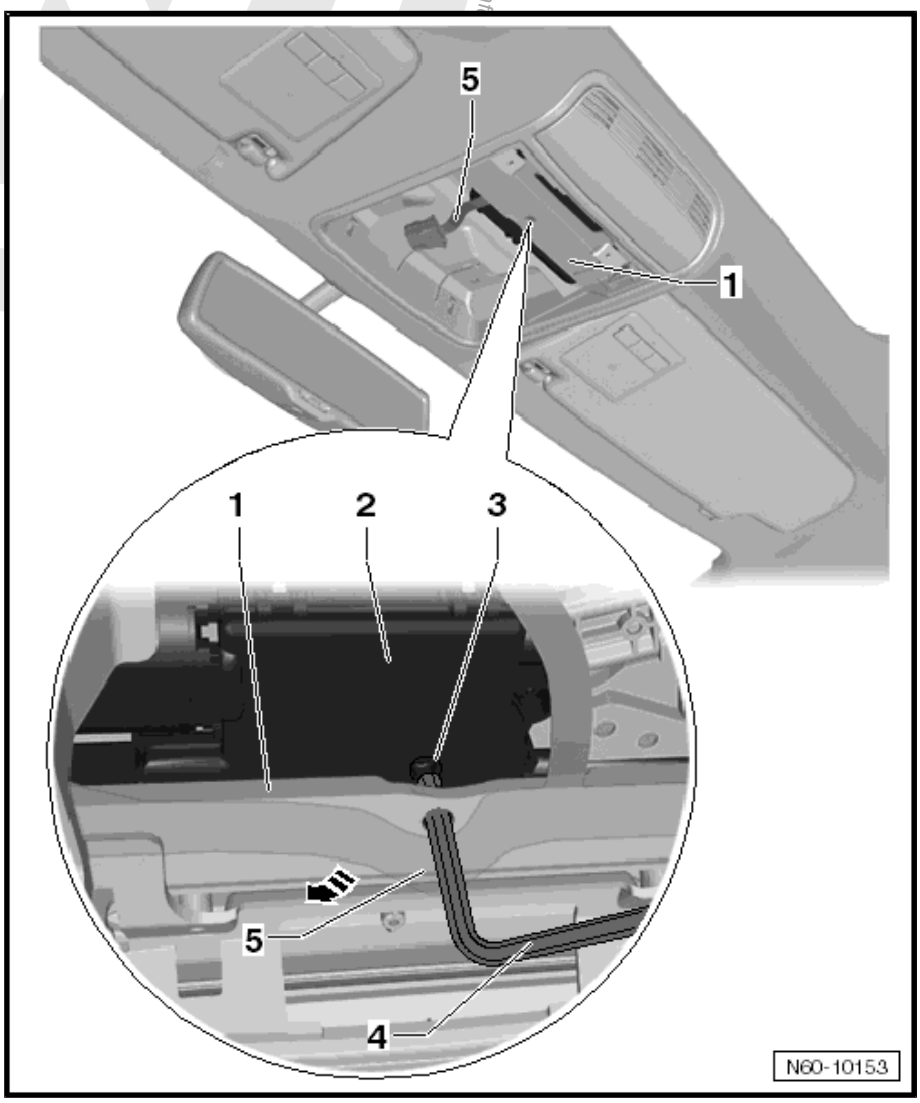
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

1.17 Operating without current

1.17.1 Glass panel

Note

- *In the event of power failure, front glass panel near to sliding sunroof motor can be moved by hand using a commercially available hexagon key.*
- *Greater force is necessary since motor is not uncoupled from drive.*
- *Front glass panel must only be moved manually until its front edge is flush with front edge of rear glass panel. If glass panel is moved further backwards, mechanism cables may hook off.*



– Removing lights and front operating unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights and switches in roof trim .

– Insert hexagon key into bolt -3- of sliding roof motor -2-.

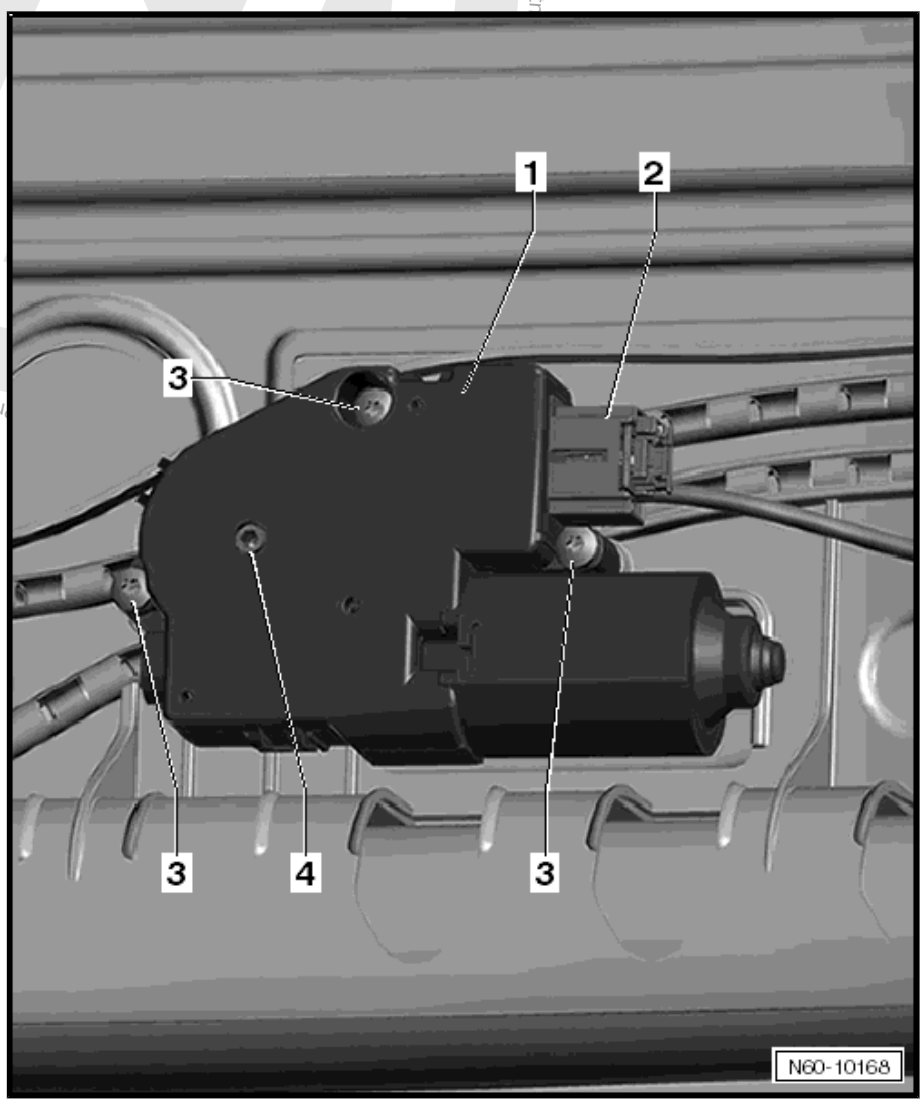
When turning by hand, greater force is necessary since motor is not uncoupled from drive.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctn

1.17.2 Sun blind

Note

- *In the event of power failure, sunroof sun blind can be moved by hand on sunroof sun blind motor using a commercially available hexagon key.*
- *Greater force is necessary since motor is not uncoupled from drive.*



– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

– Insert hexagon key -2- into bolt of sun blind motor -1-.

When turning by hand, greater force is necessary since motor is not uncoupled from drive.

2 Water drain hoses

2.1 Assembly overview - water drainage hoses

by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gu
g for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unle

1 - Rear water drain hose

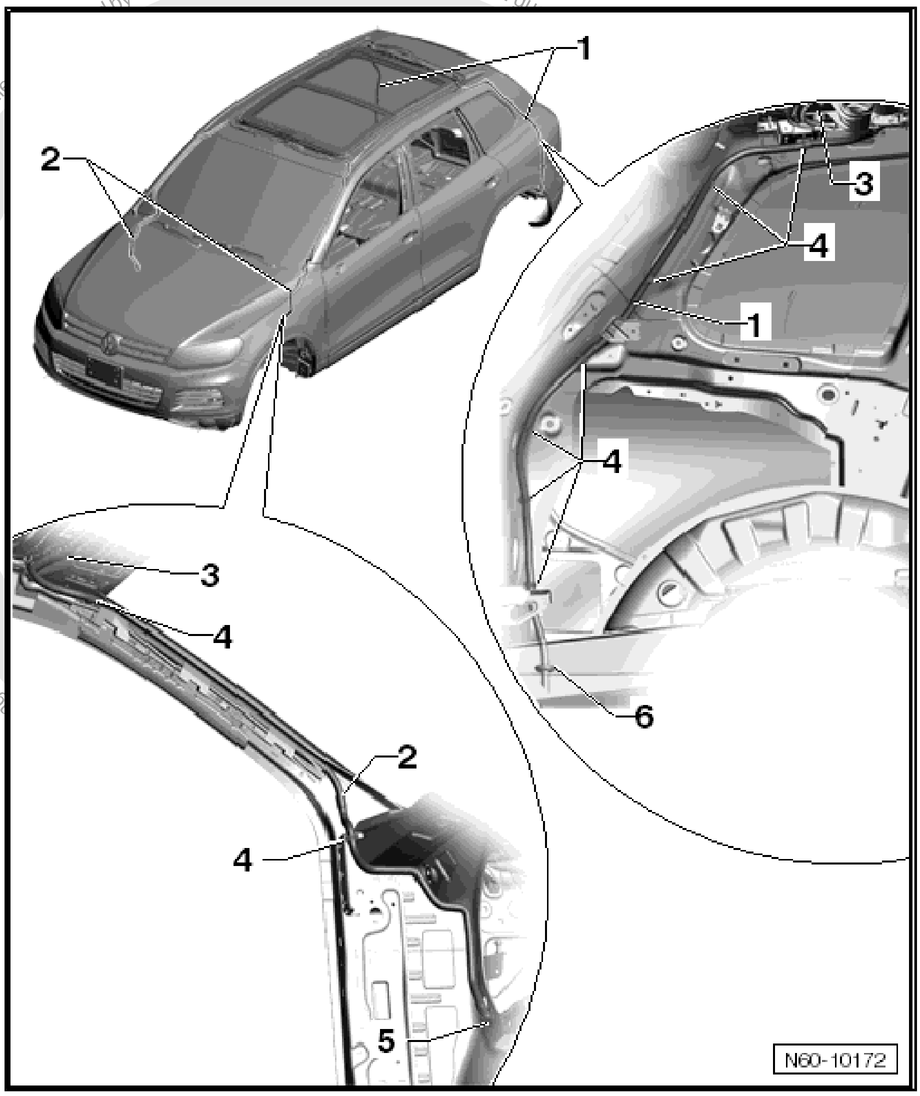
2 - Front water drain hose

3 - Assembly frame

4 - Clip

5 - Front drain grommet

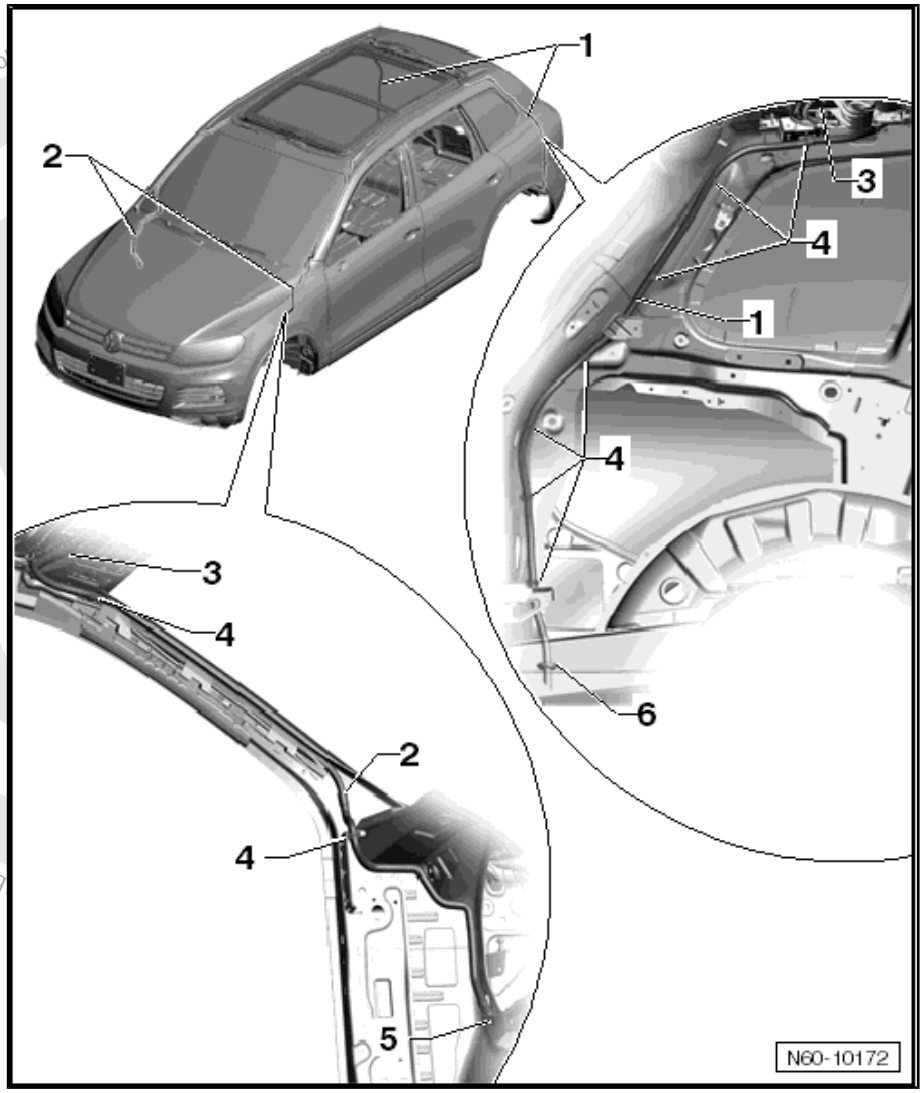
6 - Rear drain valve



2.2 Removing and installing water drain hoses

Note

Front water drain hoses are not cleaned.



by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Vo

Front water drain hoses

The front water drain hoses are routed in the A-pillars and end in the plenum chamber.

Rear water drain hoses

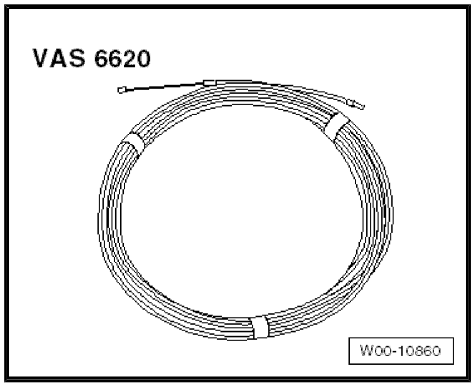
The rear water drain hoses run through the D-pillars and end in the rear wheel housings.

– Remove wheel housing liner ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Exterior equipment; Wheel housing liner .
– Cleaning is carried out from wheel housing using cleaning and insertion tool - VAS 6620- .

2.3 Cleaning water drainage hoses

Special tools and workshop equipment required

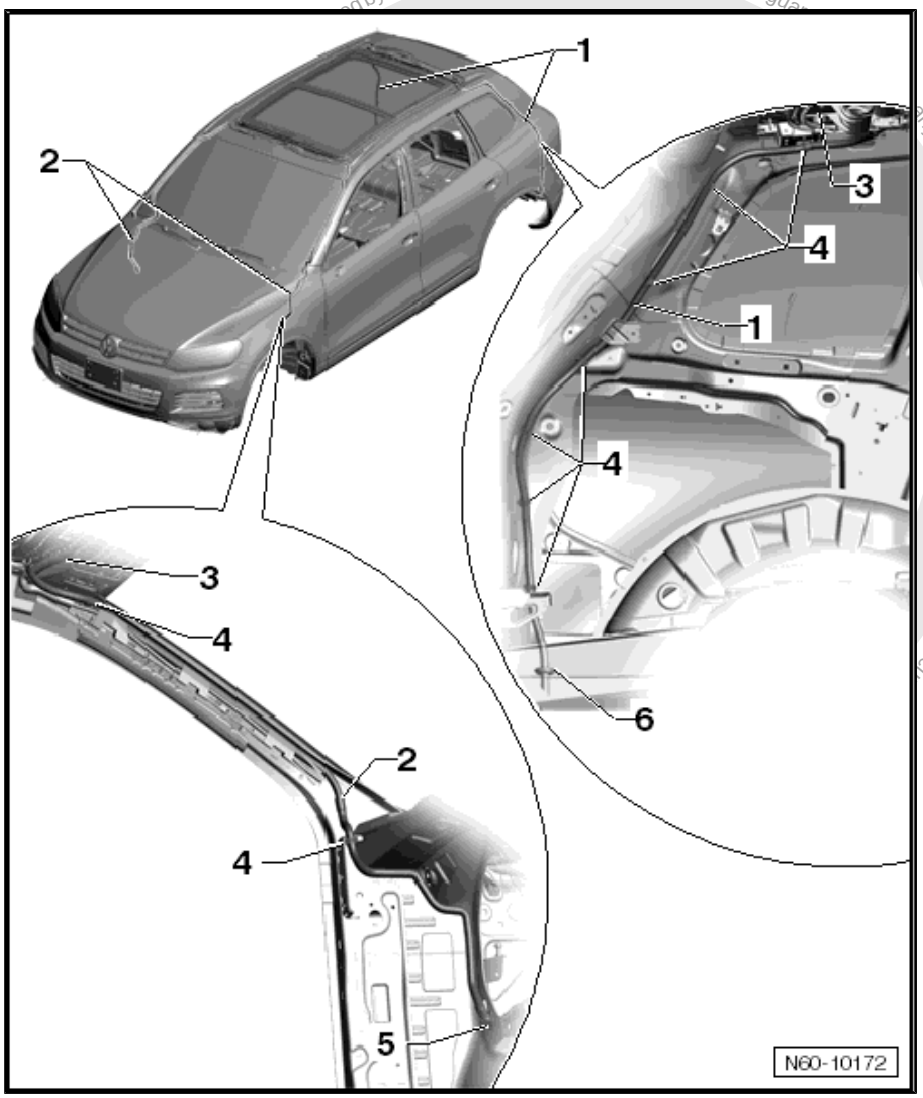
♦ Cleaning and fitting tool - VAS 6620-



Note

Front water drain hoses are not cleaned.

ed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gua
ny liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc



Front water drain hoses

The front water drain hoses are routed in the A-pillars and end in the plenum chamber.

Rear water drain hoses

The rear water drain hoses run through the D-pillars and end in the rear wheel housings.

– Remove wheel housing liner ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Exterior equipment; Wheel housing liner .

– Cleaning is carried out from wheel housing using cleaning and insertion tool - VAS 6620- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

63 – Bumpers

1 Bumper, front

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover”, page 266

⇒ “1.2 Assembly overview - add-on parts”, page 268

⇒ “1.3 Assembly overview - impact bar”, page 274

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 275

⇒ “1.5 Repairing bumper cover”, page 278

1.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover

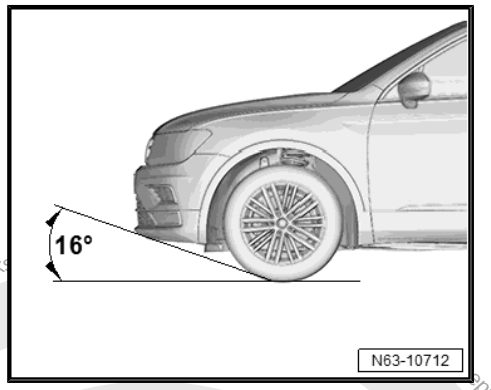
⇒ “1.1.1 Front bumper cover - difference between road version and off-road version”, page 266

⇒ “1.1.2 Assembly overview - bumper cover”, page 266

1.1.1 Front bumper cover - difference between road version and off-road version

The Tiguan is available with 2 different front bumper covers.

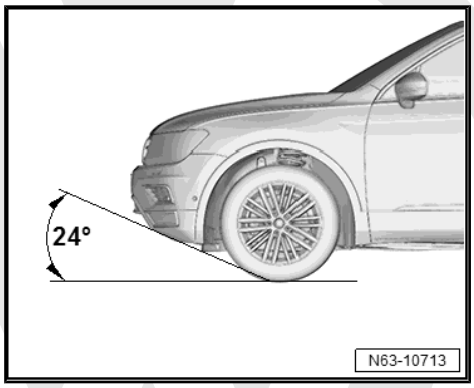
The front bumper cover for road version is designed for an approach angle of 16°.



The front bumper cover for off-road version is designed for an approach angle of 24°.

The removal and installation procedure is the same for both bumper covers.

These front bumper covers are not interchangeable.

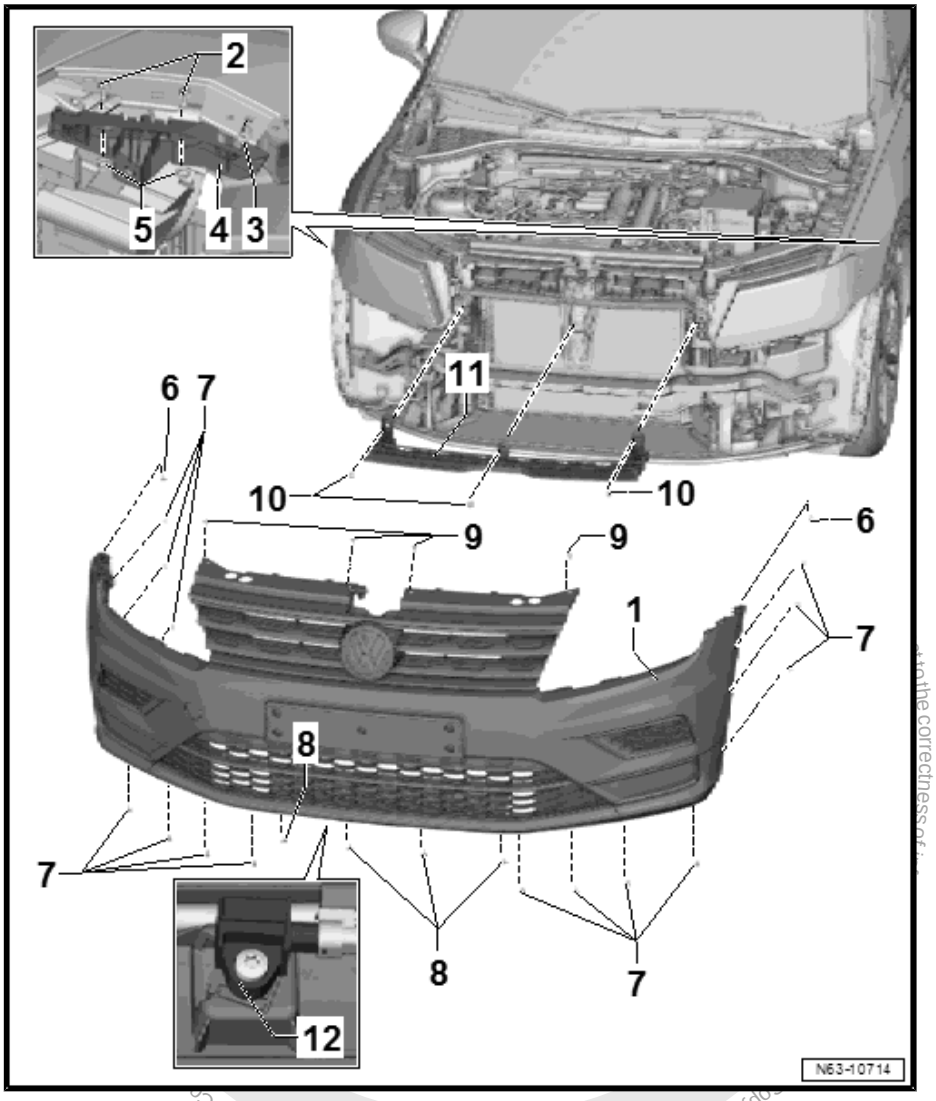


1.1.2 Assembly overview - bumper cover

Note

Minor differences may be encountered in respect of bumper cover, depending on vehicle model.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



1 - Bumper cover

+

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

2 - Centre hex studs

- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ Bolted to wing bracket
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

3 - Expansion nut

- ❑ Left and right

4 - Bracket

- ❑ Left and right

5 - Nuts

- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

6 - Bolts

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Points upwards.
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

7 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 7 on each side
- ❑ Bolted to wheel housing liner.
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

8 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Bolted to lock carrier.
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

9 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ Bolted to lock carrier.
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

10 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 8.0 Nm

11 - Guide

12 - Crash sensor for pedestrian protection

- ❑ Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570/G571- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection
- ❑ Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.2 Assembly overview - add-on parts

⇒ “1.2.1 Assembly overview - front bumper cover add-on parts, onroad version”, page 268

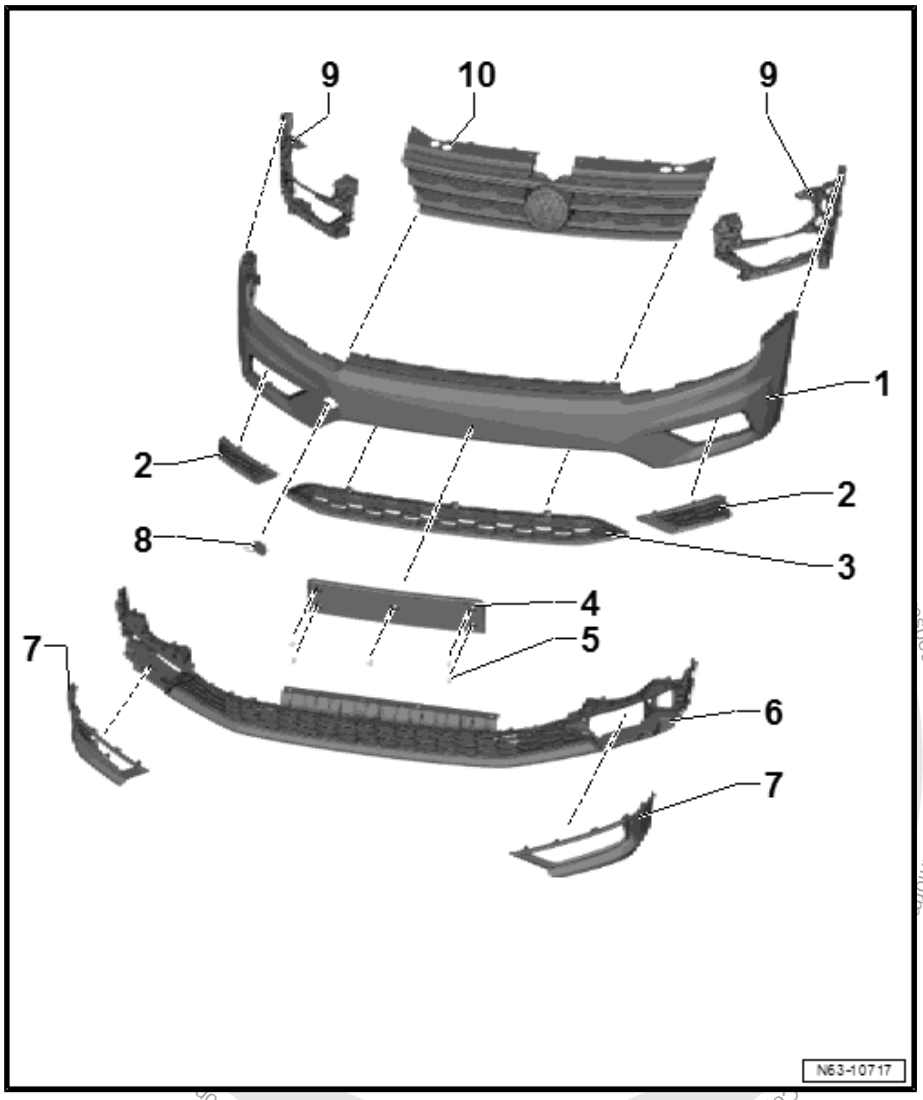
⇒ “1.2.2 Assembly overview - front bumper cover add-on parts, offroad version”, page 269

⇒ “1.2.3 Assembly overview – bumper cover add-on parts R-Line ”, page 271

1.2.1 Assembly overview - front bumper cover add-on parts, onroad version

Note

- *Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA*
- *The onroad version of the bumper cover has a ramp angle of 16° ⇒ page 266 .*



1 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

2 - Side cover

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

3 - Centre air intake grille

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

4 - Number plate holder

- ❑ Only installed in selected models available in selected markets

5 - Clip

- ❑ With clips or screws depending on version

6 - Spoiler

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

7 - Fog light trim

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Pull forwards out of detent.

8 - Cover for towing eye

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 - Reinforcing member

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

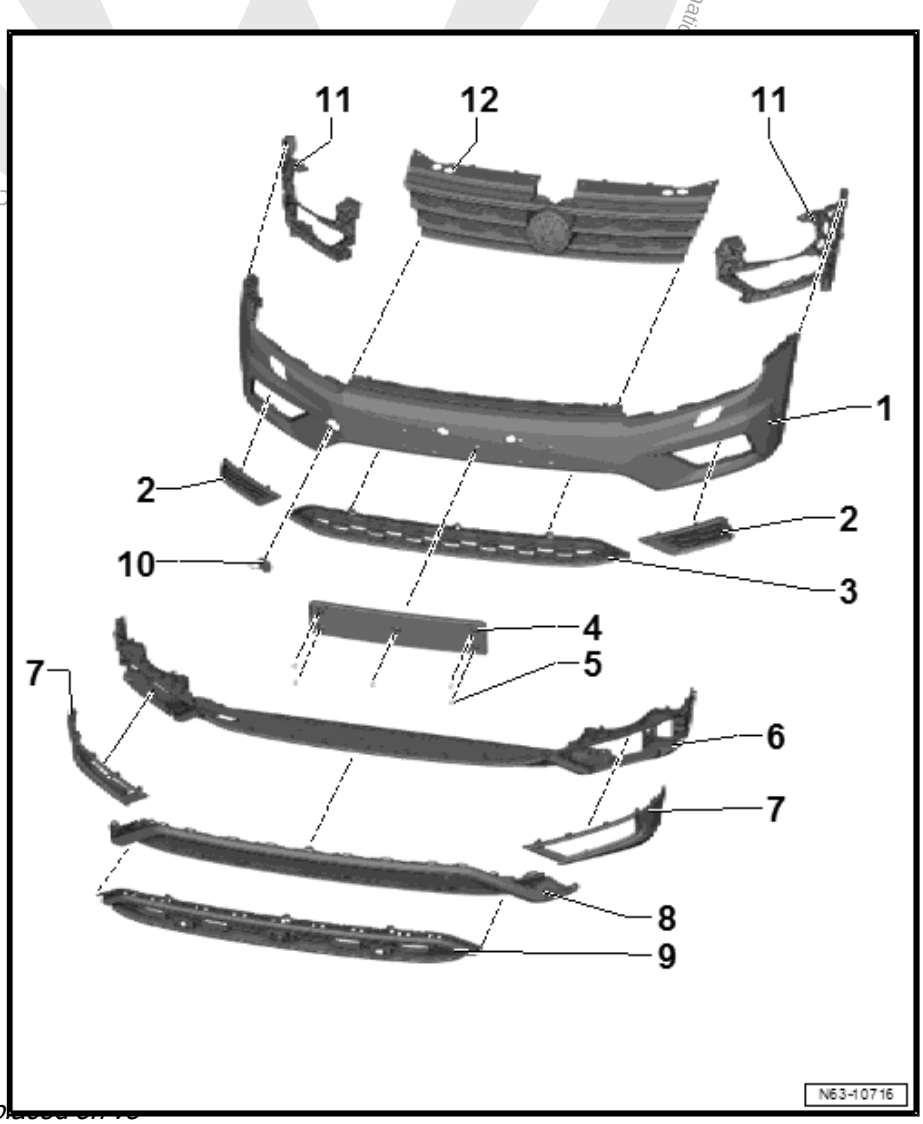
10 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

1.2.2 Assembly overview - front bumper cover add-on parts, offroad version

Note

- ♦ *Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA*
- ♦ *The onroad version of the bumper cover has a ramp angle of 24° ⇒ page 266 .*



1 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

2 - Side air intake grille

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

3 - Centre air intake grille

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

4 - Number plate holder

- ❑ Only installed in selected models available in selected markets

5 - Clip

- ❑ With clips or screws depending on version

6 - Spoiler

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

Note

- ♦ *If spoiler is to be replaced on vehicles ‣ 08.2016, underbody guard must also be replaced.*
- ♦ *Furthermore, air guides must be cut to fit ⇒ page 270 .*

Copying for commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

7 - Fog light trim

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Pull forwards out of detent.

8 - Underbody protection

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

Note

- ♦ *If skid plate is to be renewed on vehicles ► 08.2016, spoiler must also be renewed.*
- ♦ *Furthermore, air guides must be cut to fit* *⇒ page 270* *.*

9 - Centre air intake grille

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

10 - Cover for towing eye

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover

11 - Reinforcing member

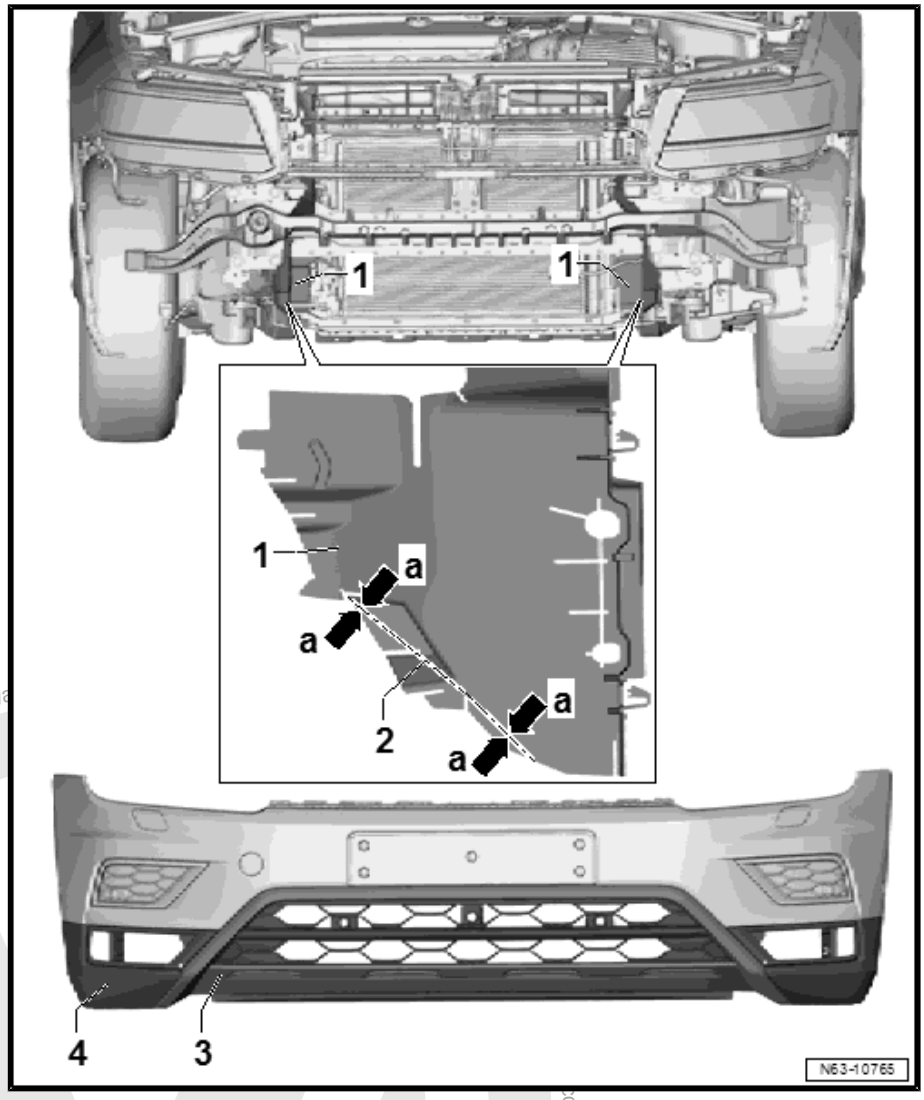
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

12 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

Cutting air guides to fit

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Note

- *Spoilers -4- and skid plates -3- manufactured after 08.2016 have a slightly different shape.*
- *Spoilers -4- and underbody guards -3- must always be replaced together on vehicles ► 08.2016.*
- *If the spoiler and underbody guard are to be replaced on a vehicle ► 08.2016, the air guides must be cut to fit.*

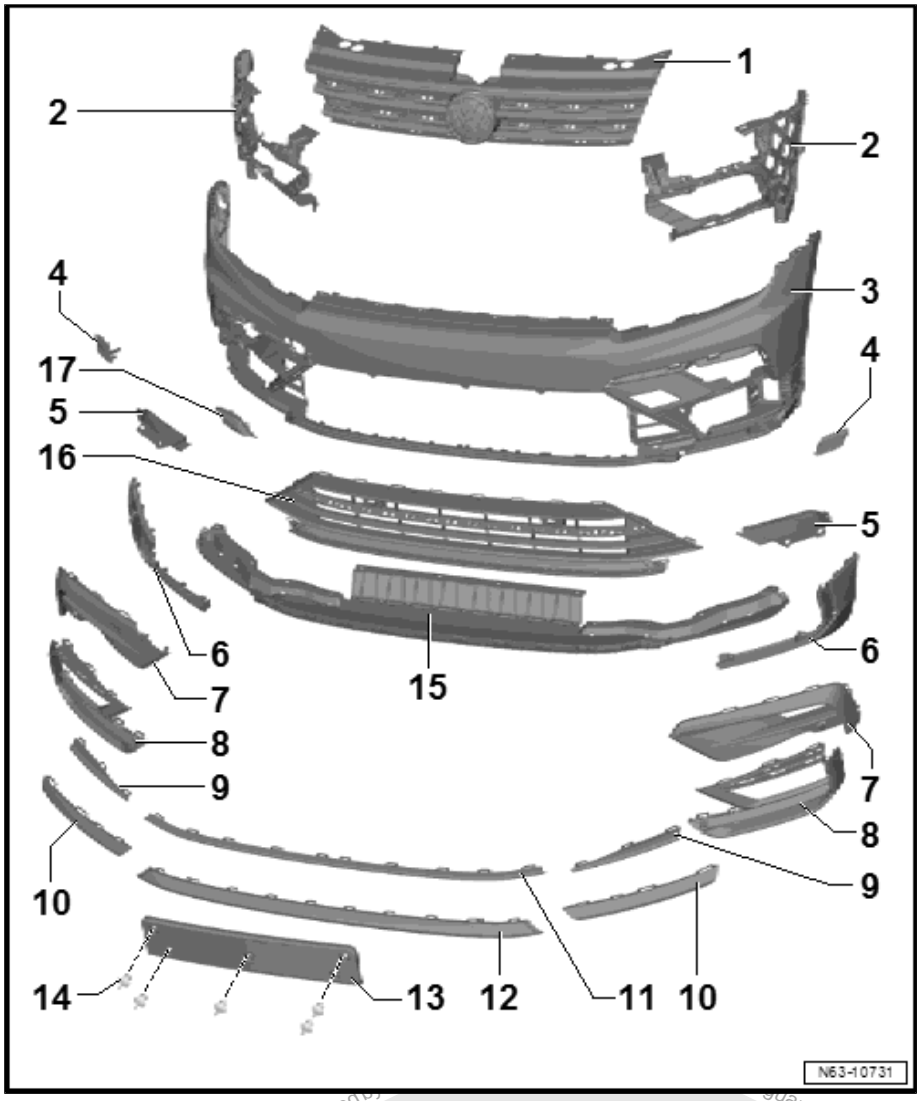
– The air guide -1- with the shape illustrated has a section cut out of it -arrows a- as shown in the diagram.

1.2.3 Assembly overview – bumper cover add-on parts »R-Line«

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343

2 - Reinforcing member

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

3 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

4 - Left cover

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ For headlight washer system

5 - End plate

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

6 - Cover trim

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

7 - Cover section

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

8 - Cover section

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ For vehicles with fog lamps
- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

9 - Top trim strip

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ For vehicles with chrome fog lamps
- ❑ Engaged in cover section
- ❑ Cannot be removed intact

10 - Lower trim strip

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Colour coded to vehicle on vehicles with fog lights
- ❑ Engaged in cover section

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Cannot be removed intact

11 - Top trim strip

- ❑ Engaged in air intake grille
- ❑ Cannot be removed intact

12 - Lower trim strip

- ❑ Engaged in air intake grille
- ❑ Cannot be removed intact

13 - Number plate holder

- ❑ Only installed in selected models available in selected markets.

14 - Clip

- ❑ With clips or screws depending on version

15 - Spoiler

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

16 - Centre air intake grille

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover
- ❑ Can only be removed with front bumper cover removed

17 - Cover for towing eye

- ❑ Engaged in front bumper cover

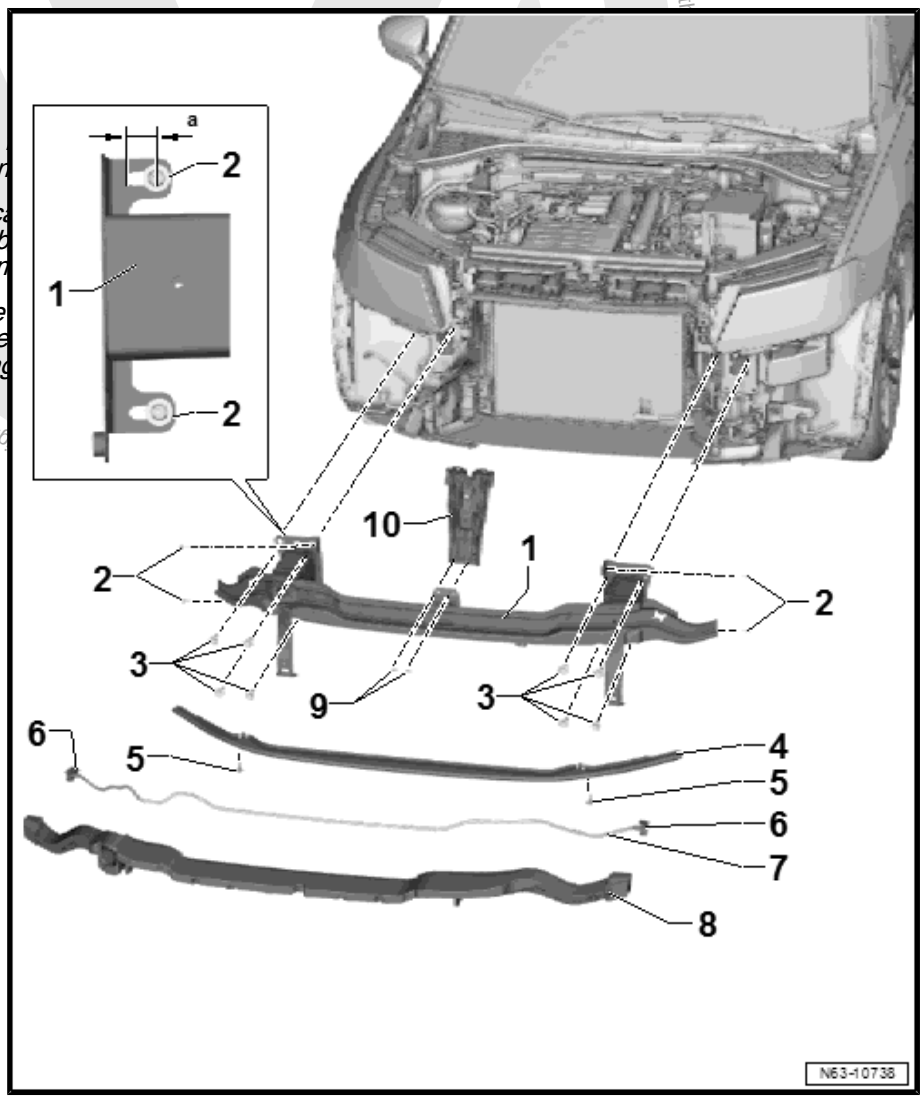
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1.3 Assembly overview - impact bar

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA



1 - Impact bar

Note

- *Push impact bar as possible in parallel r*
- *Bolts -2- must be loca position at top and b elongated holes -dir*
- *The crash response cle is affected by the the bolts in the elong*

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4 on each side
- ❑ 55 Nm

4 - Pedestrian protection

- ❑ Not installed in all markets

5 - Pop rivet

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Insert with special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753A-

6 - Front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection - G579-

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection

7 - Pressure hose

- ❑ Inserted in foam section
- ❑ Pressure hose must be replaced:

- ♦ if pressure hose is deformed or damaged
- ♦ if foam section is noticeably deformed
- ♦ if impact bar is deformed

8 - Foam element

- ❑ Inserted in impact bar
- ❑ Check after an accident for deformation. Renew if necessary.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2

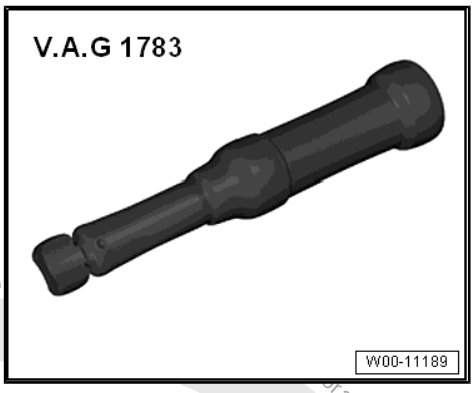
❑ 8 Nm

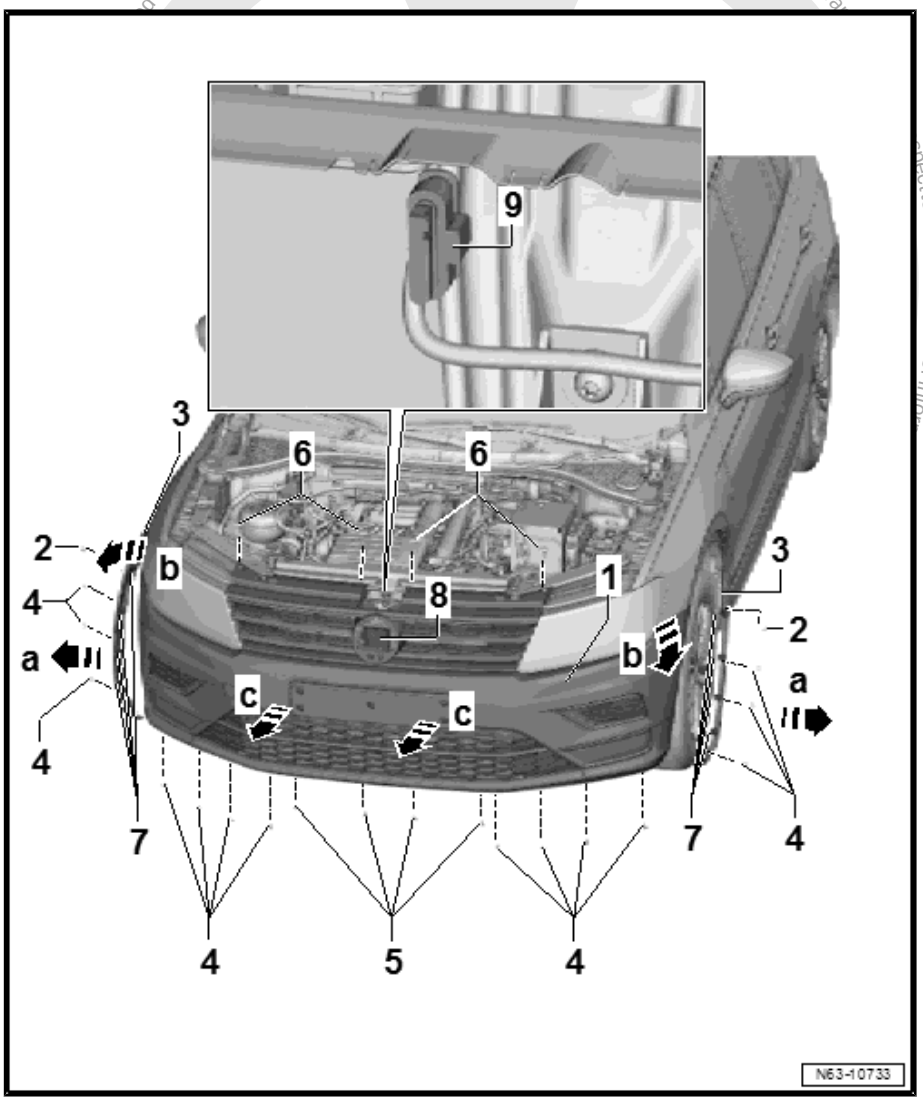
10 - Radius rod

1.4 Removing and installing bumper cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





unless authorised by Volkswagen AG
with respect to the correctness of info

Removing

Note

- *The removal and installation procedures for front bumper cover may have to be revised slightly depending on model variations.*
- *The bumper cover is removed together with the radiator grille.*
- *The wheel arch trim is just detached from the fasteners. The clips in the wing are not released.*

– Remove brand badge ⇒ page 419 .

– Remove adaptive cruise control unit - J428- -8- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control .

– Disconnect battery earth cable ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Separate electrical connector -9-.

– Unscrew bolts -6- from radiator grille.

– Unscrew bolts -4-.

– Unscrew bolts -5- from underneath.

– Push wheel arch trim -3- from inside out of fasteners -4- in bumper -arrows a-.

– Undo bolts -2- in wheel housing (pointing upwards) on left and right.

Further dismantling requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

– Pull bumper cover -1- out of guide fasteners on left and right of wing -arrows b-

– Pull bumper cover -1- off vehicle in parallel movement -arrows c-.

– If fitted, disconnect hose coupling of washer fluid lines ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Headlight washer system; Assembly overview - headlight washer system .

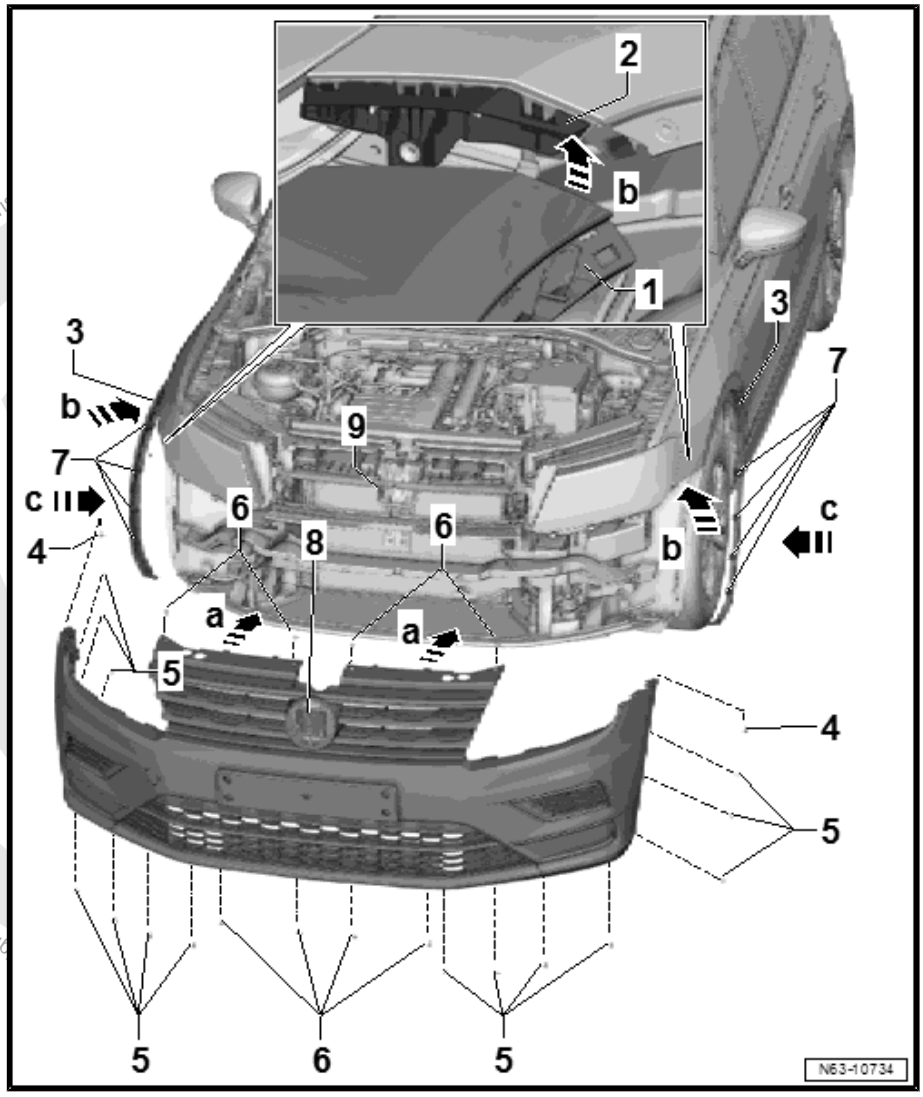
– If fitted, separate connector of electrical components.

General information and work instructions for the parking aid can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Parking aid .

General information and work instructions for the Park Assist system can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Park Assist system .

Instructions and work specifications for the pedestrian protection system can be found in ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Assembly overview - pedestrian protection

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



...nt. copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authori...

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Further installation requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

Note

When positioning the bumper cover, make sure that the front wheel housing liner is correctly seated.

- Install adaptive cruise control unit - J428- -8- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control .
- Attach electrical connector -9-.
- If present, connect connectors to electrical components.
- Guide bumper cover -1- onto lock carrier -arrows a- in a parallel movement until locking devices engage.
- Press bumper cover -1- onto guide brackets -2- on wing on left and right until they engage with each other -arrow b-.
- Tighten bolts -4-, -5- and -6-.
- Engage wheel arch trim -3- in bumper cover -arrows c-.

– Observe gaps/shut lines ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Panel gaps; Body – front .

Specified torques

- ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover”, page 266

1.5 Repairing bumper cover

⇒ “1.5.1 Repairing bumper cover”, page 278

⇒ “1.5.2 Installing brackets for park assist steering”, page 278

1.5.1 Repairing bumper cover

Note

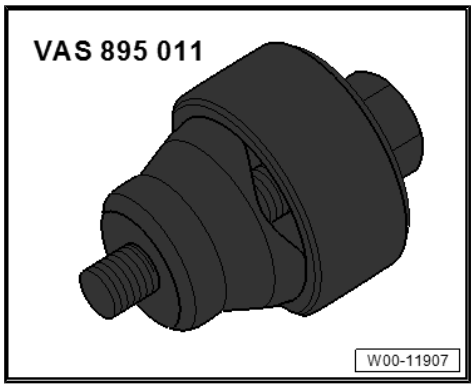
- *If bumper cover is damaged, determine whether plastic can be repaired before renewing bumper.*
- *Vehicles with pedestrian protection have crash sensors installed in the bumper cover.*
- *With this equipment, the bumper cover may not be repaired. The bumper cover must be renewed in this instance.*

Description under: ⇒ General Information; Body Repairs, General Body Repairs ; Plastic repair procedures

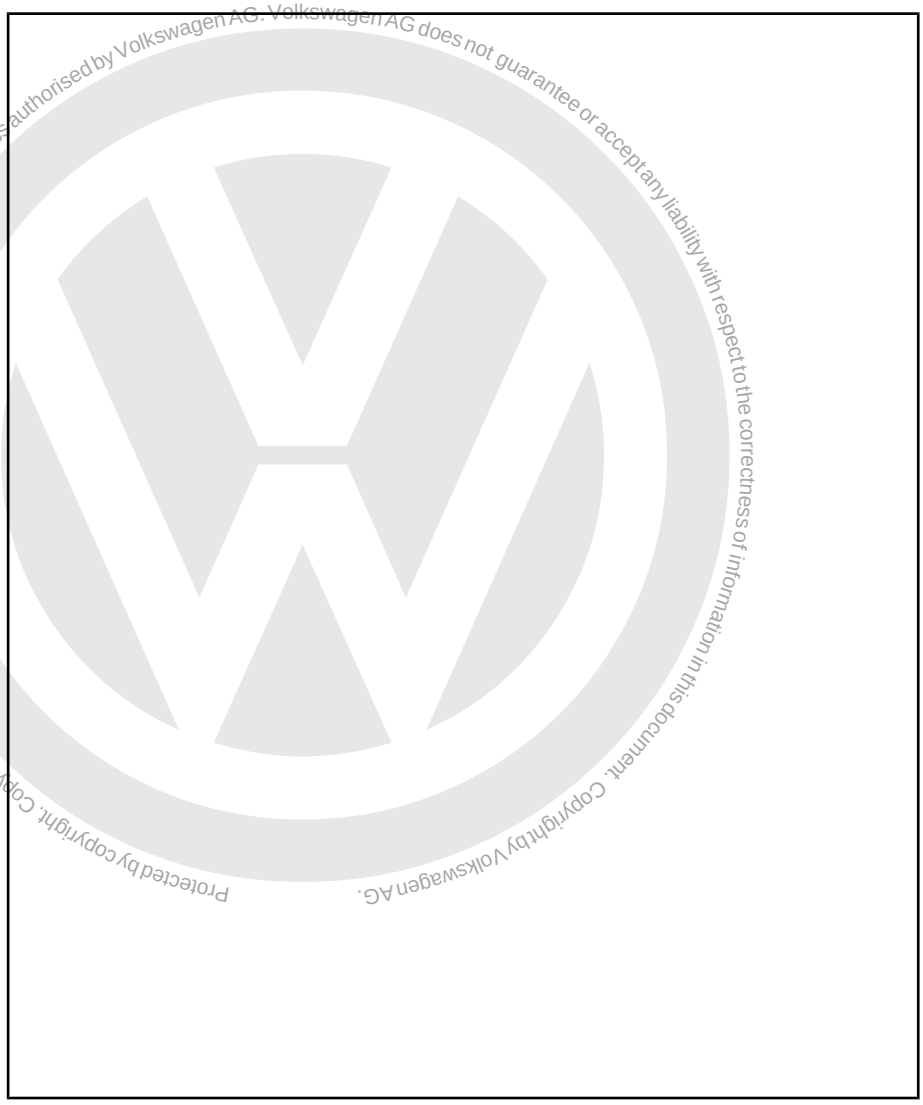
1.5.2 Installing brackets for park assist steering

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Thermal clip bonder - VAS 6872-
- Drill bit - VAS 6614/4-
- Hand set - VAS 6872/1-
- Clip, M-shaped - VAS 6872/3-
- Screw-hole punch 29.3 mm - VAS 895 011-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Stamping holes

Note

- *Stamping holes is described for the left side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The park assist brackets are installed after the bumper cover has been painted.*
- *The contact surface of the park assist brackets must not be painted ⇒ Paintwork manual .*

The markings -1- for the park assist brackets can be found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– Hole must be drilled from inside out with drill bit - VAS 6614/4- -3- from tool kit supplied.

– Fit assembly tool for park assist steering sensors - VAS 895 011- with bolt head -1-, washer -2- and counter-support -3- from inside of bumper cover -5-.

– Screw on hole punch -4- from outside of bumper cover -5-.

– Press punch -4- against bumper cover.

– Tighten bolt head -1-.

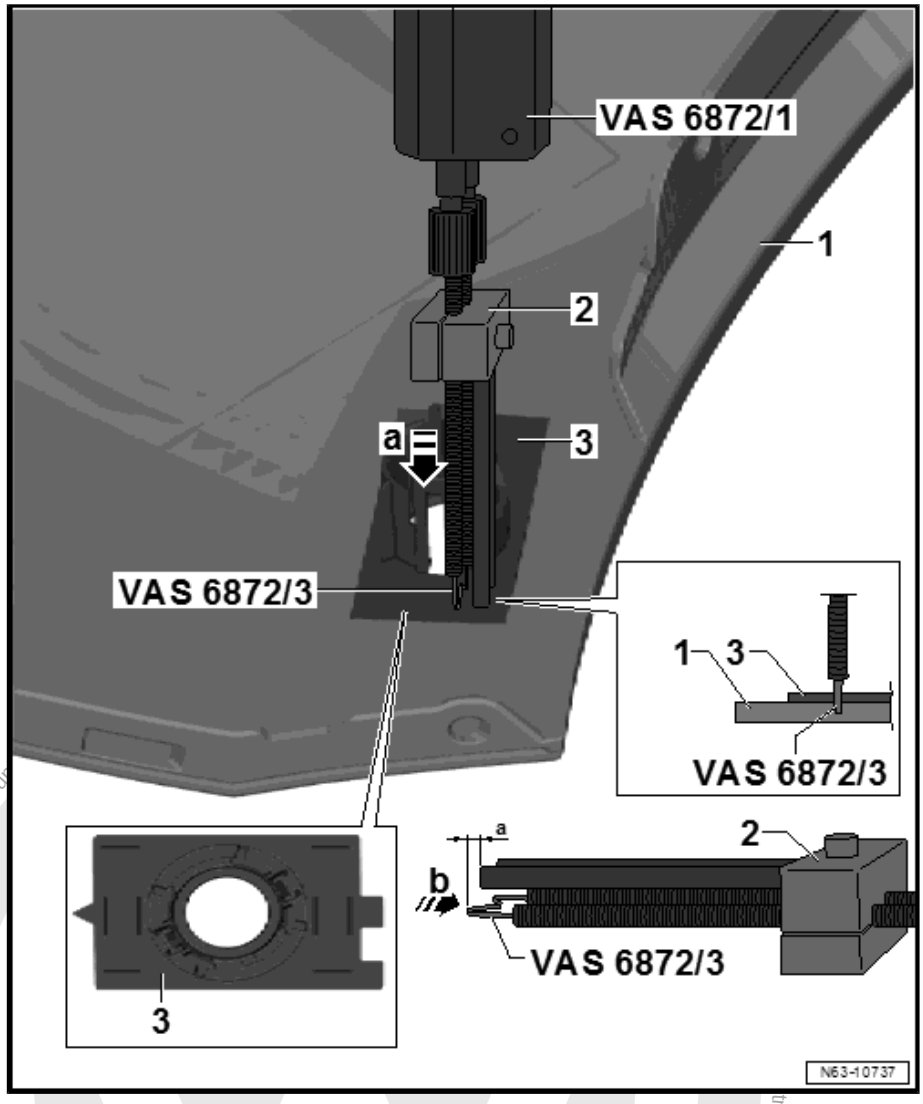
Note

The punch -4- must not turn on the paint of the bumper cover.

– Punch -4- is pulled through material of bumper cover -5- in direction of -arrow- by turning bolt head -1-.

– Remove hole punch and make hole on left side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing brackets for park assist steering

Note

- *Installation of the park assist bracket is described for the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The spacer on the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- must be set very precisely.*
- *If the setting is too low, the bracket will not be secured properly.*
- *If the setting is too high, the clips will leave marks on the bumper cover -1-.*
- *4 clips have to be attached on each side. The respective locations are shown in the illustration.*

– Attach clip, M-shape - VAS 6872/3- in spacer -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

– Set distance -a- precisely to 3 mm.

– Install park assist bracket -3- in hole punched in bumper cover -1-.

– Install clips in direction of -arrow a-, allowing them to melt in without pressure using hand unit - VAS 6872/1- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– When the spacer -2- rests against the surface, switch off the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- .
– Allow the clip to cool down for 10 s. Do not move the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- during this time.
– After the cooling period has elapsed, pull off hand unit - VAS 6872/1- and fit next clip.
– After all clips have been secured, cut off ends of clips.
– Install park assist bracket -3- on left-hand side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Bumper, rear

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover”, page 283

⇒ “2.2 Assembly overview - guides for bumper cover”, page 284

⇒ “2.3 Assembly overview - add-on parts”, page 285

⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - impact bar”, page 287

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 287

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing impact bar”, page 291

⇒ “2.7 Repairing bumper cover”, page 293

2.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA

1 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

2 - Outer guide profile
- ❑ Left and right

3 - Guide profile
- ❑ Left and right with tail light

4 - Wheel arch trim
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Points upwards.
- ❑ Bolted to side panel.
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

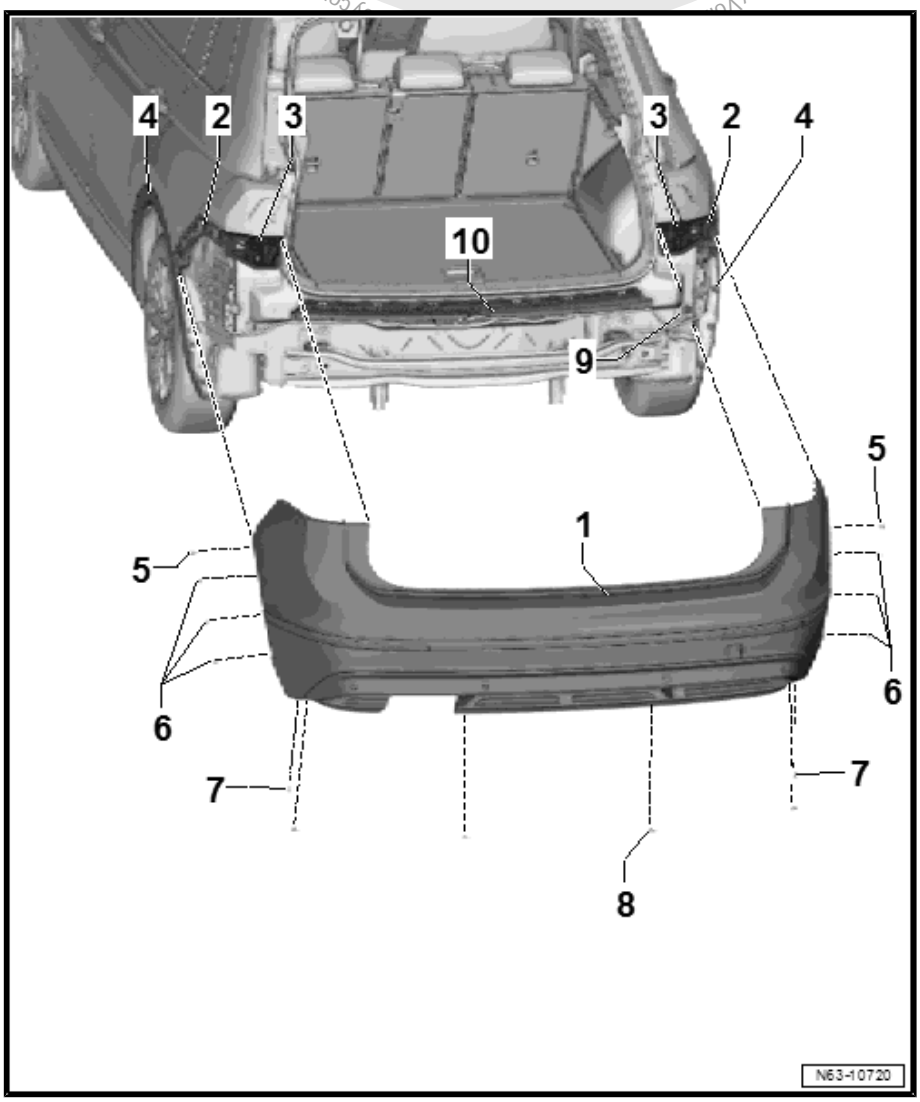
6 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 3 on each side
- ❑ Bolted to wheel housing liner.
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 1 on each side
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ Qty. 4

9 - Grommet
- ❑ For lead-through

10 - Centre guide profile



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Assembly overview - guides for bumper cover

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA

1 - Guide profile
- ❑ Left and right

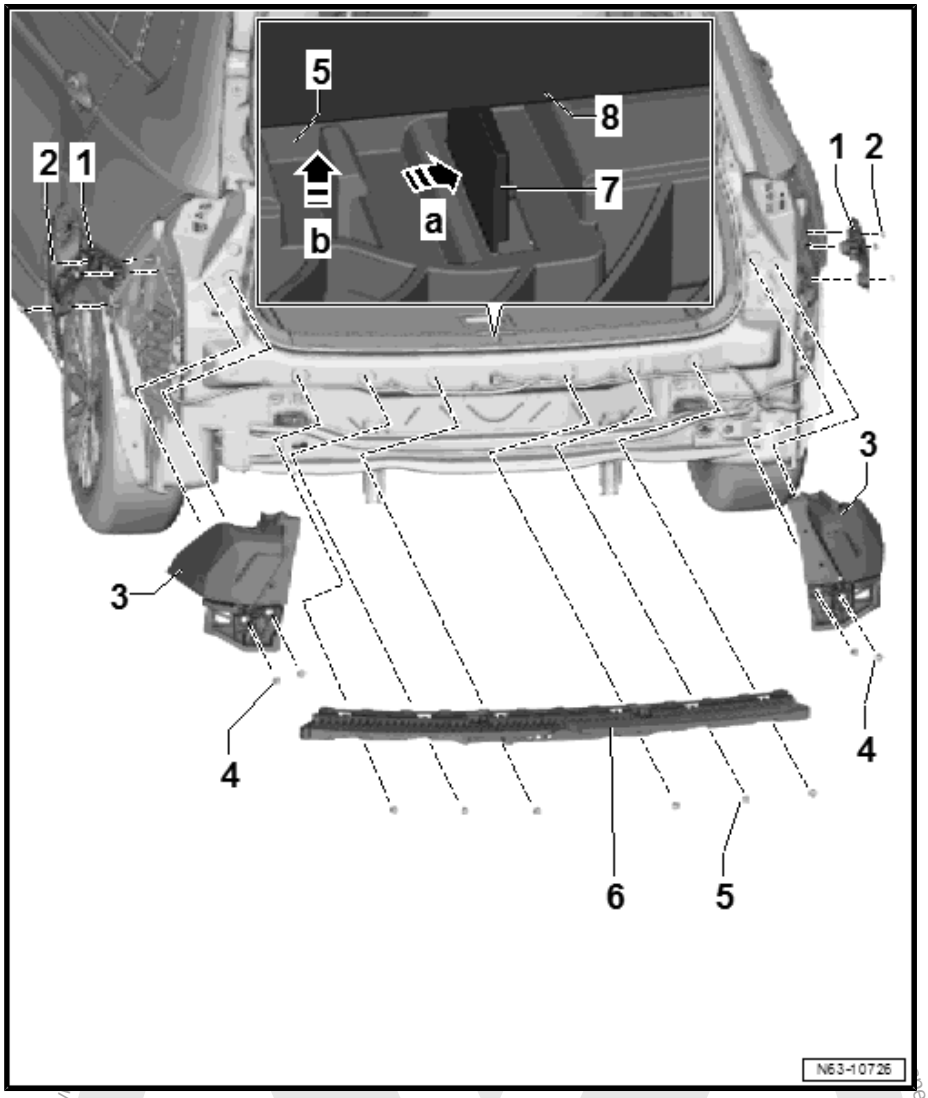
2 - Hexagon nut
- ❑ Qty. 3 on each side
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

3 - Guide profile
- ❑ Left and right with tail light

4 - Hexagon nut
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

5 - Hexagon nut
- ❑ Qty. 6
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

6 - Centre guide profile
- ❑ Aligned with spacer -7- to rear lid -8- -arrow b- by opening -arrow a-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.3 Assembly overview - add-on parts

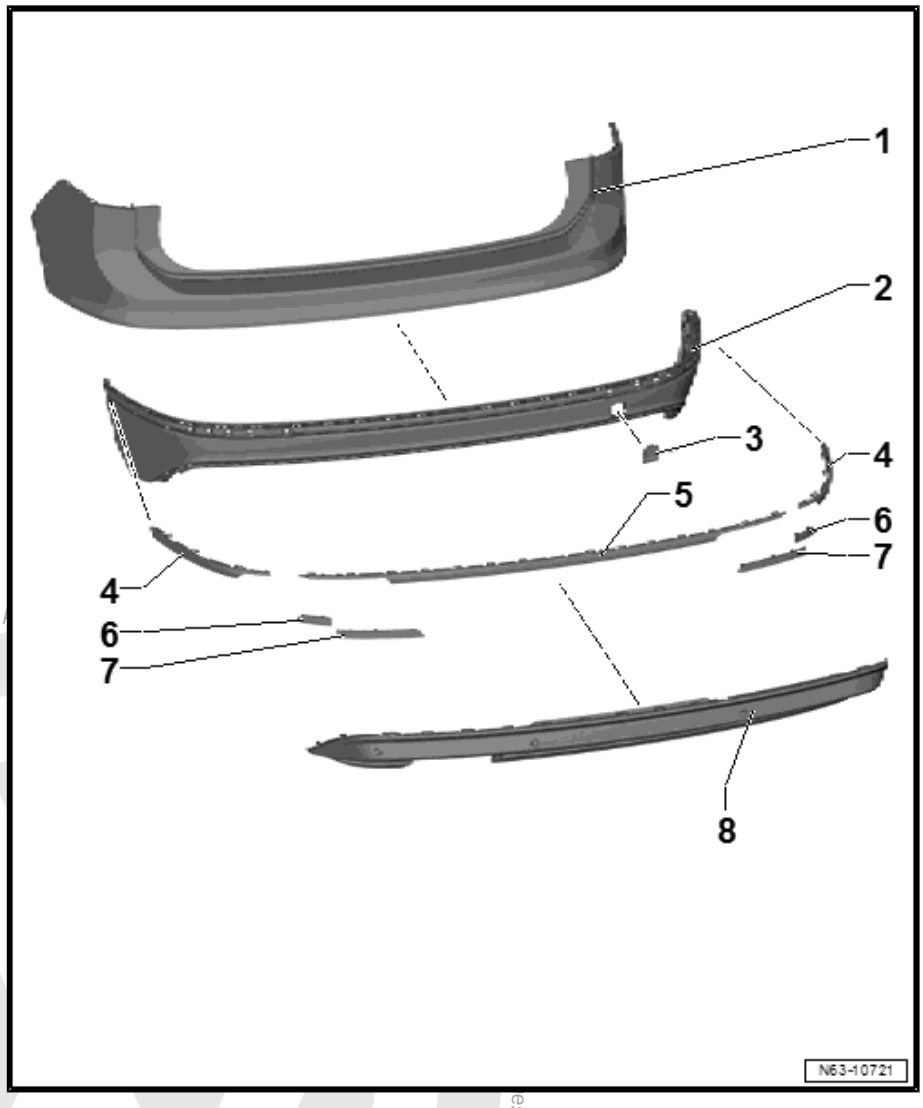
⇒ “2.3.1 Assembly overview - add-on parts”, page 285

⇒ “2.3.2 Assembly overview – add-on parts, R-Line ”, page 286

2.3.1 Assembly overview - add-on parts

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA



1 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

2 - Lower part of bumper cover

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

3 - Towing eye cap

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover

4 - Side trim strips

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

5 - Centre trim strip

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

6 - Reflector

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

7 - Reflector

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

8 - Spoiler

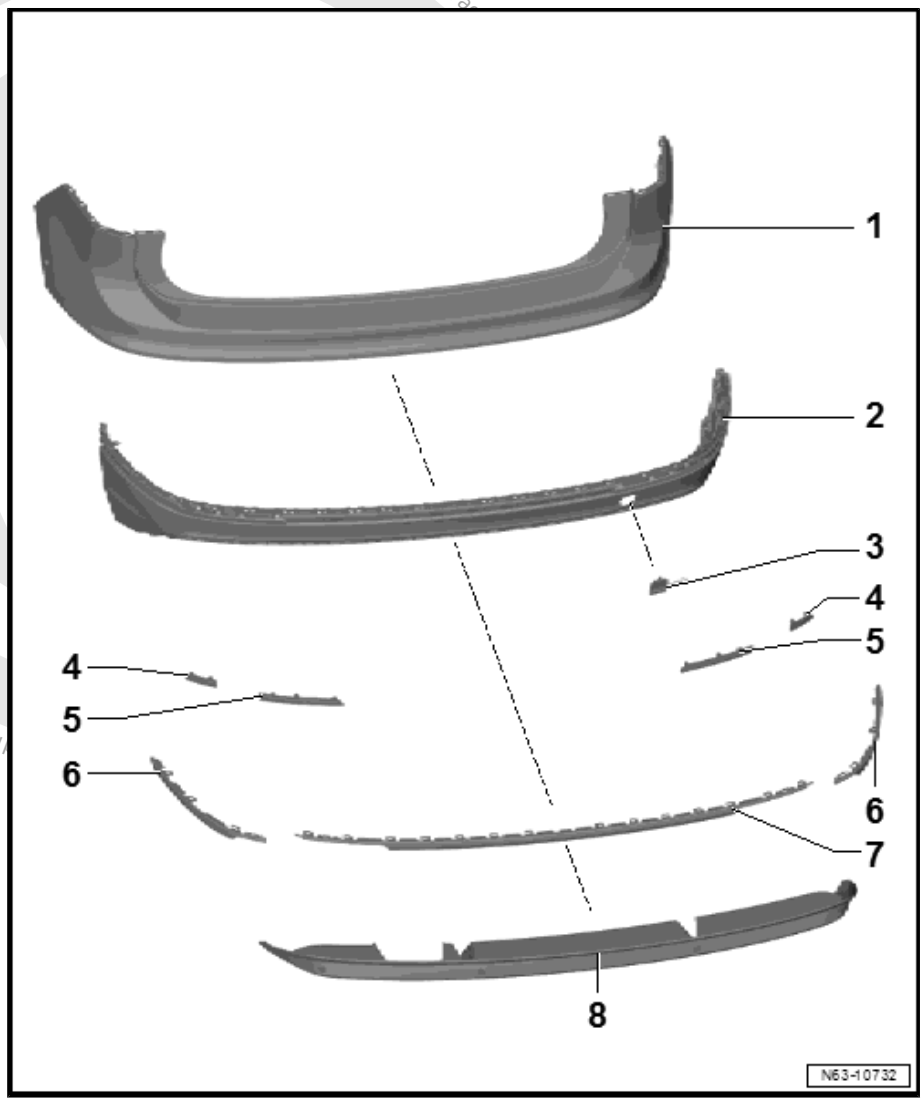
- ❑ Material PC/ABS
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.3.2 Assembly overview – add-on parts, »R-Line«

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA



1 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

2 - Lower part of bumper cover

- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

3 - Towing eye cap

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover

4 - Outer reflector

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

5 - Inner reflector

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

6 - Side trim strips

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

7 - Centre trim strip

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

8 - Spoiler

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ Only remove when bumper cover is removed

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, disclosure or publication is prohibited and may result in prosecution. The recipient of this document undertakes to observe these conditions.

2.4 Assembly overview - impact bar

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA

1 - Impact bar

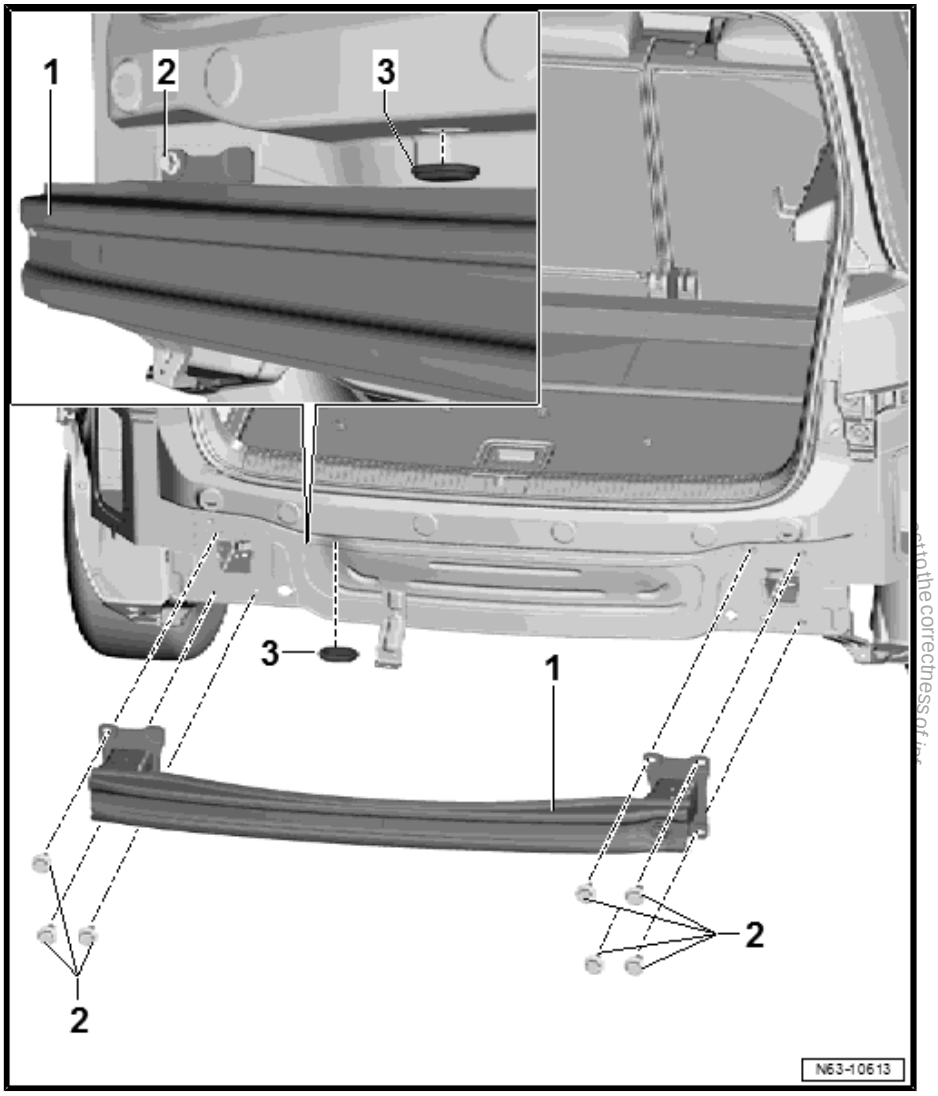
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Vehicles with towing bracket ⇒ page 424

2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4 right
- ❑ Qty. 3 left
- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°

3 - Cap

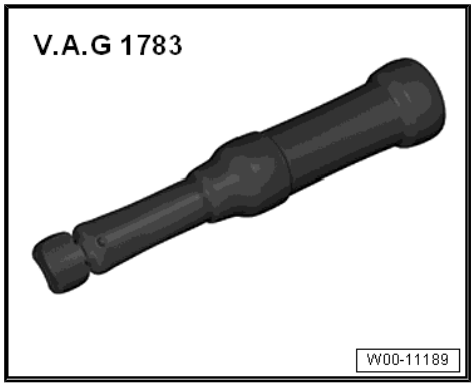
- ❑ Not with towing bracket

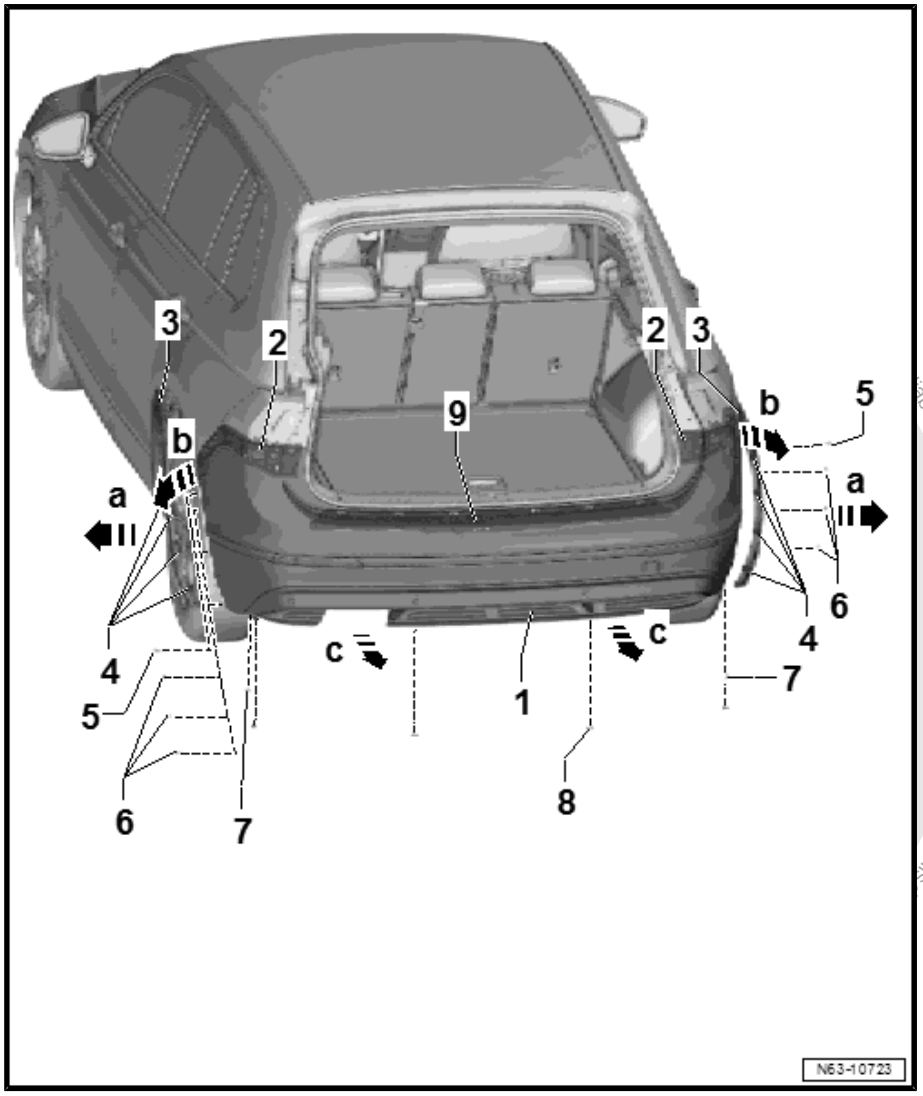


2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





...ability with respect to the correctness of information in this...

Removing

Note

The removal and installation procedures for the bumper cover may vary slightly, depending on vehicle model.

– Remove tail lights in side panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Tail lights; Removing and installing tail light .

– Unscrew bolts -6- on left and right in area of wheel housing liner.
– Unscrew bolts -5- on left and right, pointing upwards.
– Unscrew bolts -7- from underneath.
– Remove spreader rivets -8- from underneath.
– Push wheel arch trim -3- from inside out of fasteners -4- in bumper -arrows a-.
– Unscrew bolts -3- in wheel housing on left and right.

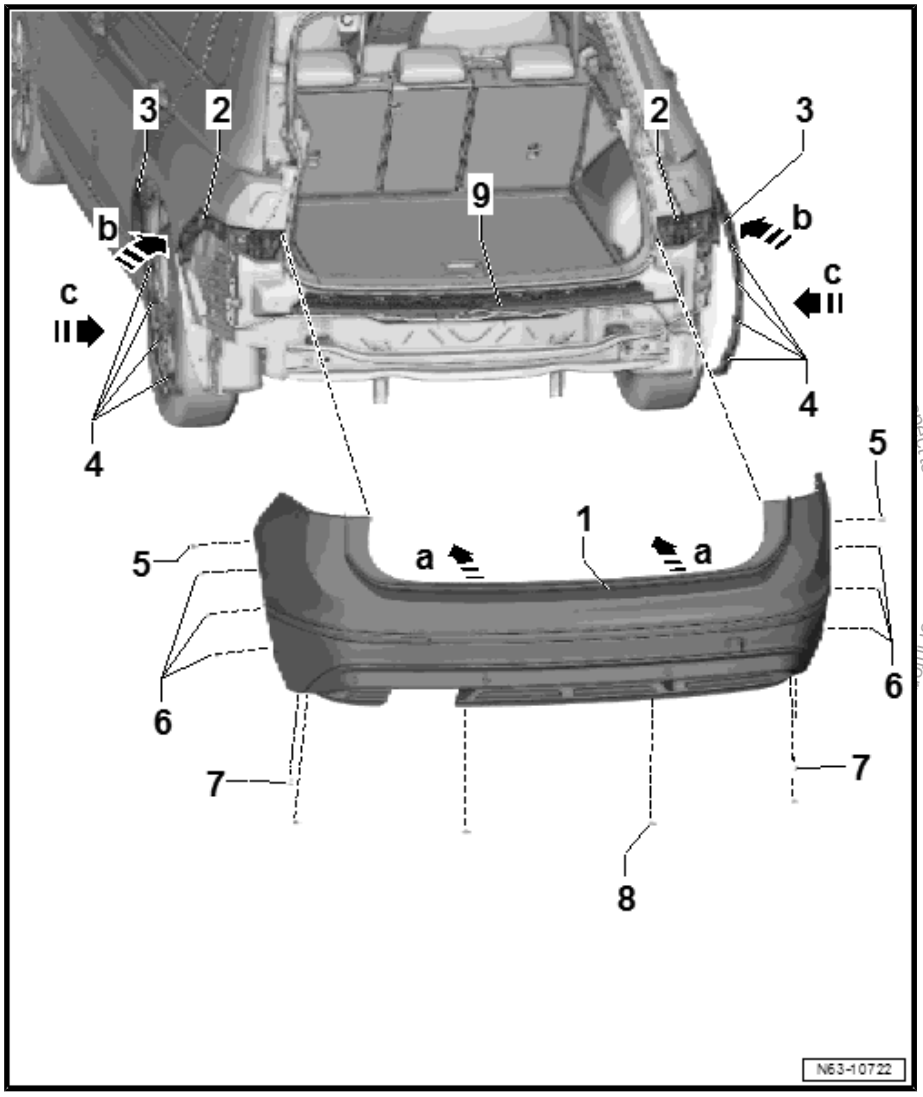
Further dismantling requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

– Pull bumper cover -1- out of guide fasteners on left and right -2- of side panel -arrows b-.
– Pull bumper cover -1- off vehicle in parallel movement -arrows c-.
– If fitted, disconnect connectors of electrical components.

General information and work instructions for the parking aid can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Parking aid .

General information and work instructions for the Park Assist system can be found in ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Park Assist system .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

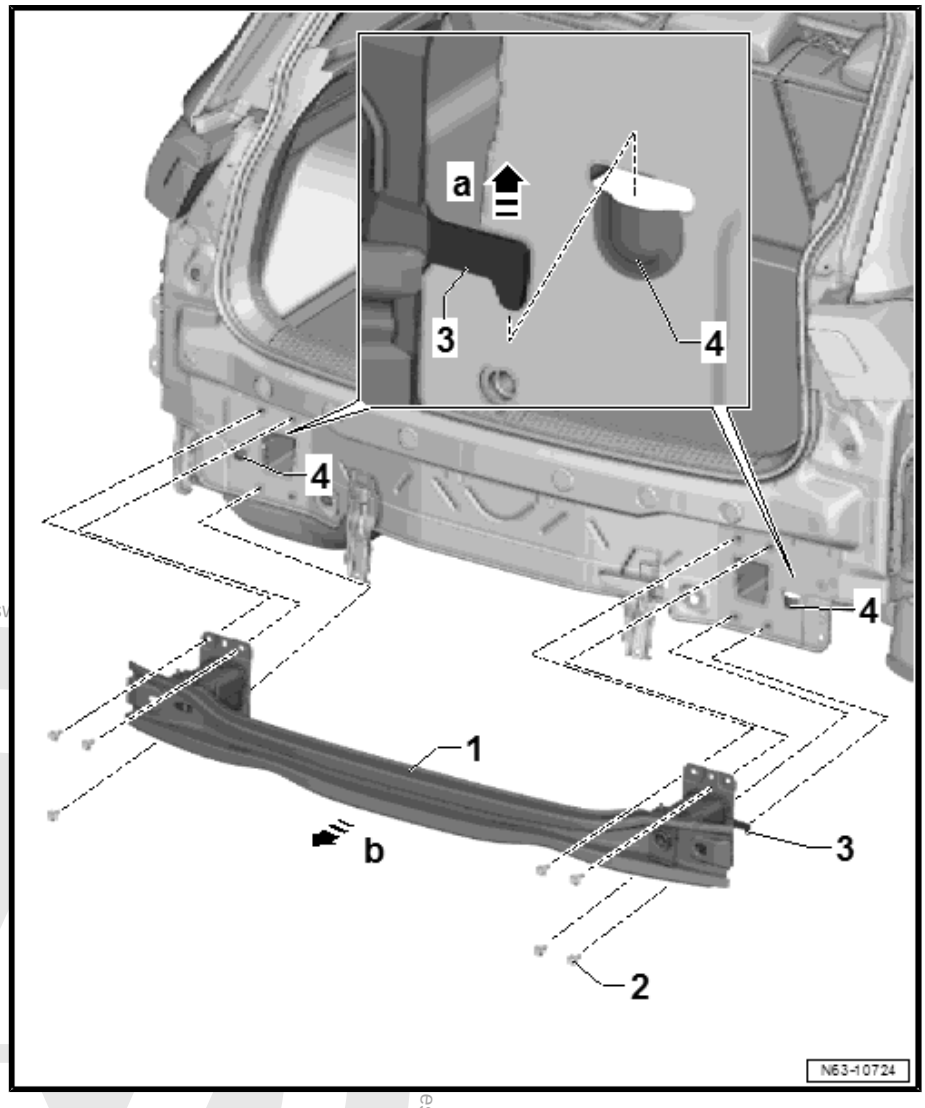
Further installation requires the assistance of a second mechanic.

- If present, connect connectors to electrical components.
- Guide bumper cover -1- onto vehicle in a parallel movement -arrows a-.
- Press bumper cover -1- onto centre guide profile -9-.
- Press bumper cover -1- onto guides on left and right -2- of side panel until they engage with each other -arrow b-.
- Tighten bolts -5-, -6- and -7-.
- Secure spreader rivets -8-.
- Engage wheel arch trim -3- in bumper cover -arrows c-.
- Observe gaps/shut lines ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 00 ; Panel gaps; Body – rear .

Specified torques

- ⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - bumper cover”, page 283

2.6 Removing and installing impact bar



Removing

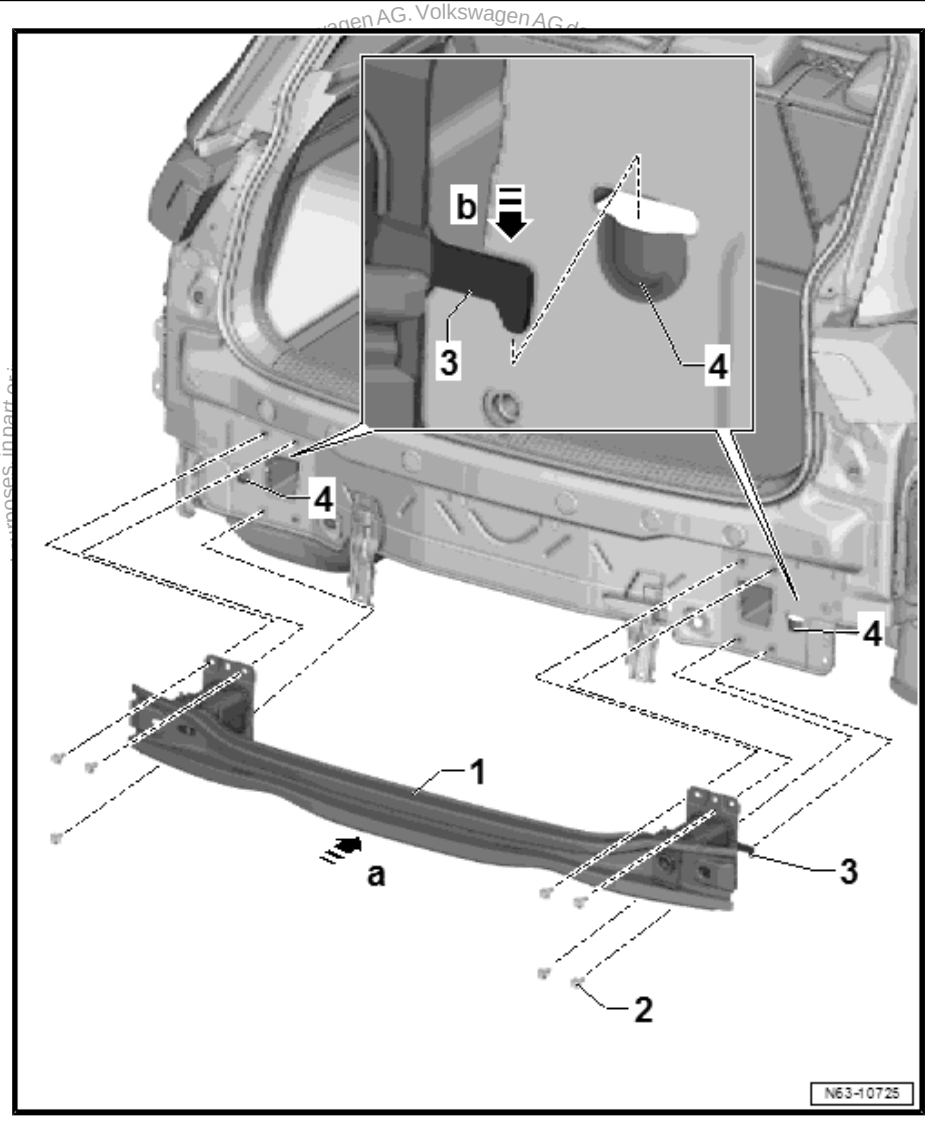
– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Lift out impact bar -1- with guides -3- upwards -arrows a- from tabs -4- in cross panel.

– Remove impact bar -1- from vehicle -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
ess of information in this document.

Volkswagen AG, Volkswagen AG



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Guide impact bar -1- up to vehicle -arrow a-.

– Guide impact bar -1- with guides -3- from top to bottom -arrow b- into tabs -4- in cross panel.

– Tighten bolts -2-.

Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “2.4 Assembly overview - impact bar”, page 287

2.7 Repairing bumper cover

⇒ “2.7.1 Repairing bumper cover”, page 293

⇒ “2.7.2 Installing brackets for parking aid senders”, page 293

⇒ “2.7.3 Installing brackets for park assist steering”, page 298

2.7.1 Repairing bumper cover

Note

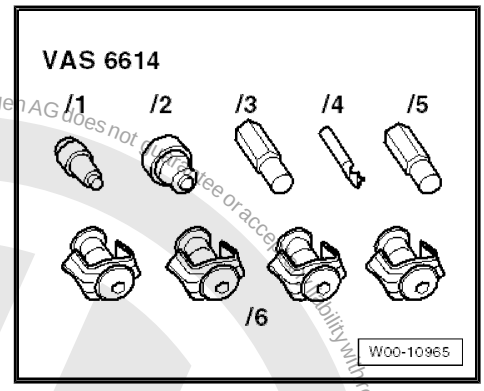
- *If bumper cover is damaged, determine whether plastic can be repaired before renewing bumper.*
- *On vehicles with lane change assist, lane change assist control units - J769 / J770- are located behind bumper cover.*
- *With this equipment, the bumper cover may not be repaired in this area. The bumper cover must be renewed in this instance.*

Description under: ⇒ General Information; Body Repairs, General Body Repairs ; Plastic repair procedures

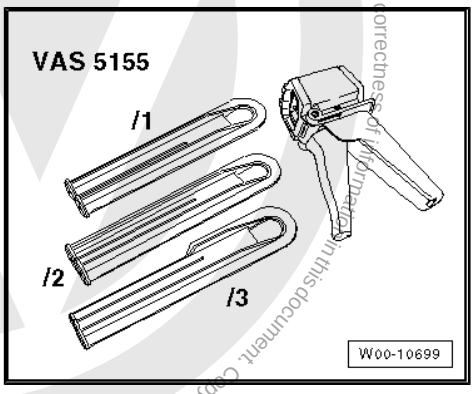
2.7.2 Installing brackets for parking aid senders

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Installation tool for PDC bracket - VAS 6614-



- Locating pins - VAS 6614/8-
- Screw hole punch - VAS 6614/9-
- Cartridge gun - VAS 5155-

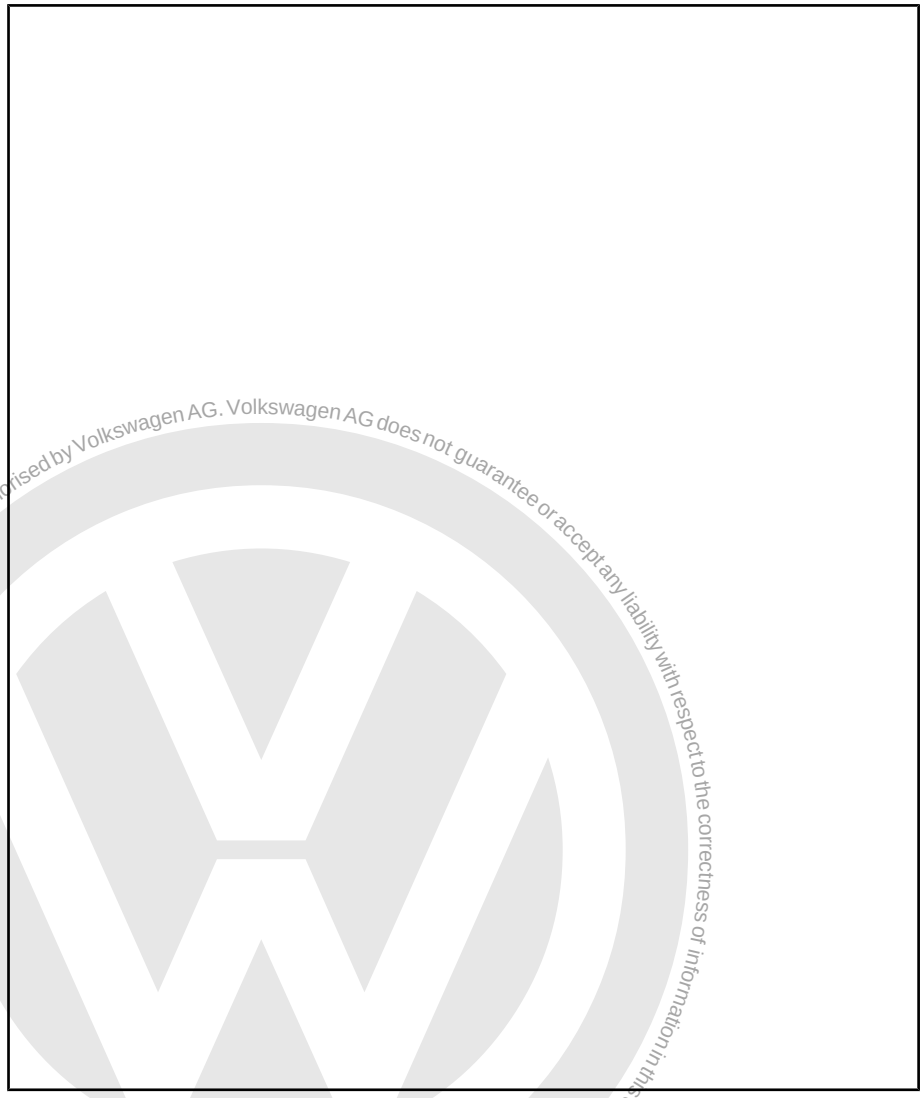


Materials

- 2-component plastic adhesive ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Bonding agent for plastics ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)
- Cleaning solution ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)
- Primer applicator ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

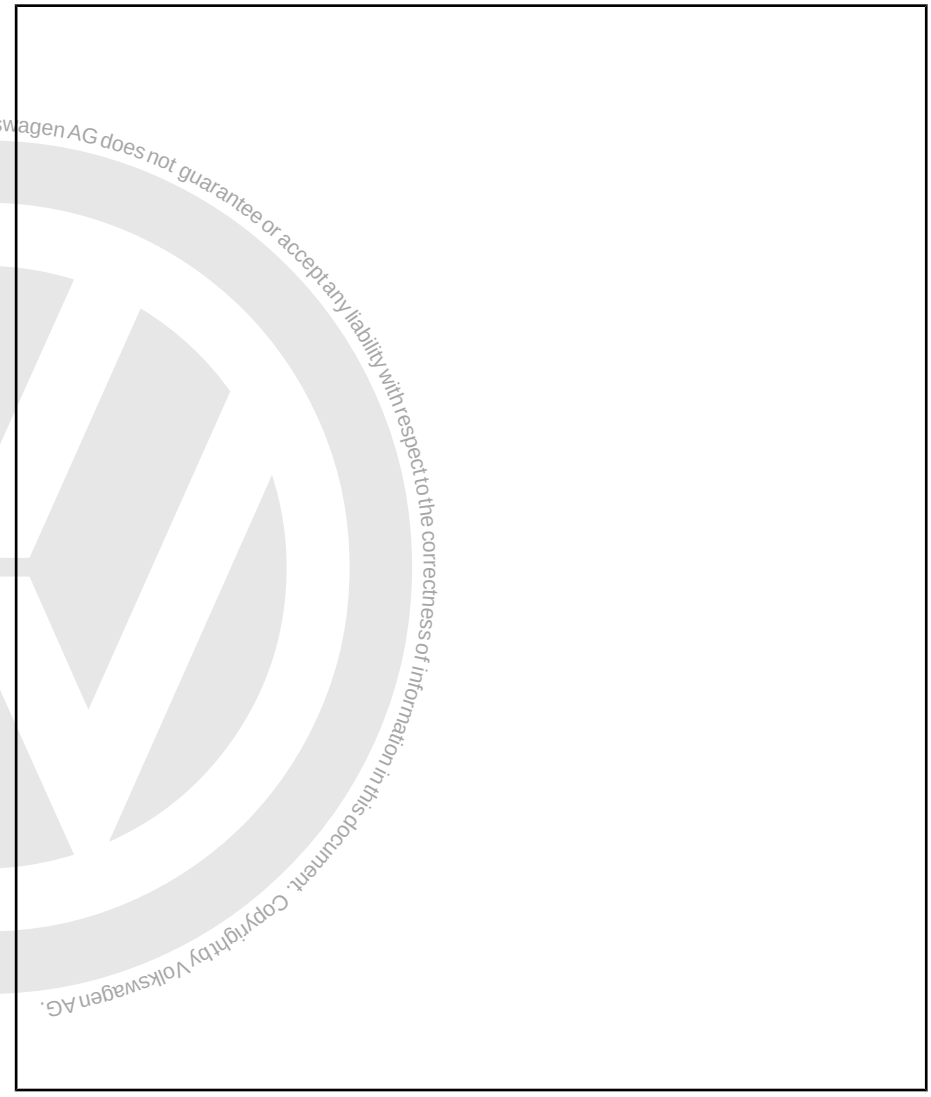
Installing brackets

Note

- *The brackets are installed after the bumper cover has been painted.*
- *Observe manufacturer's instructions enclosed in the packaging.*
- *Observe minimum curing period of 30 minutes.*

The markings for the bracket -1- can be found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– The holes must be drilled from the inside to the outside with the drill bit - VAS 6614/4- -3- from the supplied tool kit.



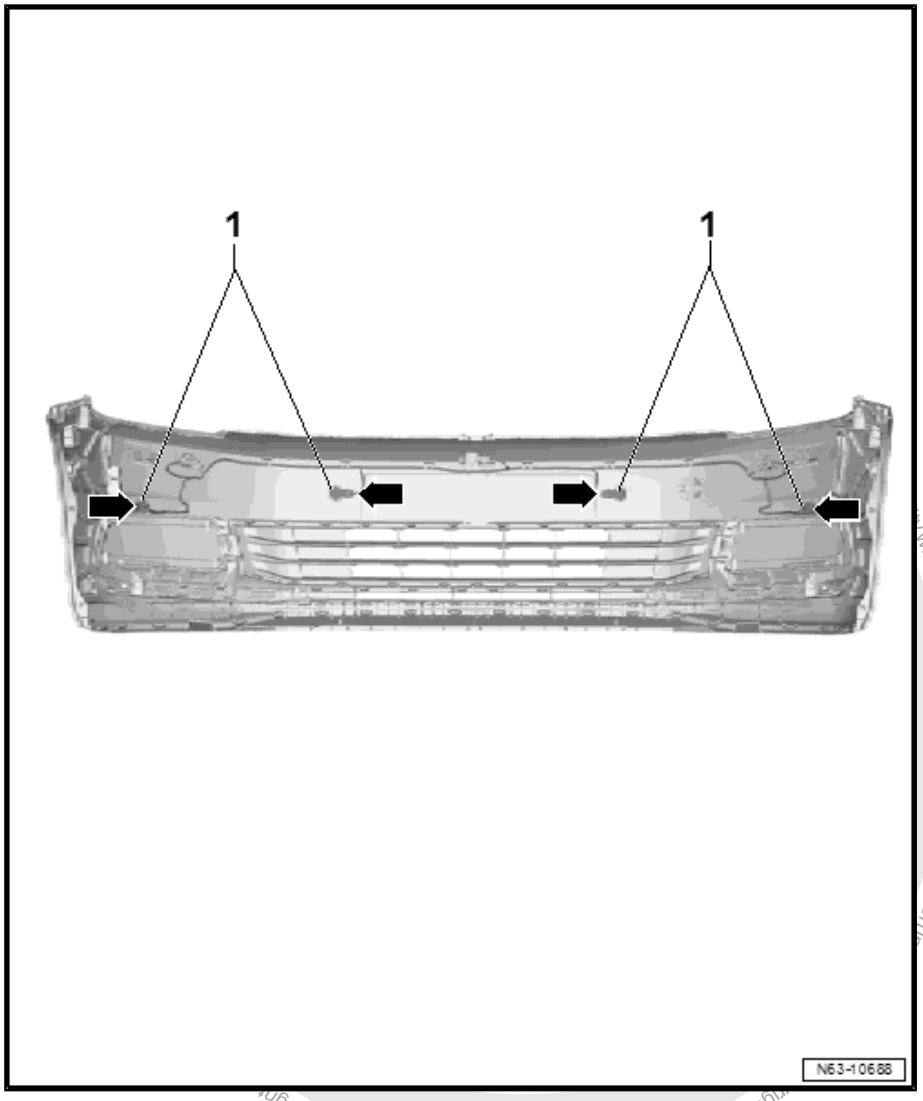
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Fit screw-hole punch - VAS 6614/9- -1-, washer -2- and counter-support -3- from inside of bumper cover -5-.
– Screw on hole punch -4- from outside of bumper cover -5-.
– Press punch -4- against bumper cover.
– Tighten screw-hole punch -1-.

Note

The punch -4- must not turn on the paint of the bumper cover.

– Punch -4- is pulled through material of bumper cover -5- in direction of -arrow- by turning bolt head -1-.
– Remove screw-hole punch and make next holes.
– Thoroughly clean bumper cover and bracket with cleaning solution.

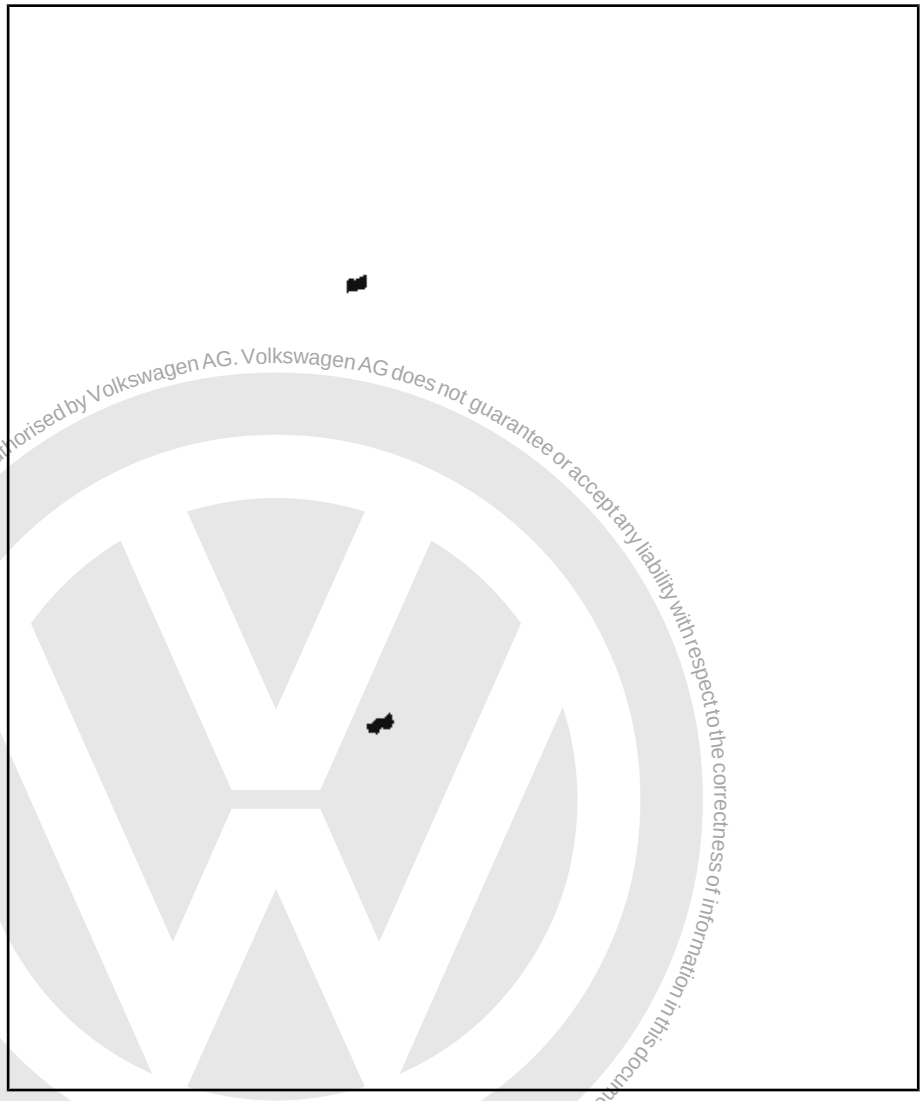


Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
...with respect to the correctness of information in...

– Note alignment of brackets after aligning sensors -arrows-.
– Refer to diagram for alignment of sensors.
– Connections of outer sensors -1- point towards outside -arrows-.
– Connections of inner sensors -1- point towards inside -arrows-.

Note

Approx. 1 cm of adhesive from tip should not be applied.



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Duplication, copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Lightly sand inside of bumper cover -6- and clean thoroughly.
– Apply a very thin layer of bonding agent for plastics to bumper cover and bracket and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.
– Push bracket -8- onto locating pins - VAS 6614/8- -1- and through bumper cover -6-.
– Push counterhold -4- on and gently tighten knurled nut -5-.
– Push on clip -3- and then start knurled nut -2- but do not tighten it.
– All the brackets are prepared to this stage.

Note

The adhesive must not run into the angle.

– Apply adhesive as shown in illustration and tighten knurled nut -2-.
– Remove all centring pins after minimum curing period.

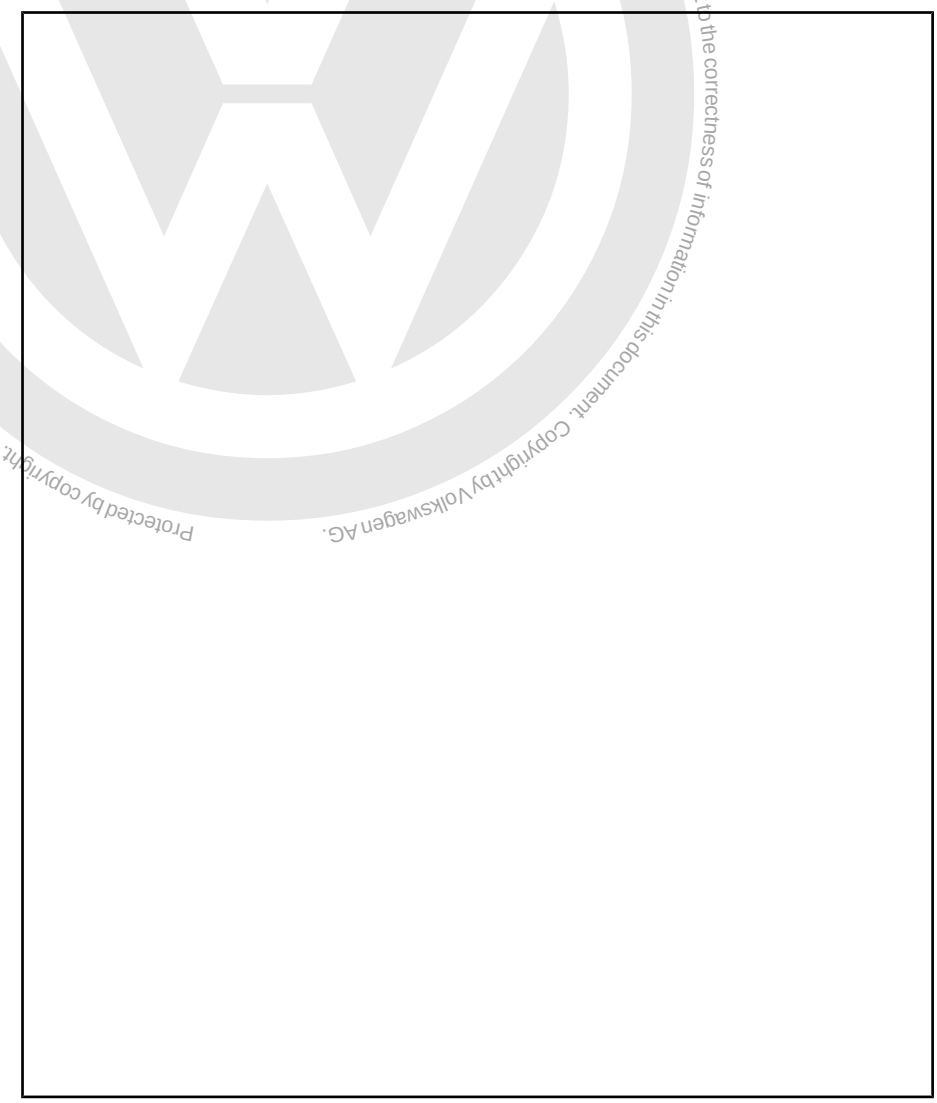
Do not carry out any further work on bumper cover or brackets until the minimum curing period of 30 minutes has expired.

In this time, the bumper cover must remain where it is. Do not move it.

2.7.3 Installing brackets for park assist steering

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Thermal clip bonder - VAS 6872-
- Drill bit - VAS 6614/4-
- Hand set - VAS 6872/1-
- Clip, M-shaped - VAS 6872/3-
- Screw hole punch - VAS 6614/9-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

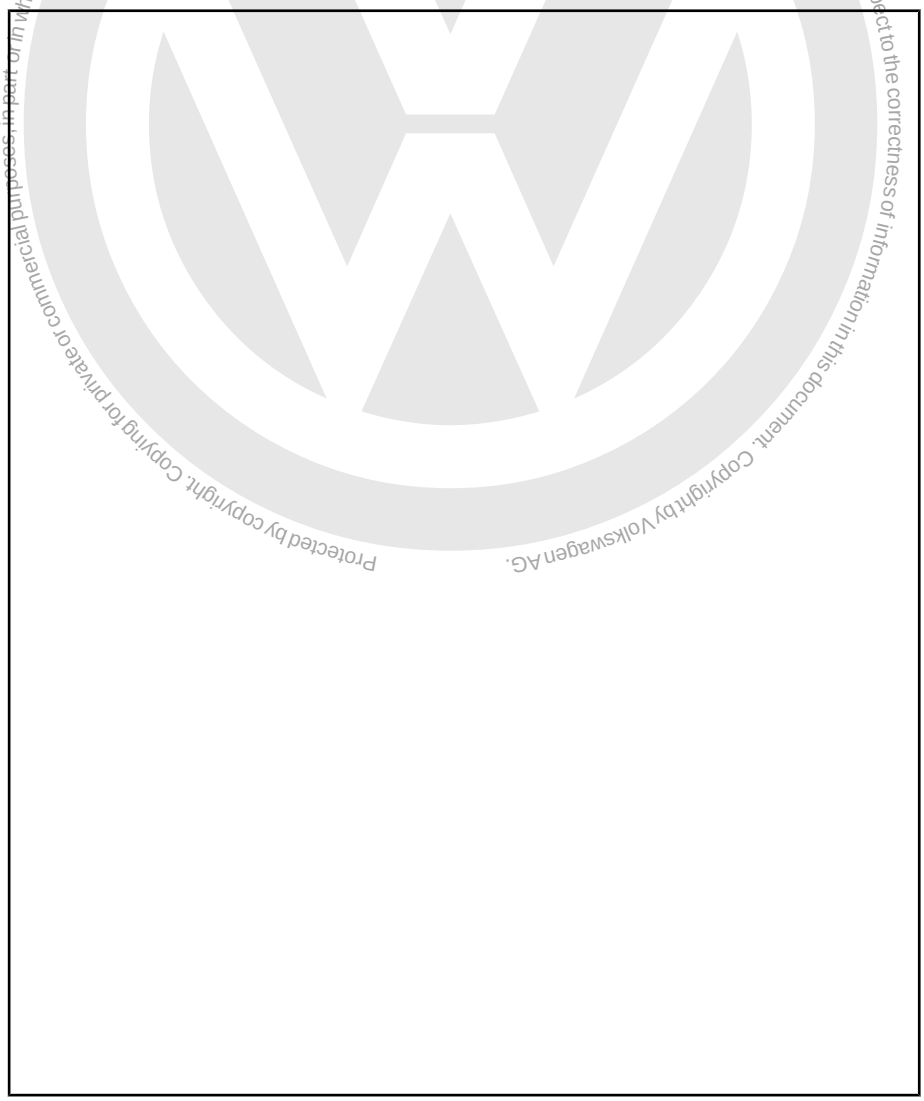
Stamping holes

Note

- *Stamping holes is described for the left side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The park assist brackets are installed after the bumper cover has been painted.*
- *The contact surface of the park assist brackets must not be painted ⇒ Paintwork manual .*

The markings -1- for the park assist brackets can be found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– Hole must be drilled from inside out with drill bit - VAS 6614/4- -3- from tool kit supplied.



– Fit screw-hole punch - VAS 6614/9- -1-, washer -2- and counter-support -3- from inside of bumper cover -5-.

– Screw on hole punch -4- from outside of bumper cover -5-.

– Press punch -4- against bumper cover.

– Tighten bolt head -1-.

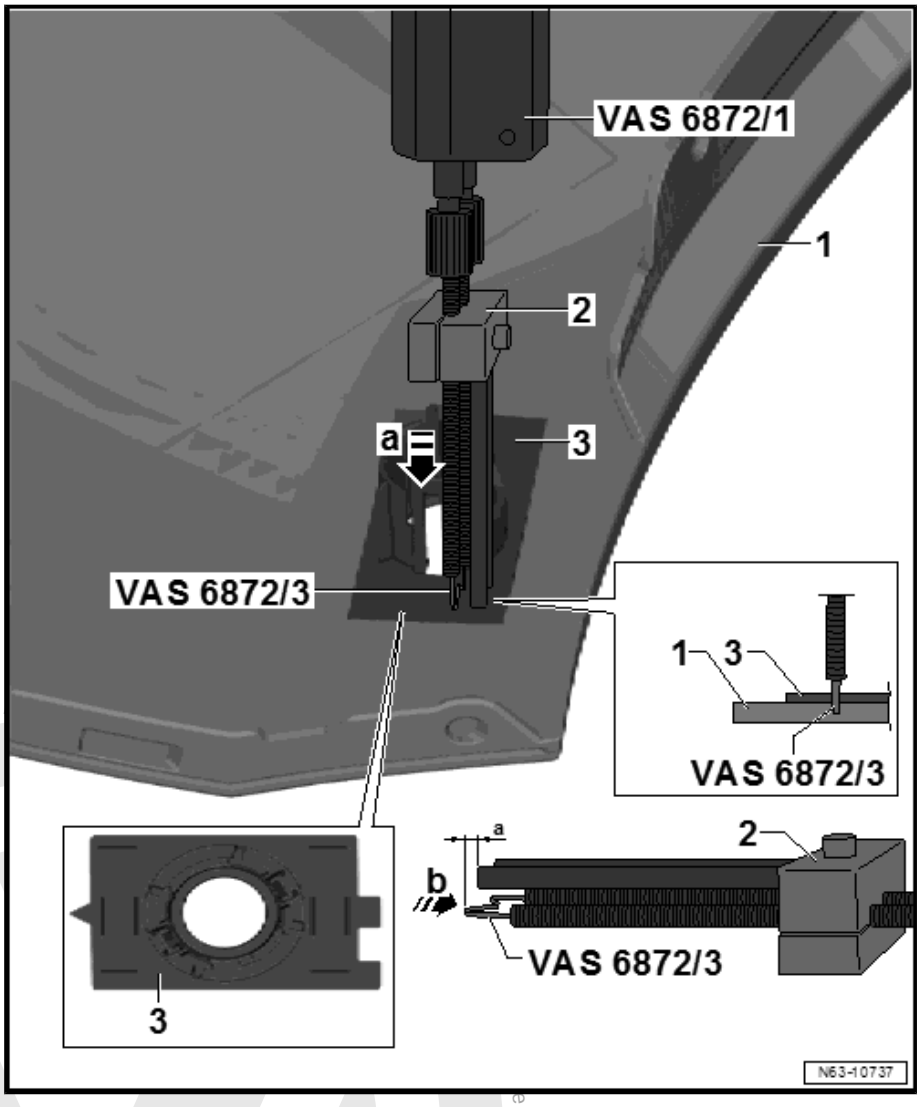
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

The punch -4- must not turn on the paint of the bumper cover.

– Punch -4- is pulled through material of bumper cover -5- in direction of -arrow- by turning bolt head -1-.

– Remove screw-hole punch and make hole on other side.



Installing brackets for park assist steering

Note

- *Installation of the park assist bracket is described for the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The spacer on the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- must be set very precisely.*
- *If the setting is too low, the bracket will not be secured properly.*
- *If the setting is too high, the clips will leave marks on the bumper cover -1-.*
- *4 clips have to be attached on each side. The respective locations are shown in the illustration.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Attach clip, M-shape - VAS 6872/3- in spacer -2- in direction of -arrow b-.
– Set distance -a- precisely to 3 mm.
– Install park assist bracket -3- in hole punched in bumper cover -1-.
– Install clips in direction of -arrow a-, allowing them to melt in without pressure using hand unit - VAS 6872/1- .
– When the spacer -2- rests against the surface, switch off the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- .
– Allow the clip to cool down for 10 s. Do not move the hand unit - VAS 6872/1- during this time.
– After the cooling period has elapsed, pull off hand unit - VAS 6872/1- and fit next clip.
– After all clips have been secured, cut off ends of clips.
– Install park assist bracket -3- on left-hand side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

64 – Glazing

1 Repair notes

⇒ “1.1 Minimum curing periods for bonded windows”, page 302
⇒ “1.2 Window repair”, page 302
⇒ “1.3 Installation instructions for bonded windows”, page 303
⇒ “1.4 Preparing old undamaged windows for fitting”, page 304
⇒ “1.5 Preparing new windows for installing”, page 305
⇒ “1.6 Preparing body flange for fitting”, page 307
⇒ “1.7 Cleaning off excess adhesive”, page 307

1.1 Minimum curing periods for bonded windows

Note

- *There are special requirements for renewing bonded windows.*
- *The vehicle is safe to use only after the minimum curing period has elapsed.*

The minimum curing period for 2-component adhesive is 2 hours for all windows.

Minimum curing period is the time from bonding the window until vehicle may be used. During this time, the vehicle must be standing on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15°C).

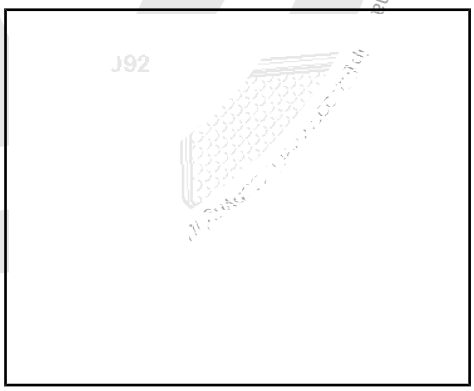
1.2 Window repair

Note

- *Before renewing windscreen, explore possibilities of repairing damage to glass.*
- *Damaged windscreens can be repaired with the window repair kit - VAS 6092- .*
- *This damage must not exceed a certain size or position.*
- *Each window repair kit comes with a set of instructions.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Window repair kit - VAS 6092-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

1.3 Installation instructions for bonded windows

⇒ “1.3.1 Fitting instructions”, page 303

⇒ “1.3.2 Materials”, page 303

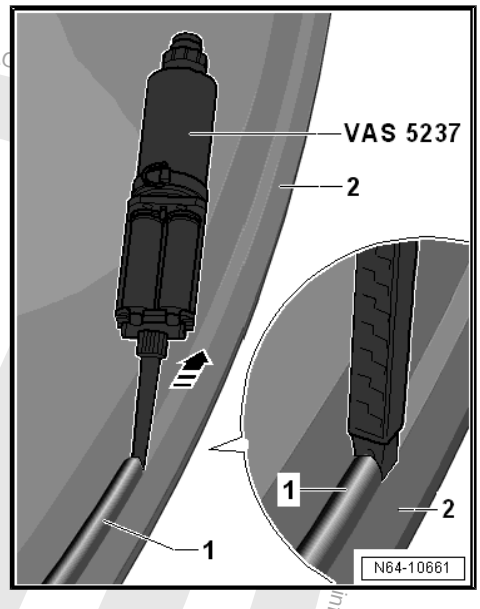
1.3.1 Fitting instructions

– Apply adhesive sealing material -1- in continuous bead, holding applicator at right angle to window -2-.

♦ Adhere to the specified dimensions for the adhesive beads.

♦ Using 2 suction lifters - V.A.G 1344 -, install glass pane in window aperture, align to centre and press in onto spacing lip.

♦ Replace stickers (e.g. for airbag) if there were any.



1.3.2 Materials

Note

The part numbers of the materials can be found in the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .

♦ 2-component glass adhesive	1) 2) 3) 6)
♦ 1-component glass adhesive	1) 2) 4) 5) 6)
♦ Activator	1) 6)
♦ Glass and paint primer	1) 6)
♦ Cleaning solution	1) 6)
♦ Primer applicator	1) 6)
♦ Adhesive remover	1) 6)
♦ Cutting cord 357 853 999	6) 7
♦ Wire reel VAS 6452/1	7
♦ Cutting cord 6888/1	7

1) Observe instructions for use on the information sheet provided by the manufacturer.

2) Observe minimum curing period ⇒ page 302 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3) Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237- must be used to apply these materials.

4) Heat according to manufacturer's instructions using cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939- .

5) Small cartridge, 180 ml, for sealing and/or when a 400 ml double cartridge alone is not sufficient.

6) The part numbers of the materials can be found in the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .

7 The cutting cords stated above can be used alternatively to the cutting wires, and vice versa. They are designated for single use.

1.4 Preparing old undamaged windows for fitting

Note

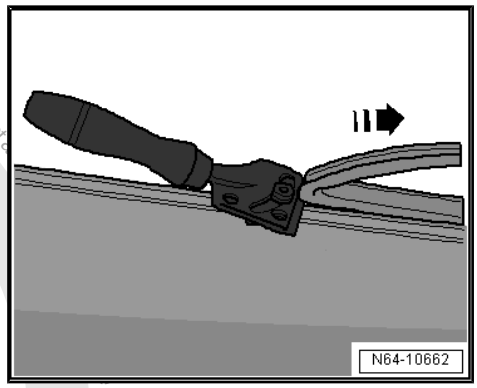
- *Side windows without centring pins can be installed.*
- *Centring pins are only relevant for production.*
- *If required, the window can be fixed in place with adhesive tape during the curing period.*

Cutting back adhesive bead

- If an undamaged window is being re-used, cut back the residual adhesive sealant to 1 to 2 mm shortly before bonding it back in.
- Do not damage primer and ceramic coating when doing this.
- Keep bonding surface free of dirt and grease.
- Do not treat bonding surface with activator, glass/paint primer or cleaning solution immediately after cutting back.
- The remaining material is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealing material to be applied.

• Exception: if bonding is performed later than one day after cutting back adhesive bead, the remaining residual material must be activated with activator .

– Apply activator evenly in one stroke using applicator .



NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork from activator.

– Apply activator neatly onto adhesive bead, do not spill.

Allow to air dry for approx. 10 minutes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.5 Preparing new windows for installing

Note

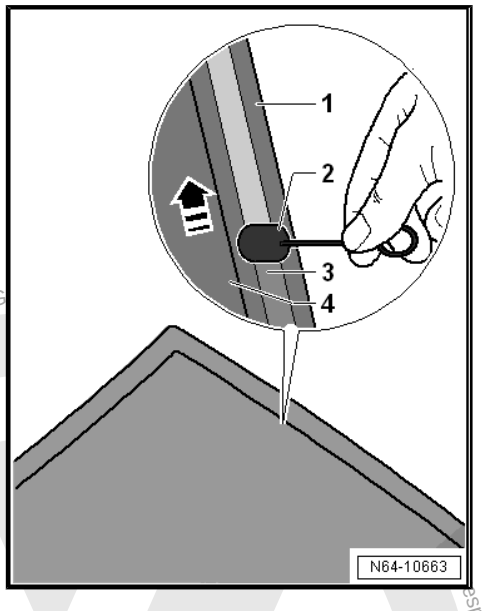
- *The area on which the adhesive bead is applied is not pre-coated or primed.*
- *The relevant area is a ceramic coating.*
- *No windows are precoated.*
- *The sealing lip is included with a new windscreen.*

– Clean a 20 mm-wide strip all around the edge of the window with the cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .

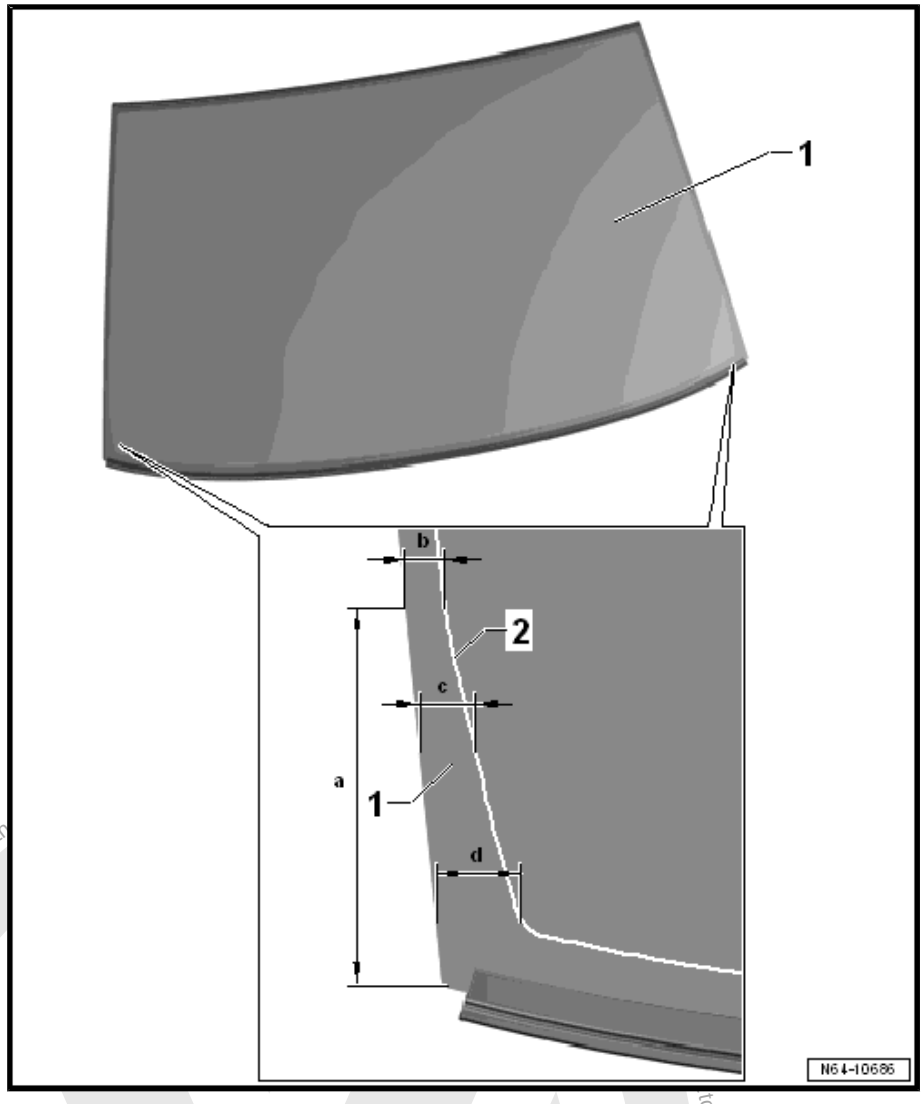
– Then rub edge of window dry using a lint-free cloth.

– Using applicator - D 009 500 25- -1-, apply glass and paint primer -2- evenly in one pass.

- Allow to air dry for approx. 10 minutes.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document with respect to the correctness of information



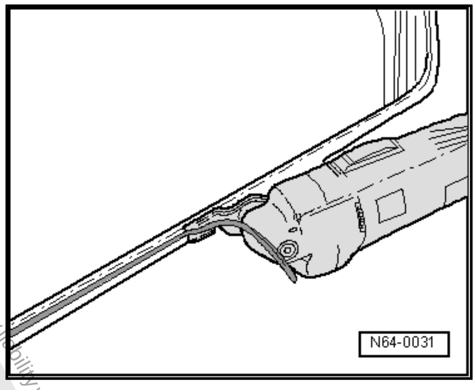
Note

The distance between glass/paint primer as well as adhesive bead and the outer edge of the windscreen differs in the lower area of the windscreen.

- Up to -dimension a- = 150 mm measured from lower edge of windscreen the distance between the adhesive bead and the outer edge is -dimension b- = 6 mm.
- From this point down to the bend the distance amounts to -dimension d- = 20 mm.
- At half distance between dimension a and the bend -dimension c- must be 10 mm.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.6 Preparing body flange for fitting



- ♦ Cut back residual adhesive sealant to 1 to 2 m shortly before bonding window back in.
- ♦ Do not damage primer and paintwork structure when doing this.
- ♦ Keep bonding surface free of dirt and grease.
- ♦ Do not treat bonding surface with activator, glass/paint primer or cleaning solution immediately after cutting back.
- ♦ The remaining material is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealing material to be applied.

– Cut back remaining material on body flange with U-shaped blade - V.A.G 1561/3- , but do not remove completely.

- Exception: if bonding is performed later than one day after cutting back adhesive bead, the remaining residual material must be activated with activator .

– Apply activator evenly in one stroke using applicator .

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork from activator.

– Apply activator neatly onto adhesive bead, do not spill.

- ♦ If the window flange has been repaired or partially renewed, the area concerned must be cleaned and primed again after painting.

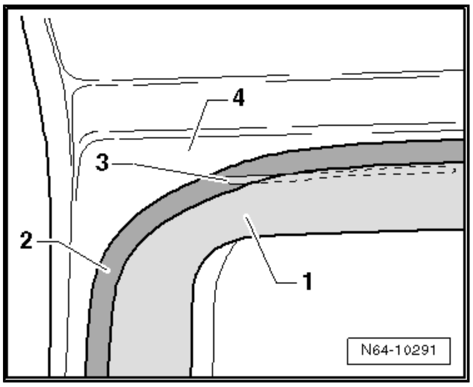
– Clean metal flange all around using cleaning solution .

– Then rub edge of window dry using a lint-free cloth.

– Apply glass/paint primer evenly in one pass onto paintwork structure using applicator .

Note

It is possible that a laser weld seam lies outside the area of the adhesive bead. In this case, the exposed weld seam must be sealed with glass adhesive before bonding the window.



– If laser weld seam -3- on metal flange -4- is not covered by existing adhesive bead -1-, coat laser weld seam -3- with glass/paint primer -3-. Then fill laser weld seam with glass adhesive -1-.

Touching up paint damage

Paint structure must be restored after damage to the paintwork according to specifications in the “Paint” workshop manual.

1.7 Cleaning off excess adhesive

– Use adhesive remover - D 002 000. 10- as cleaning agent. Safety precautions must be observe for all work procedures.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *When cleaning the vehicle interior, do not press freshly installed window outwards.*
- *Otherwise, the window will be detached.*

– First, clean the painted surface roughly with a dry cloth. Remove residue using adhesive remover - D 002 000. 10- .

– Cleaning plastic trim: Allow adhesive sealant to cure (approx. 1 hour) and then peel off.

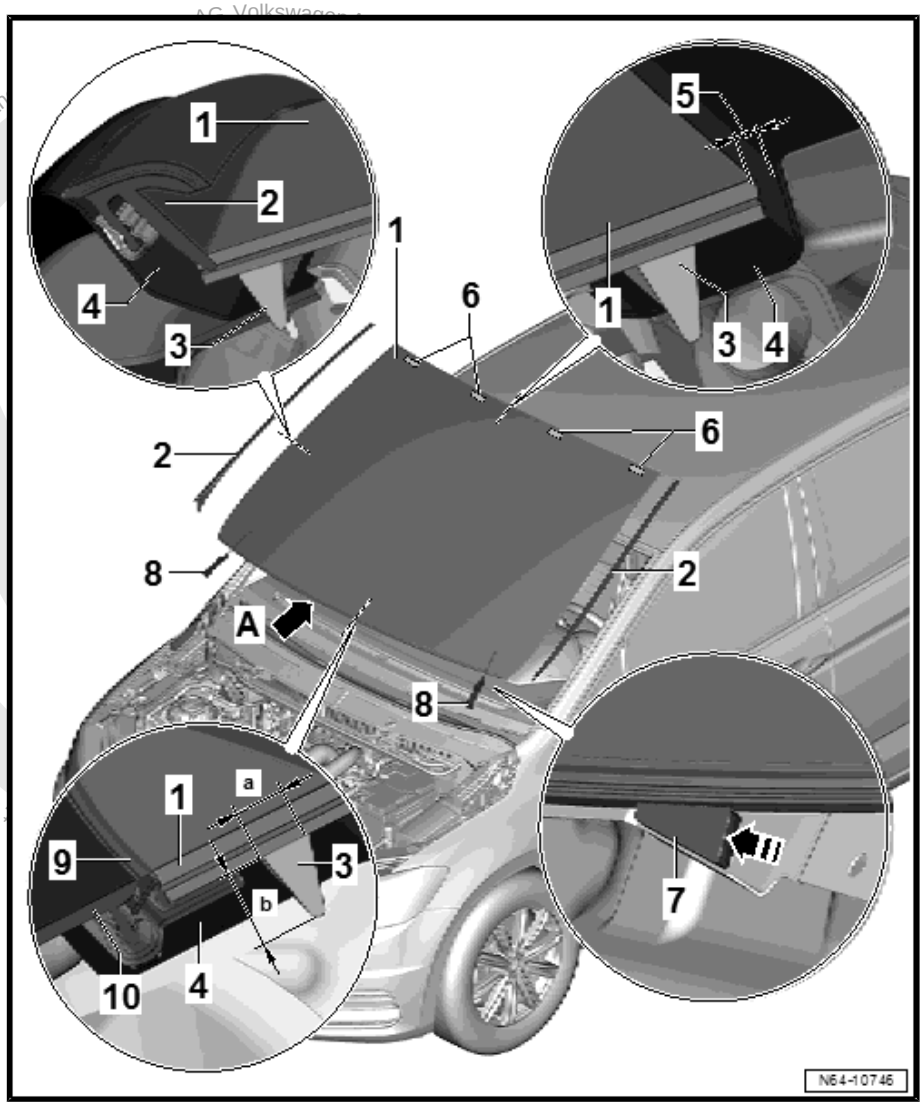
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Windscreen

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - windscreen”, page 309

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing windscreen”, page 310

2.1 Assembly overview - windscreen



1 - Windscreen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

2 - Water deflector

3 - PUR adhesive sealant

- ❑ Cross section of bead: width = 7 mm -dimension a-, height = 10 mm -dimension b- (including precoating, residual material on window glass and window flange).
- ❑ Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302 .
- ❑ Adhesive bead starts and ends at -arrow-

4 - Body flange

- ❑ Touch up paintwork damage.

5 - Gaps/shut lines

- ❑ Must be uniform.

6 - Spacer

- ❑ Qty. 4

7 - Windscreen adjuster

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removed after adhesive has hardened

8 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For heated windscreen

9 - Windscreen seal

- ❑ Is part of windscreen
- ❑ Removing and installing plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 20

10 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth

2.2 Removing and installing windscreen

⇒ “2.2.1 Removing and installing windscreen”, page 310

⇒ “2.2.2 Removing broken windscreen”, page 316

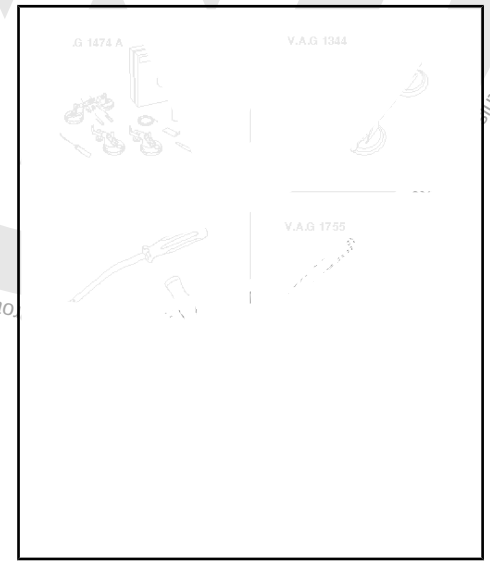
2.2.1 Removing and installing windscreen

Note

- *The removal of a bonded window is described using the Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- .*
- *Alternatively, you can also use the cutting tool for bonded windows - VAS 6452- .*
- *Another alternative is to use the window removal set - VAS 6888- .*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

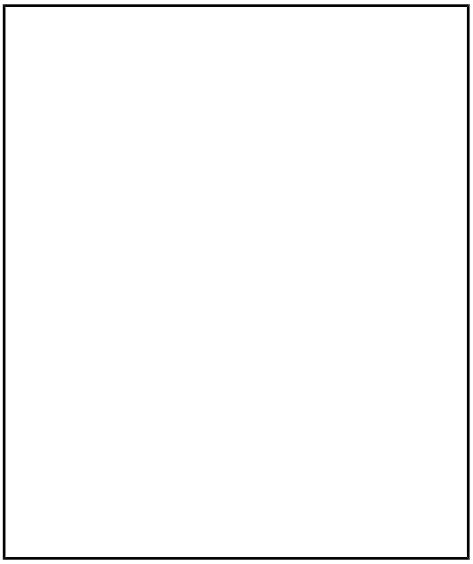
- Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- or Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-
- Suction holder - V.A.G 1344-
- Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-
- Windscreen removal kit - V.A.G 1755-
- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-
- Cartridge heating unit - V.A.G 1939-



- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A-
- Blade, offset - V.A.G 1561/2-
- Blade, offset - V.A.G 1561/8-
- Setting gauge - 3371-
- Blade, offset - V.A.G 1561/19-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

♦ Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237-



Removing

– Remove A-pillar upper trims on left and right ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Remove left and right sun visors ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing sun visor .

– Remove interior mirror ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Interior mirror; Removing and installing interior mirror .

– If present, remove rain and light detection sensor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing rain and light detection sensor .

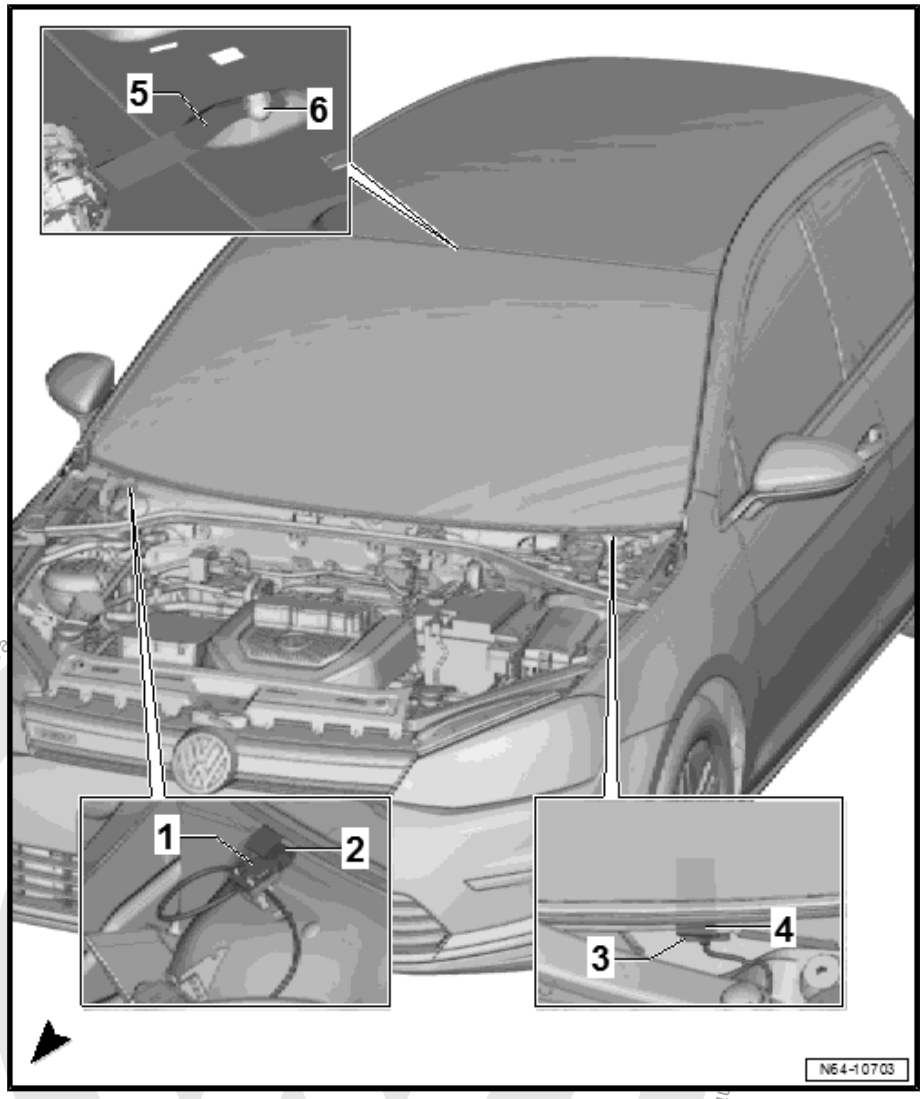
– If present, remove front camera ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Front camera for driver assist systems; Removing and installing front camera for driver assist systems

– Lower moulded headliner in area of windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trims; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Moulded headliner can now be lowered sufficiently to allow windscreen to be cut out without damage occurring to moulded headliner.

– Removing plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 20 .

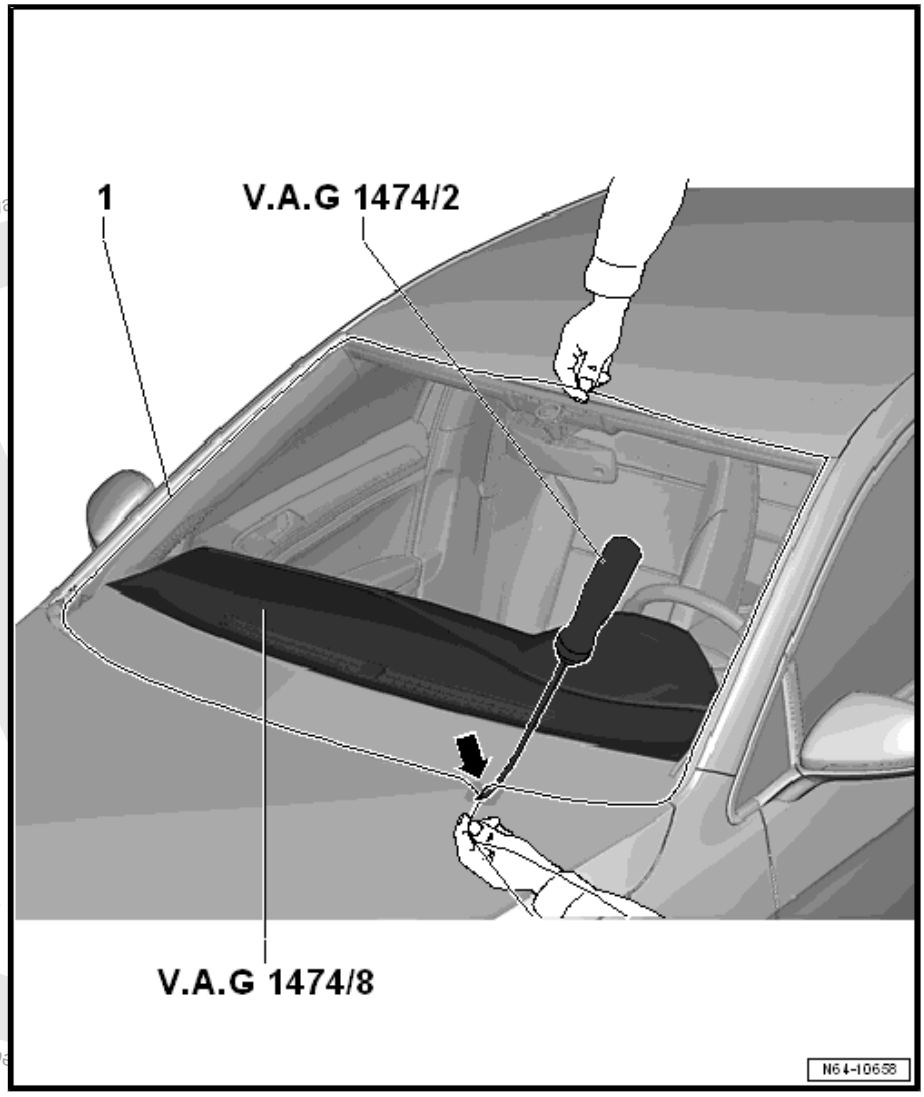
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Only for vehicles with windscreen heater

- Unscrew securing nut -6-.
- Bond cable -5- to windscreen.
- Separate electrical connectors -1 and 3-.
- Bond cables -2 and 4- to windscreen.

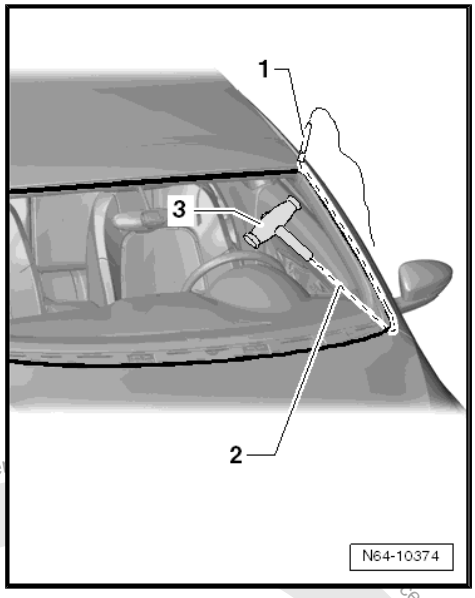
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

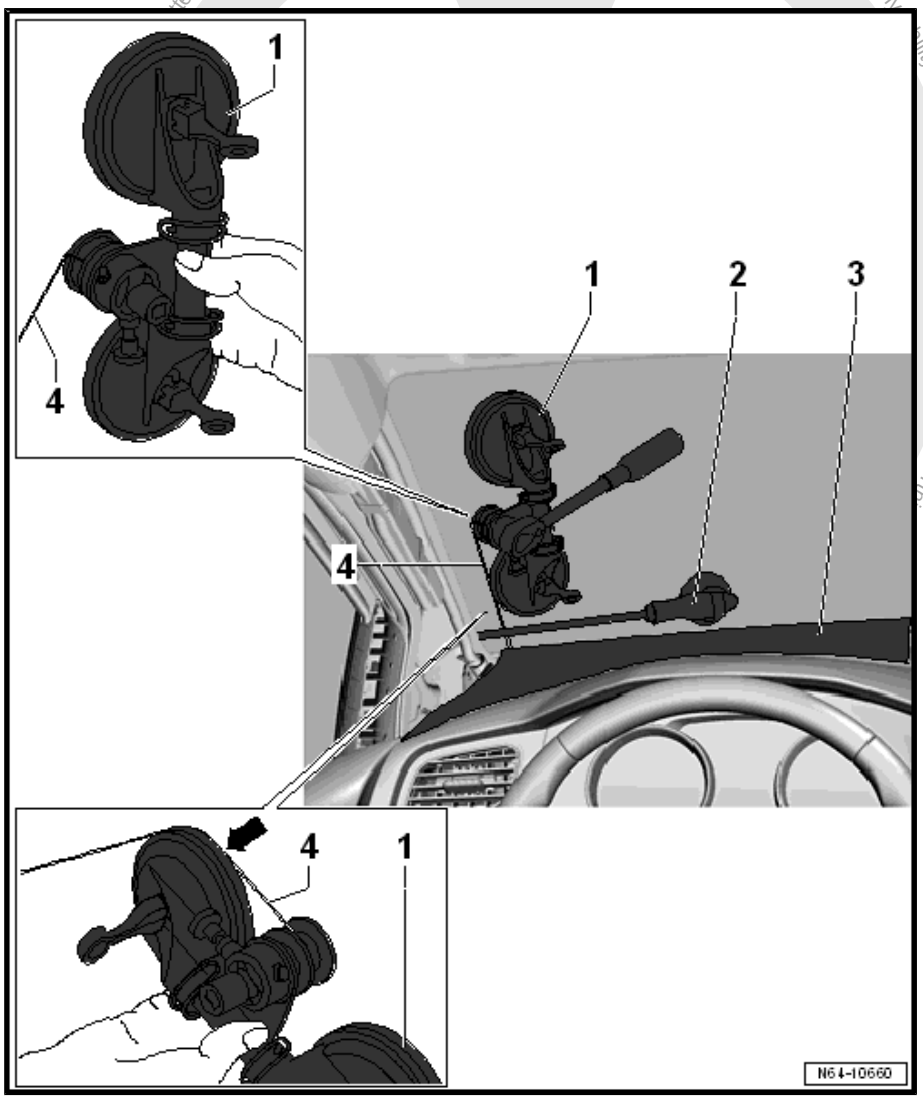


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswa

– Slide suitable covering film - V.A.G 1474/8- between windscreen and dash panel.
– Pull end of cutting cord -1- through adhesive sealing material into inside of vehicle using awl - V.A.G 1474/2- .

– Secure inside end of cutting cord against falling out using Pull toggle - V.A.G 1351/1- -3-.
– Insert cutting cord -2- into window flange using tube -1-.
– Place cutting cord around the front windscreen.
– Ensure that cutting cord lies under front windscreen in corners.

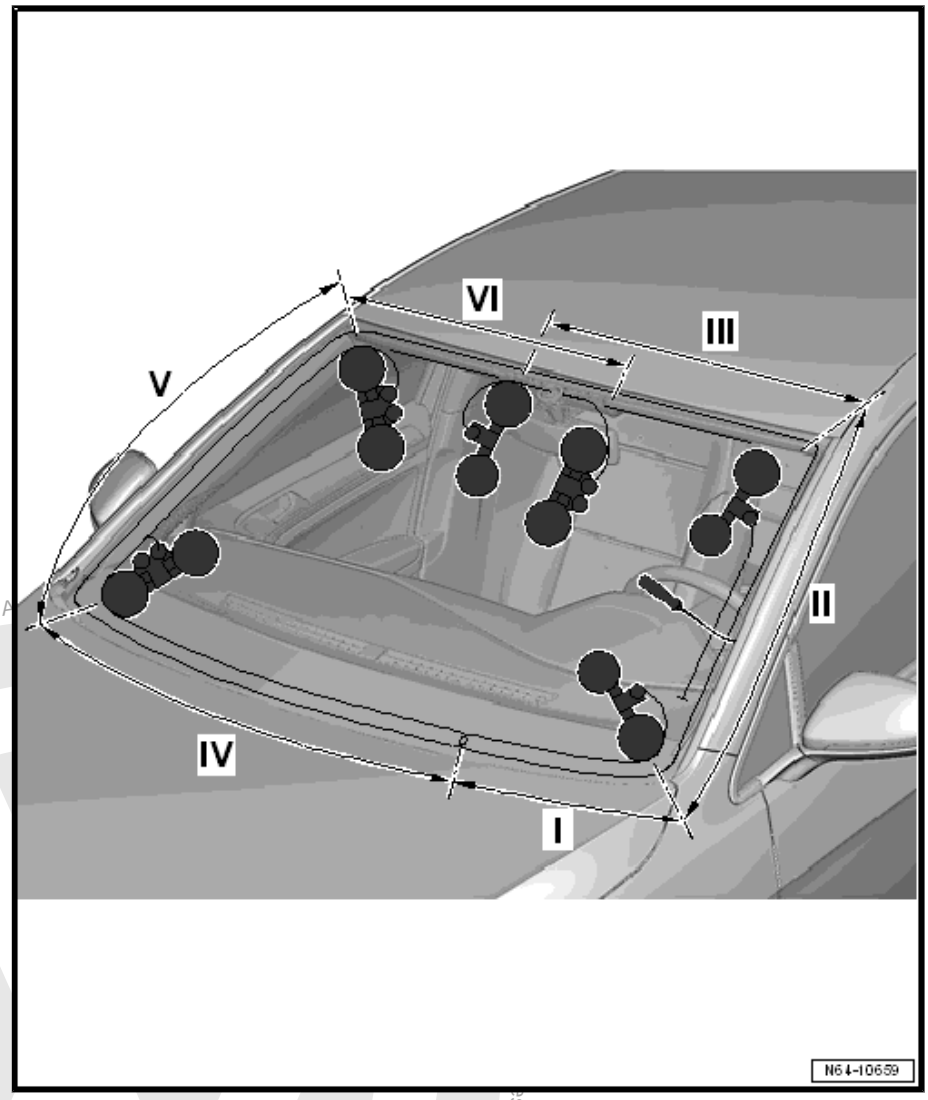




– Attach the ends of cords -4- on removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- -1-.

– Put cutting cord around suction cups of reel device -arrow-.

– Use plastic wedge -2- to press cutting cord against windscreen while cutting in order to have clearance at window flange and dash panel.



– Position removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- at lower corners of windscreen.

– Change permanently position of left removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- from “position I”to “position III” and cut windscreen free.

– Change position of right removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- from “position IV”to “position VI” and cut windscreen free.

– Use 2 suction lifters - V.A.G 1344- to lift off windscreen from vehicle.

Installing

– On vehicles with front camera for driver assist systems - R242- , install front camera ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Front camera for driver assist systems; Removing and installing front camera for driver assist systems , and calibrate front camera ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Front

Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

camera for driver assist systems; Calibrating front camera for driver assist systems .

- Preparing old undamaged window for glazing ⇒ page 304 .
- Preparing new window for glazing ⇒ page 305 .
- Preparing body flange for glazing ⇒ page 307 .
- Installation instructions ⇒ page 303
- Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302
- After inserting, secure windscreen on roof using adhesive tape.

2.2.2 Removing broken windscreen

Removal of a broken windscreen is performed in the same manner as the removal a broken rear window ⇒ page 321 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Rear windscreen

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - rear window”, page 317

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing rear window”, page 318

3.1 Assembly overview - rear window

1 - Rear windscreen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

2 - Body flange

3 - PUR adhesive sealant

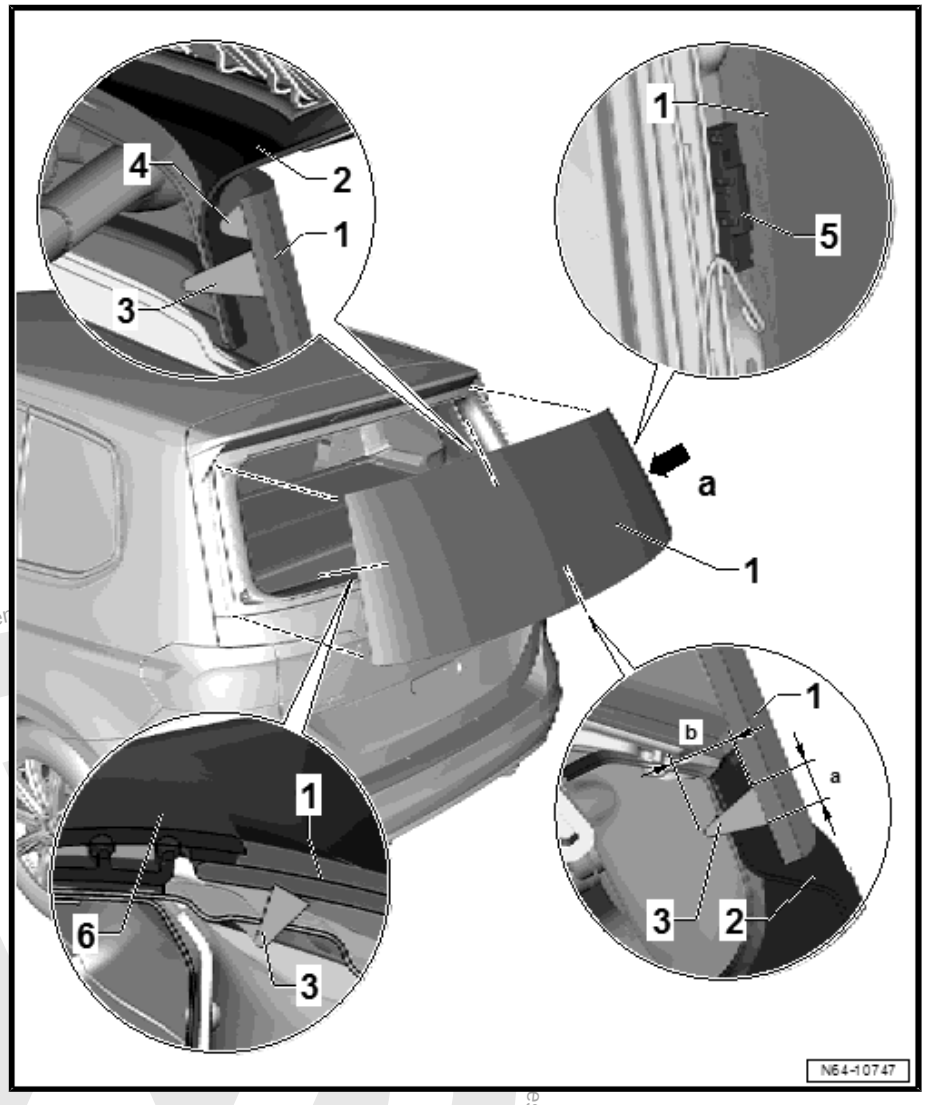
- ❑ Cross section of bead: width = 7 mm -dimension a-, height = 10 mm -dimension b- (including precoating, residual material on window glass and window flange).
- ❑ Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302 .
- ❑ Adhesive bead starts and ends at -arrow a-

4 - Spacer

5 - Connector for window heater

- ❑ Left and right

6 - Side spoiler



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ess of information in this document.

3.2 Removing and installing rear window

⇒ “3.2.1 Removing and installing rear window”, page 318

⇒ “3.2.2 Removing broken rear window”, page 321

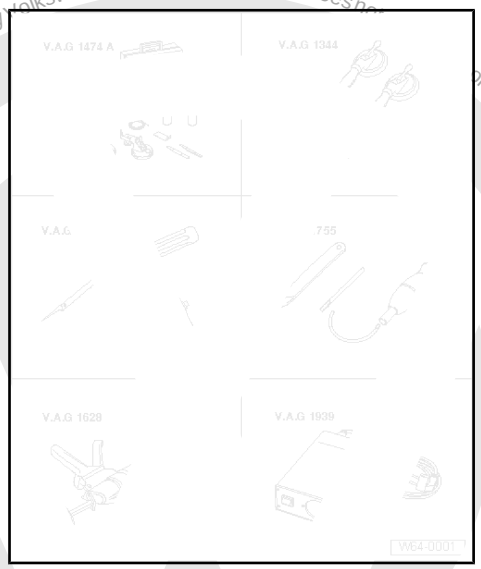
3.2.1 Removing and installing rear window

Note

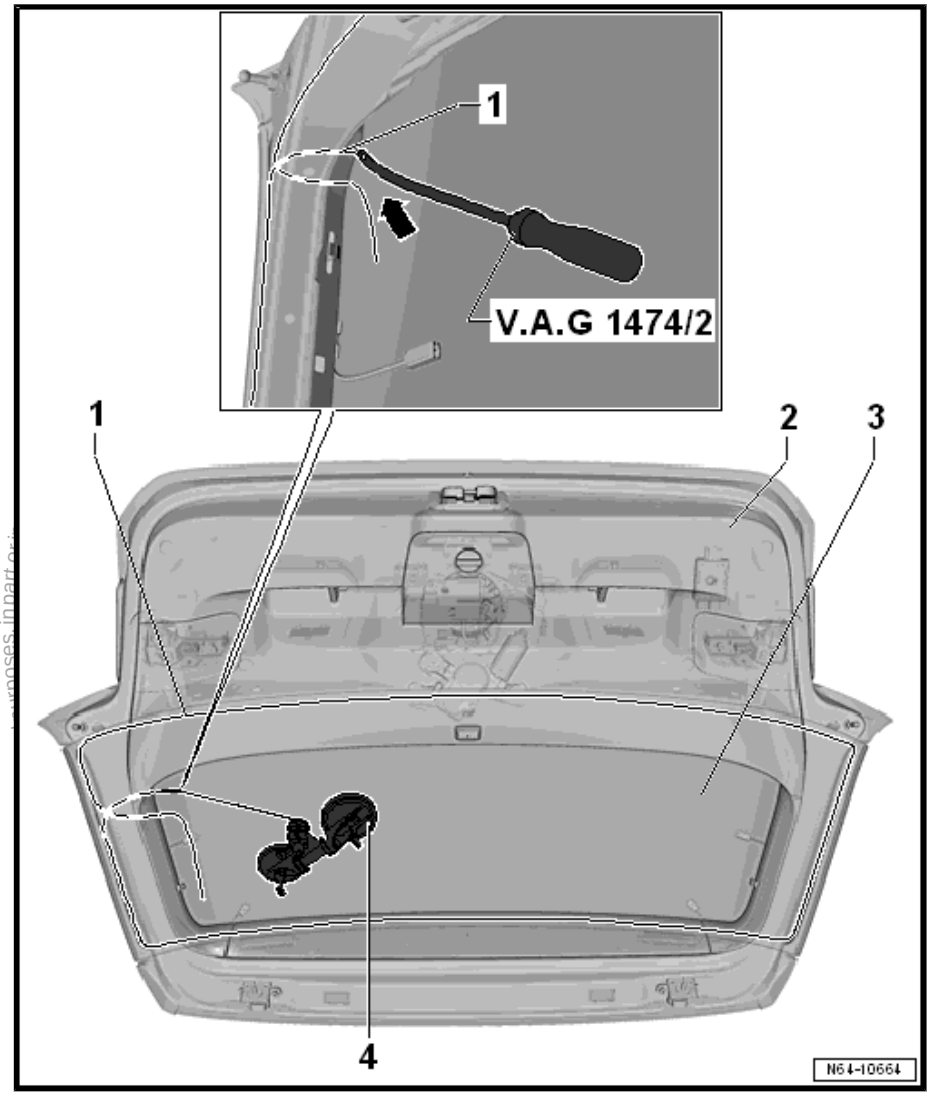
- *The removal of a bonded window is described using the Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- .*
- *Alternatively, you can also use the cutting tool for bonded windows - VAS 6452- .*
- *Another alternative is to use the window removal set - VAS 6888- .*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- or Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-
- Suction holder - V.A.G 1344-
- Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-
- Windscreen removal kit - V.A.G 1755-
- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-
- Cartridge heating unit - V.A.G 1939-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

Note

If the rear window is reused, make sure that the electrical connections for the rear window heating are not damaged.

– On »R-Line« vehicles, remove spoiler ⇒ page 347 .

– Pull off connectors for rear window heating and window aerial.

– Using the awl - V.A.G 1474/2- pull cutting cord -1- inwards through adhesive sealant at the location -arrow- shown in the illustration.

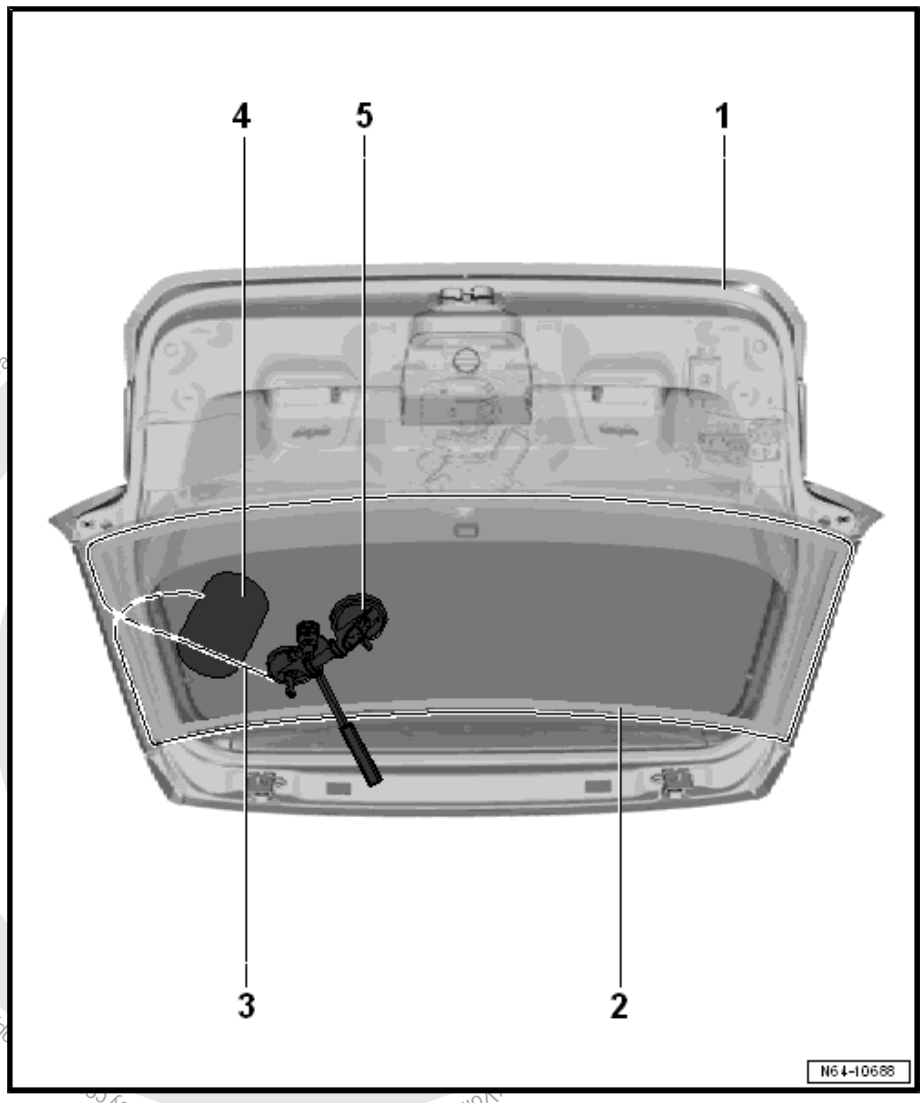
– Use the pull toggle - V.A.G 1351/1- to secure end of cutting cord before pulling it out.

– Lay cutting cord around rear window and guide second end of cord inwards.

– Attach end of cutting cord to removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- or reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- .

Note

It is essential to use the protective film or the plastic strip - V.A.G 1474/15- in order to protect the metal flange.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- Carefully guide protective film -4- or plastic strip - V.A.G 1474/15- between rear window and metal flange.
- Place reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- in indicated position.
- Convert reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- accordingly and cut rear window free towards sides starting in upper area.
- Use wedge - V.A.G 1474/5- to press cutting cord -3- against rear window glass while cutting in order to have clearance at body flange.
- Remove rear window from rear lid.

Installing

- Preparing old undamaged window for glazing ⇒ page 304 .
- Preparing new window for glazing ⇒ page 305 .
- Preparing body flange for glazing ⇒ page 307 .

– Installation instructions ⇒ page 303
– Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302

3.2.2 Removing broken rear window

– Protect body and interior from glass splinters.
– Remove pieces of glass up to adhesive sealing material.
– Pull off connections for rear window heating and aerial.
– Cover flange -2- all round with textile-reinforced adhesive tape.



CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes caused by glass splinters.
Risk of cuts.
– Wear protective goggles.
– Wear protective gloves.

– Cut through adhesive seal (with glass remains) in window aperture using electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A- and U-shaped blade - V.A.G 1561- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

4 Side window

⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - rear side windows”, page 322

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing rear side window”, page 323

4.1 Assembly overview - rear side windows

1 - Side window

- ❑ Removing side window ⇒ page 323 .

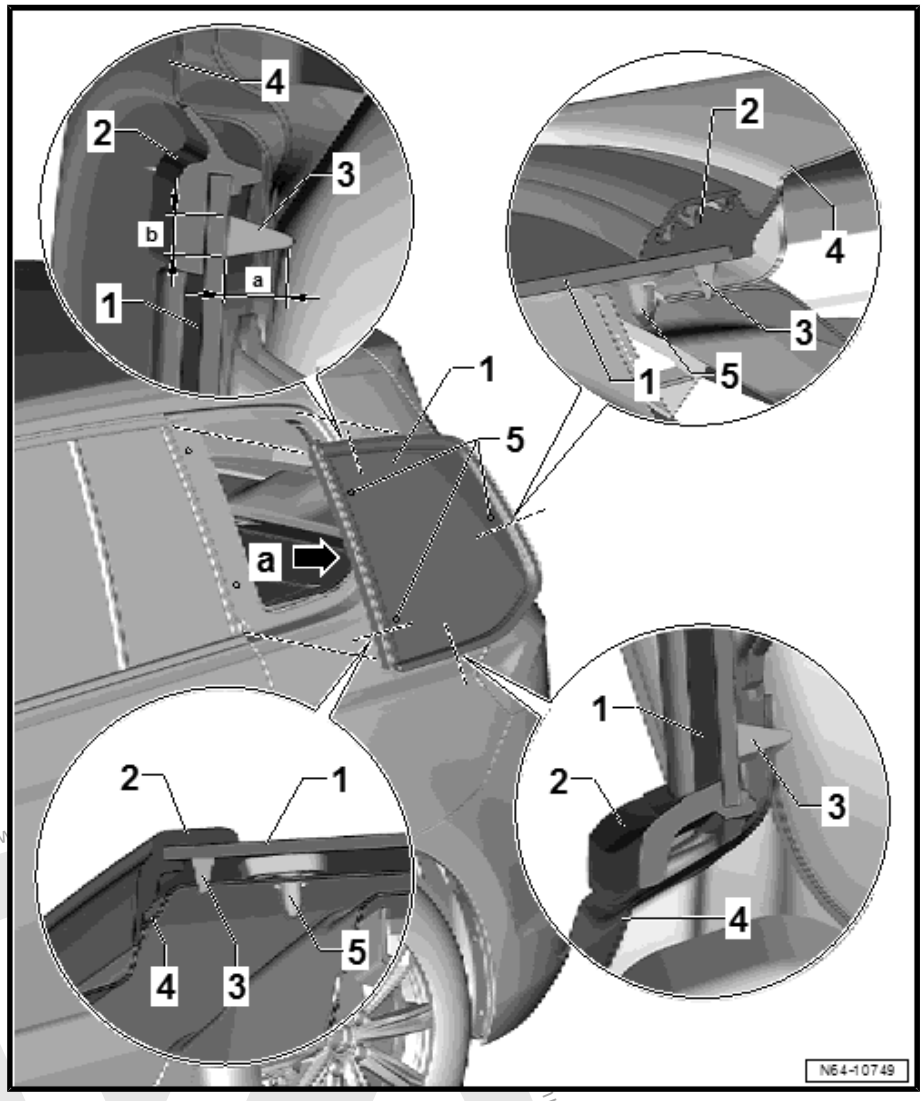
2 - Seal

- ❑ Integral part of side window.

3 - PUR adhesive sealant

- ❑ Cross section of bead: height = 10 mm -dimension a-, width = 6.5 mm -dimension b- (including precoating, residual material on window glass and window flange).
- ❑ Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302 .
- ❑ Adhesive bead starts and ends at -arrow-

4 - Body flange



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4.2 Removing and installing rear side window

⇒ “4.2.1 Removing and installing rear side window”, page 323

⇒ “4.2.2 Removing broken rear side window”, page 327

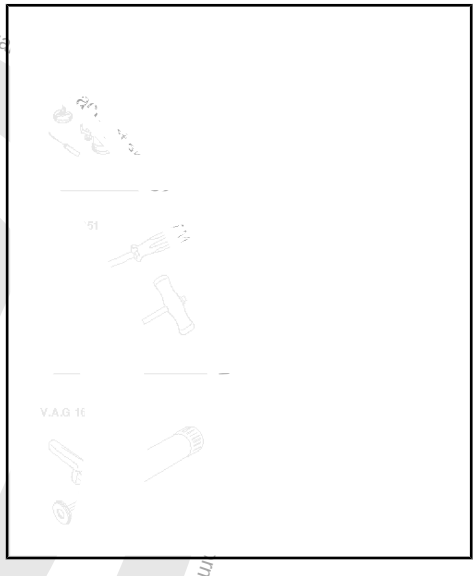
4.2.1 Removing and installing rear side window

Note

- *The removal of a bonded window is described using the Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- .*
- *Alternatively, you can also use the cutting tool for bonded windows - VAS 6452- .*
- *Another alternative is to use the window removal set - VAS 6888- .*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal kit for flush bonded windows - V.A.G 1474 A- or Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-
- Suction holder - V.A.G 1344-
- Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-
- Windscreen removal kit - V.A.G 1755-
- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-
- Cartridge heating unit - V.A.G 1939-

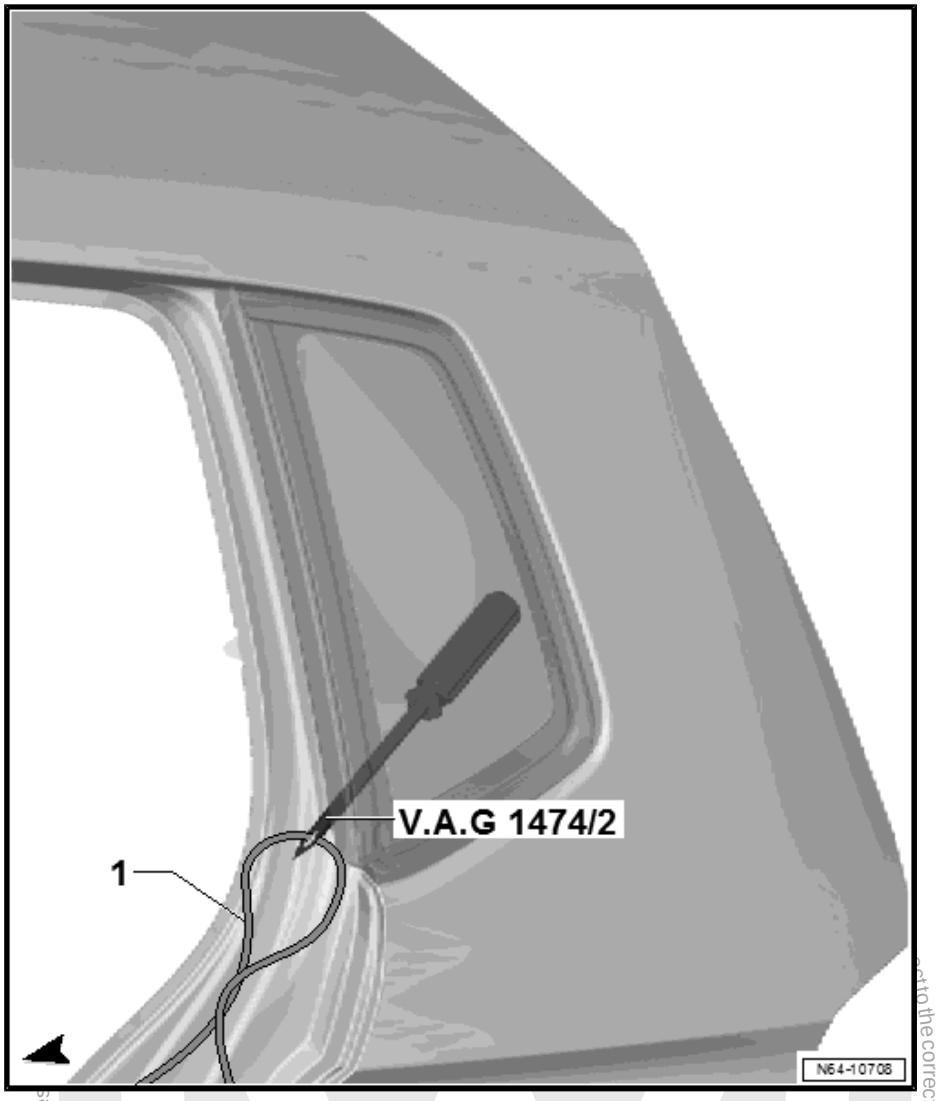


Removing

Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the left side window. Removal and installation of the right window are similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

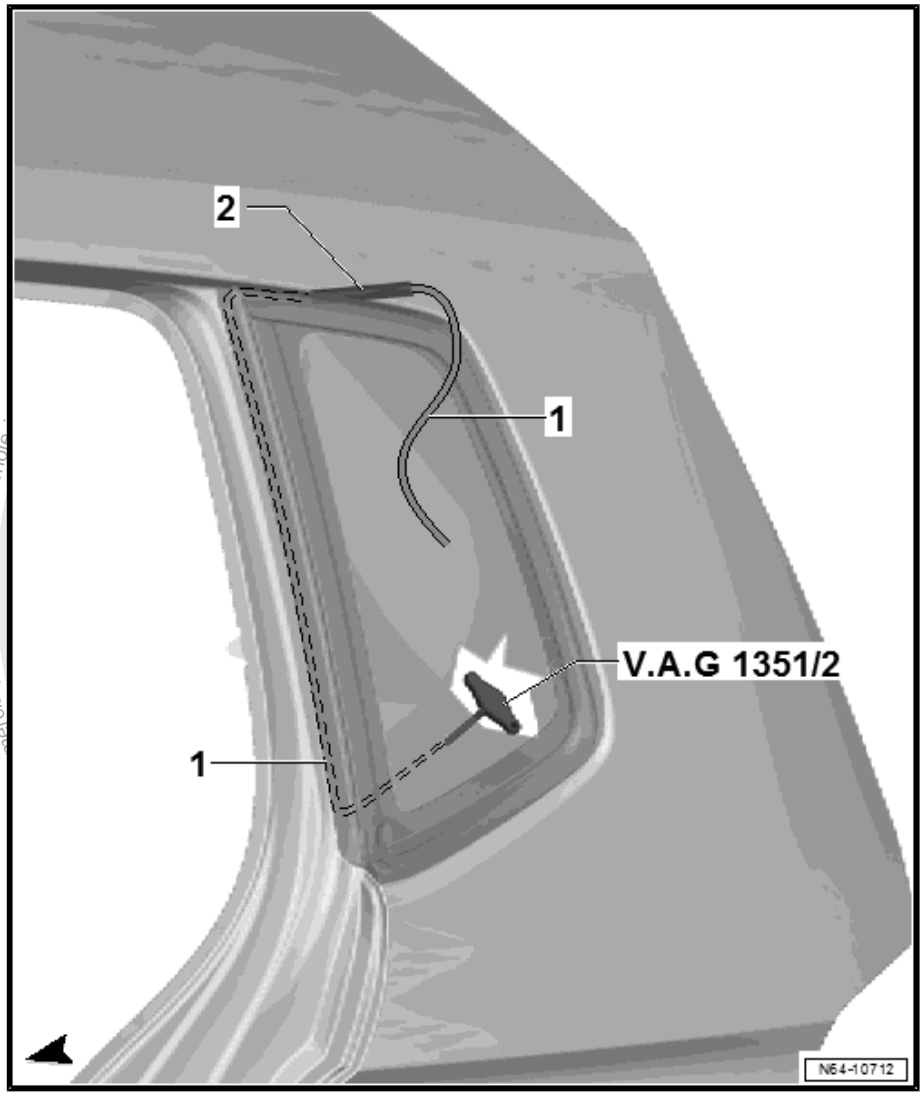


– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Trims, interior; Fitting location overview - trims, interior .

Protect surrounding parts against damage.

– Using the awl - V.A.G 1474/2- , pull cutting cord -1- through the adhesive sealant at the place shown in the illustration.
– Press seal aside so that it is not damaged.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

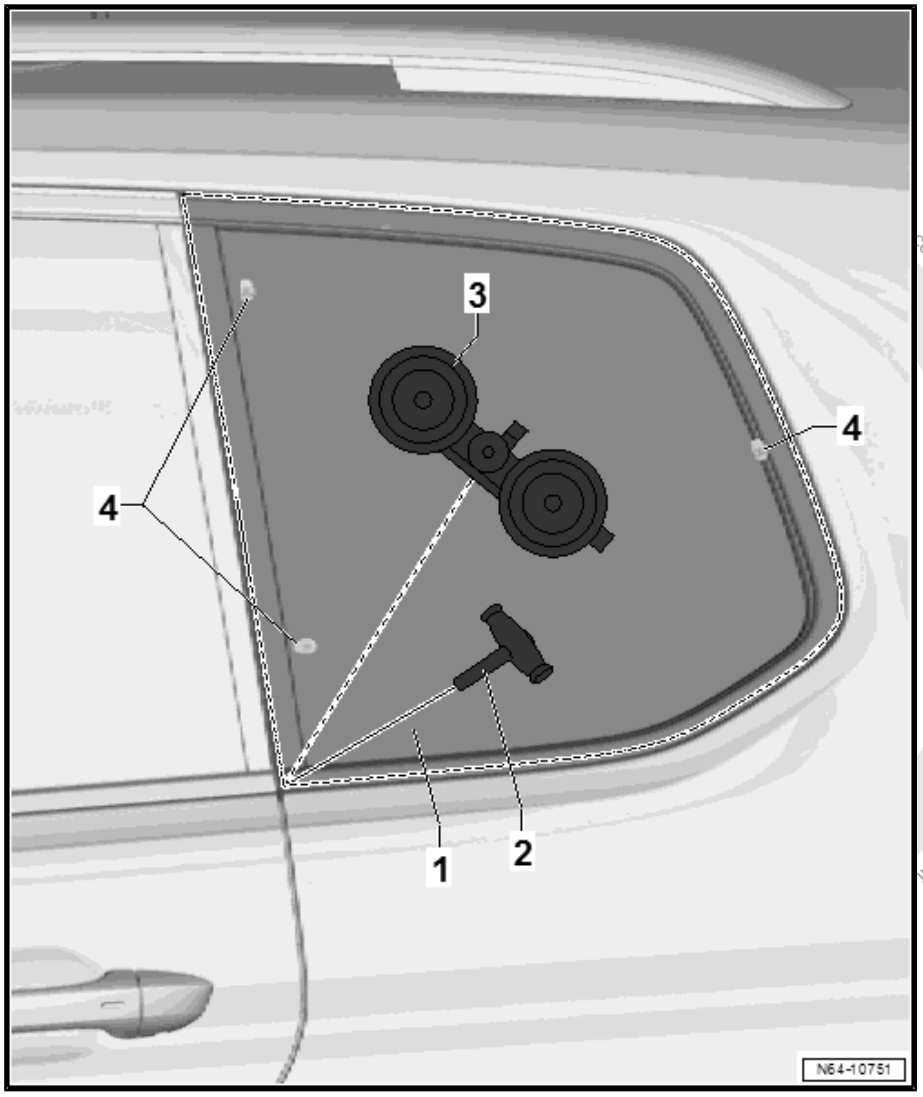


...ercial purposes, in part or in whole ...

– Insert cutting cord -1- behind seal in window flange with aid of tube -2-.
– Secure one end of cord -1- to pull handle - V.A.G 1351/1- to counterhold.

Note

- *Instead of reel device - V.A.G 1654- , reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- can be used.*
- *One suction cup can be removed from the reel device - V.A.G 1654- as shown in figure.*



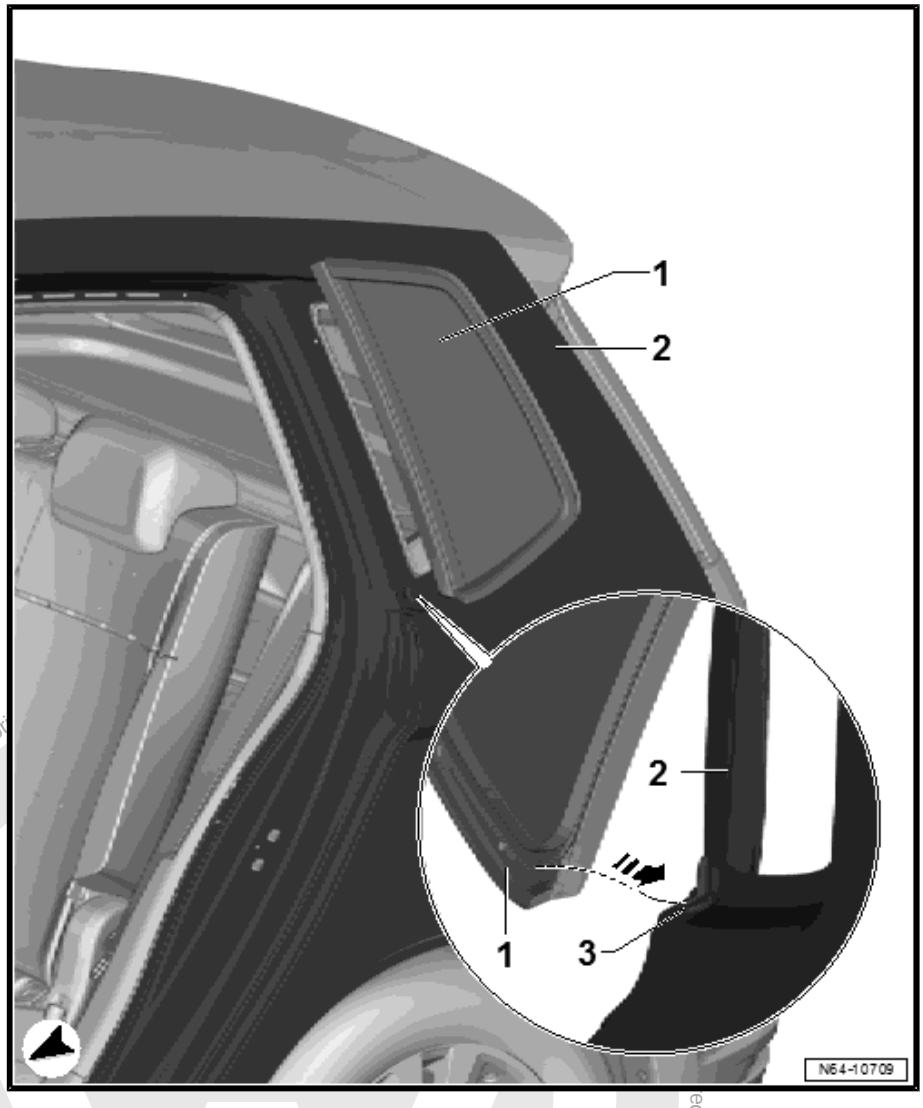
...cept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this documen...

– Pull other end of cord -1- through adhesive sealant as well.
– Secure other end of cord to reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- -3-.
– Press cutting cord -1- against window glass with plastic wedge during cutting process to allow it clearance at window flange.
– Turn reel device - V.A.G 1654 A- -3- accordingly and cut window free.

Note

- *When cutting through centring pins -4-, greater force is necessary.*
- *Centring pins are only relevant for production.*
- *A cut-out window can be installed without these centring pins.*

Installing



– Preparing old undamaged window for glazing ⇒ page 304 .
– Preparing new window for glazing ⇒ page 305 .
– Preparing body flange for glazing ⇒ page 307 .
– Installation instructions ⇒ page 303
– Minimum curing period ⇒ page 302
– Insert side window with seal -1- in guide -3- -arrow-, and press it on.
– Secure side window using adhesive tape.

4.2.2 Removing broken rear side window

Removing a broken side window is performed in the same manner as removing a broken rear window ⇒ page 321 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

5 Door windows

⇒ “5.1 Assembly overview - front door window”, page 328

⇒ “5.2 Assembly overview - rear door window”, page 329

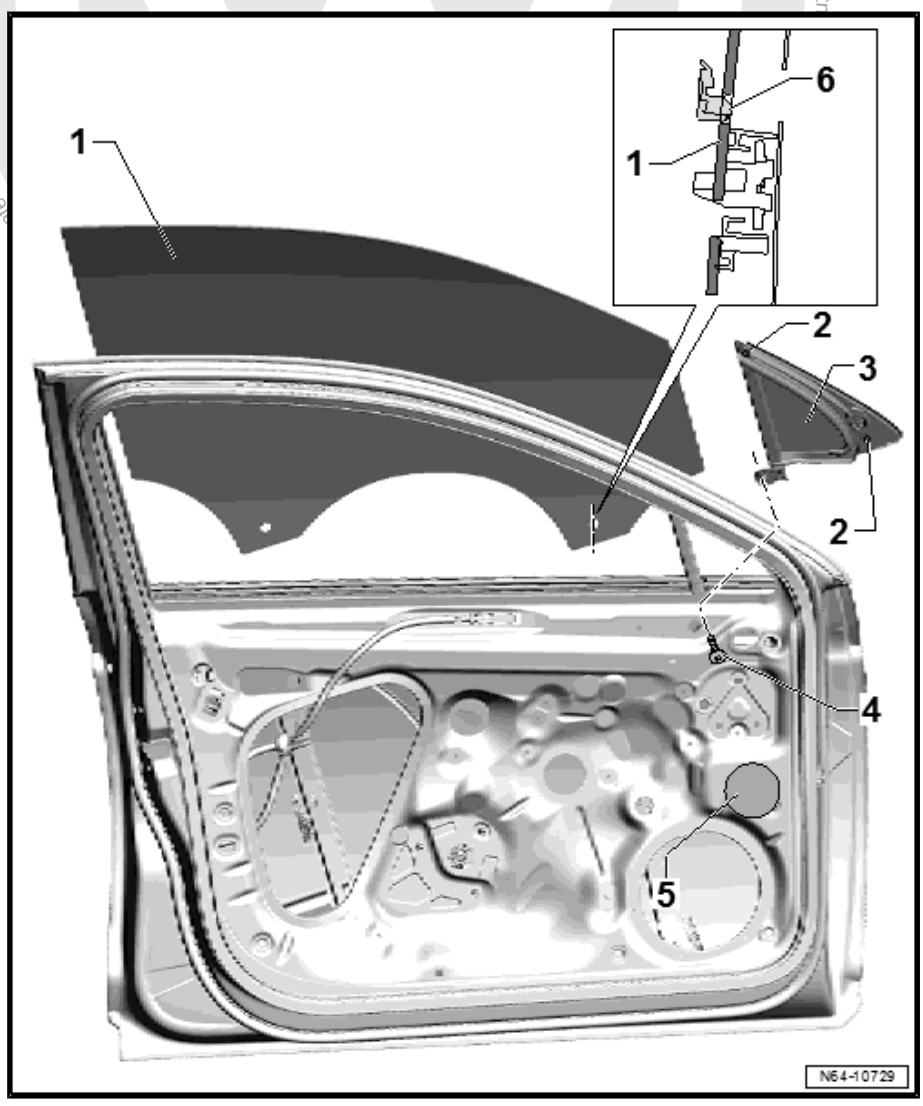
⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing front door window”, page 329

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing rear door window”, page 333

⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing fixed front door window”, page 337

⇒ “5.6 Removing and installing fixed rear door window”, page 338

5.1 Assembly overview - front door window



1 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 329

2 - Locking lug

- ❑ Component part of fixed door window

3 - Fixed door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Stickers

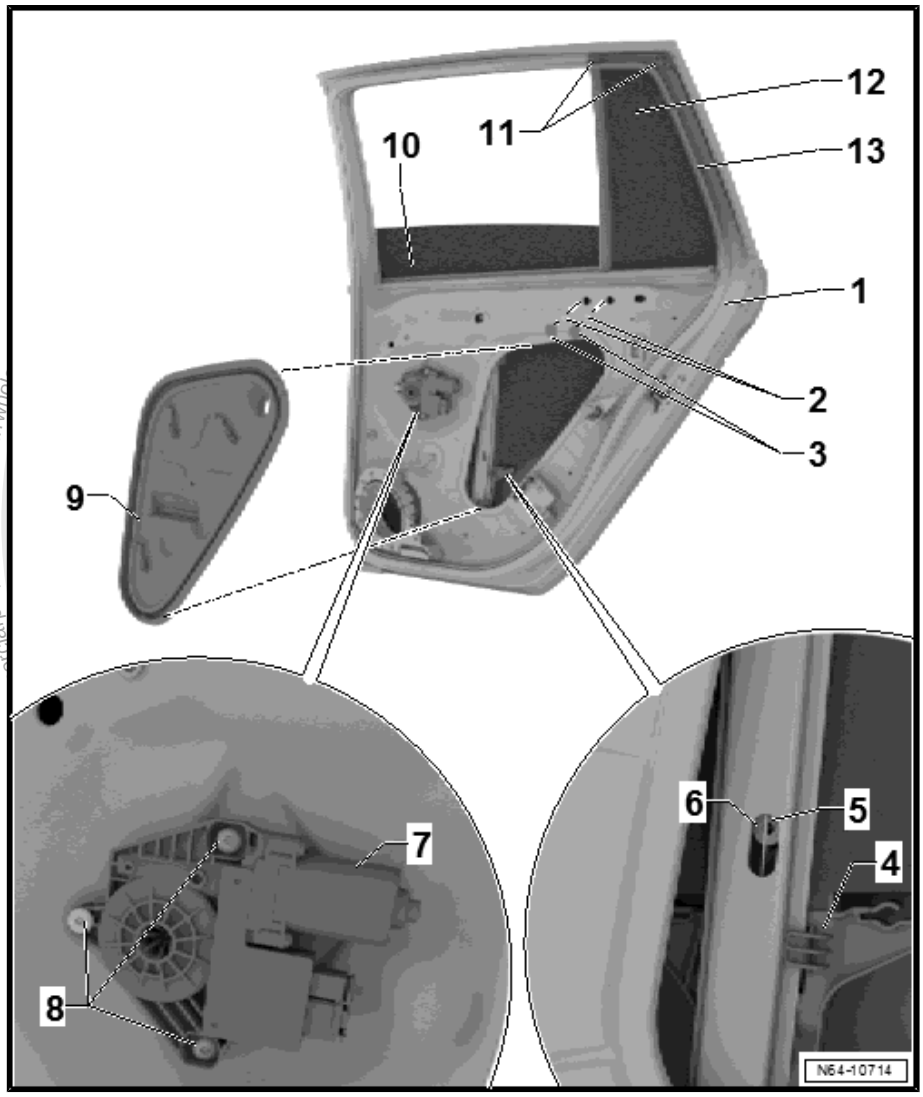
- ❑ Diameter 28 mm
- ❑ If necessary, manufacture using commercially available textile adhesive tape.
- ❑ Stickers must cover the openings completely

6 - Locking lug

- ❑ Part of mounting for door window
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ For securing the door window on window regulator

The commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctn

5.2 Assembly overview - rear door window



1 - Rear door

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Stickers

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Diameter 28 mm

4 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

5 - Spreader pin

- ❑ Together with spreader plug for securing door window.

6 - Spreader plug

- ❑ Together with spreader pin for securing door window.

7 - Window regulator motor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Inner door cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

10 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333

11 - Locking lug

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ Component part of fixed door window

12 - Fixed door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

13 - Seal

5.3 Removing and installing front door window

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

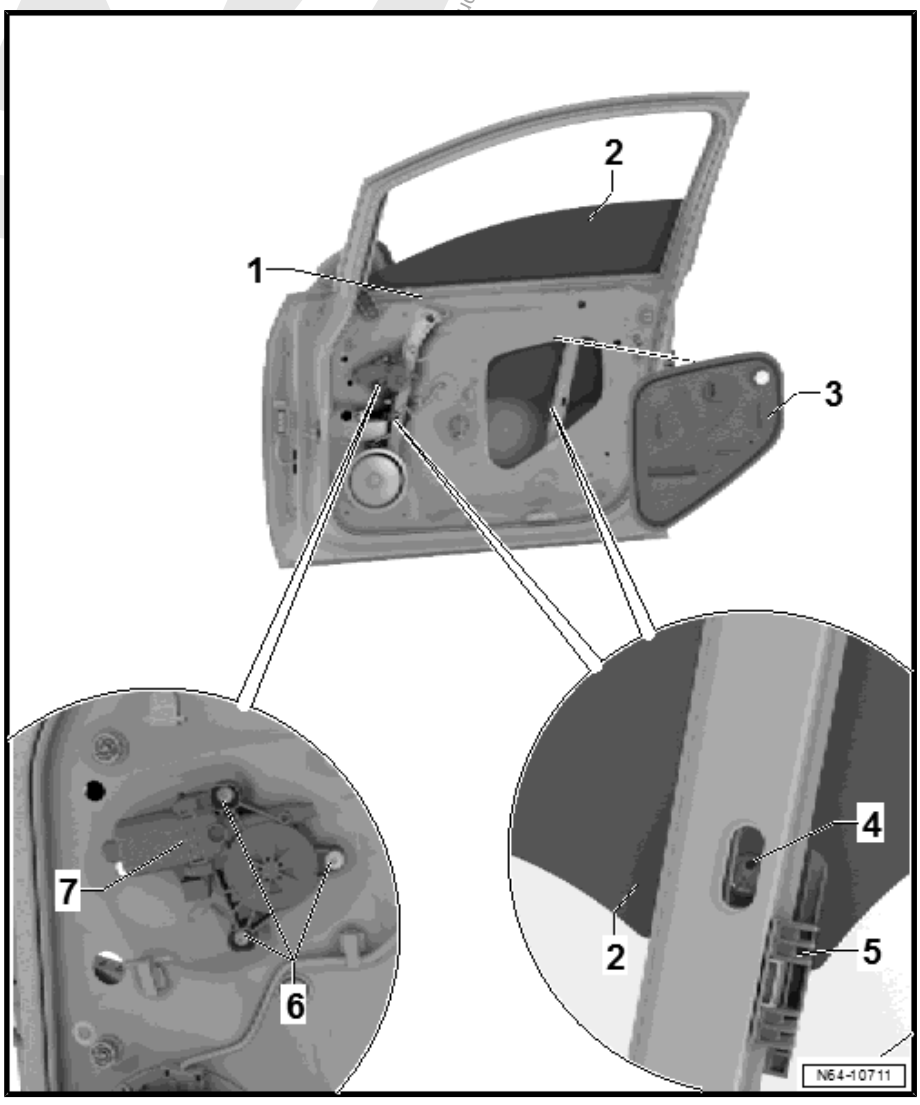


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the right door window. The left side is similar.

Removing



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .

– Remove inner window slot seal ⇒ page 155 .

– Remove door inner cover -3- ⇒ page 126 .

– Lever out cable feed.

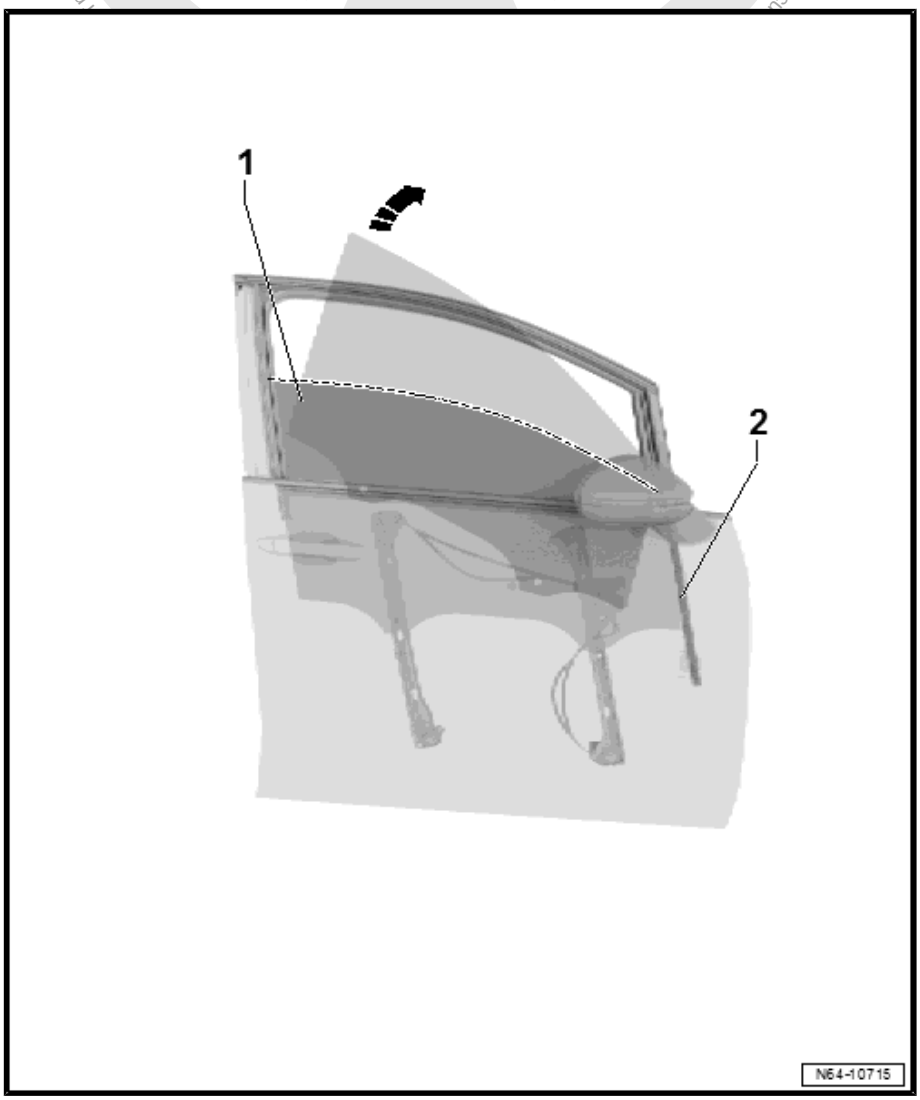
– Lower door window -2- until locking hooks -4- for door window are accessible.

Note

♦ *If this part of the work cannot be done due to a fault in the window regulator motor, the window regulator motor can be removed -7-.*

♦ *The window can then be pushed to required working position.*

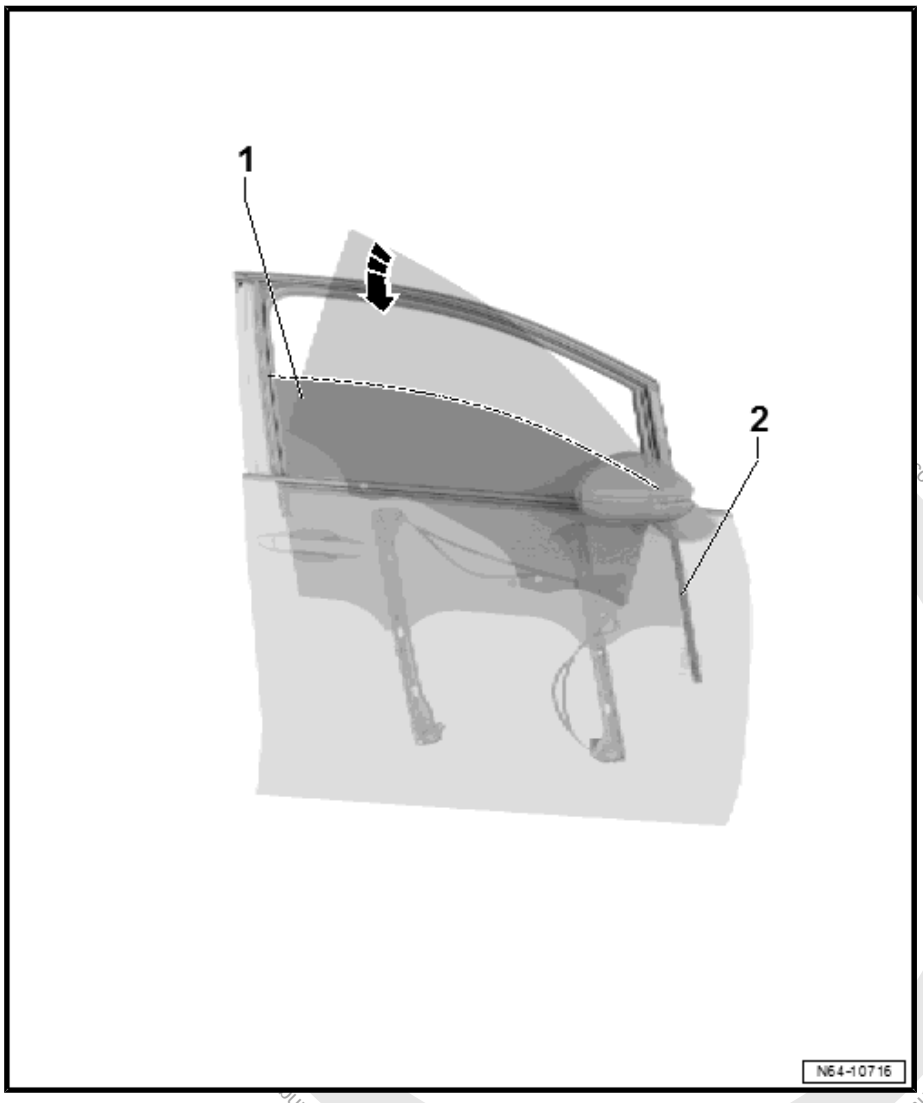
– Carefully press locking hooks -4- through opening in window. Lift door window slightly to prevent it from falling back again in retaining hook.



– Lift door window -1- upwards out of window regulator.

– Lift door window -1- from behind and swing forwards out of window channels -2- -arrow-.

Installing



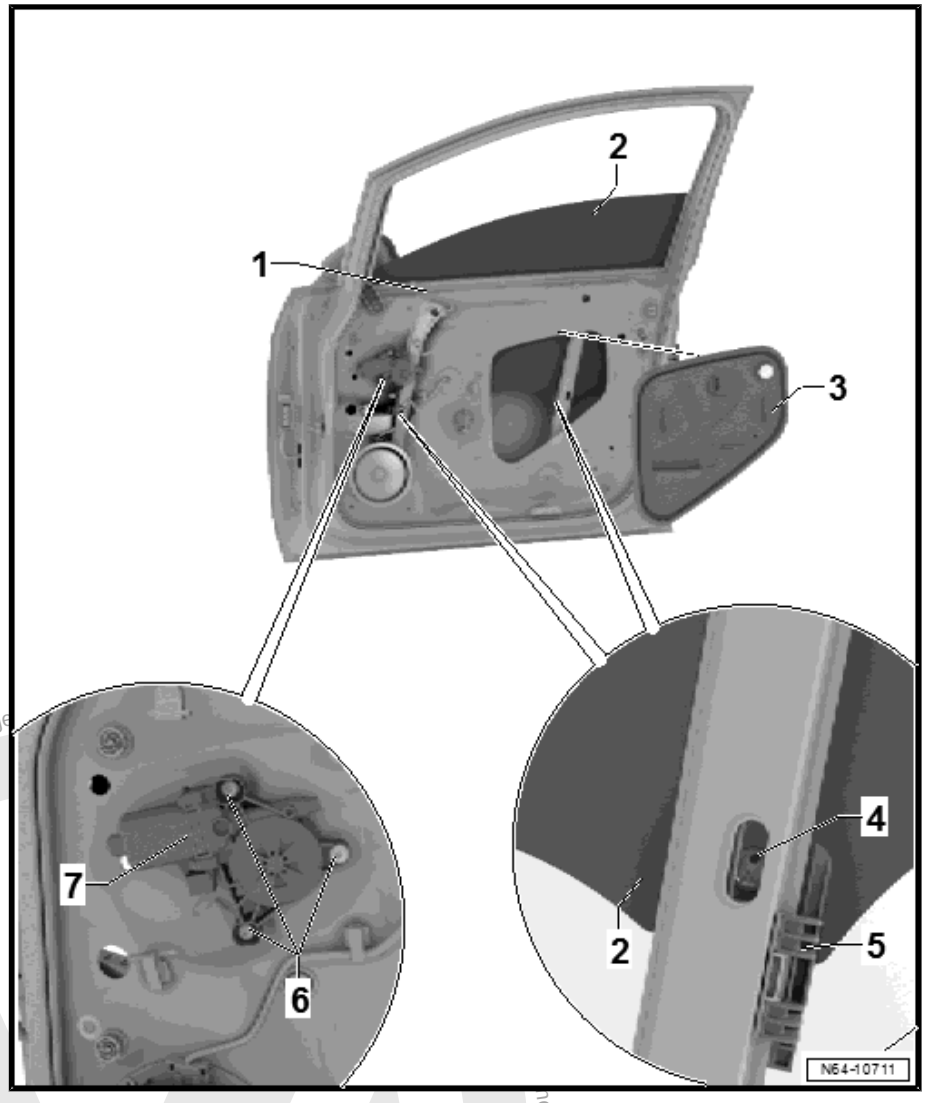
– Insert door window -1- into window channels -2- -arrow-.

Note

Ensure that door window is properly located in window channel.

– Guide door window without force into mounting for door window of window regulator.
– Align door window with rear window frame.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...ccept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Press door window -2- into mounting for door window until retaining hooks -7- in door window engage.

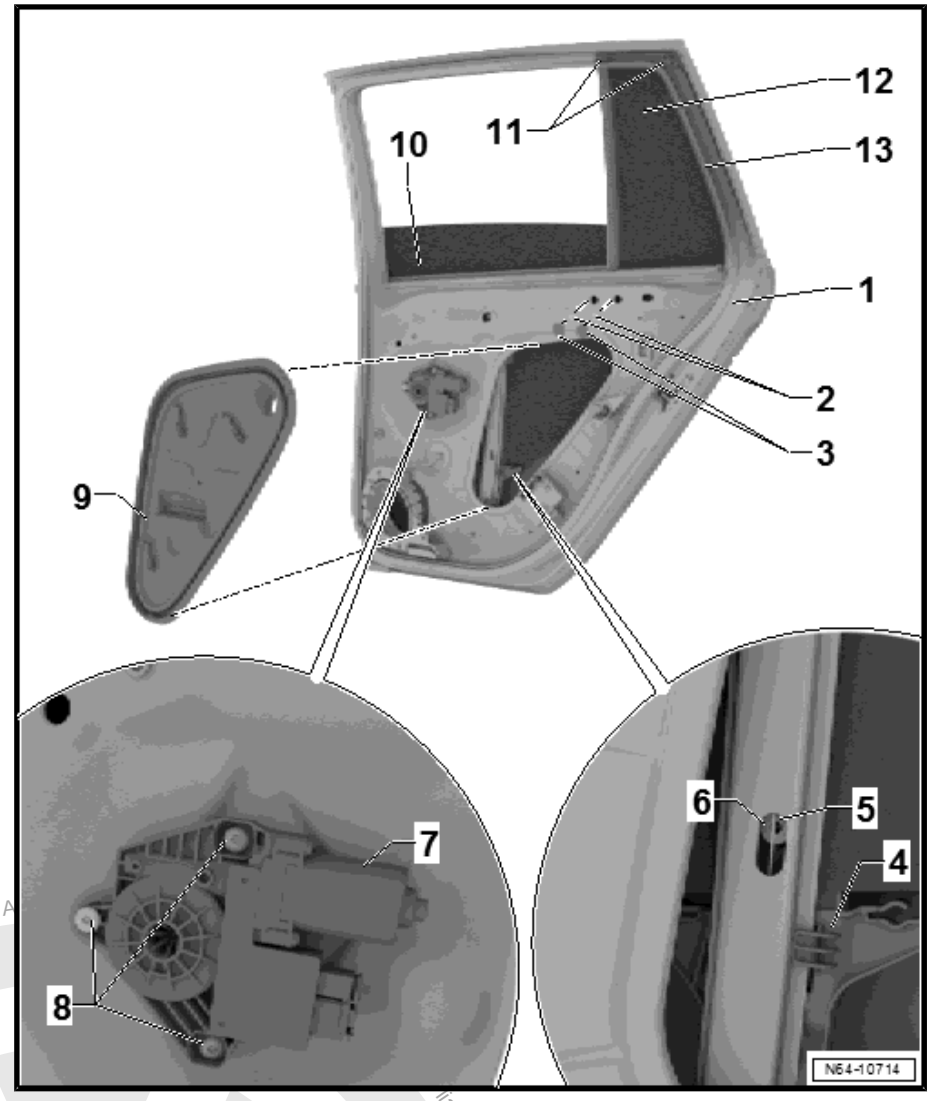
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

– Before the inner door cover, the cable feed and the door trim are installed, carry out a functional test.

5.4 Removing and installing rear door window

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



– Remove rear door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trims; Removing and installing rear door trim .
– Remove inner door cover -9-.
– Lower door window -10- until spreader pin -5- and spreader plug -6- in cut-out of window regulator -4- are accessible.

Note

If work is not possible due to a malfunction caused by the electric window regulator, the window regulator motor -8- is unbolted -7-. Window can then be pushed to required working position.

– Screw 5 mm bolt (approx. 70 mm long) into spreader pin -5- and pull bolt together with spreader pin out of spreader plug -6-.
– Screw 8 mm bolt (approx. 80 mm long) into spreader plug -6-.

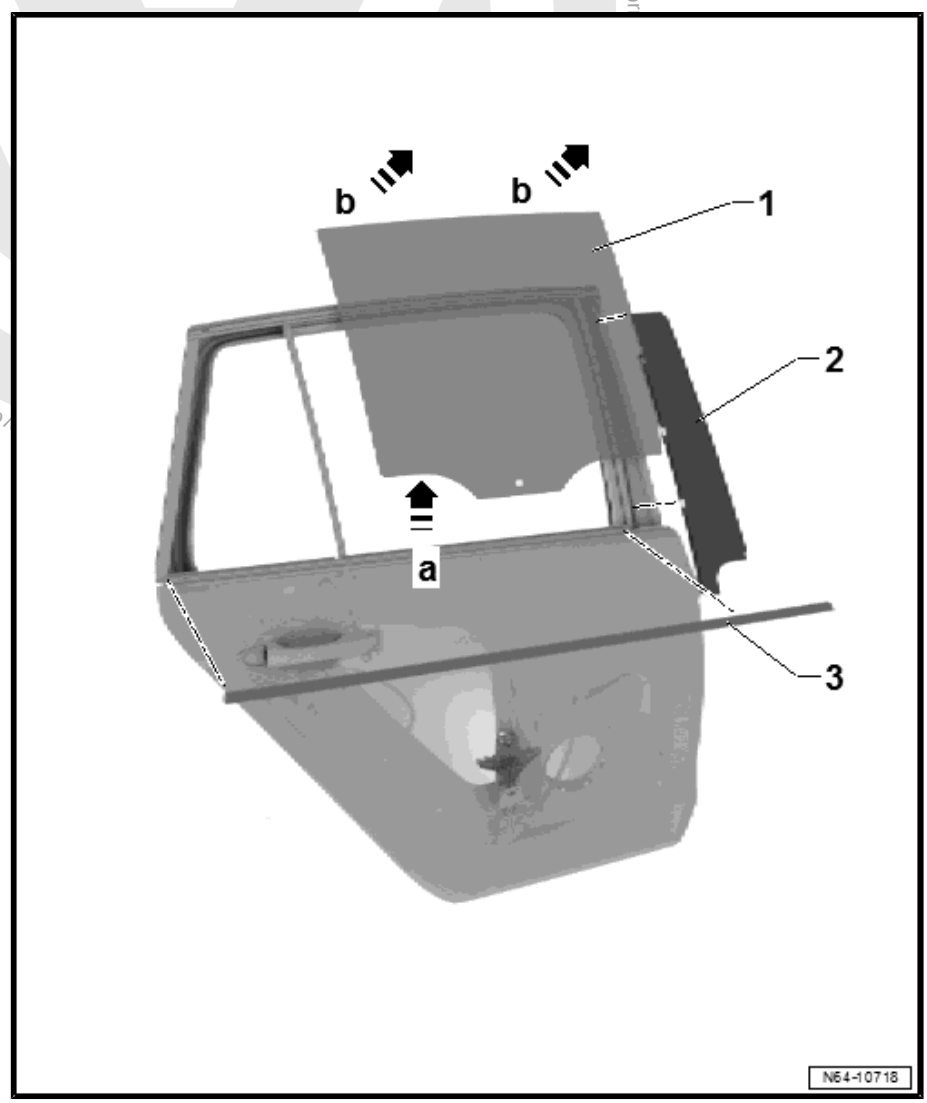
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

When screwing bolt into spreader plug, do not apply excessive pressure on plug. It otherwise falls inwards into door.

– Pull spreader plug -6- out of window regulator guide -4- and, in doing so, out of door window.



– Remove trim -2- ⇒ page 364 .

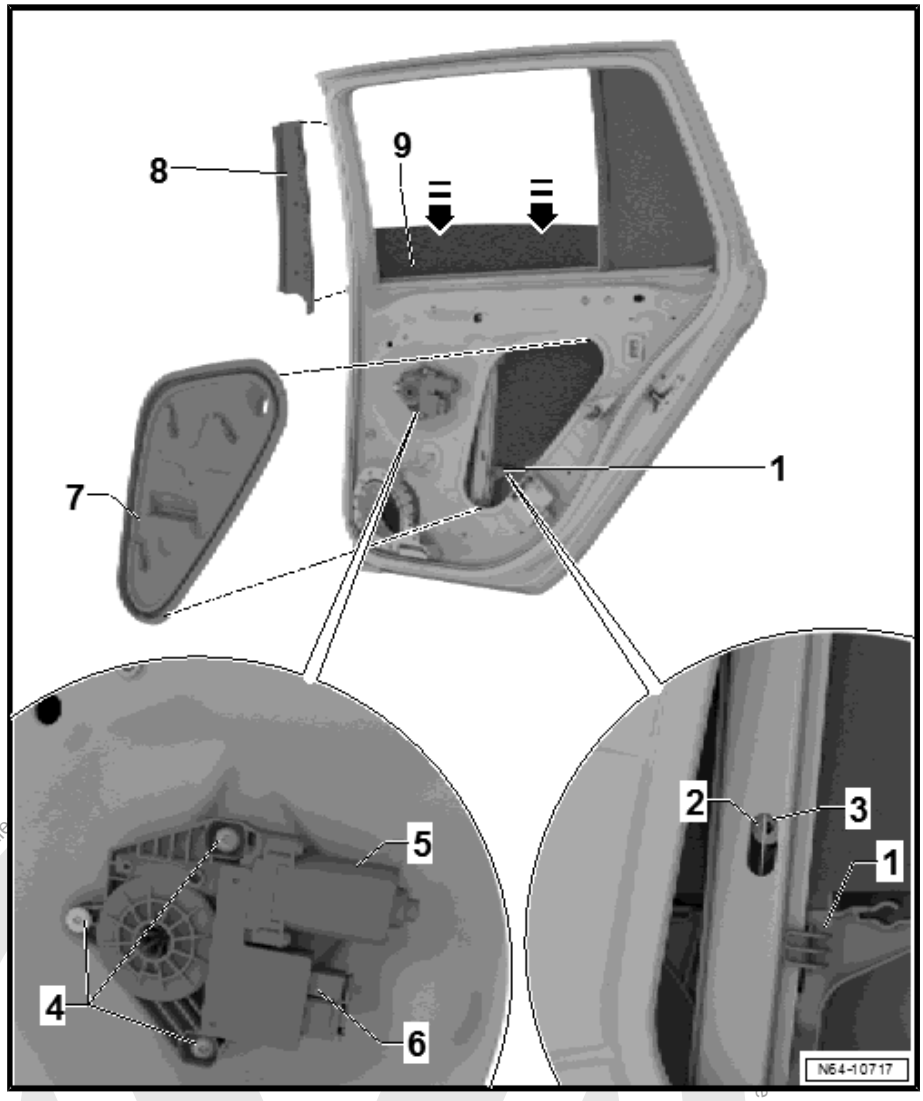
– Pull front part of window channel out of mounting.

– Pull door window -1- initially in a straight line -arrow a- and then upwards at an angle -arrows b- towards vehicle exterior out of window slot.

Installing

Note

- *When installing door window, always renew spreader plug and spreader pin.*
- *Before inserting spreader plug -2- and spreader pin -3-, check window glass -9- for damage.*



– Insert spreader plug -3- and align centrally with window glass -1- removed.

– Press spreader pin -2- flush into spreader plug -3-.

– Insert door window -9- into door -arrows-, and push it into window regulator guide.

– Engage door window -9- in window regulator -1- by applying slight pressure from above.

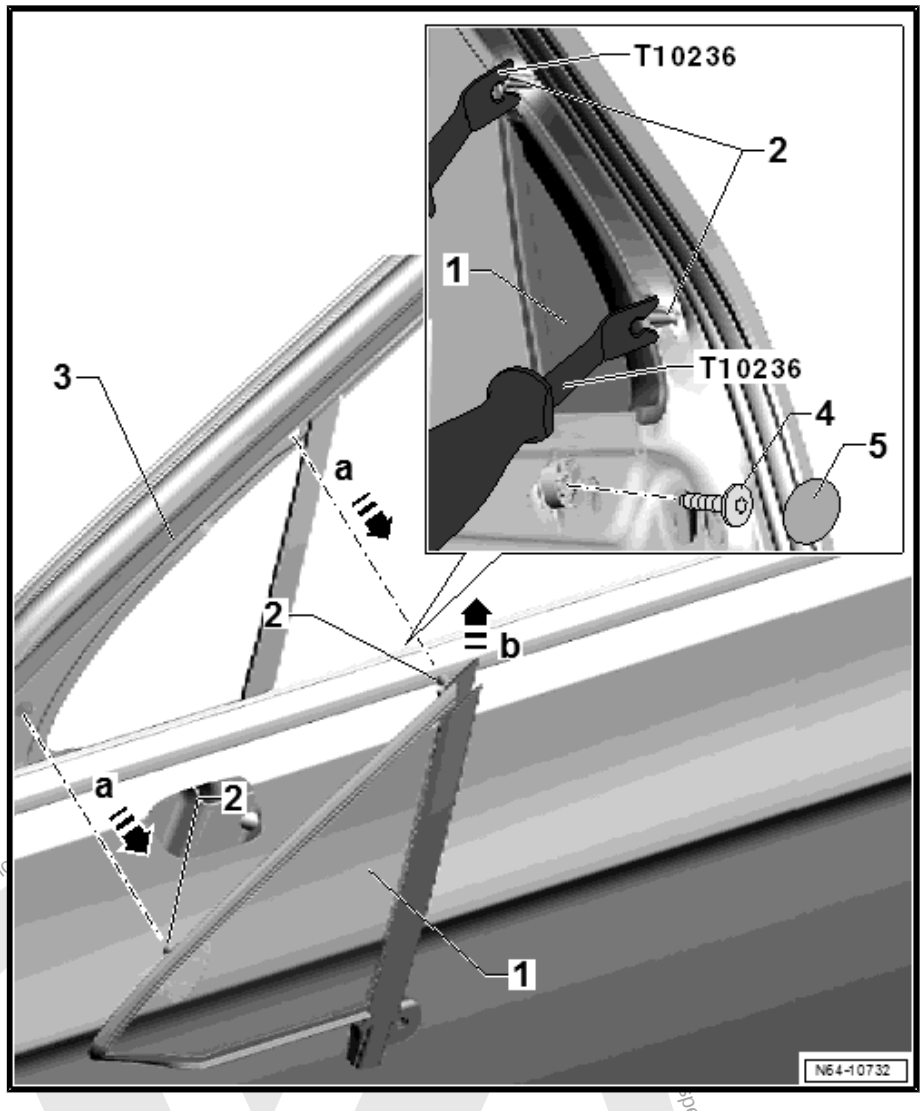
– Then perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

– Carry out functional test before fitting door trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

5.5 Removing and installing fixed front door window

Removing



– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .

– Remove outer window slot seal ⇒ page 153 .

– Remove window channel ⇒ page 150 .

– Pull off sticker -5-, and unscrew bolt -4-.

– Pull inner seal off metal flange.

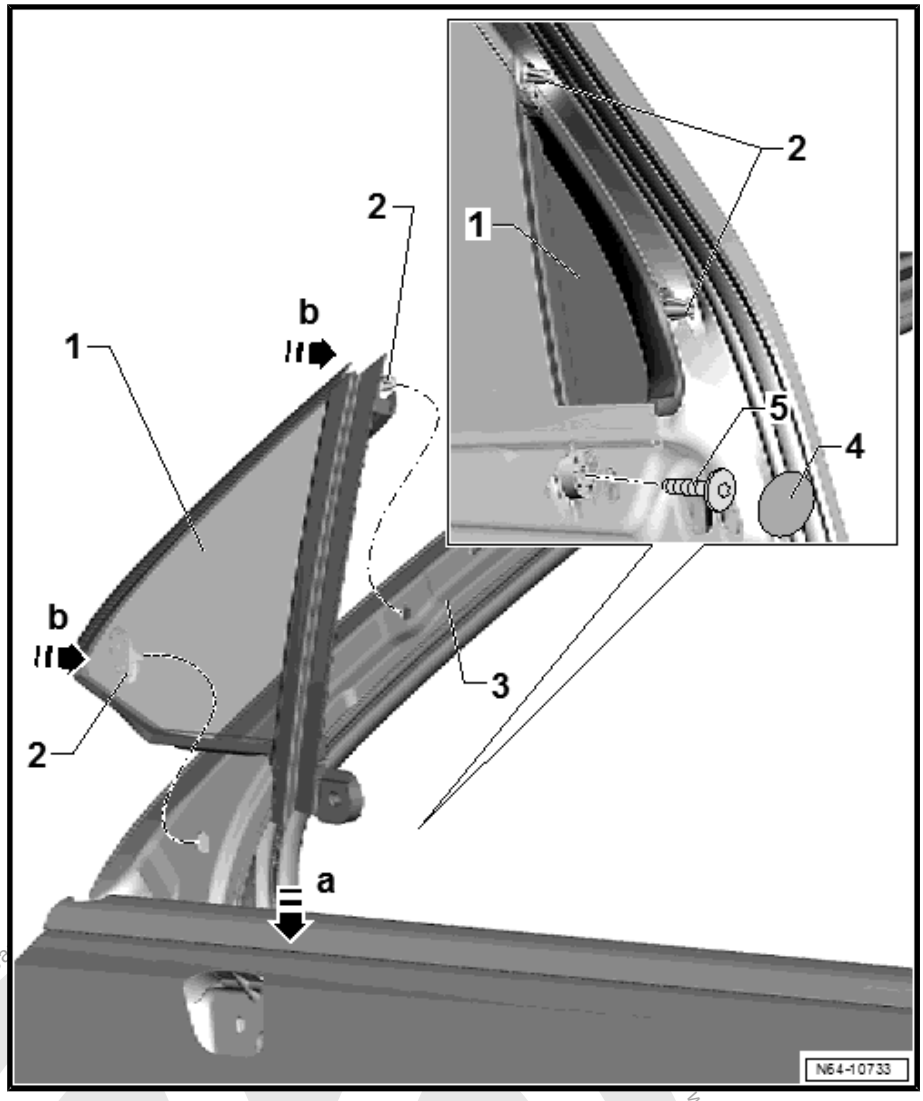
– Guide release tool - T10236- one after the other under both clips -2-.

– Push door window -1- outwards slightly when doing this -arrows a- until clips -2- are pressed out of door -3-.

– Then, pull door window -1- with web upwards -arrow b- out of door -3-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Slide door window -1- into door -arrow a-.
– Push door window -1- against door until clips -2- engage audibly -arrow b-.
– Door window seal must be seated firmly in door frame -3-.
– Tighten bolts -5-, and attach sticker -4-.

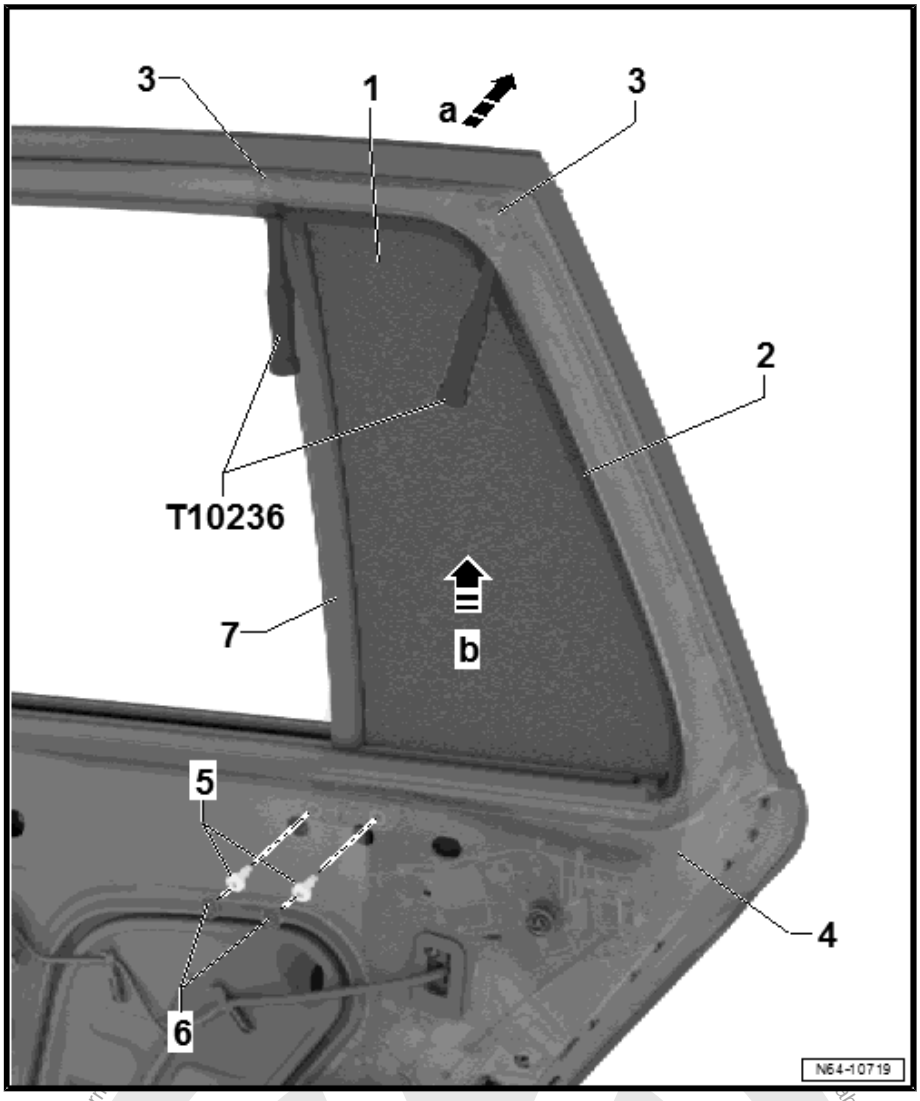
Specified torques

♦ Fixed front door window ⇒ page 328

5.6 Removing and installing fixed rear door window

Removing

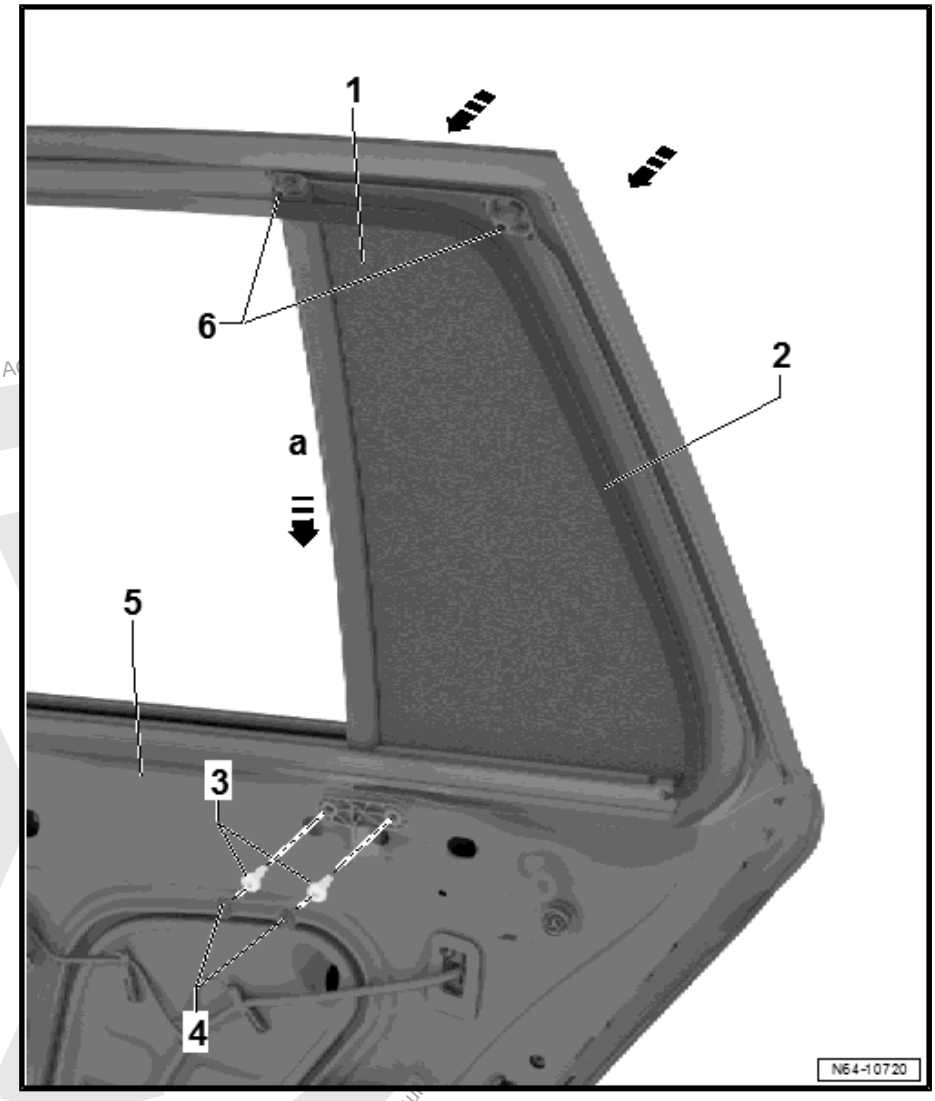
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove door trim panel ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Rear door trim panels; Removing and installing rear door trim panel .
– Remove outer window slot seal ⇒ page 211 .
– Remove window channel ⇒ page 208 .
– Lift out cover caps -6-.
– Unscrew bolts -5-.
– Pull seal -2- off metal flange.
– Guide release tool - T10236- one after the other under both clips -3-.
– When doing this, push door window -1- slightly outwards -arrow a- until clips -3- are pushed out of door -4-.
– Then, pull door window -1- with web -7- upwards -arrow b- out of door -4-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, are not permitted unless Volkswagen AG gives its consent. Any exploitation and/or reproduction of the work for purposes not permitted by the owner of the rights is prohibited and liable to prosecution. The Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG

– Slide door window -1- into door -arrow a-.
– Push door window against door -5- until clips -6- engage audibly -arrows-.
– Tighten bolts -4-.
– Pull seal -2- around flange.
– Insert caps -4-.

Specified torques

♦ Fixed rear door window
⇒ “5.2 Assembly overview - rear door window”, page 329 .

66 – Exterior equipment

1 Radiator grille and front trim

⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille”, page 341

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille”, page 343

1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille

⇒ “1.1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille”, page 341

⇒ “1.1.2 Assembly overview - radiator grille R-Line ”, page 342

1.1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille

1 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Different versions, for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

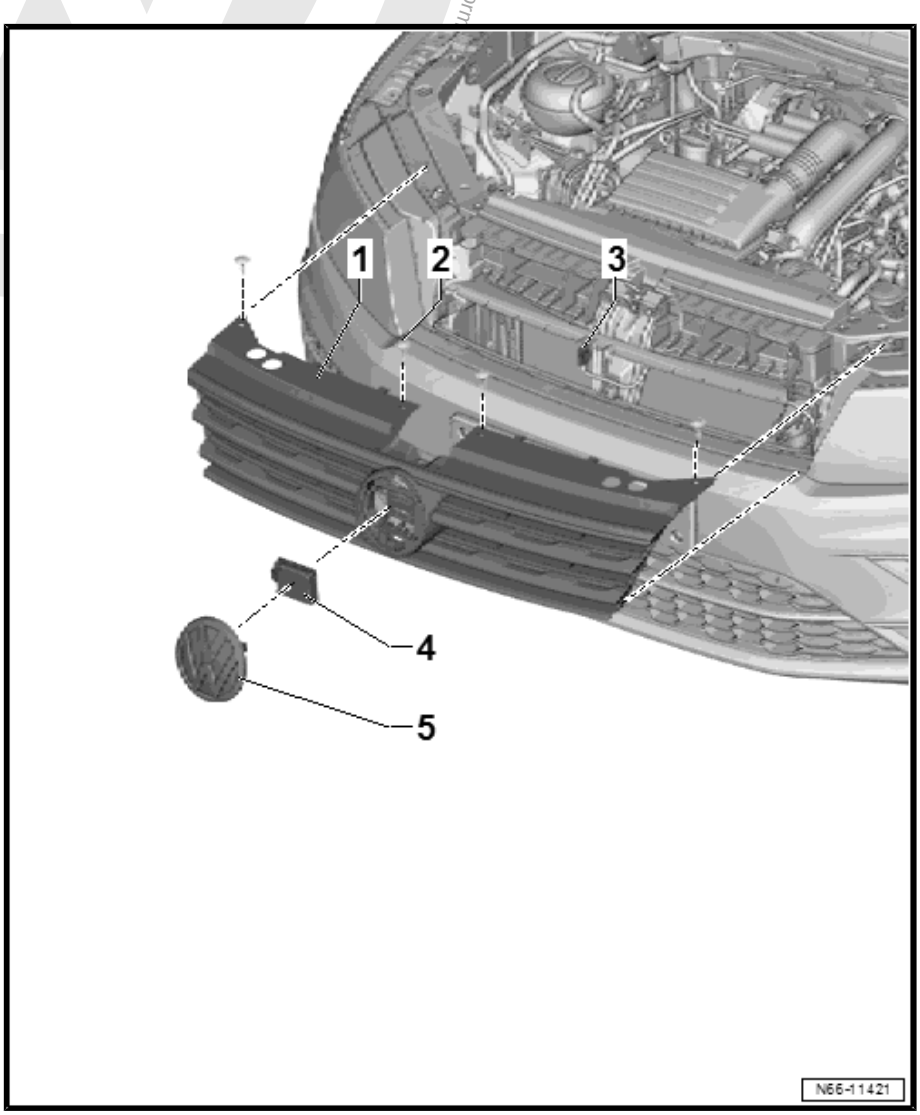
3 - Connector

4 - Adaptive cruise control unit - J428-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control

5 - Badge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 418



authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or
any liability with respect to the correctness of inform
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted

1.1.2 Assembly overview - radiator grille »R-Line«

1 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Different versions, for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343

2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Bolt

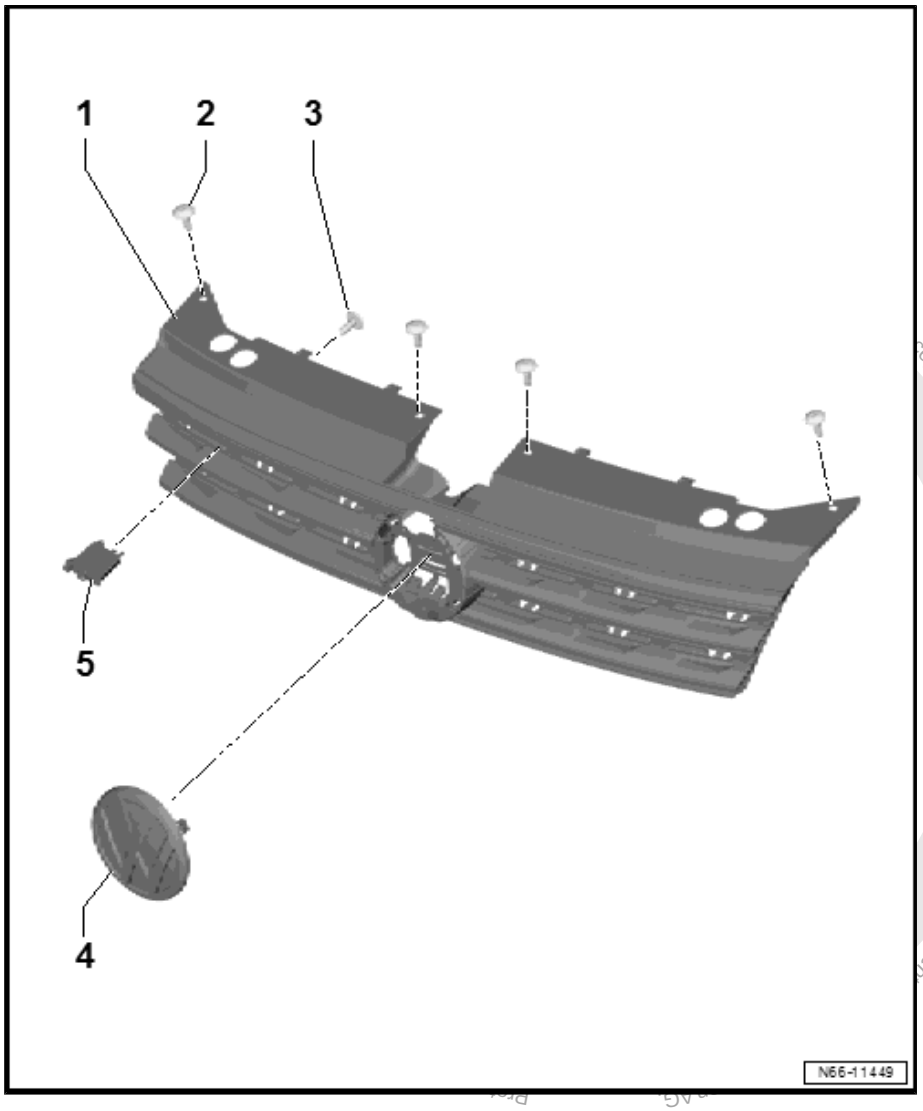
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Badge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 418

5 - Lettering, »R-Line«

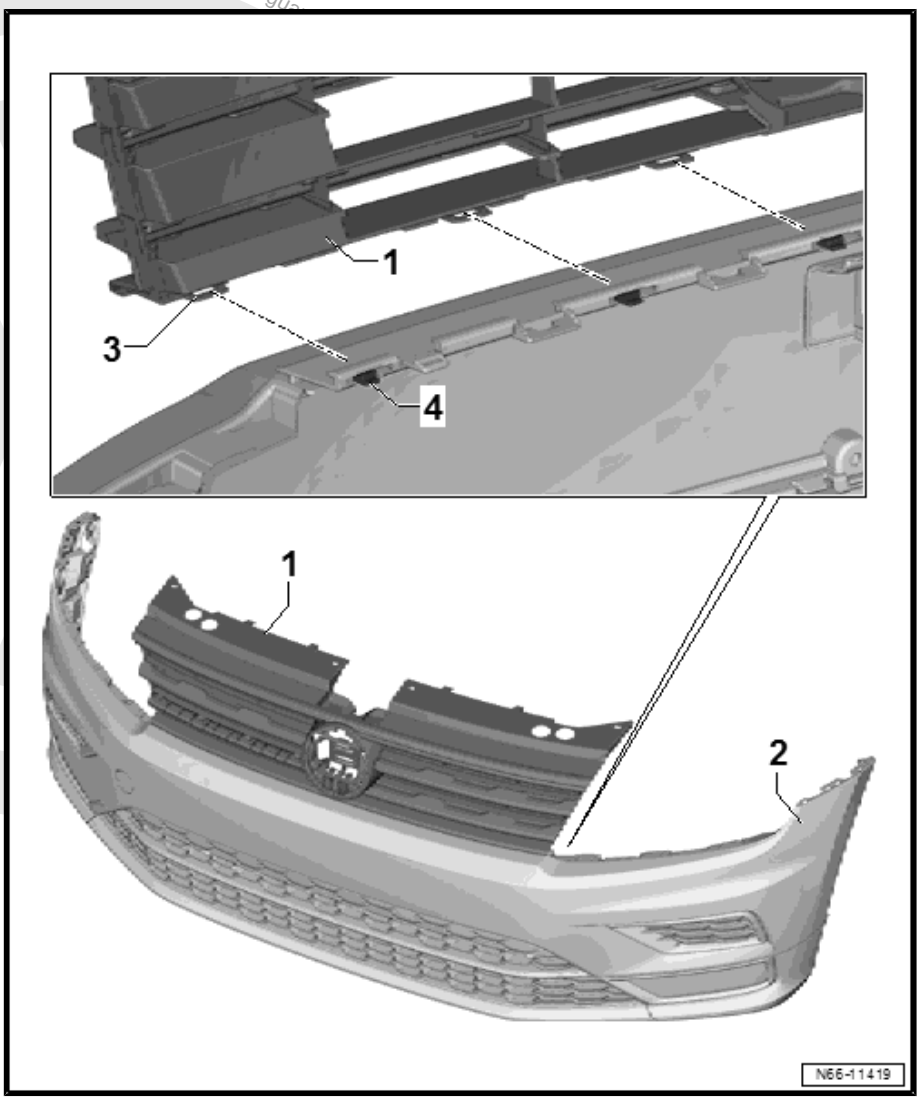
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422



...ept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this documen...

1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gu



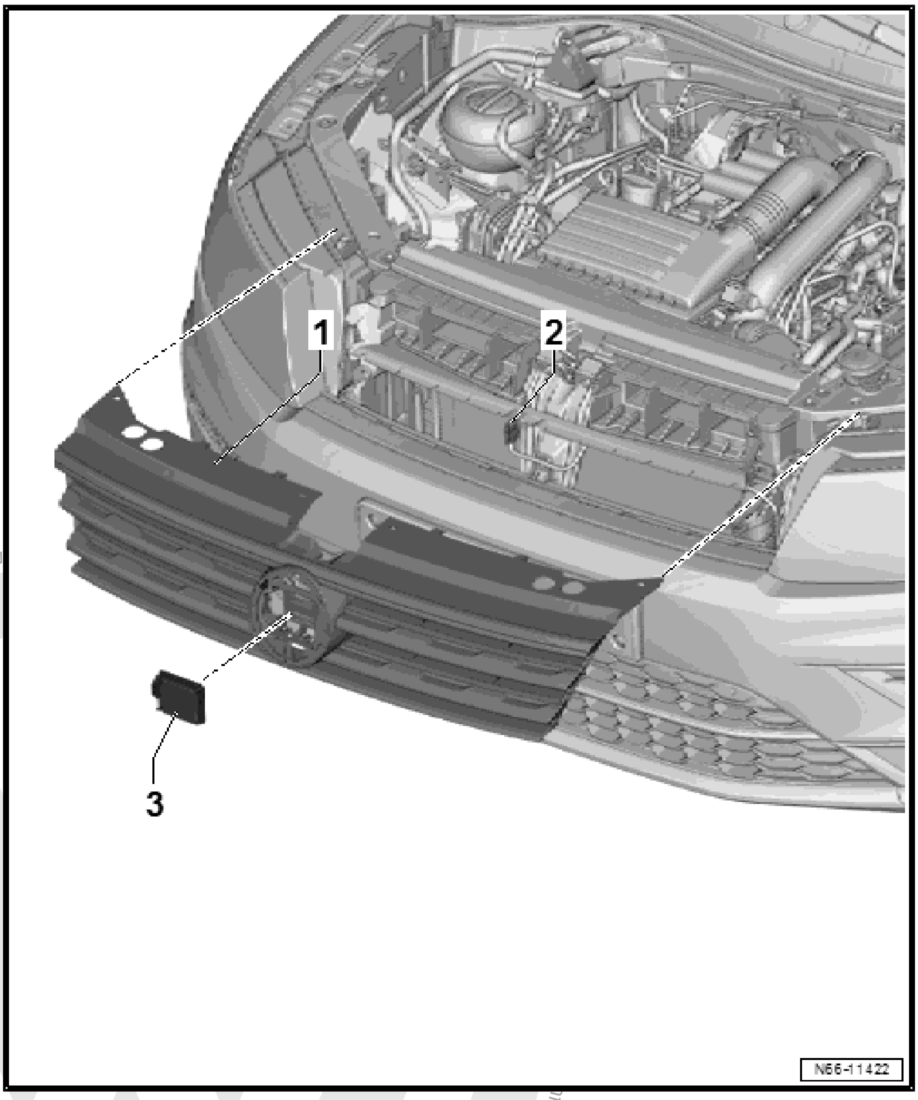
Removing

Note

The removal and installation procedures for the radiator grille may have to be modified slightly depending on the model.

– Remove front bumper cover ⇒ page 275 .

– Release fasteners -4- from hooks -3- and pull out radiator grille -1- from bumper cover -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

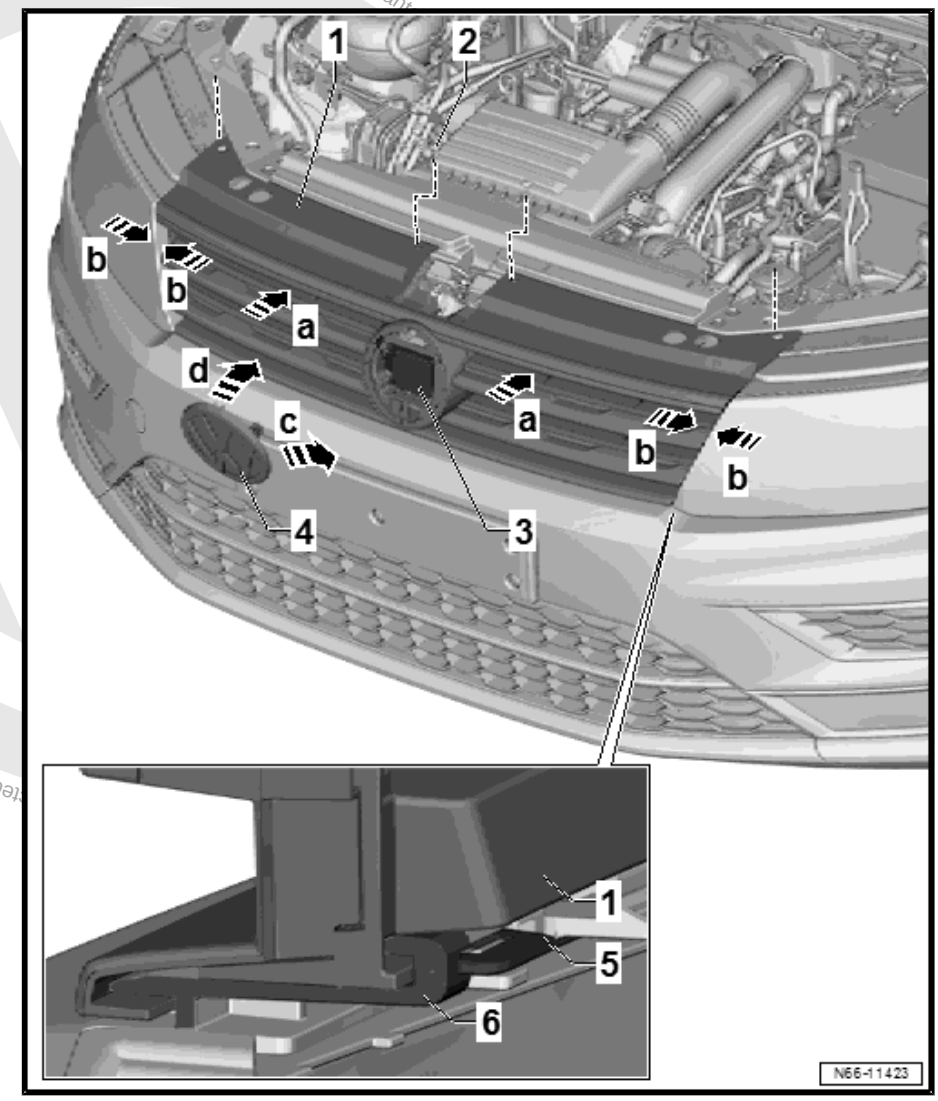
Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Insert radiator grille -1- in front bumper cover.

– Install adaptive cruise control unit - J428- -3- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control .

– Attach electrical connector -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– With slight pressure, push radiator grille -1- into catches -6- of bumper cover -arrows a-.
– Align radiator grille -arrows b-.
– Insert brand badge -4- in radiator grille -arrow c- and engage -arrow d-.
– Tighten bolts -2-.

Specified torques

♦ Radiator grille
⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille”, page 341

2 Spoiler

⇒ “2.1 Assembly overview - spoiler”, page 346

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing spoiler”, page 347

2.1 Assembly overview - spoiler

1 - Rear lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 59

2 - Trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 350

3 - Spoiler

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 347

4 - Double-sided adhesive tape

5 - Pull-off tabs

- ❑ For double-sided adhesive tape

6 - Adhesive application

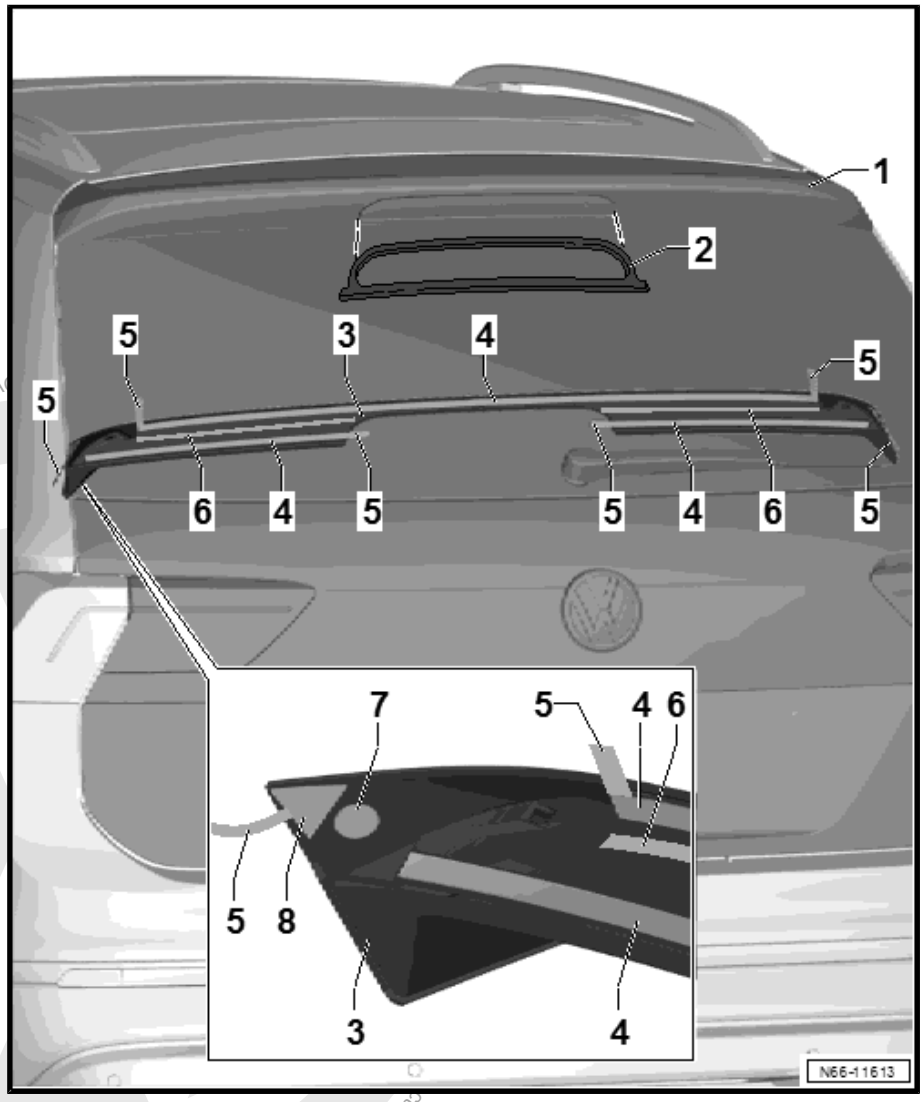
- ❑ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)
- ❑ Left and right

7 - Bonding point

- ❑ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)
- ❑ Left and right

8 - Double-sided adhesive tape

- ❑ Left and right



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Removing and installing spoiler

⇒ “2.2.1 Repair notes”, page 347

⇒ “2.2.2 Removing and installing spoiler”, page 347

⇒ “2.2.3 Removing and installing trim”, page 350

2.2.1 Repair notes

Note

- *For part numbers of the materials, refer to the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .*
- *The spoiler is bonded in the factory with double-sided adhesive tape and assembly adhesive.*
- *The spoiler is primed by the supplier and delivered with double-sided adhesive tape.*
- *Ensure that protective film of double-sided adhesive tape strips and contact surface remain free of paint and paint mist when painting spoiler.*
- *Paint layers must be restored according to specifications in ⇒ “Paintwork manual” .*

The temperature of the room, of the work bay and of the vehicle must be approximately the same (18 °C and max. 30 °C).

Add-on parts must be positioned within 10 minutes, as adhesive's adhesion is otherwise no longer guaranteed.

Minimum curing time for newly bonded spoiler is 2 hours.

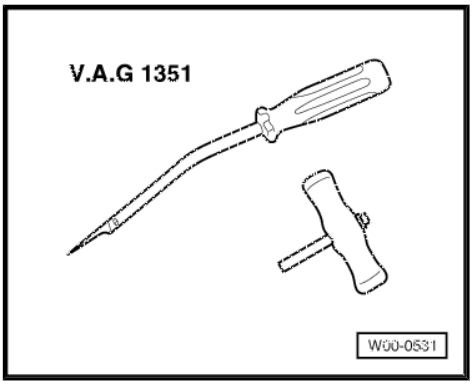
The minimum curing time is the time from which the spoiler is bonded on until the vehicle is ready to be used.

Before washing and preserving the vehicle, ensure that the spoiler has been bonded for at least 4 hours.

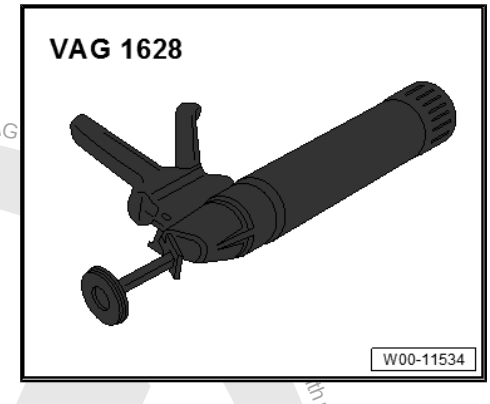
2.2.2 Removing and installing spoiler

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pull handle - V.A.G 1351/1-



- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-



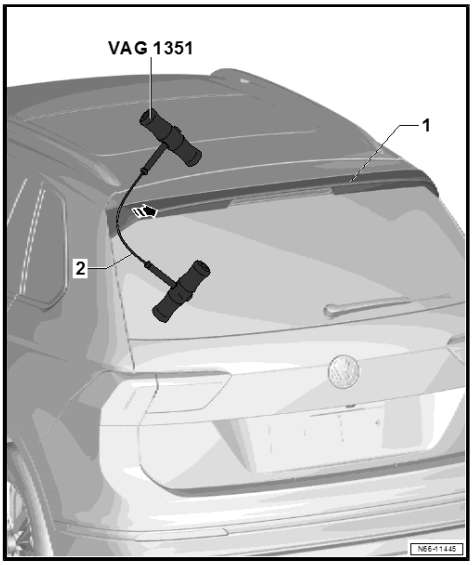
- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing



– Remove any soiling from gaps.
– Mask off all adjacent painted surfaces and the gap between roof and rear lid.
– Thread in cutting cord -2- at one corner between rear lid and spoiler -1-.

Note

The following procedures should be carried out with the aid of a second mechanic.

CAUTION

When removing special add-on parts, use suitable gloves and protective eyewear.

When removing spoiler, cutting wire should not be used due to the risk of damage to the painted areas.

– Holding the pull handles - V.A.G 1351/1- , use sawing movements in -direction of arrow- to cut through adhesive bead, adhesive dots and adhesive tape on one side as far as the middle of the spoiler.
– Also cut through adhesive sealant on the other side.
– Remove spoiler -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Note repair instructions ⇒ page 347 .

Preparing body component for bonding

– Remove existing adhesive residues of double-sided adhesive tape with adhesive remains remover - VAS 6349- .
– Cut back assembly adhesive to about 1 mm without damaging paintwork.

The residual material serves as a primer for application of the new adhesive.

– Immediately before installation of spoiler, thoroughly clean outer panel from dirt, grease, wax and other contaminants.
– Use a clean, lint-free cloth for cleaning.
– The cut surfaces do not require additional cleaning.
– If the body part has been repaired or partially renewed, the area concerned must be cleaned and primed again after painting.

Exception

If bonding is performed later than one day after cutting back adhesive bead, remaining residual material must be activated with activator.

Note

The activator must not get onto the paint.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Using an applicator, apply the activator evenly and in one stroke.

Drying time approx. 10 minutes.

– Then, immediately attach the new spoiler at the prescribed positions using adhesive dots.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Procedure for old spoiler

Note

If a removed spoiler is reused, the corresponding adhesive strips need to be prepared for this ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .

– Completely remove any adhesive residue.

– Thoroughly clean spoiler using cleaning solution.

– Cut back assembly adhesive to about 1 mm without damaging paintwork.

The residual material serves as a primer for application of the new adhesive.

– The cut surfaces do not require additional cleaning.

– Cut adhesive tape to the same size as the previous adhesive strips.

– When doing this, make sure to leave a tab of the protective film to allow for pulling off protective film.

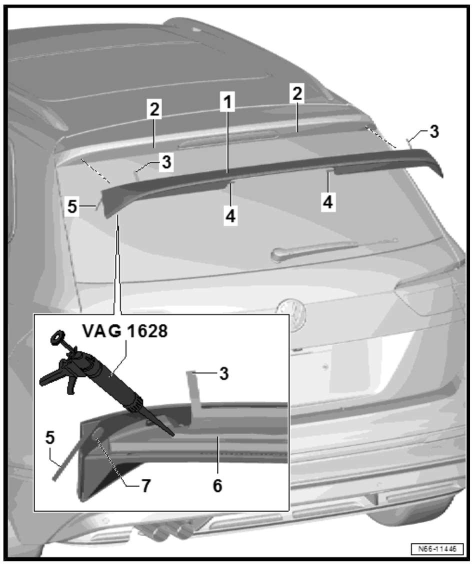
– Remove backing only immediately before installation.

Note

Bonding surfaces must be free of dust and grease.

– Further installation is performed in the same way as for a new spoiler ⇒ page 350 .

Procedure for new spoiler



– Apply assembly adhesive to bonding surfaces -6- and -7- with hand cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628- on inside of spoiler -1-.

♦ Cross section of bead for bonding surface -6-: approx. 10 mm × 10 mm; length of approx. 323 mm on each side

♦ Adhesive dot for bonding surface -7-: approx. 15 mm in diameter; height of approx. 10 mm on each side

– With the assistance of a second mechanic, position spoiler -1- straight on rear lid -2-.

– Pull off backing film of double sided adhesive tape with removal aids in the sequence -3-, -4- and -5-.

– Check alignment and press down spoiler -1-.

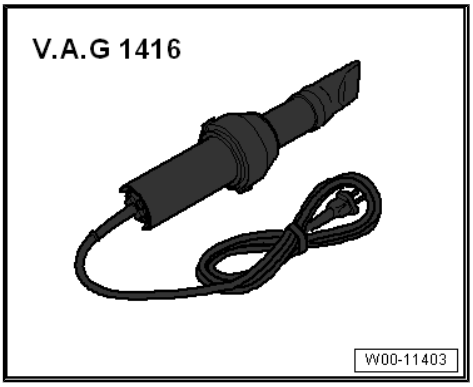
– Press down spoiler -1- firmly to achieve final strength.

• Observe minimum curing period ⇒ page 347 .

2.2.3 Removing and installing trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



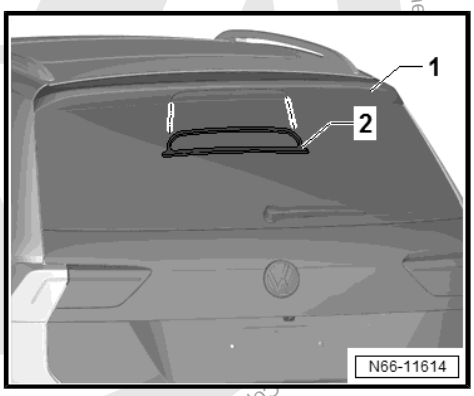
Fitting instructions

- If trim is installed for the first time on a new vehicle or a newly painted surface, the procedure in ⇒ Paintwork manual ⇒ Paintwork repairs ⇒ Paint finish ⇒ Mouldings & film should be observed.
- If a trim is removed and reattached, use only adhesive remover to remove the adhesive residue.
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The trim must be bonded in place immediately following cleaning.
- Remove protective film immediately before installation.
- Required working temperature for component and surrounding: min. 21 °C.

Removing

– Warm trim -1- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- before removing.

– Carefully pull trim -2- off rear lid -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Follow installation instructions ⇒ page 351 .

– Fit trim -2- to rear lid -1-, and align it properly.

– Press on trim -2- in area of bonding surface.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Mouldings, trims, extensions

⇒ “3.1 Assembly overview - water deflector”, page 352
⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - wheel arch covers”, page 354
⇒ “3.3 Assembly overview - heat shield”, page 355
⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing water deflector”, page 356
⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing cover”, page 357
⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on door”, page 363
⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing trim strip”, page 365
⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing entry moulding”, page 367
⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing wheel arch covers”, page 370
⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing underbody heat shield”, page 377

3.1 Assembly overview - water deflector

Note

The right side is shown. The left side is similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Water deflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 356

2 - Retaining strip

- – During removal, drill out rivet heads and chop through rivet shanks.

3 - A-pillar

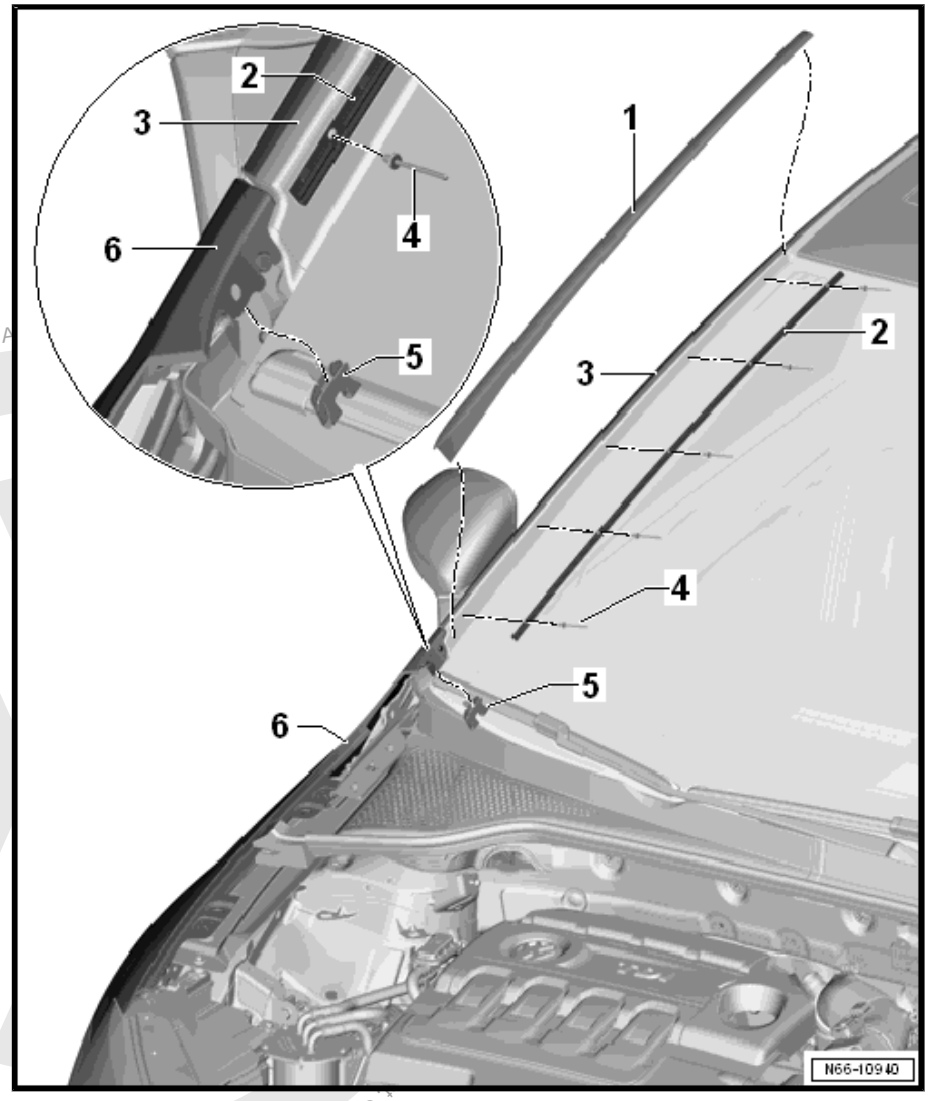
4 - Pop rivet

- ❑ Qty. 5
- ❑ Insert with pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-

5 - Clip

- ❑ Position clip in wing hole and press forwards, afterwards turn through 90°.

6 - Wings



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.2 Assembly overview - wheel arch covers

Note

- *The illustrations show the left-hand side. The right side is analogous.*
- *Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA*

1 - Front wheel arch cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

2 - Double-sided adhesive tape

3 - Wheel housing trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

4 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 2 Nm

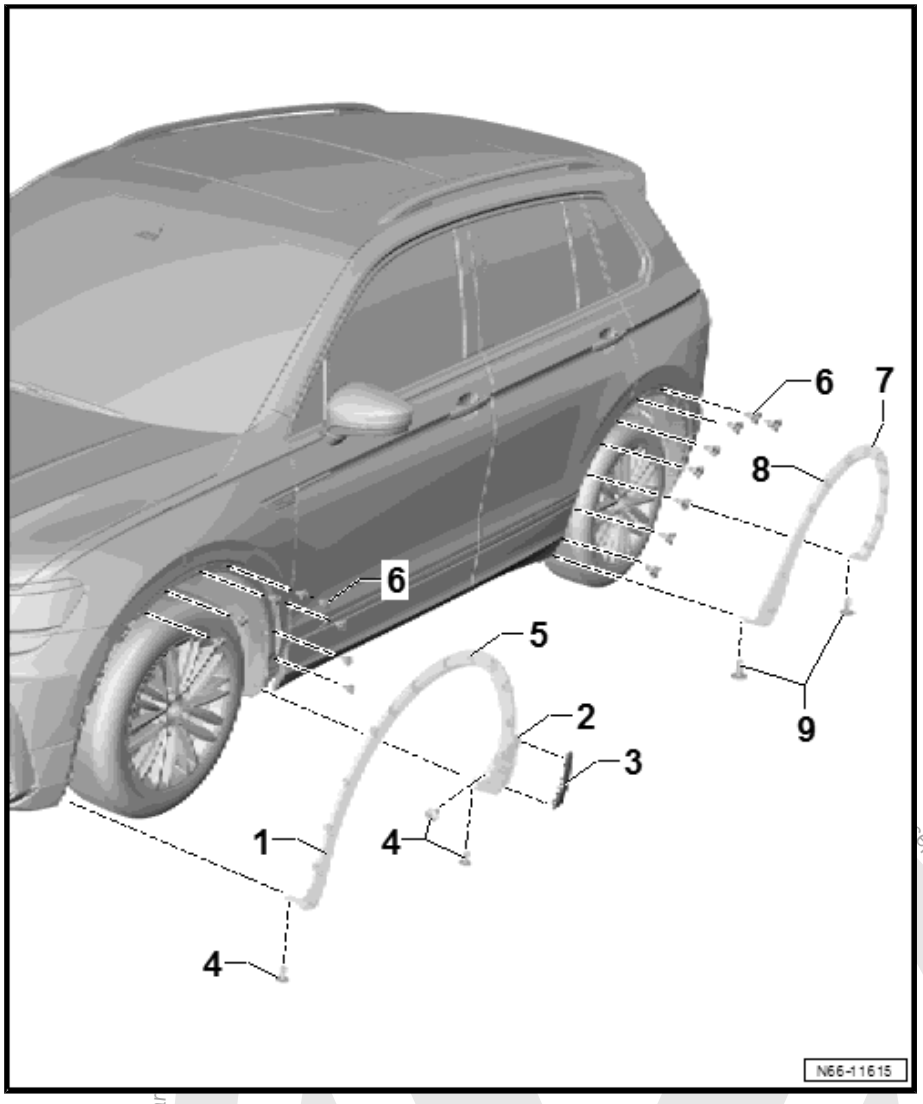
5 - Clip
- ❑ Qty. 8

6 - Grommets
- ❑ Qty. 8 at front and rear

7 - Rear wheel arch cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

8 - Clip
- ❑ Qty. 8

9 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.3 Assembly overview - heat shield

1 - Underbody heat shield

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 377

2 - Clamping washer

- ❑ Qty. 6

3 - Heat shield for centre exhaust system

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 378

4 - Clamping washer

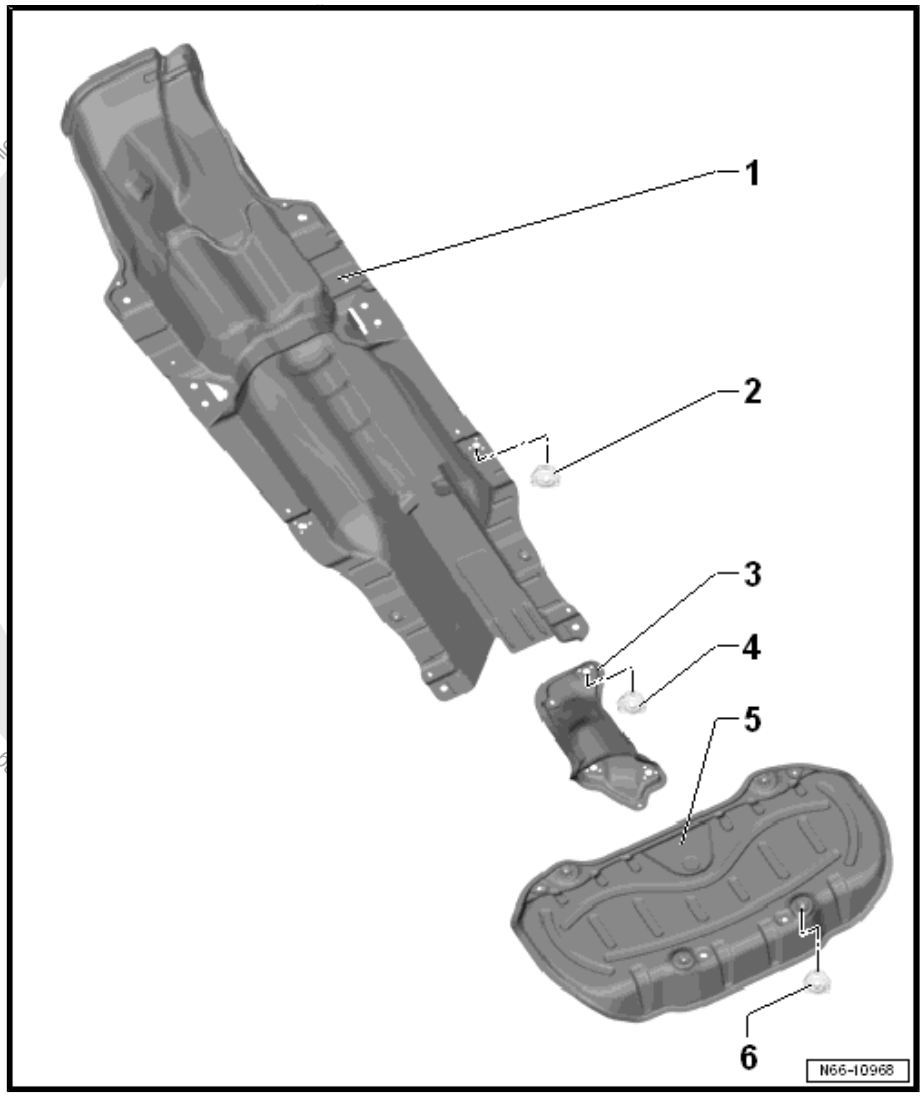
- ❑ Qty. 2

5 - Heat shield for rear silencer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 379

6 - Clamping washer

- ❑ Qty. 5

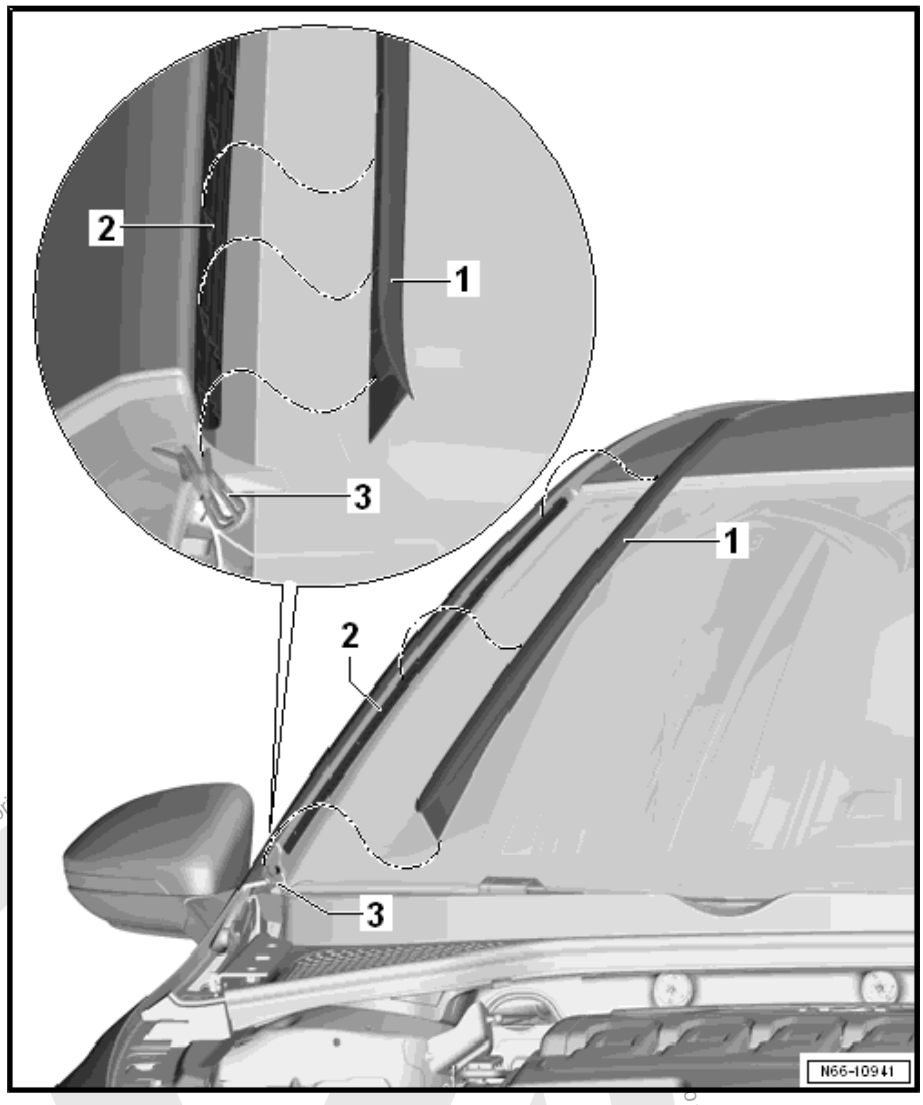


...d for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unl...

3.4 Removing and installing water deflector

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.



Removing

– Starting at bottom end, pull water deflector -1- out of clip -3- and retaining strip -2-.

Installing

– Position upper inner edge of water deflector -1- on upper edge of windscreen.

– Press water deflector -1- from above into retaining strip -2- and clip -3-.

– Fit contact lip between water deflector and windscreen behind window.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.5 Removing and installing cover

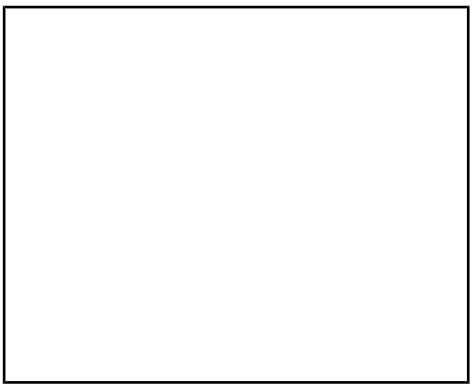
⇒ “3.5.2 Removing and installing front door cover”, page 357

⇒ “3.5.3 Removing and installing rear door cover”, page 360

3.5.1 Fitting instructions

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



- Covers or chrome strips in covers cannot be removed intact. Various versions, for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .
- If a cover is installed for the first time on a new vehicle or on newly painted surfaces, the procedure in ⇒ Workshop manual “Paint”; ⇒ Paintwork repairs; ⇒ Paint finish; ⇒ Mouldings & film should be observed.
- If a cover is removed and reinstalled, use only adhesive remover to remove the adhesive residue in the installation area.
- Remove existing adhesive residue of adhesive tape using adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The cover must be bonded in place immediately following cleaning.
- Remove protective film immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.

3.5.2 Removing and installing front door cover

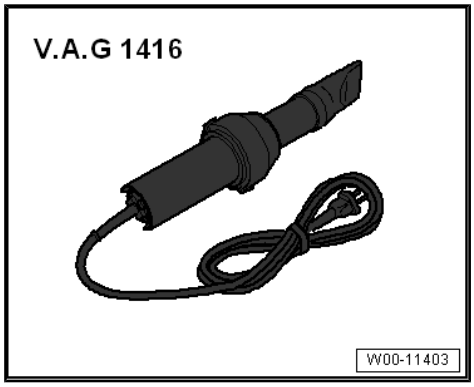
Special tools and workshop equipment required

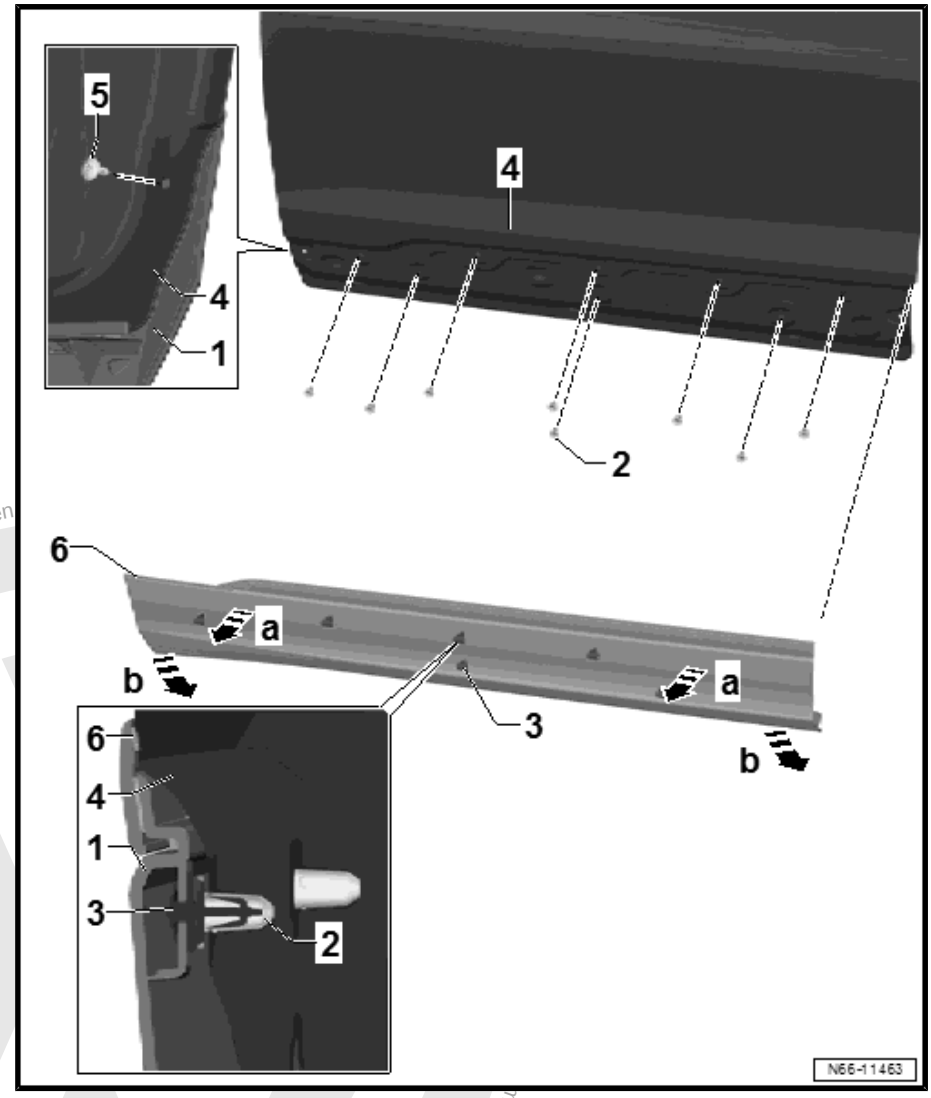
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

♦ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Transmission or duplication of this document or any part thereof to third parties is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Transmission or duplication of this document or any part thereof to third parties is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

Note

- *The removal and installation procedures for front door cover may have to be revised slightly depending on model variations.*
- *The removal and installation sequence is for the front left door cover only. Removal and installation of the front door cover on the right are similar.*

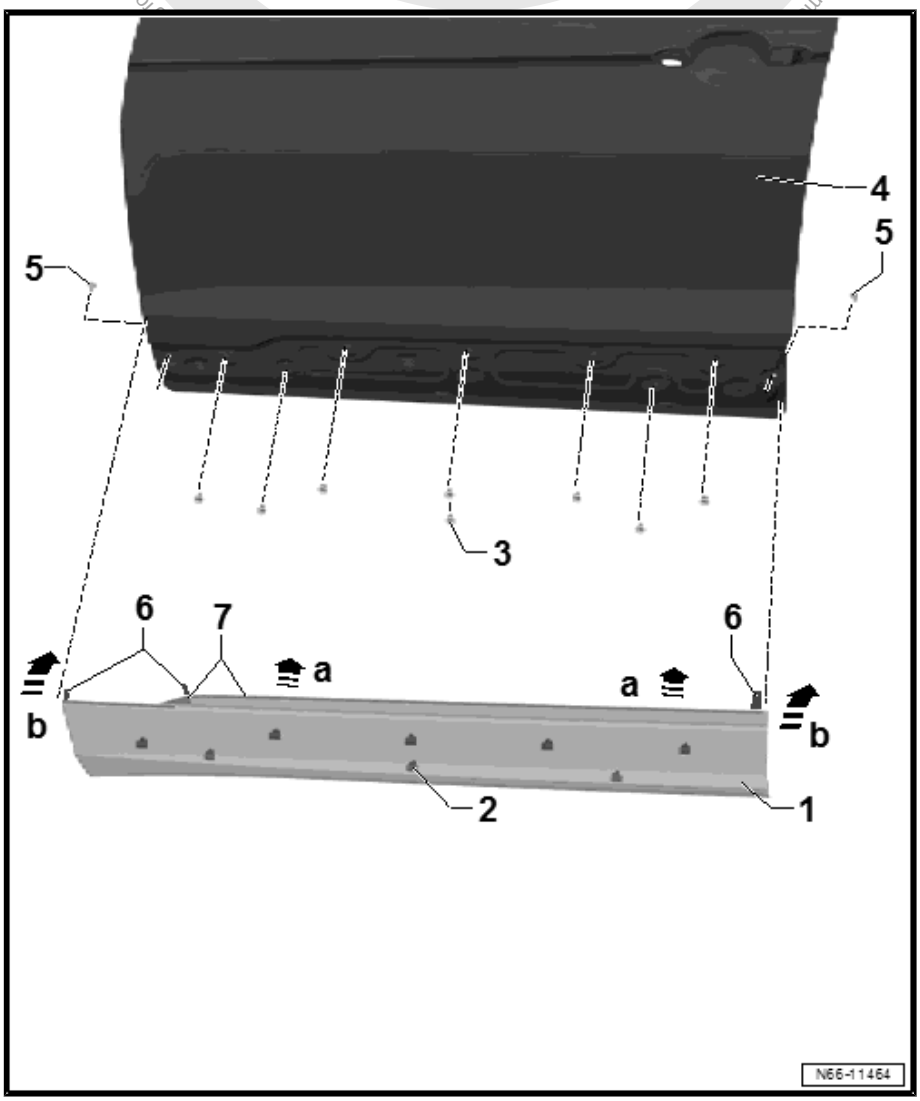
– Unscrew bolts -5- on inner side of door -4-.

– Heat up cover in area of bonding surfaces -6- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Pull off cover -1- from door until bond of adhesive tape is released.

– Pull cover further out of grommets -2- -arrows a-.

– Pull cover -1- downwards -arrows b- from door.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Follow installation instructions ⇒ page 357 .

– Check grommets -3- and clips -2- for damage, and renew them if necessary.
– Push cover -1- from below onto door -4- -arrows a-.
– Press cover -1- with clips -2- into grommets -3- -arrows b-.
– Pull off protective film -6- from adhesive tape -7-.
– Press on cover -1- forcefully in area of adhesive tape sections -7-.
– Tighten bolts -5- on inner side of door.

Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Front door moulding	2 Nm

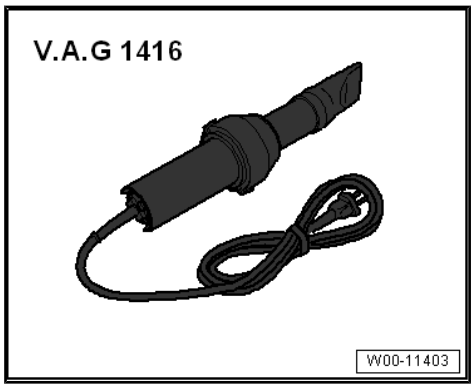
3.5.3 Removing and installing rear door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

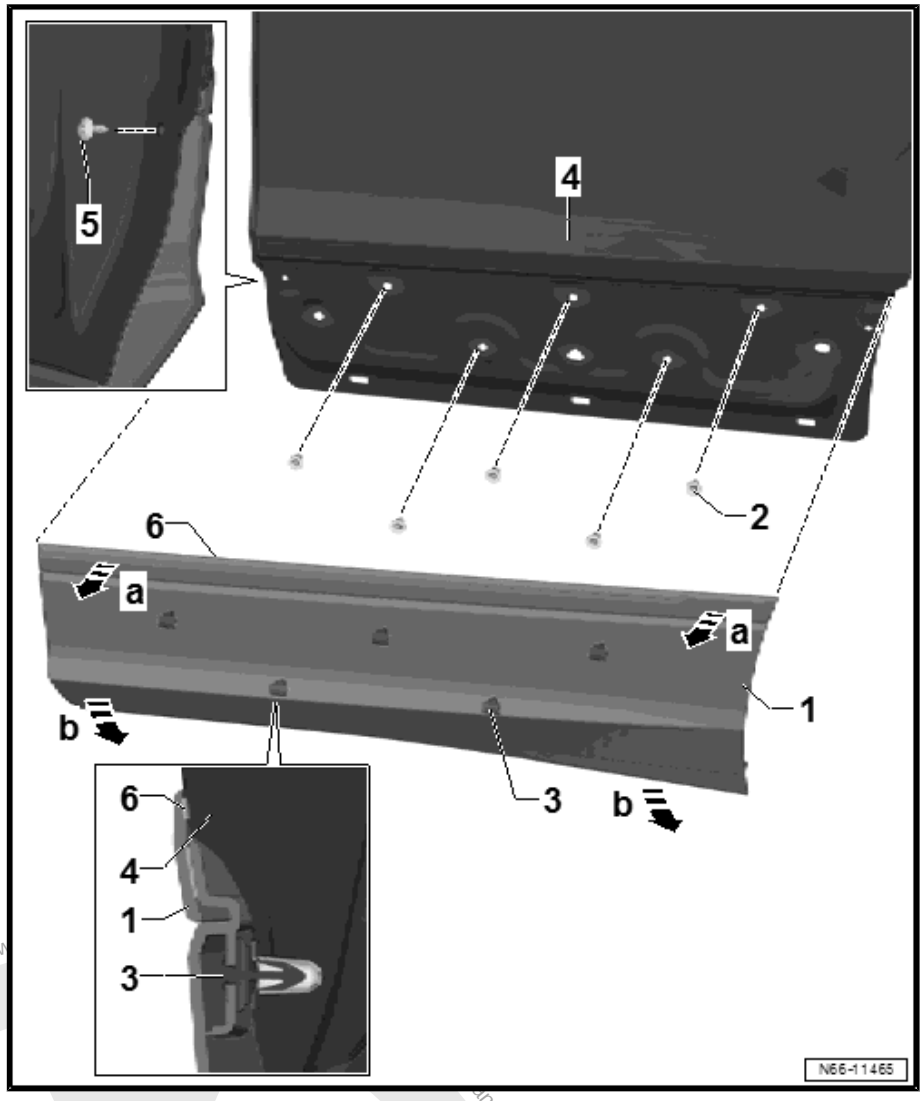
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



♦ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

Note

- *The removal and installation procedures for rear door cover may have to be revised slightly depending on model variations.*
- *The removal and installation sequence is for the rear left door cover only. Removal and installation of the rear door cover on the right are similar.*

– Unscrew bolts -5- on inner side of door -4-.

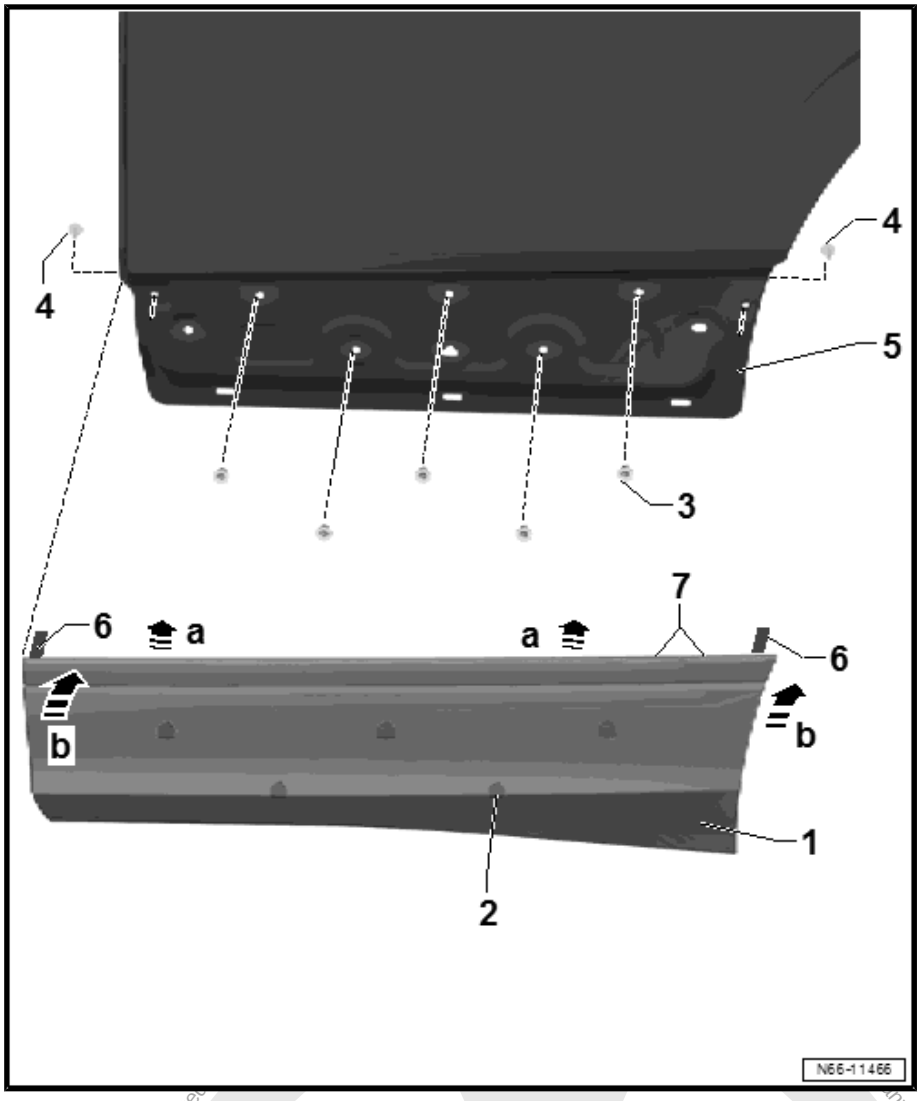
– Heat up cover in area of bonding surfaces -6- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Pull off cover -1- from door until bond of adhesive tape is released.

– Pull cover -1- out of grommets -2- -arrows a-.

– Pull cover -1- downwards -arrows b- from door.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Follow installation instructions ⇒ page 357 .

– Check grommets -3- and clips -2- for damage, and renew them if necessary.

– Push cover -1- from below onto door -5- -arrows a-.

– Press cover -1- with clips -2- into grommets -3- -arrows b-.

– Pull off protective film -6- from adhesive tape -7-.

– Press on cover -1- forcefully in area of adhesive tape sections -7-.

– Tighten bolts -4- on inner side of door.

Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Rear door moulding	2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

3.6 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on door

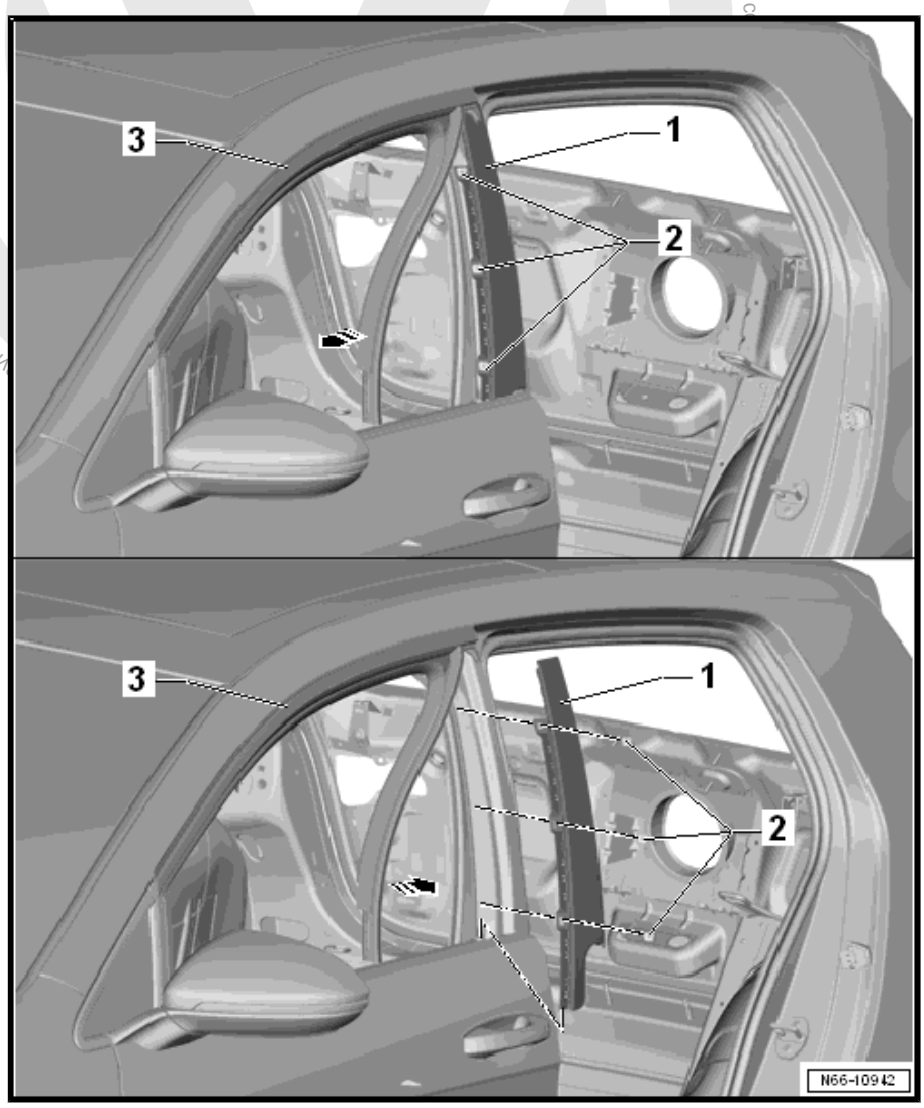
⇒ “3.6.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on front door”, page 363

⇒ “3.6.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on rear door”, page 364

3.6.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on front door

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.



Removing

– Run door window down to bottom position.

– Pull window channel -3- in area of B-pillar trim-1- out of door frame.

– Unclip spreader rivets -2-.

– Push B-pillar trim -1- downwards and pull off door frame.
– Pull out B-pillar trim -1- upwards.

Installing

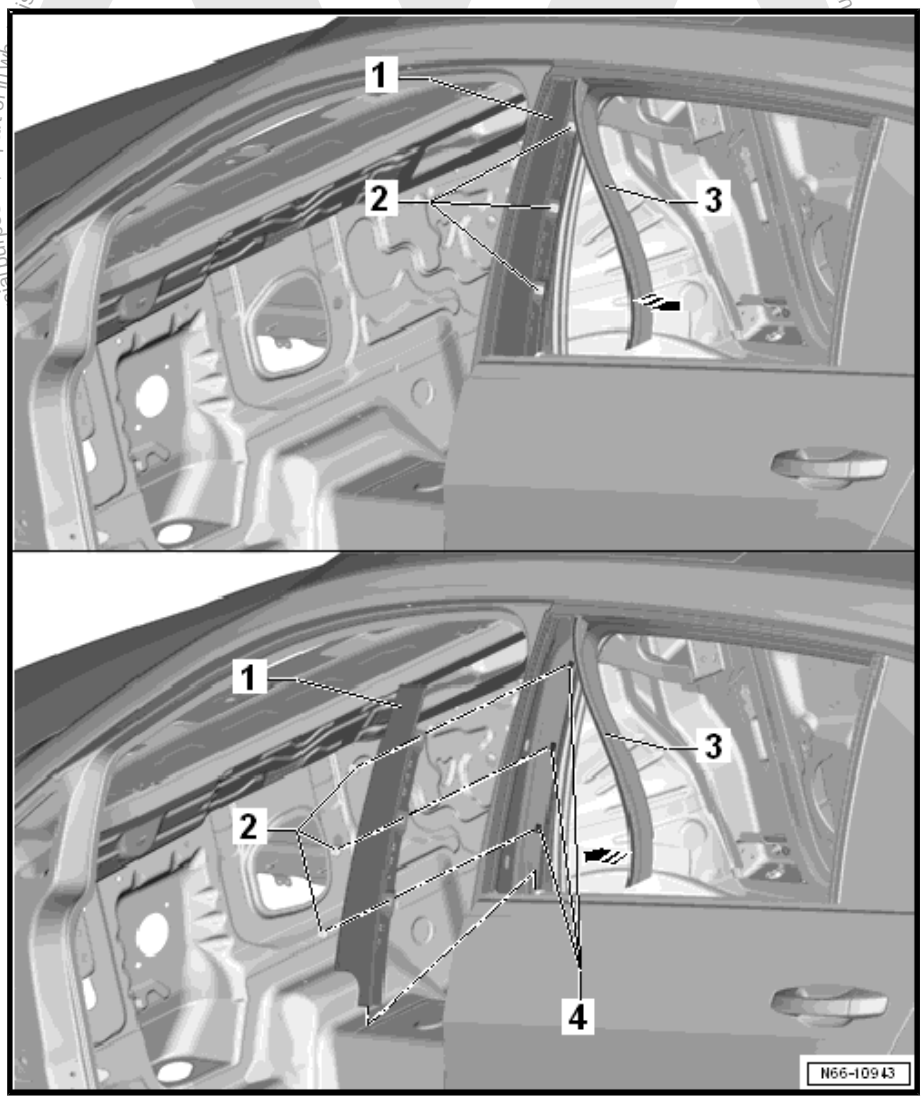
– Position B-pillar trim -1- on door frame.
– Guide in B-pillar trim -1- at bottom and fit it in place.
– Push B-pillar trim -1- upwards until it is in contact with window channel -3-.
– Hook in spreader rivet -2- from top to bottom and insert window channel -3- into B-pillar trim.

3.6.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim on rear door

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.

...is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with ...ial purposes, in part or in ...



Removing

– Run door window down to bottom position.

– Pull window channel -3- in area of B-pillar trim-1- out of door frame.
– Unclip spreader rivets -2-.
– Push B-pillar trim -1- downwards and pull off door frame.
– Pull out B-pillar trim -1- upwards.

Installing

– Insert B-pillar trim -1- on door frame.
– Fit B-pillar trim -1- in longitudinal holes -4- in frame section.
– Position B-pillar trim -1- and push until stop.
– Push B-pillar trim -1- upwards until it is in contact with window channel -3-.
– Hook in spreader rivet -2- from top to bottom and insert window channel -3- into B-pillar trim.

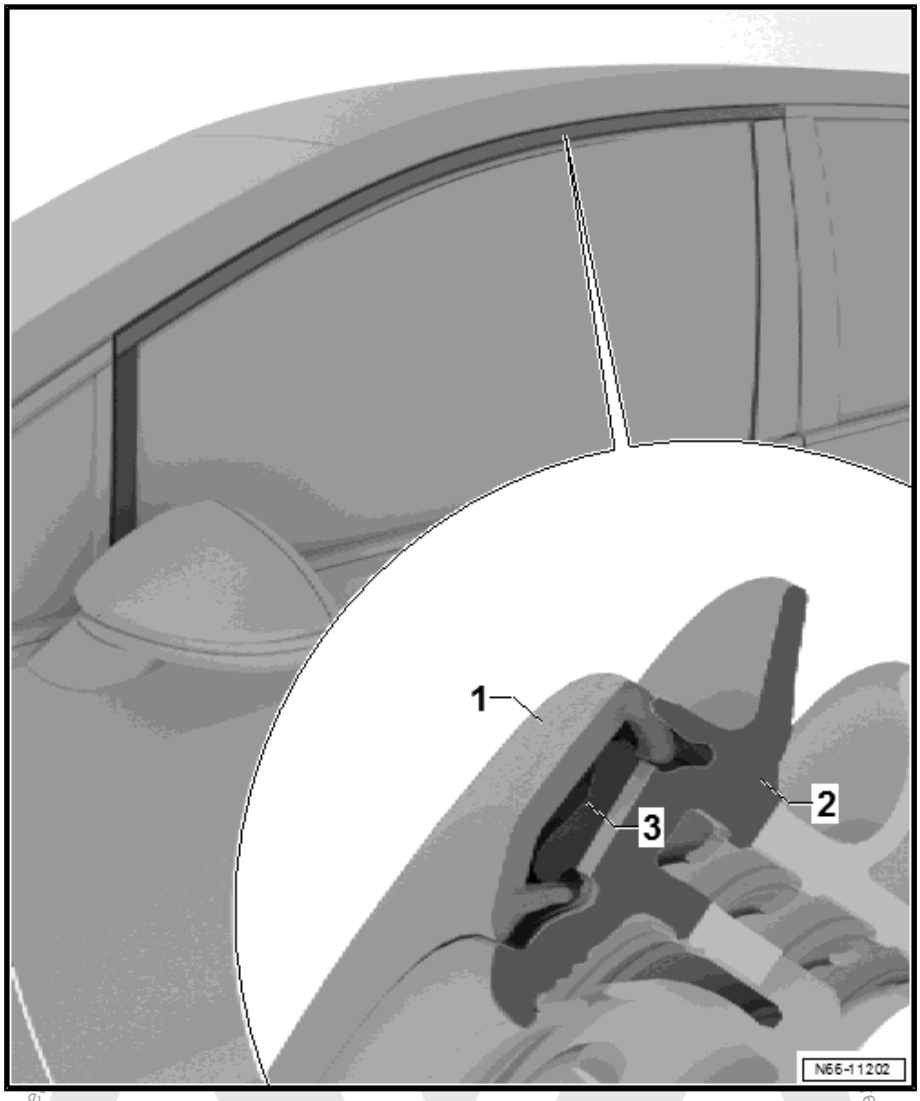
3.7 Removing and installing trim strip

⇒ “3.7.1 Removing and installing window channel trim strip of front door”, page 365

⇒ “3.7.2 Removing and installing window channel trim strip of rear door”, page 367

3.7.1 Removing and installing window channel trim strip of front door

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

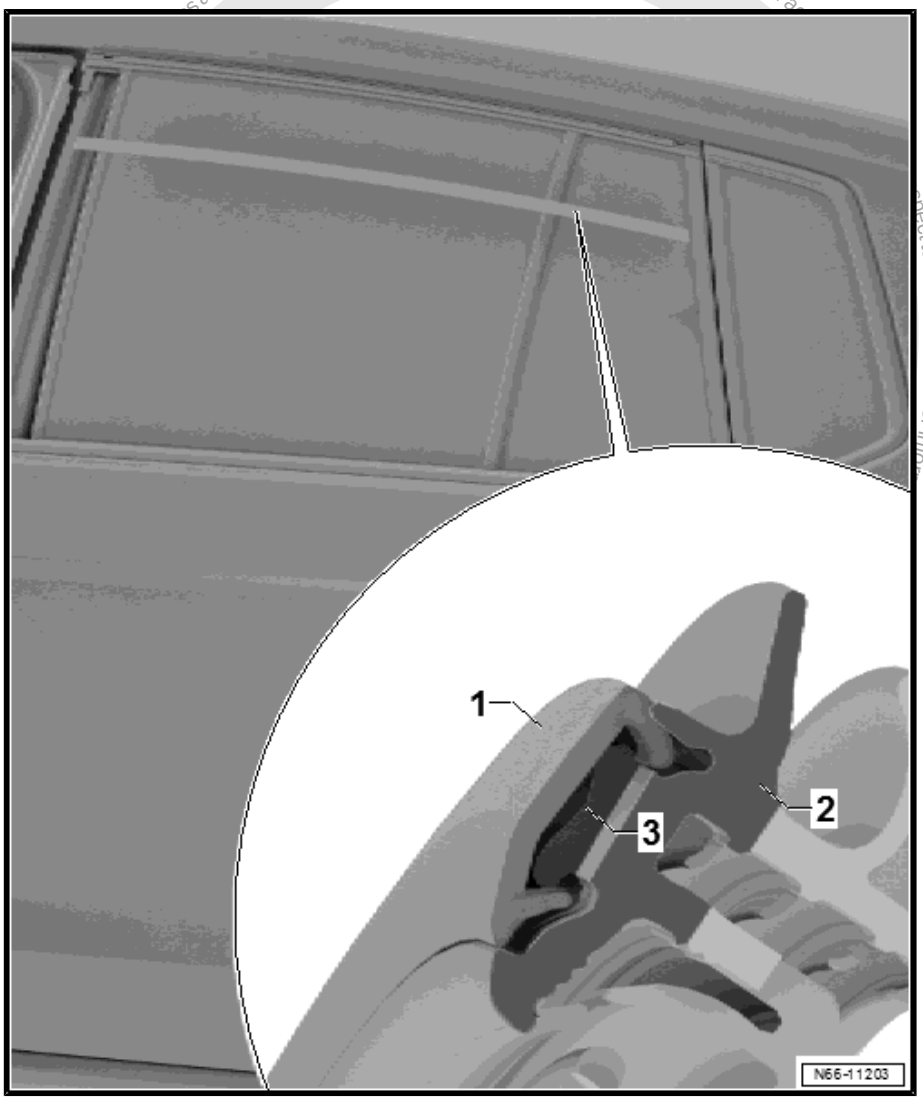
– Detach trim strip -1- from clips -3-, and pull it out of window channel -2-.

Installing

– Push trim strip -1- into window channel -2- until window channel engages in clips -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.7.2 Removing and installing window channel trim strip of rear door



Removing

– Detach trim strip -1- from clips -3-, and pull it out of window channel -2-.

Installing

– Push trim strip -1- into window channel -2- until window channel engages in clips -3-.

3.8 Removing and installing entry moulding

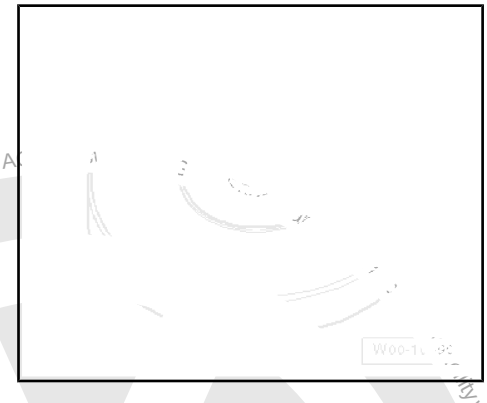
⇒ “3.8.1 Fitting instructions”, page 367

⇒ “3.8.2 Removing and installing outer sill panel trim”, page 368

3.8.1 Fitting instructions

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-

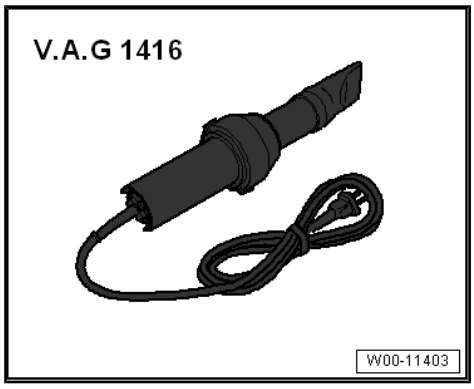


- If a sill panel trim is installed for the first time on a new vehicle or on newly painted surfaces, the procedure in ⇒ Workshop manual “Paint”; ⇒ Paintwork repairs; ⇒ Paint finish; ⇒ Mouldings & film should be observed.
- If the sill panel trim is removed and reinstalled, only use adhesive remover to remove the adhesive remains in installation area.
- Remove existing adhesive residue of adhesive tape using adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The sill panel trim must be bonded in place immediately after cleaning.
- Remove protective film immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.

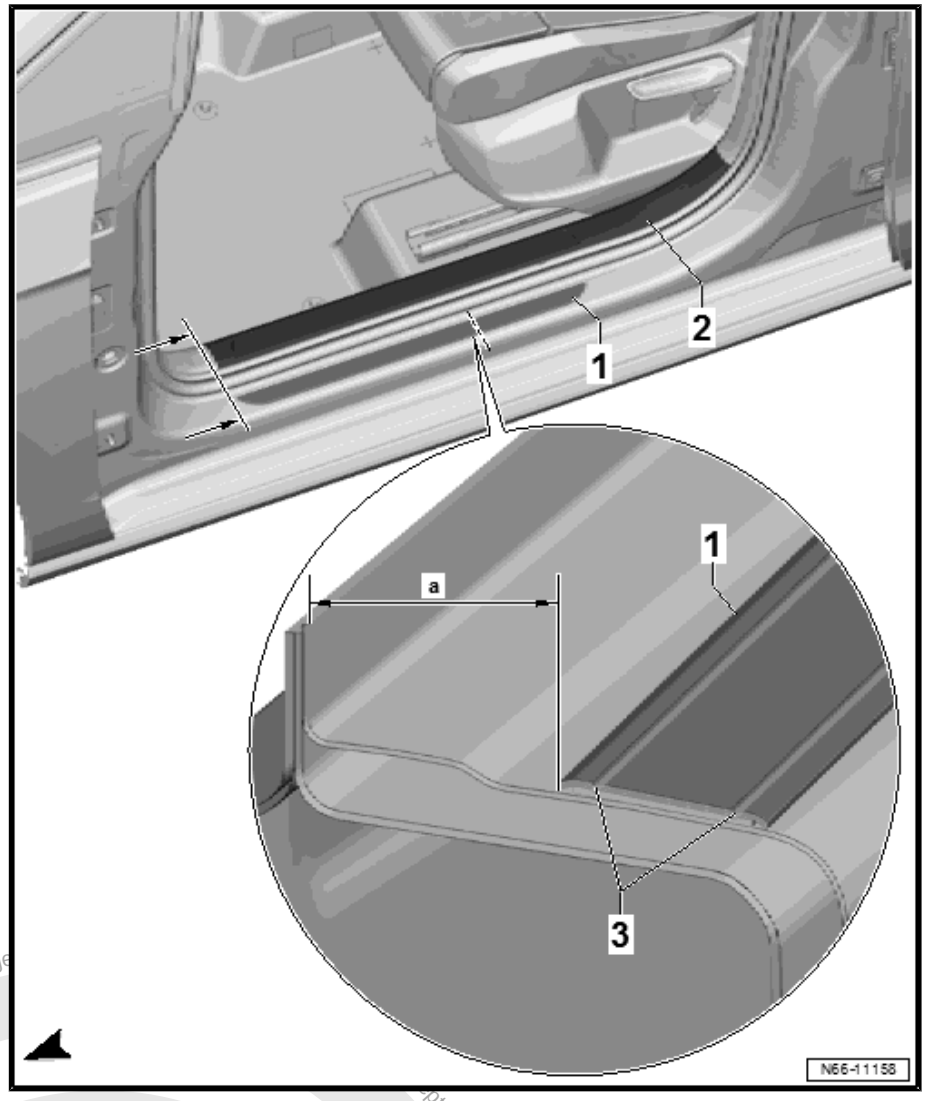
3.8.2 Removing and installing outer sill panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Removing

Note

- *Sill panel trim cannot be removed without being damaged.*
- *Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA*
- *Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.*

– Heat sill panel trim -1- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- , and pull it off sill.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Installation notes ⇒ page 367 .

– Pull off backing.

– Align front end of outer sill panel trim -1- with front end of inner sill panel trim -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Make sure that dimension -a- of 12 mm between metal flange and sill panel trim is adhered to over the entire length of the sill panel trim.
– Smooth down using plastic scraper with paper towel wrapped around it.

3.9 Removing and installing wheel arch covers

⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing front wheel arch cover”, page 370

⇒ “3.9.2 Removing and installing front wheel housing trim”, page 372

⇒ “3.9.3 Removing and installing rear wheel arch cover”, page 374

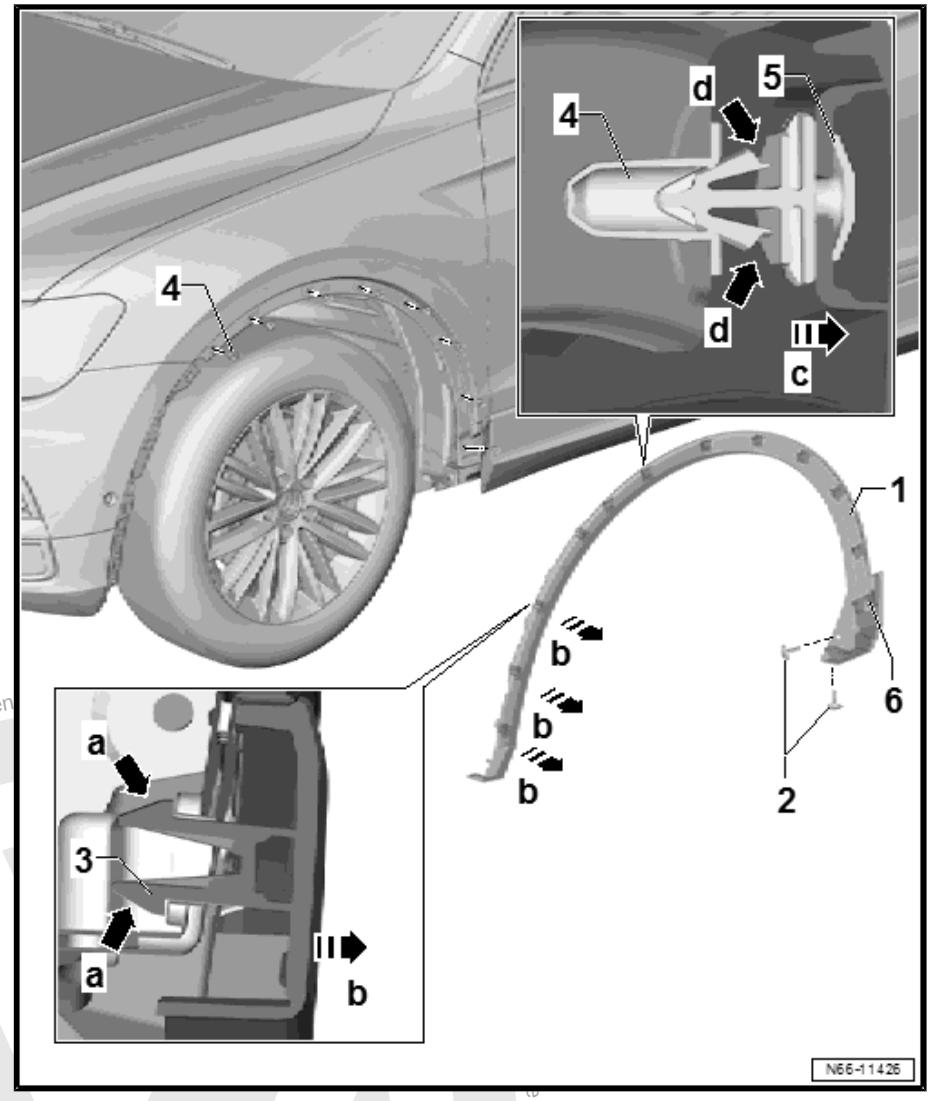
3.9.1 Removing and installing front wheel arch cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



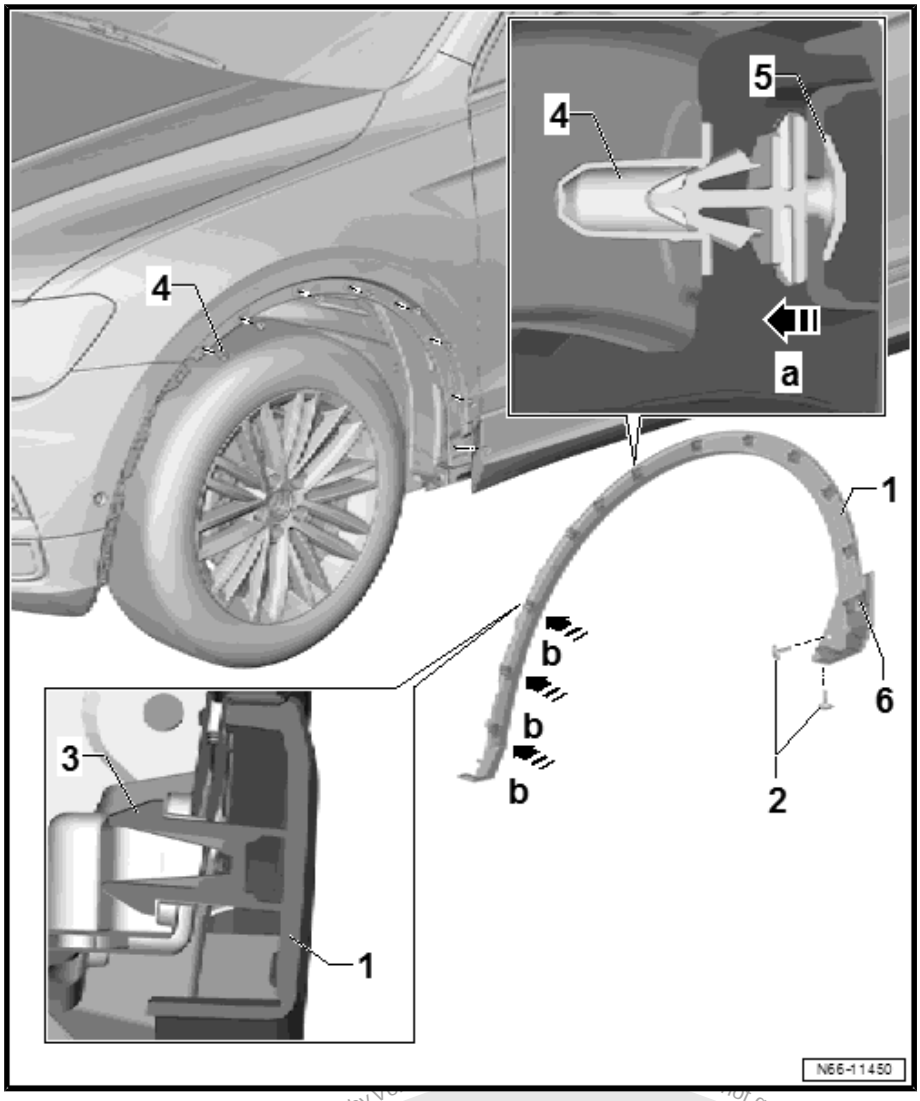
Removing

Note

- *Removal and installation are described only for the left wheel arch cover. The removal and installation of the right wheel arch cover are similar.*
- *Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.*
- *If retaining hooks -3- are damaged during removal of wheel arch cover -1-, install a new wheel arch trim.*

– Release front wheel housing liner in area of wing ⇒ page 409 .
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Press together retaining hooks -3- -arrows a- and push out of bumper cover -arrows b-.
– Press together clips -6- -arrows d-.
– Pull wheel arch cover -1- off wing -arrow c-.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen. Any use or distribution of this document in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Renew damaged clips -5- and grommets -4-.

– Press wheel arch cover -1- with clips -5- into grommets -4- on vehicle -arrow a-.

– Press retaining hooks -3- into bumper cover -arrows b-.

– Tighten bolt -2-.

Specified torques

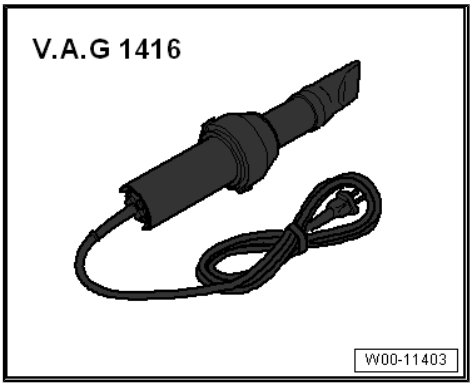
♦ ⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - wheel arch covers”, page 354

3.9.2 Removing and installing front wheel housing trim

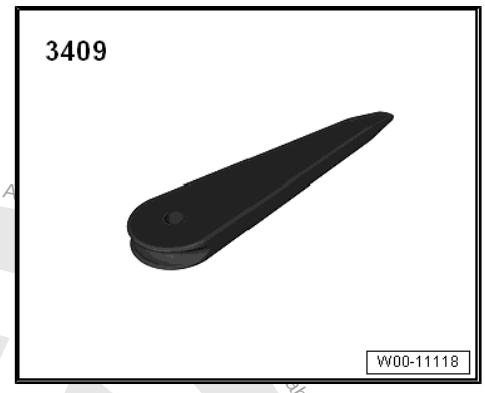
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Fitting instructions

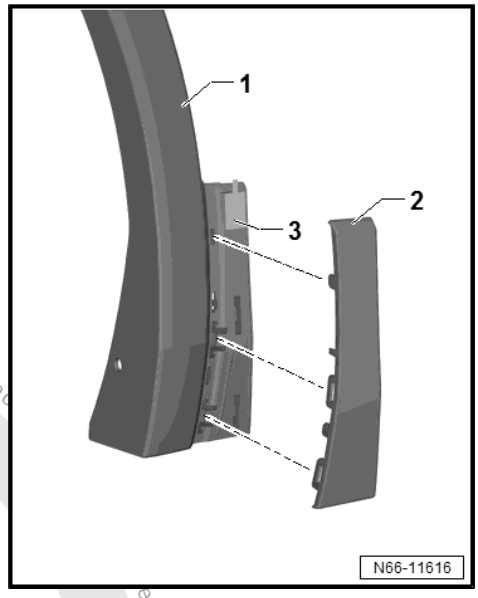
- Wheel housing trim cannot be removed without being damaged.
- Remove any adhesive residue from wheel arch cover.
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The wheel housing trim must be bonded in place immediately after cleaning.
- Remove backing only immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.

Removing

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.

– Before removing, heat wheel housing trim -1- in area of bonding surface -3- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Carefully guide removal wedge - 3409- between wheel housing trim -1- and wheel arch cover -2-.
– As soon as bonded joint -3- comes loose, unclip wheel housing trim -1- from wheel arch cover -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Fitting notes ⇒ page 373 .

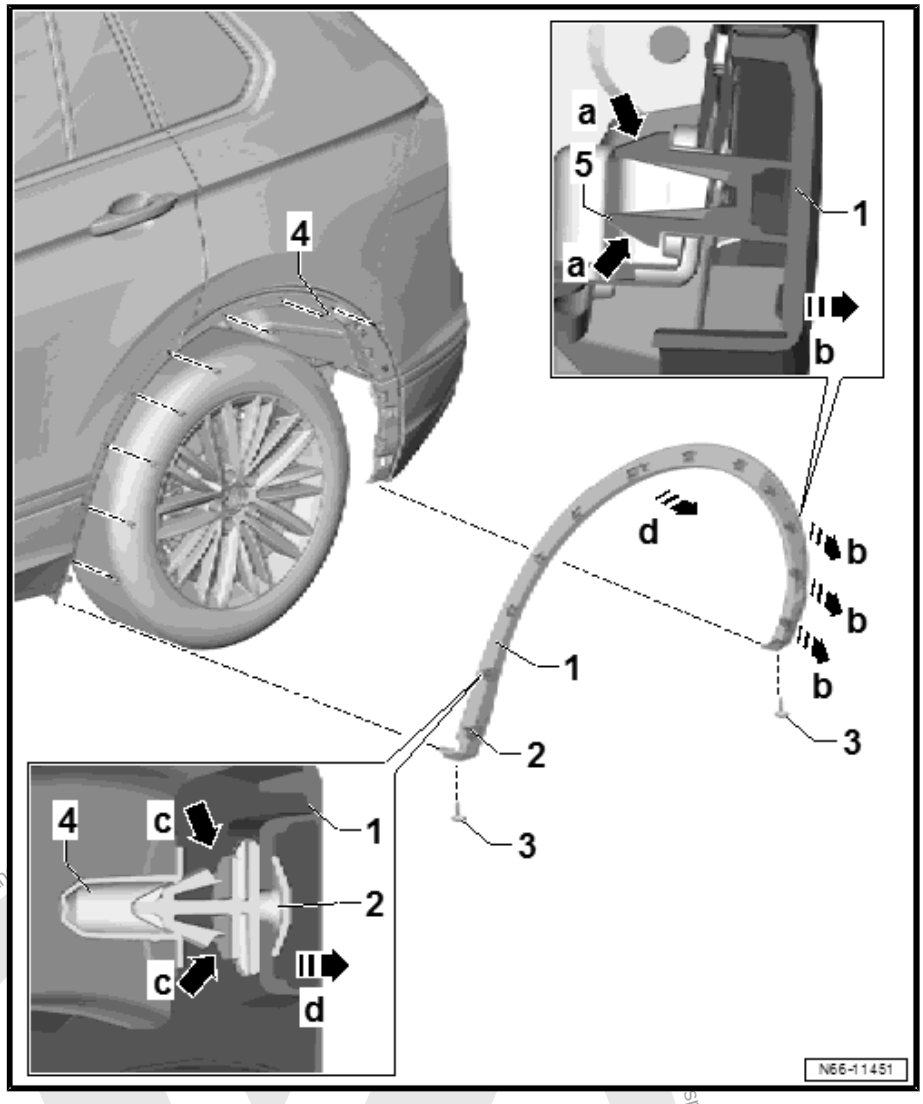
3.9.3 Removing and installing rear wheel arch cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

Note

- *Removal and installation are described only for the left wheel arch cover. The removal and installation of the right wheel arch cover are similar.*
- *Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.*
- *If retaining hooks -5- are damaged during removal of wheel arch cover -1-, install a new wheel arch cover.*

– Release rear wheel housing liner in area of side panel ⇒ page 411 .

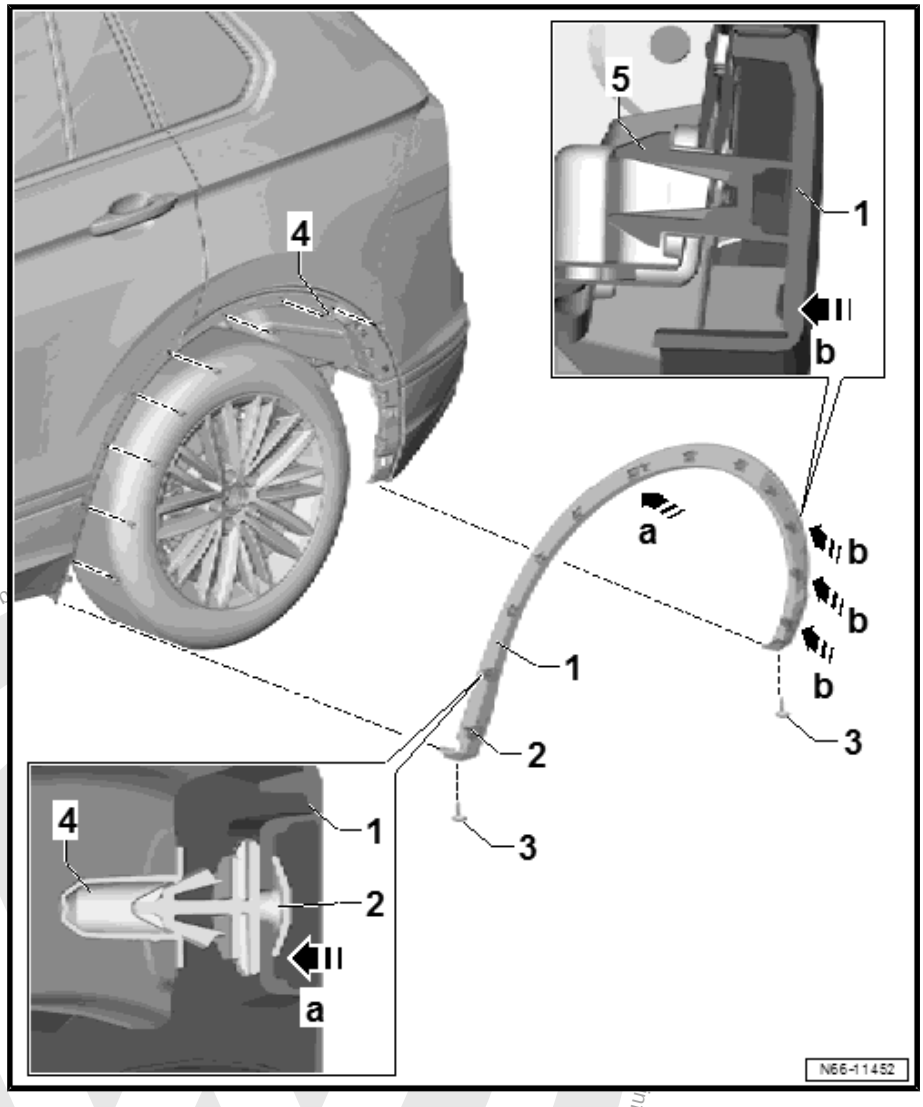
– Unscrew bolts -3-.

– Press together retaining hooks -5- -arrows a- and push out of bumper cover -arrows b-.

– Press clips -2- together -arrows b-.

– Pull off wheel arch cover -1- from side panel -arrow d-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Renew damaged clips -2- and grommets -4-.

– Press cover -1- with clips -2- into grommets -4- on vehicle.

– Press retaining hooks -5- into bumper cover.

– Tighten bolts -3-.

Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “3.2 Assembly overview - wheel arch covers”, page 354

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

3.10 Removing and installing underbody heat shield

⇒ “3.10.1 Removing and installing underbody heat shield”, page 377

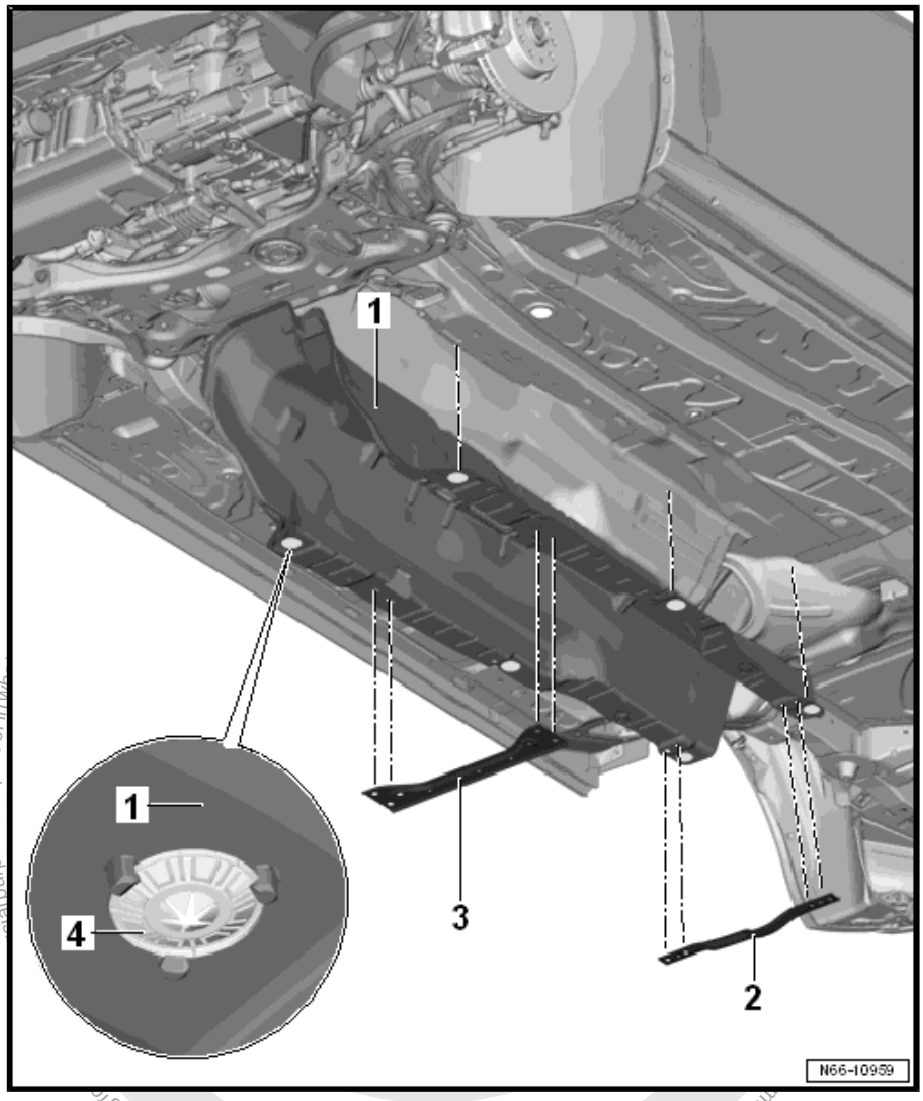
⇒ “3.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for centre exhaust system”, page 378

⇒ “3.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer”, page 379

3.10.1 Removing and installing underbody heat shield

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Removing centre underbody panel ⇒ page 385 .

– Remove tunnel cross-piece at front and rear -2 and 3- ⇒ page 391 .

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this repair manual. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove rear exhaust system ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust system/ silencer; Assembly overview - silencers .
– Detach lock washers -4- (qty. 6) and remove tunnel heat shield -1- to the back.

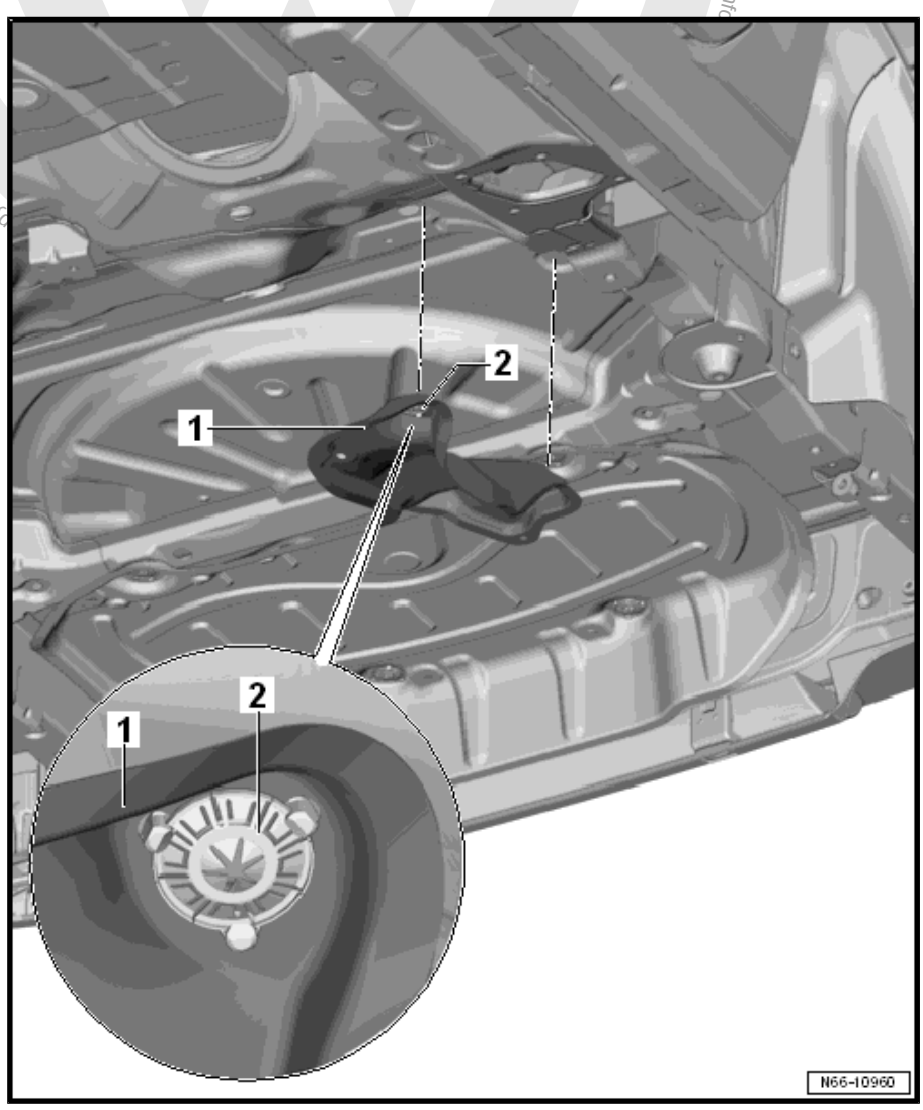
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

3.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for centre exhaust system

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.



Removing

– Remove rear exhaust system ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust system/ silencer; Assembly overview - silencers .
– Loosen clamping washers -2-.
– Remove heat shield -1-.

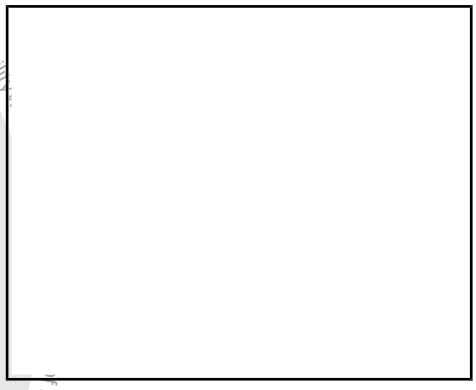
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

3.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A-

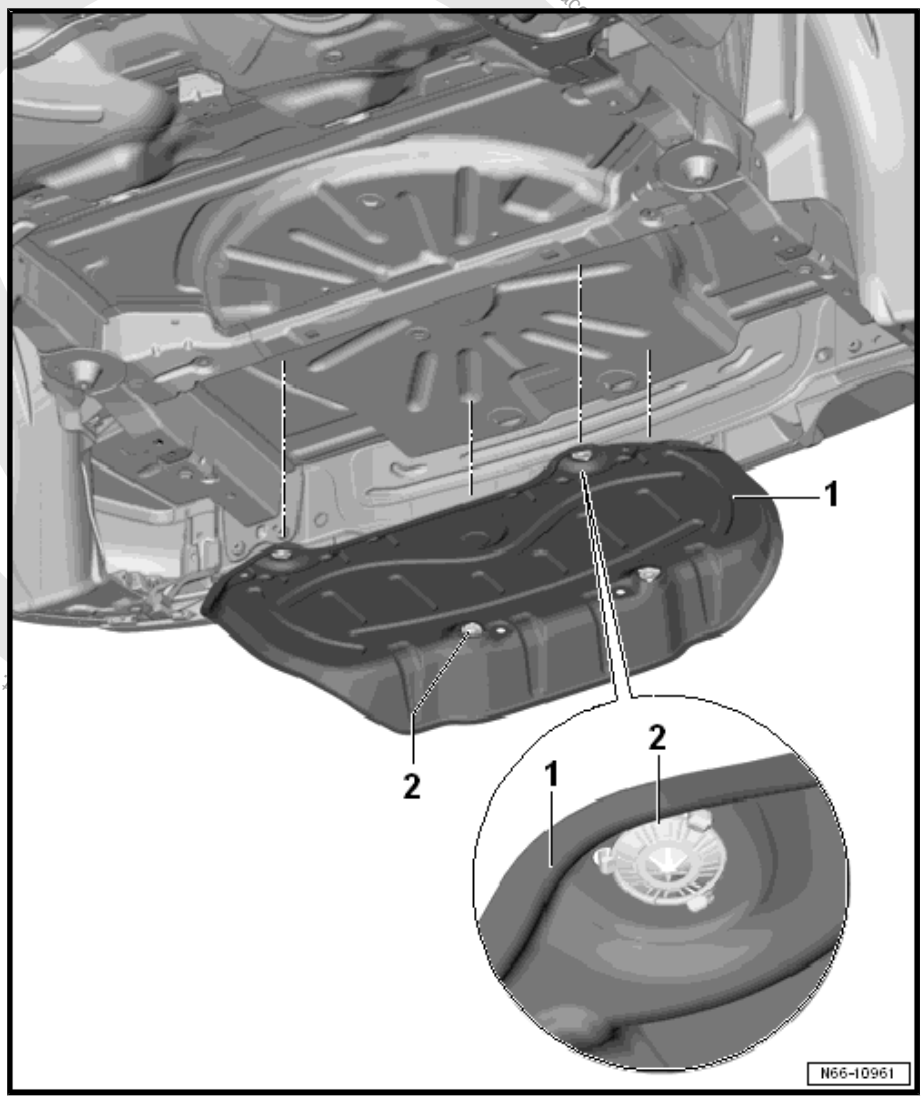


Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Loosen bracket for rear silencer and slightly lower using the engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A- ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Assembly overview - silencer .

– Loosen clamping washers -2-.

– Remove heat shield -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

4 Noise insulation

⇒ “4.1 Assembly overview - noise insulation”, page 381

4.1 Assembly overview - noise insulation

⇒ “4.1.1 Assembly overview - short noise insulation”, page 381

⇒ “4.1.2 Assembly overview - long noise insulation”, page 382

⇒ “4.1.3 Assembly overview - noise insulation extension”, page 383

⇒ “4.1.4 Assembly overview - skid plate”, page 384

4.1.1 Assembly overview - short noise insulation

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

1 - Short noise insulation

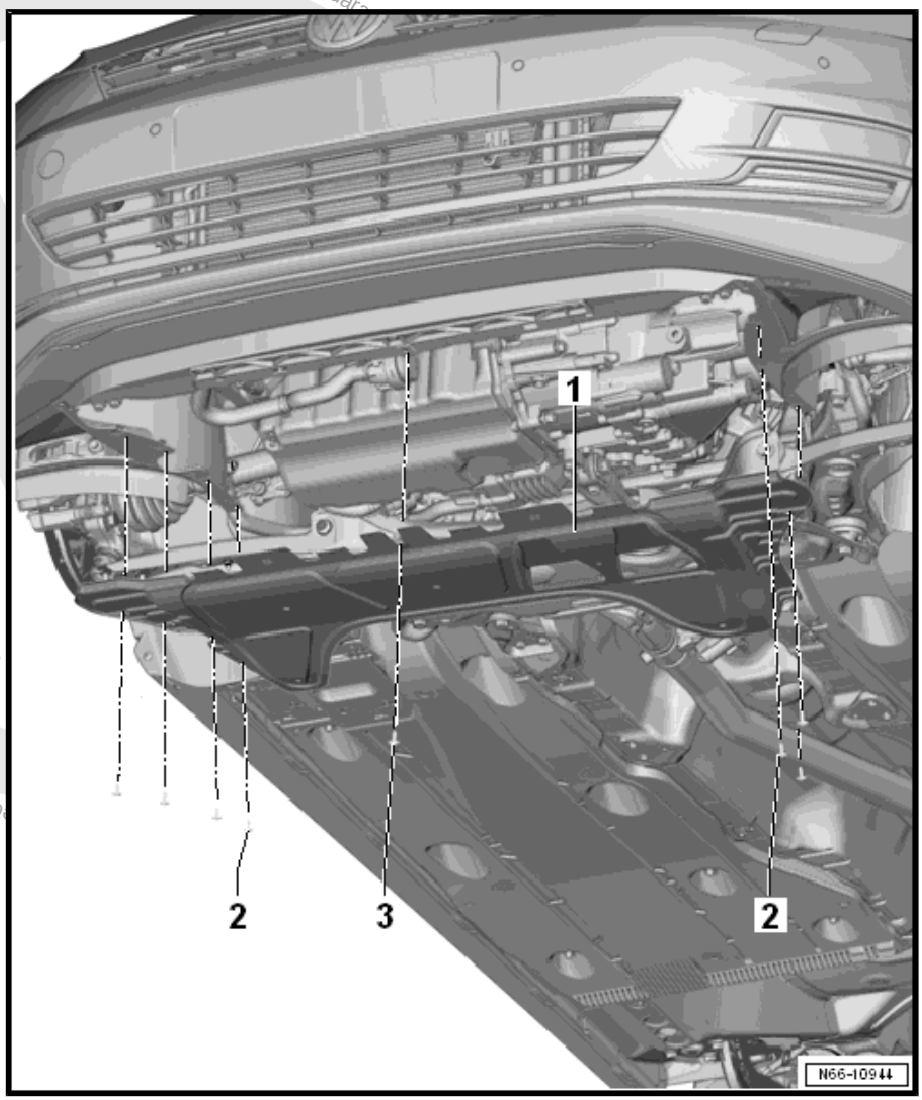
- ❑ Removing:
- – Unscrew bolts -2- and -3-.
- – Pull out noise insulation off lock carrier to the back.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3 left
- ❑ Qty. 4 right
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 1 on lock carrier
- ❑ 1 Nm



4.1.2 Assembly overview - long noise insulation

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.

1 - Short noise insulation

- ❑ Removing:
- – Remove bolts -2-, -3- and -4-.
- – Pull out noise insulation off lock carrier to the back.

2 - Bolt

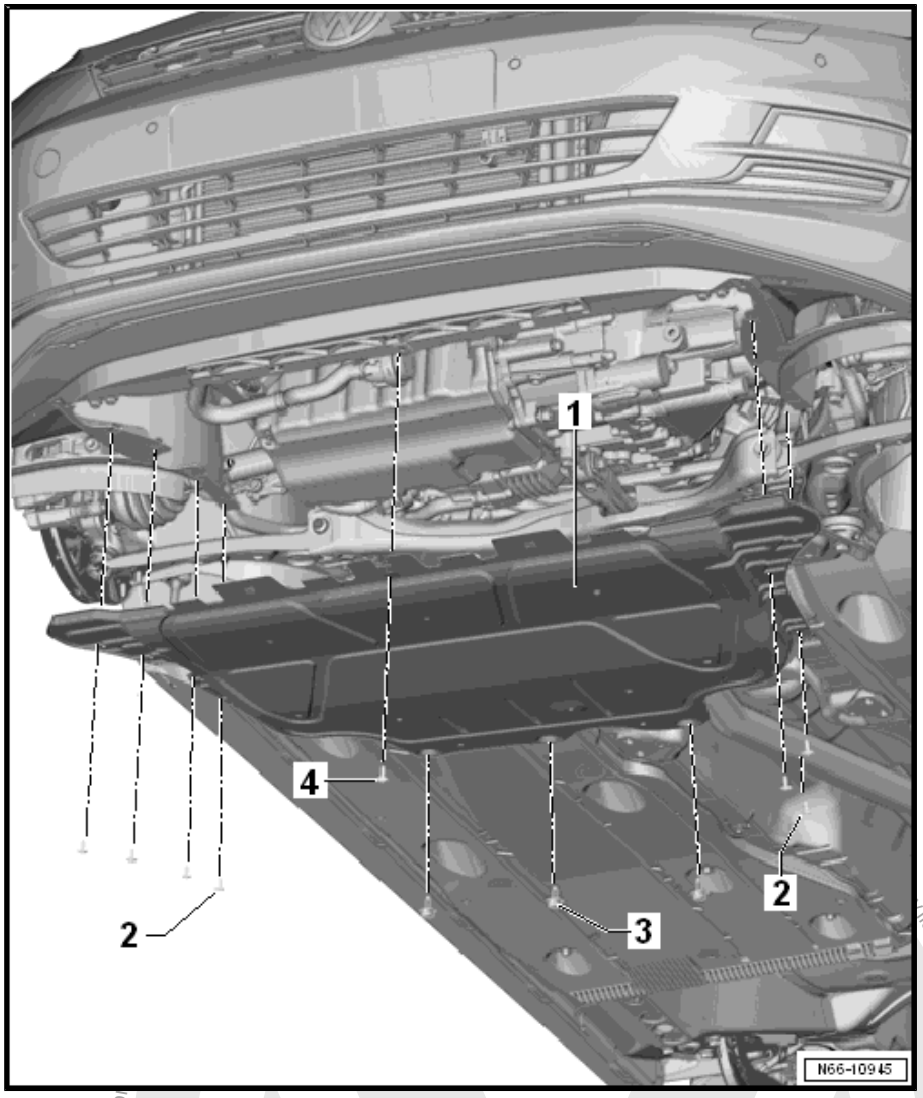
- ❑ Qty. 3 left
- ❑ Qty. 4 right
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Micro-encapsulated; renew after each removal
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 1 on lock carrier
- ❑ 1 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

4.1.3 Assembly overview - noise insulation extension

1 - Noise insulation extension

- ❑ Removing:
- – Release clips -2- and unscrew bolts -3-.
- – Remove noise insulation from subframe.

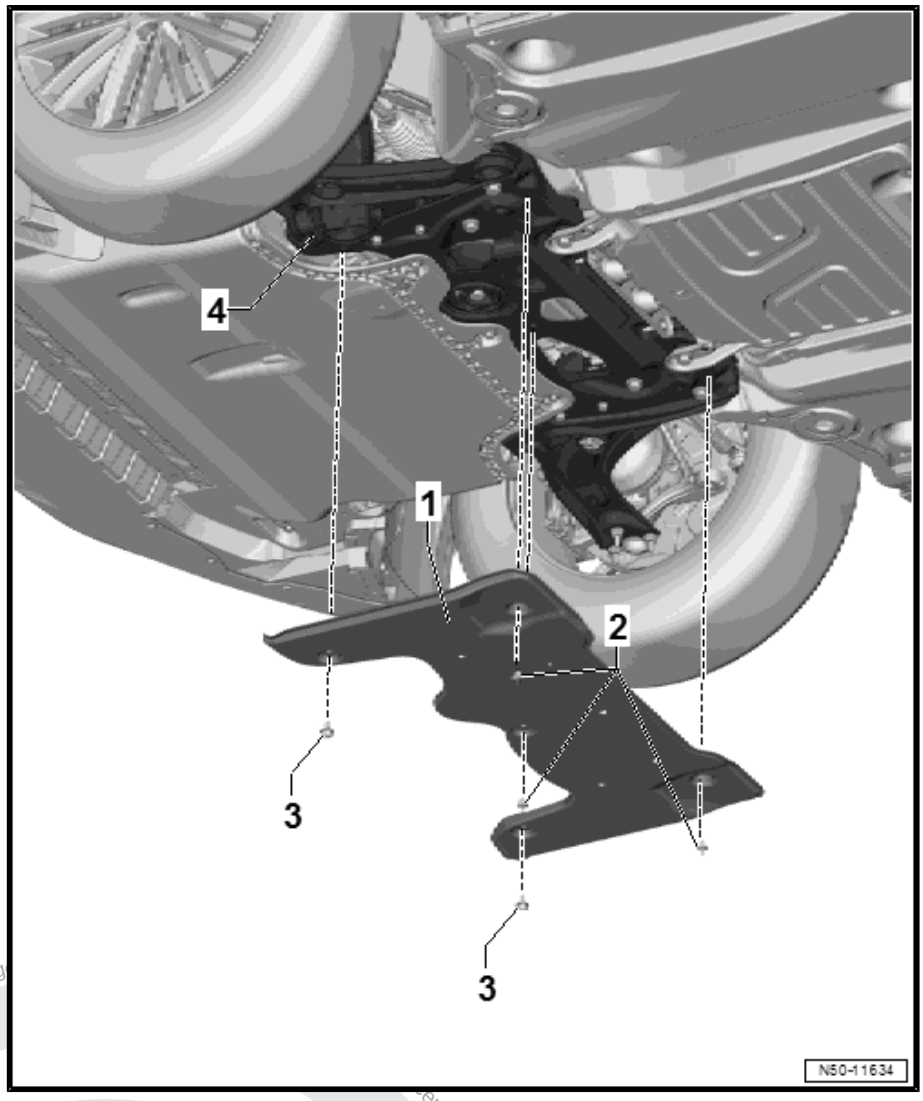
2 - Clip

- ❑ Qty. 3

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Micro-encapsulated; renew after each removal
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 6.0 Nm

4 - Subframe

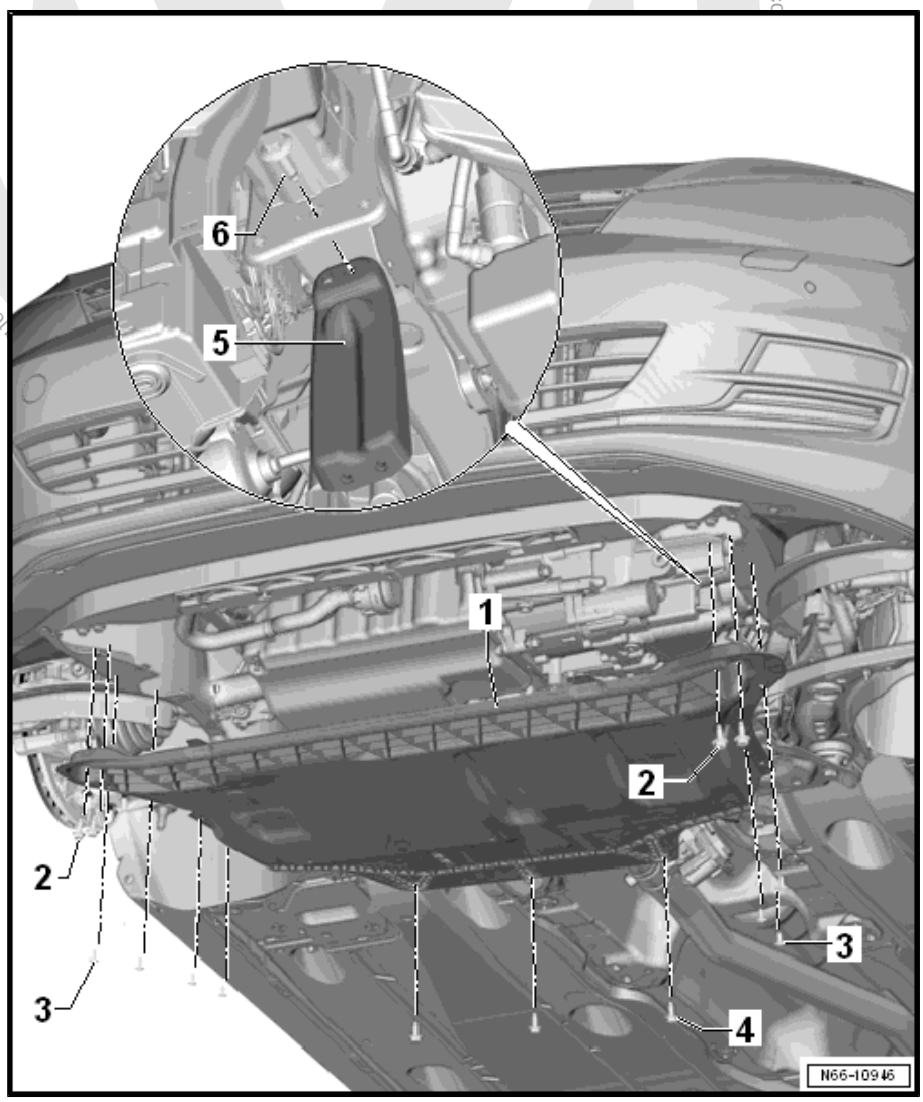


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4.1.4 Assembly overview - skid plate

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.



1 - Underbody protection

- ❑ Removing:
- – Remove bolts -2-, -3- and -4-.
- – Pull out noise insulation off lock carrier to the back.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2 each on left and right
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3 left
- ❑ Qty. 4 right
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Micro-encapsulated; renew after each removal
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 20 Nm

5 - Skid plate bracket

- ❑ Left and right

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 1 on each side
- ❑ 20 Nm

for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the co

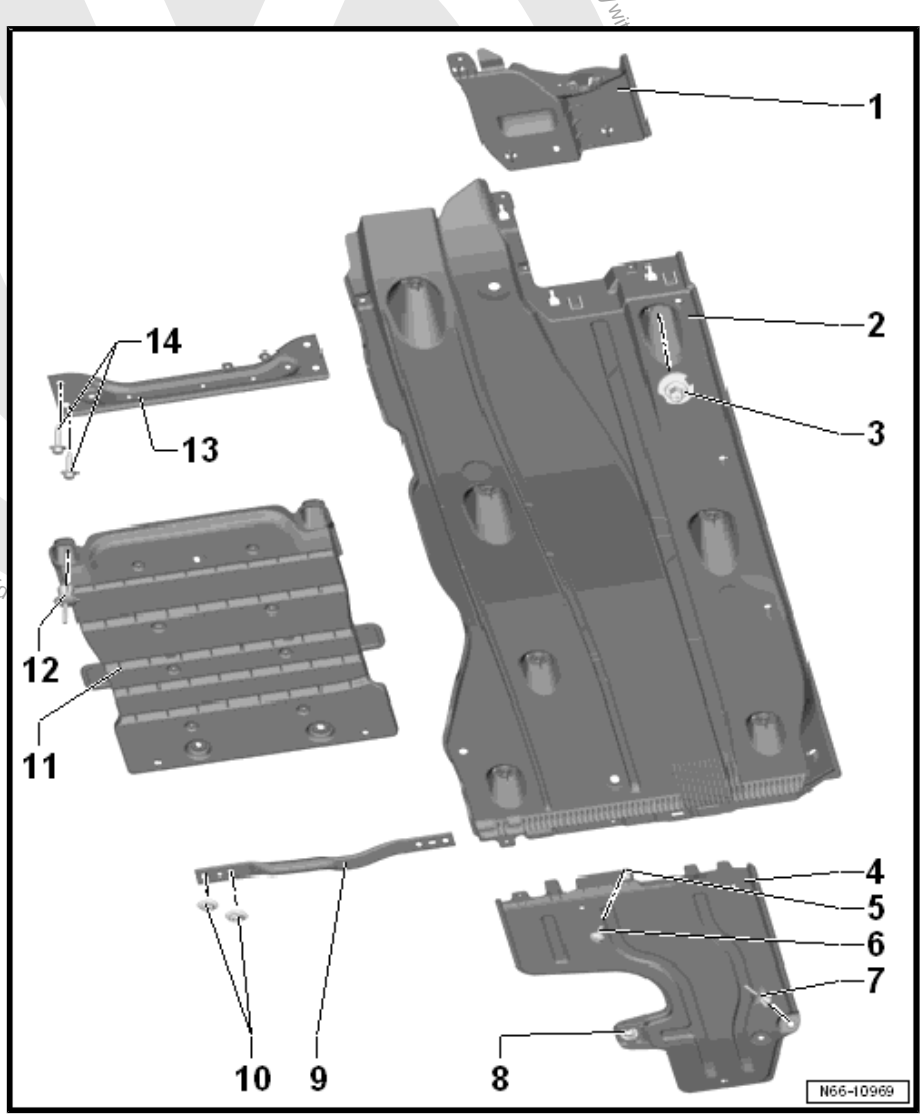
5 Underbody cladding

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim”, page 385

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing underbody cladding”, page 386

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece”, page 391

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim



1 - Front cover
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 386

2 - Underbody trim panels
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 386

3 - Nut
- ❑ With captive
- ❑ Qty. 7 on each side
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

4 - Rear underbody cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 390

5 - Speed nut

6 - Bolt
- ❑ (2 Nm)

7 - Spreader rivet

8 - Clamping washer

9 - Rear tunnel cross-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

10 - Nut
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 20 Nm

11 - Centre underbody panels
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 386

12 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ Qty. 4

13 - Front tunnel cross-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 391

14 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ 20 Nm

Copyright. Commercial use or private copying is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with

5.2 Removing and installing underbody cladding

⇒ “5.2.1 Removing and installing underbody cladding”, page 386

⇒ “5.2.2 Removing and installing centre underbody cladding”, page 388

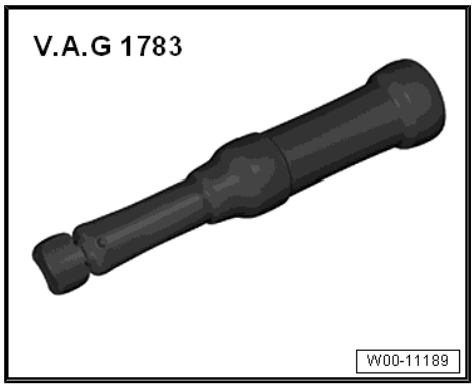
⇒ “5.2.3 Removing and installing short centre underbody cladding”, page 388

⇒ “5.2.4 Removing and installing rear underbody panel”, page 390

5.2.1 Removing and installing underbody cladding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

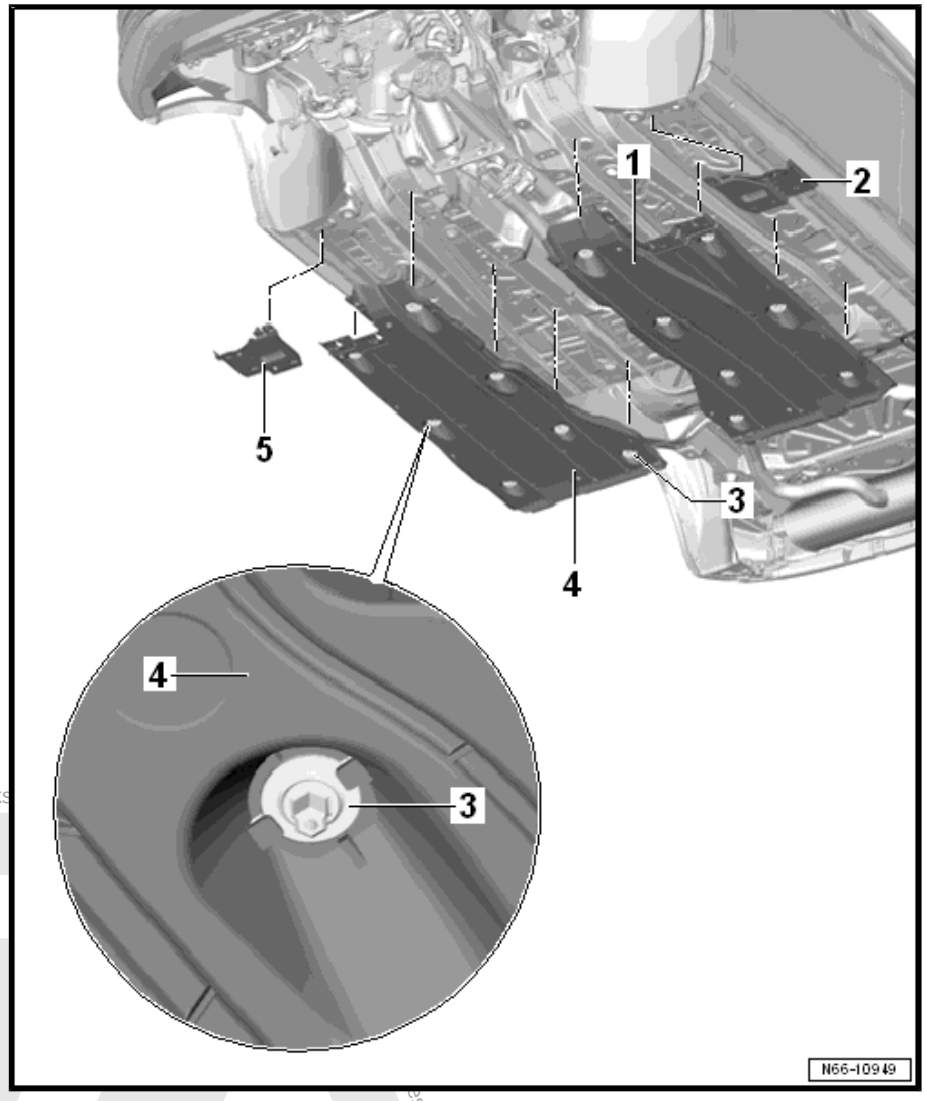
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove centre underbody panels ⇒ page 386 .

– Release retaining tab and pull out front cover -2- or -5- in direction of travel backwards off catches.

– Unscrew nuts -3-.

– Remove underbody panel -1- or -4-.

Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

Specified torque

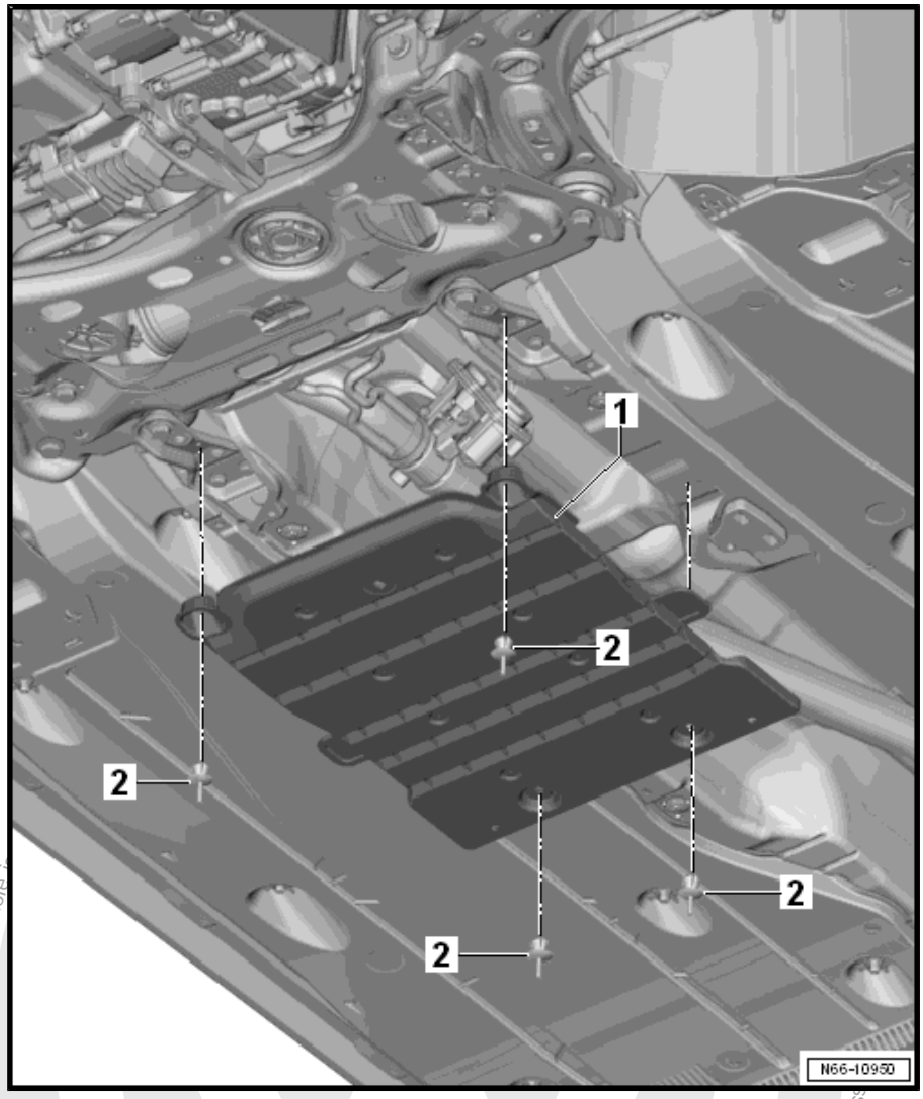
- ⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim”, page 385

Protected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
With respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.2.2 Removing and installing centre underbody cladding

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.



Removing

Unclip spreader rivet -2- and remove centre underbody cladding.

Installing

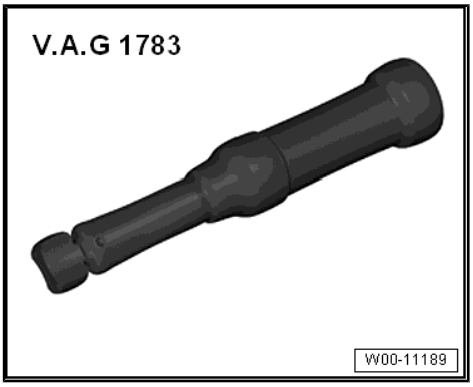
Installation is carried out in reverse order.

5.2.3 Removing and installing short centre underbody cladding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

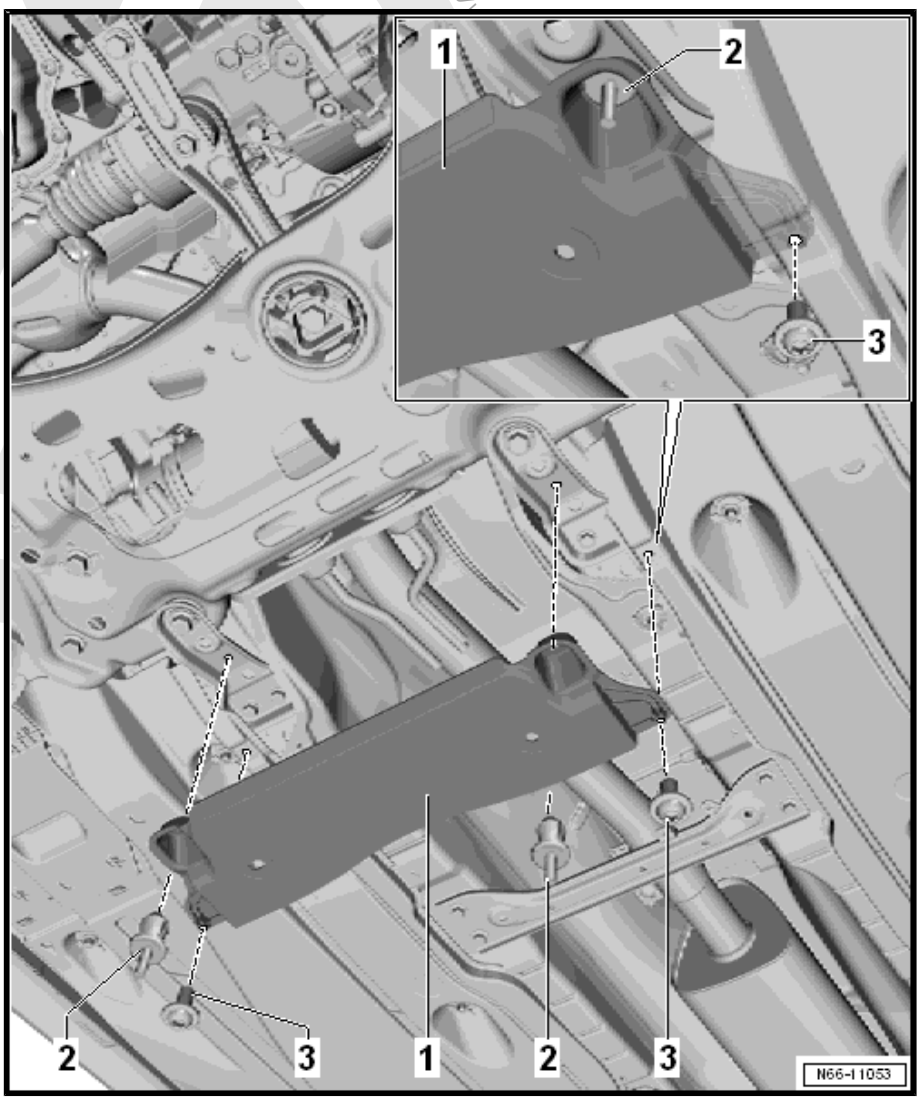
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.



Removing

Unclip spreader rivet -2- and remove centre underbody cladding.

– Unscrew bolt -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

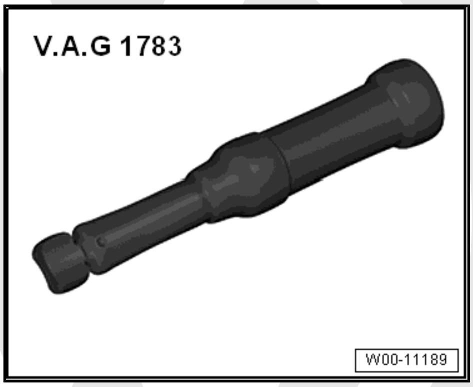
Specified torques

- ⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim”, page 385

5.2.4 Removing and installing rear underbody panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

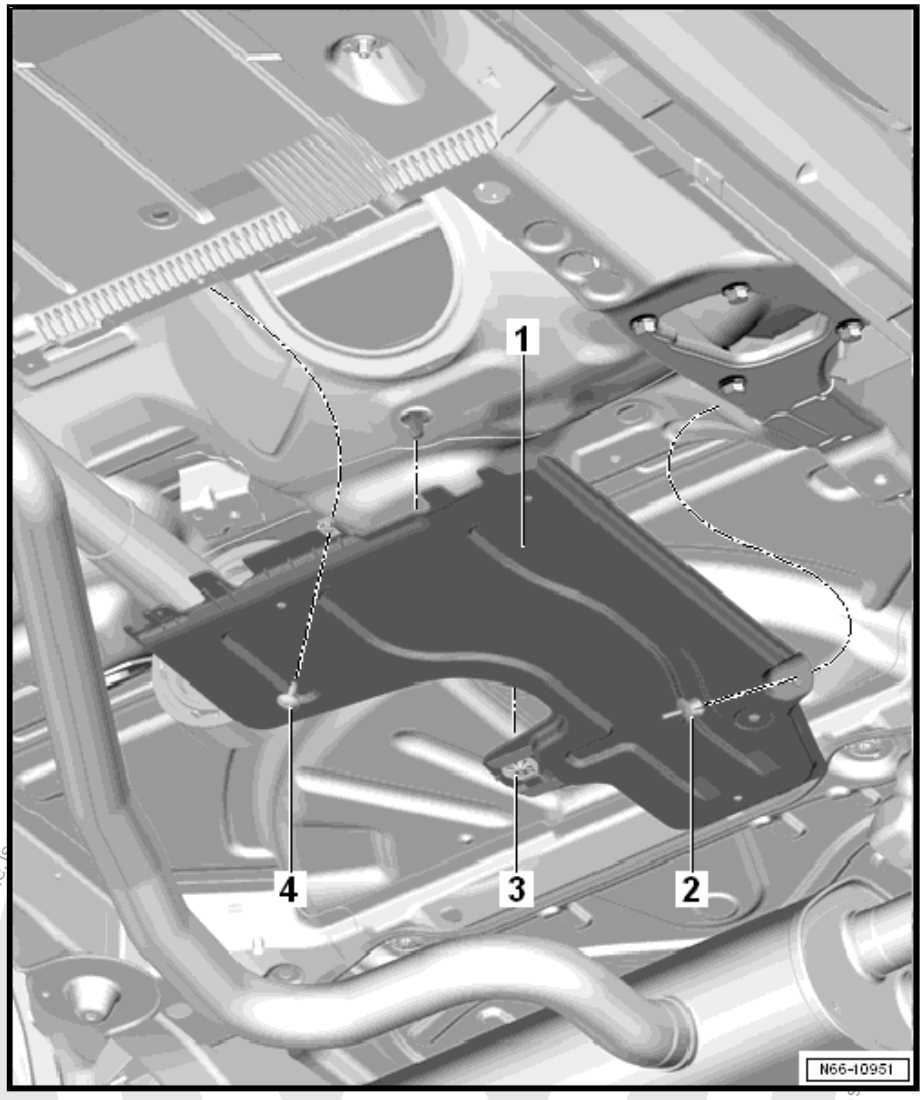
♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

Slight discrepancies may need to be allowed for depending on the type of engine.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Loosen lock washer -3-.
– Unclip spreader rivet -2- and remove bolt -4-.
– Remove rear underbody panel -1-.

Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

Specified torques

- ⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim”, page 385

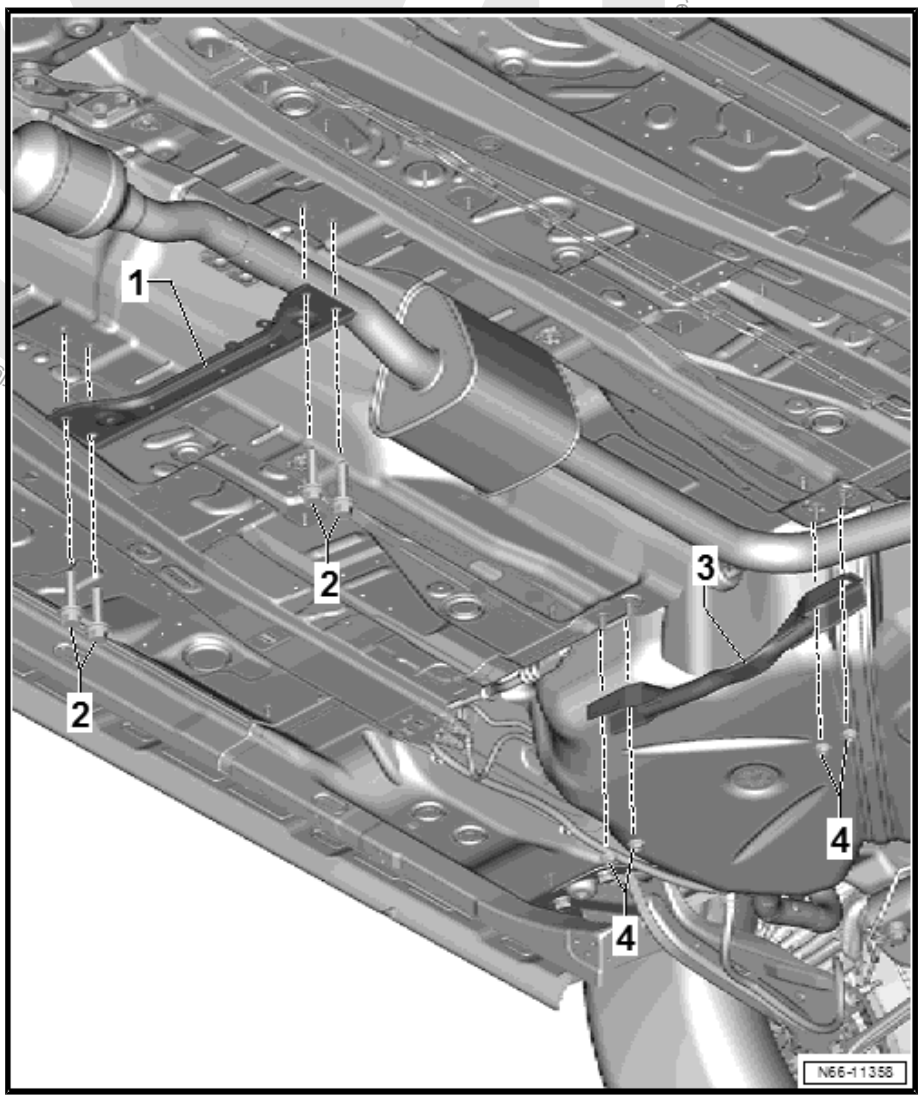
5.3 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gu

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Removing front tunnel cross-piece

– If fitted, remove centre underbody cladding ⇒ page 386 .

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Remove front tunnel cross-piece -1-.

Removing rear tunnel cross-piece

– If fitted, remove centre underbody cladding ⇒ page 386 .

– Remove hexagon nuts -4-.
– Remove front tunnel cross-piece -3-.

Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal observing the following:

Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - trim”, page 385

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

6 Roof moulding and roof railing

⇒ “6.1 Assembly overview - roof railing”, page 394

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing roof railing”, page 395

6.1 Assembly overview - roof railing

...ess authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or acce...
...spect to the correctness of inform...

1 - Roof railing

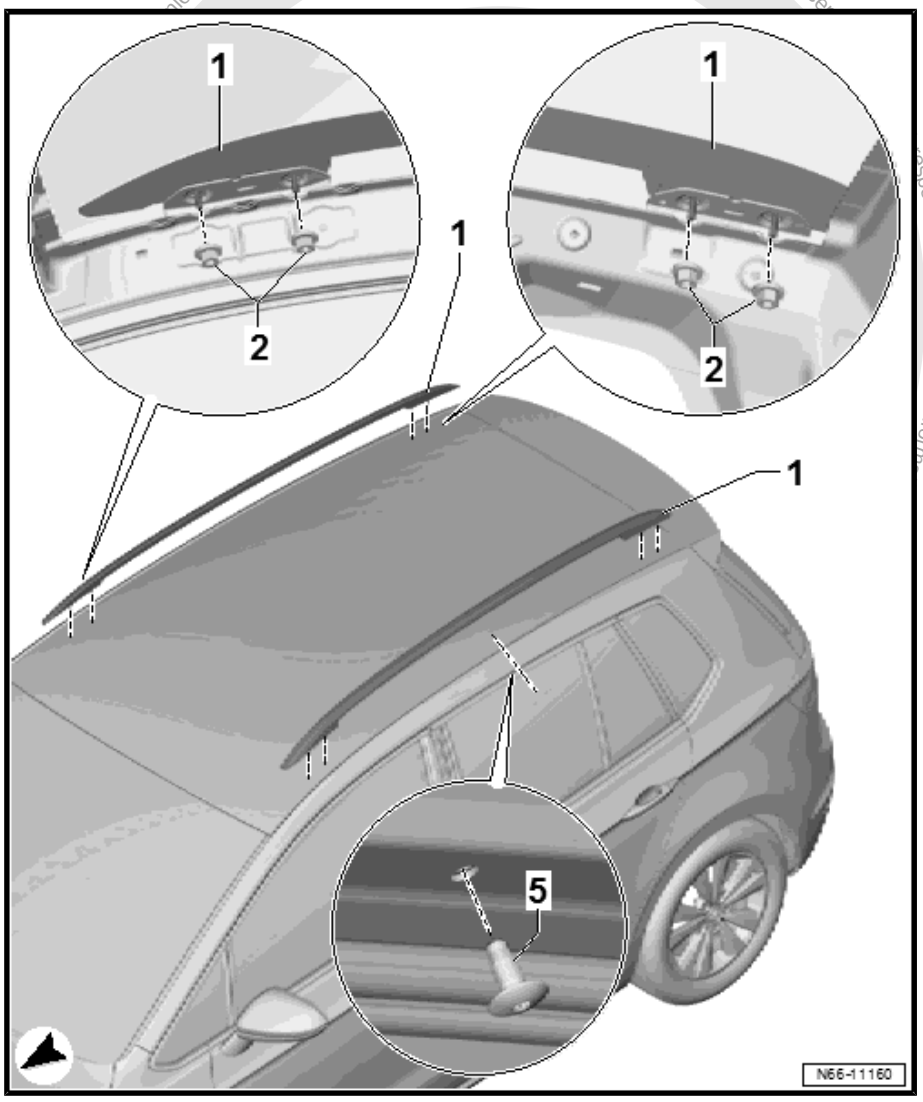
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 395

2 - Nut

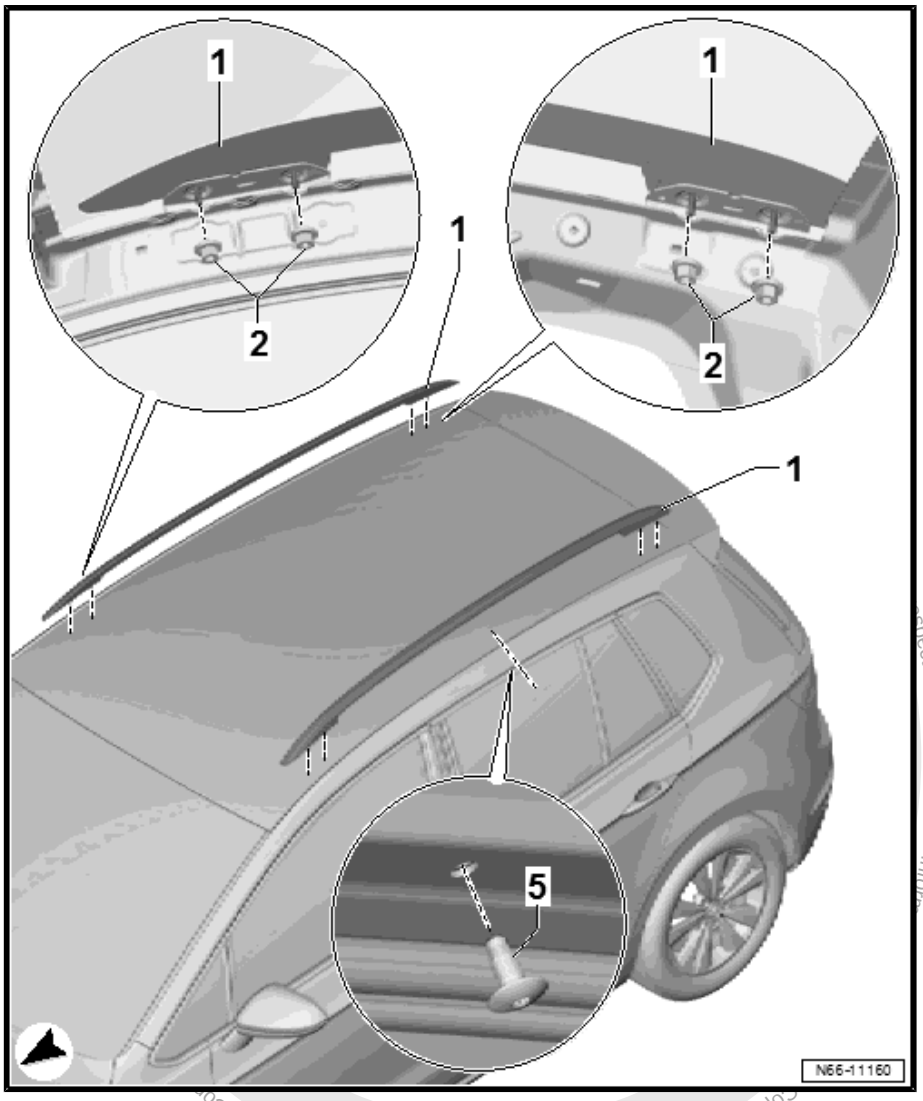
- ❑ Qty. 4 on each side
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Sealing plug for roof rack from accessories



6.2 Removing and installing roof railing



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim .

– Unscrew hexagon nuts -2- at front and rear.

– Remove roof railing -1- straight upwards.

Installing

– Check seal for damage and ensure proper seating.

– Position roof railing -1- straight from above.

– Tighten hexagon nuts -2- at front and rear.

Specified torques

♦ ⇒ “6.1 Assembly overview - roof railing”, page 394

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Any private or commercial presentation, reproduction or publication in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

7 Exterior mirror

⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror”, page 396

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror”, page 397

⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass”, page 400

⇒ “7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit”, page 402

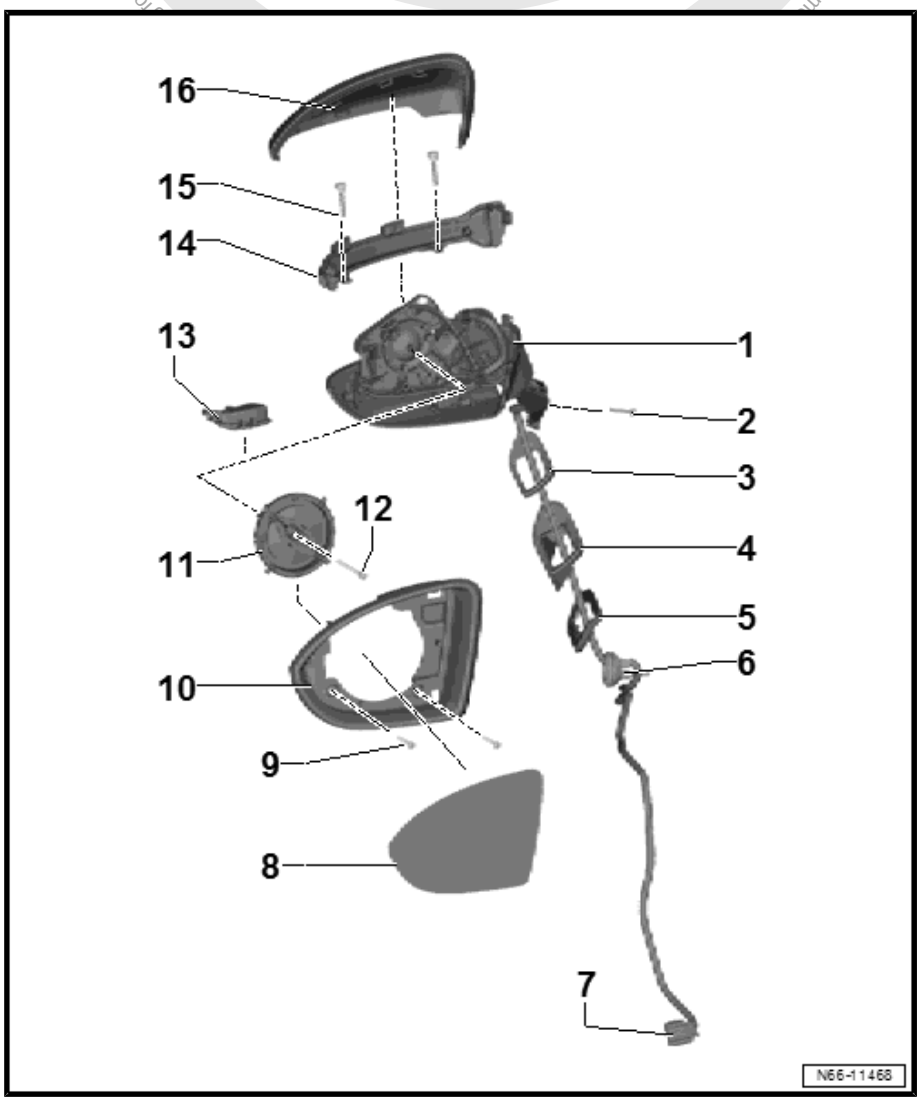
⇒ “7.5 Removing and installing mirror cover”, page 404

⇒ “7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim”, page 405

7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The right side is similar.



1 - Mirror mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 397

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ 12 Nm

3 - Seal
- ❑ Between mirror mounting and cover

4 - Cover

5 - Seal
- ❑ Between cover and outer door panel

6 - Grommet

7 - Connector

8 - Mirror glass
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 400

9 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.0 Nm

10 - Mirror frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 405

11 - Adjuster unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 402

12 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 1
- ❑ 1.0 Nm

13 - Ambient light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Removing and installing entry light in exterior mirror

14 - Turn signal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Removing and installing turn signal

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.0 Nm

16 - Mirror cover

- ❑ Material: ABS
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 404

7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror

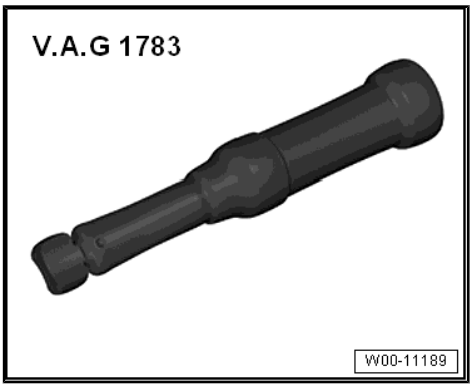
⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing exterior mirror", page 397

⇒ "7.2.2 Preparing exterior mirror for painting", page 399

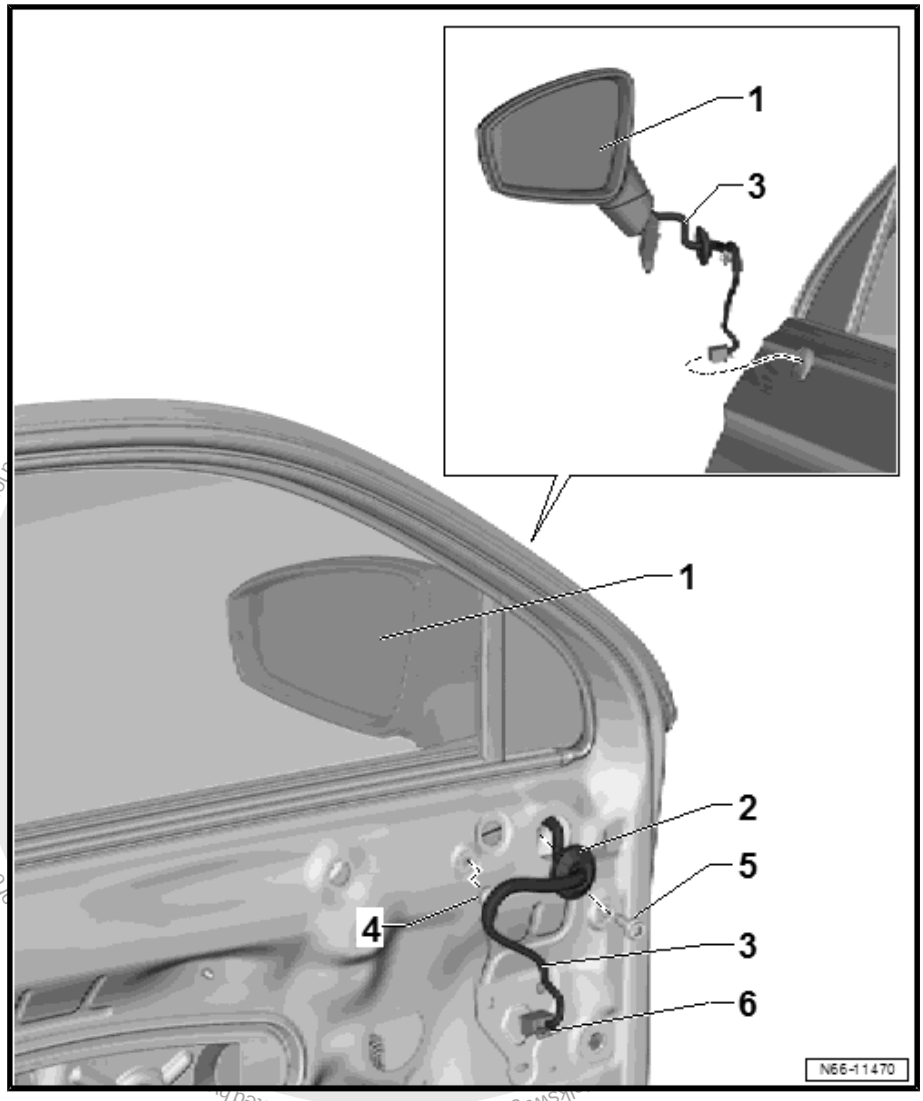
7.2.1 Removing and installing exterior mirror

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by ... Volkswagen AG.

Removing

Note

- *The removal and installation sequence is for the left exterior mirror only. The right side is similar.*
- *The cables and connectors in a new exterior mirror are always ready for the highest equipment level.*
- *Any superfluous connectors are secured to prevent noise.*

– Remove front door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Front door trims; Removing and installing front door trim .

– Separate electrical connector -6- for exterior mirror -1- on door control unit.

– Detach electrical wire -3- from retainers -4- and guide through opening -2- in door.

– Unscrew bolt -5- for exterior mirror -1-.

– Remove exterior mirror -1- and guide out wire -3- through door.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

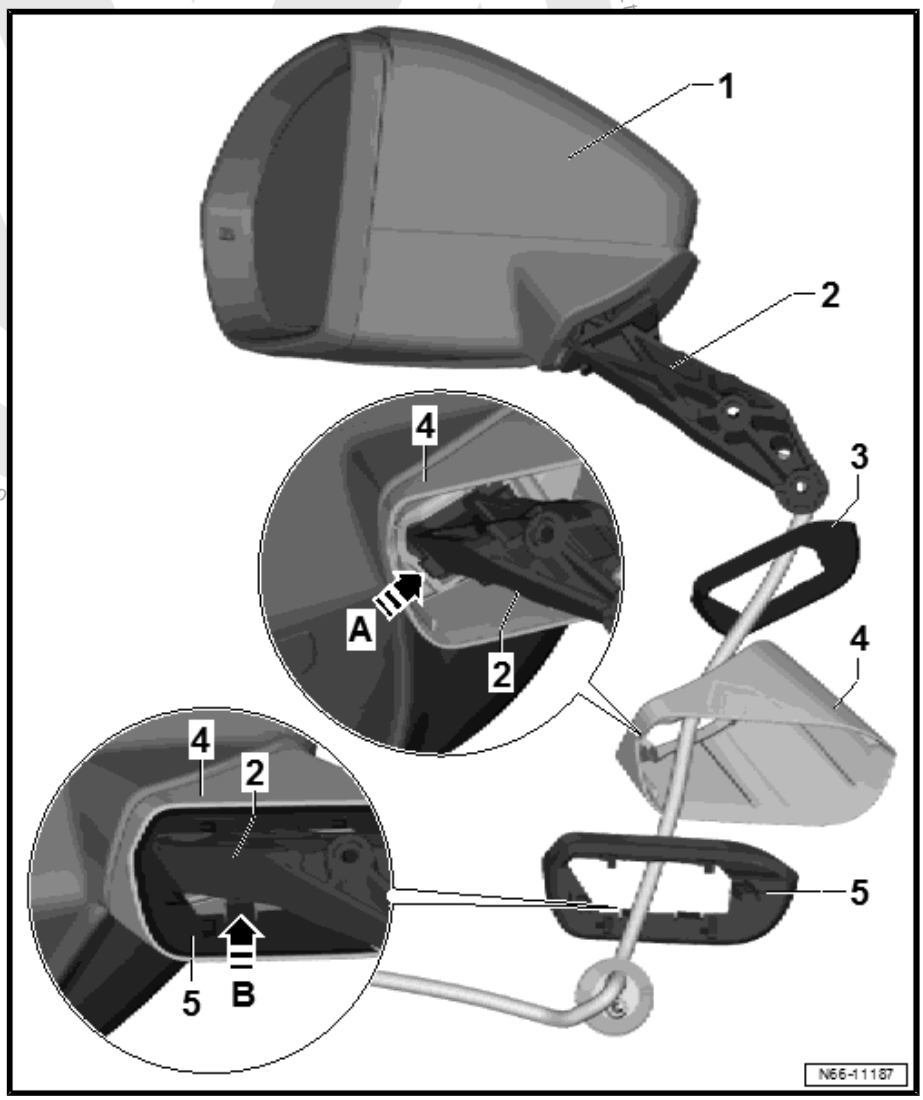
Copyright: Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect

– Prepare exterior mirror for painting ⇒ page 399 .
– Grommet -2- must be inserted properly.
– Then check function.

Specified torques

♦ ⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror”, page 396

7.2.2 Preparing exterior mirror for painting



Removing

– Remove mirror cover ⇒ page 404 .
– Remove turn signal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Removing and installing turn signal .
– Detach seal -5- at retaining hook -arrow B-, and pull seal off cap -4-.
– Pull seal off wire.
– Detach cap -4- at retaining hook -arrow A-, and pull it off wire.
– Pull seal -3- off cap -4-.

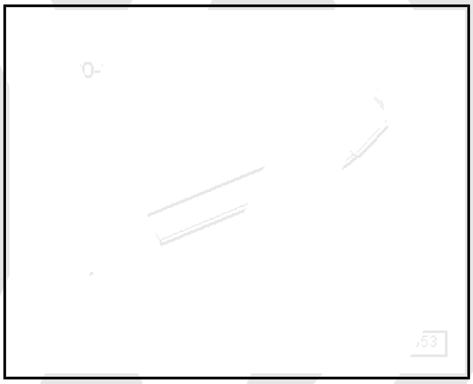
Installing

– Installation is carried out in reverse order.

7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass

Special tools and workshop equipment required

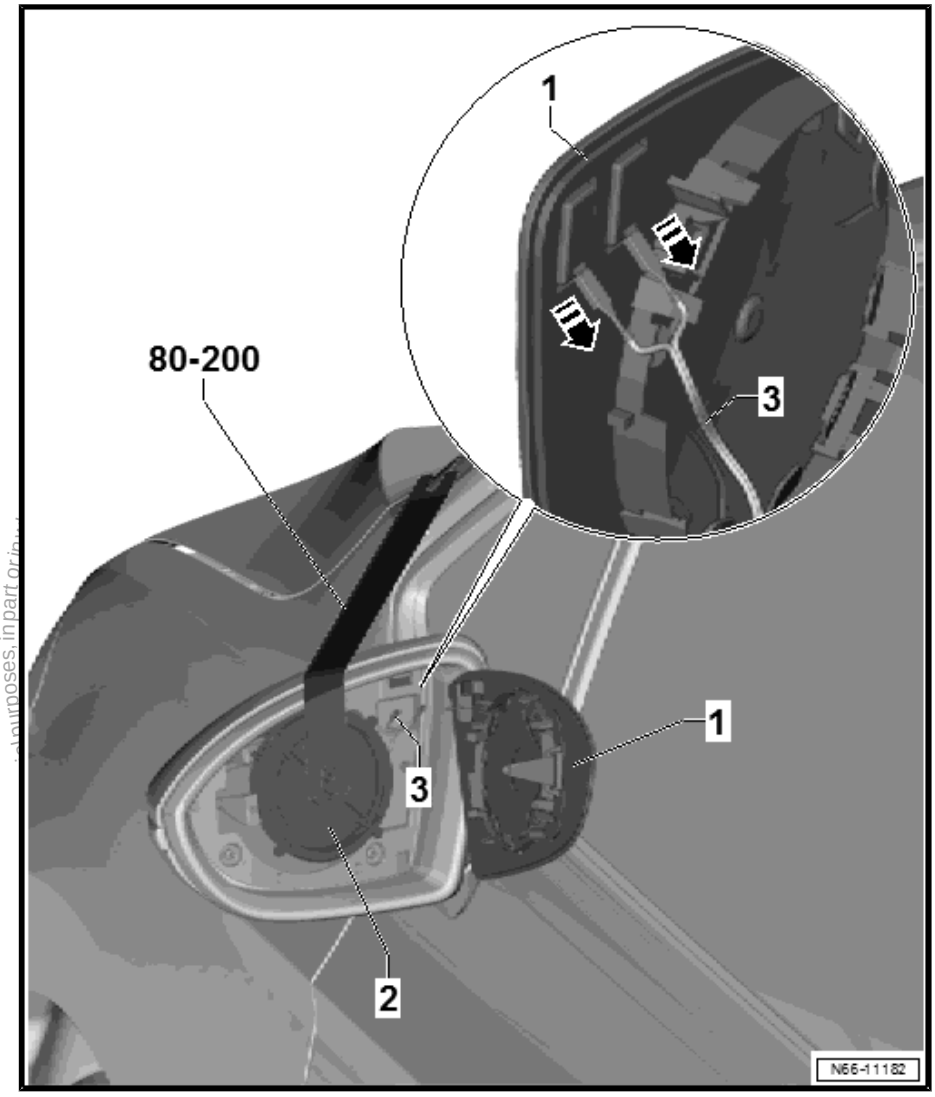
- ♦ Assembly lever - 80-200-



Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left mirror glass. The right side is similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes caused by glass splinters.
Risk of cuts.
- **Wear protective goggles.**
- **Wear protective gloves.**

– Protect housing edges to prevent damage to paintwork with, for example, textile-reinforced adhesive tape.

– Press bottom of mirror glass -1- into mirror housing.

– Press mirror glass -1- off adjuster unit -2- using the removal lever - 80-200- .

– Swivel mirror glass -1- to side and detach connectors -3- for electric mirror heating on back of mirror glass -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Fit connector contacts -3- on mirror glass -1-.

– Push mirror glass -1- centrally onto adjustment unit -2- in housing.

Mirror glass engages audibly.

Note

When fitting the mirror glass, only press on the centre of the mirror.

– Then check function.

7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

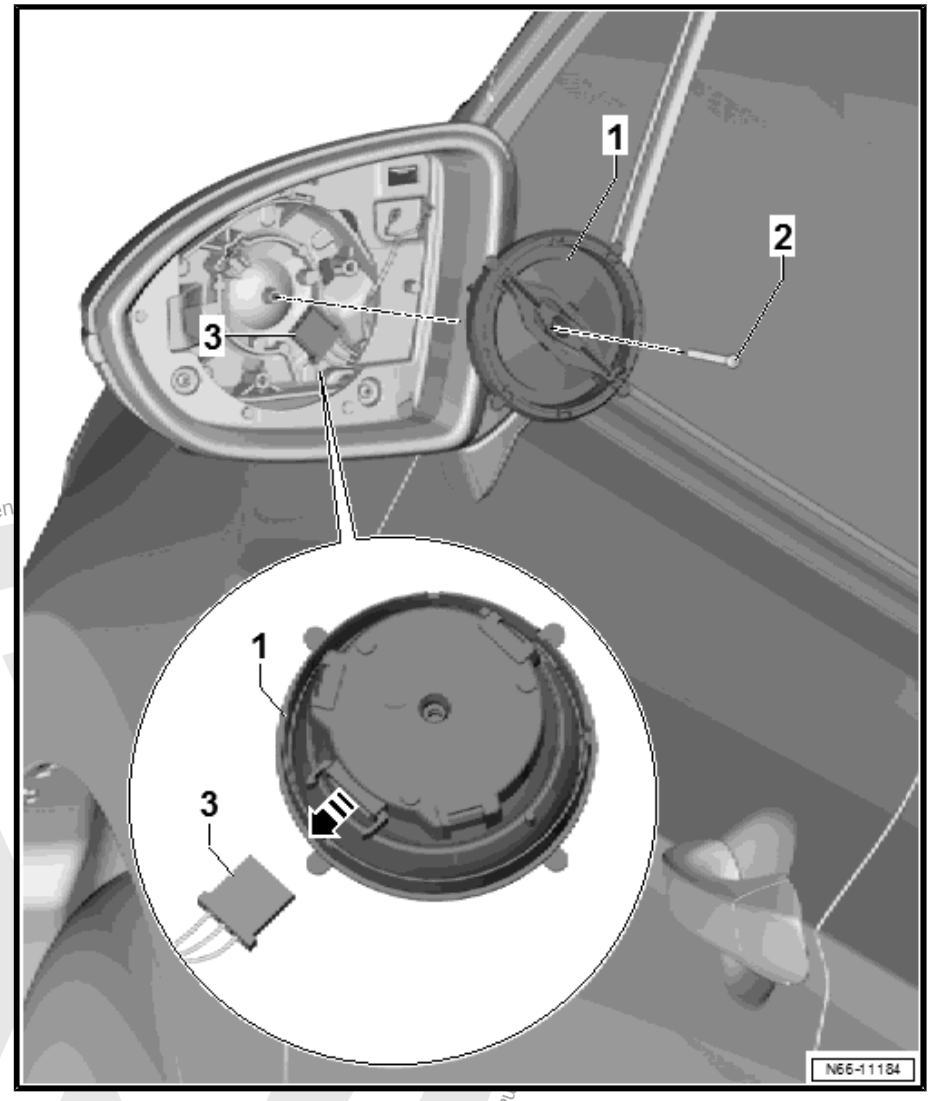
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

The removal and installation sequence is only for the left adjustment unit with motor. The right side is similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 400 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- (qty. 1), and remove adjustment unit -1- from mirror mounting.

– Swivel adjustment unit together with motor -1- to the side and pull off connector -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Attach connector -3- to adjusting unit -1-.

– Fit adjustment unit -1- to mirror mounting, and secure it by tightening bolt -2- (qty. 1).

– Install mirror glass
⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass”, page 400 .

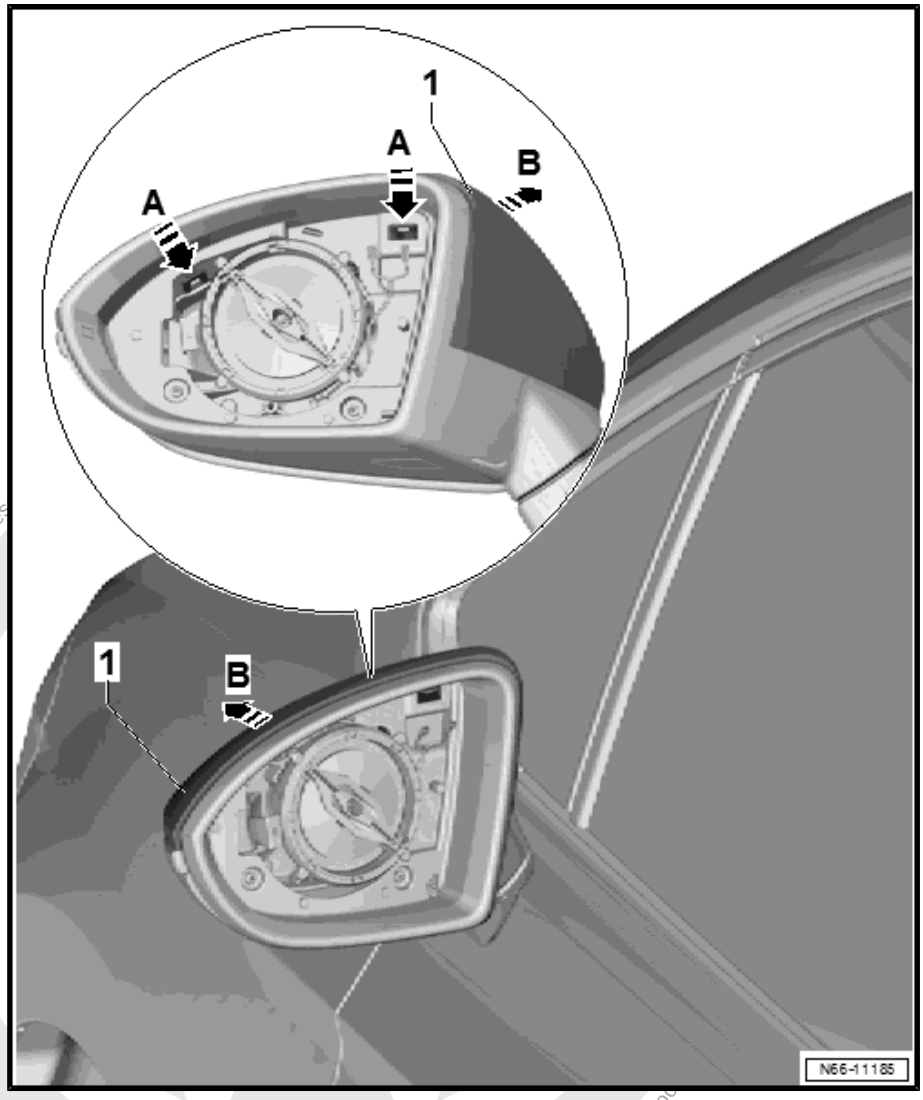
Specified torques

◆ ⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror”, page 396

7.5 Removing and installing mirror cover

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left mirror cover. The right side is similar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 400 .
– Release locking hooks -arrows A-.
– Pull mirror cover -1- in -direction of arrow B- off mirror mounting.

Installing

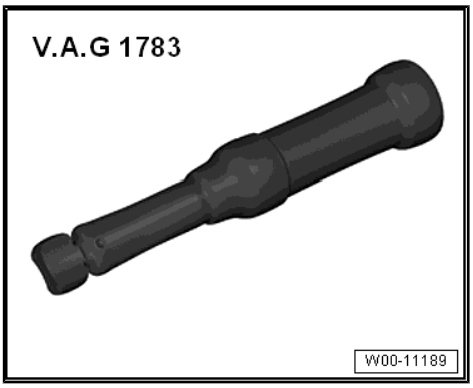
Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Position mirror cover -1- and press on until locking hooks engage audibly.
– Install mirror glass
⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass”, page 400 .

7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

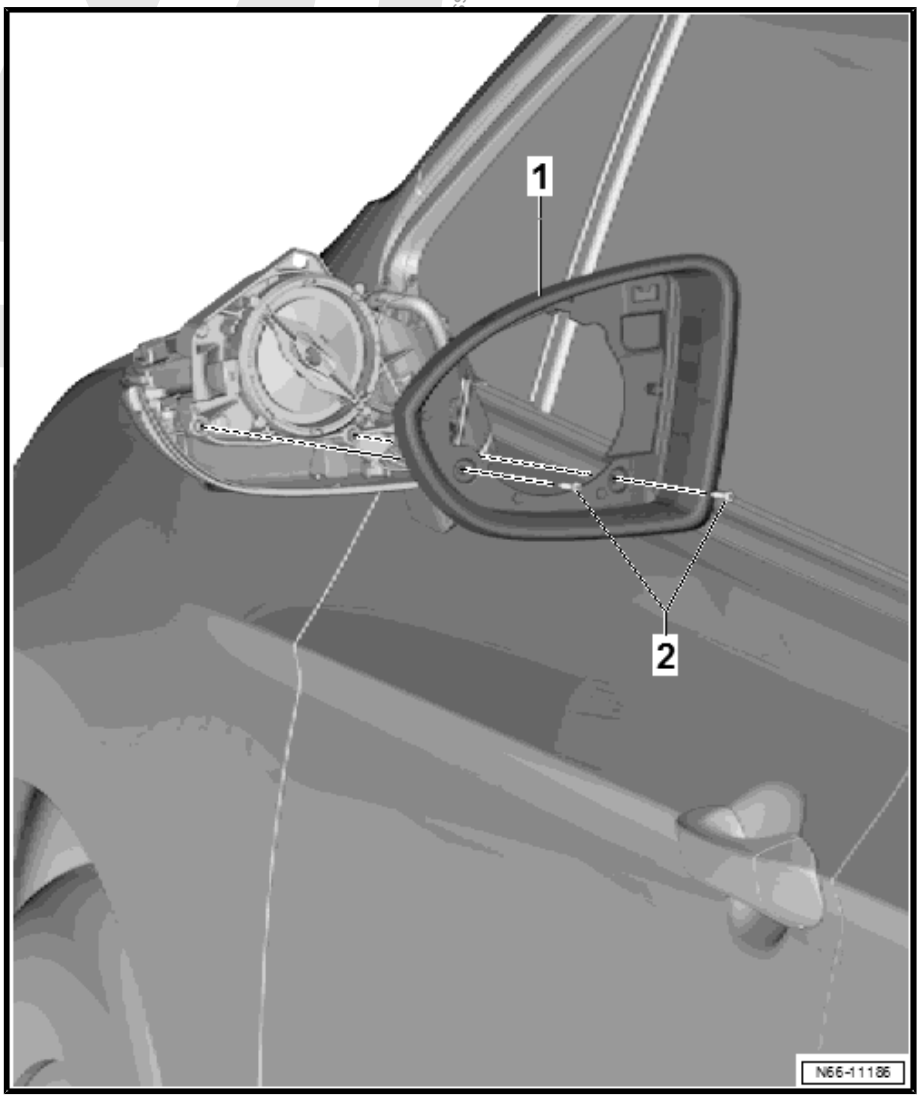
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

Note

Removal and installation are described only for the left mirror trim. The right side is similar.



Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 400 .

– Remove mirror cover ⇒ page 404 .

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Then check function.

Specified torques

♦ ⇒ “7.1 Assembly overview - exterior mirror”, page 396

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

8 Wheel housing liner

⇒ “8.1 Assembly overview - front wheel housing liner”, page 407

⇒ “8.2 Assembly overview - rear wheel housing liner”, page 408

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing front wheel housing liner”, page 409

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing rear wheel housing liner”, page 411

8.1 Assembly overview - front wheel housing liner

Note

- *Minor differences may be encountered in respect of front wheel housing liner, depending on vehicle model.*
- *The illustrations show the left-hand side. Adapt accordingly for the right-hand side.*

1 - Front wheel housing liner
- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

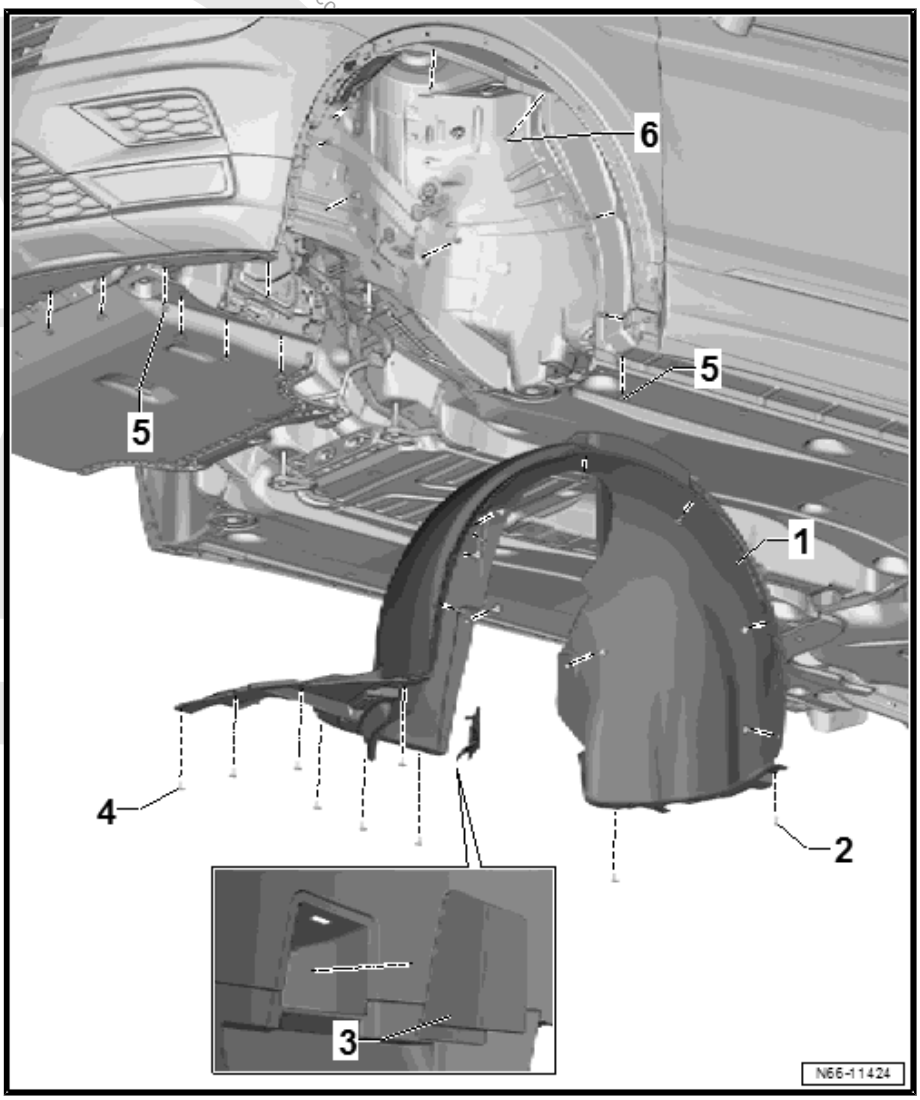
2 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 12 on each side
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

3 - Cover
- ❑ Can be removed individually

4 - Bolts
- ❑ Qty. 7 on each side
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

5 - Speed nuts
- ❑ Qty. 7 on each side

6 - Expanding nuts
- ❑ 8 on each side

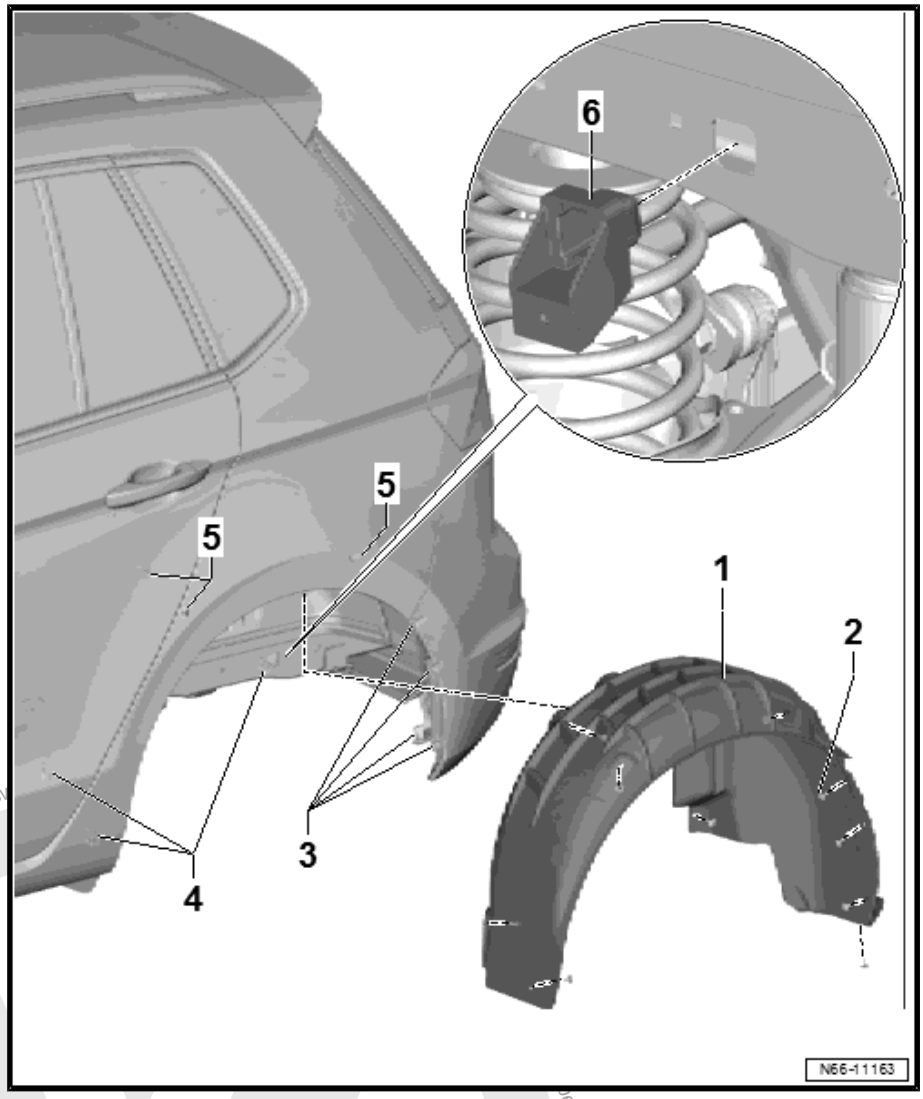


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

8.2 Assembly overview - rear wheel housing liner

Note

- *Minor differences may be encountered in respect of front wheel housing liner, depending on vehicle model.*
- *The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*



1 - Rear wheel housing liner
- ❑ Material PP/EPDM.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 411

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Qty. 10 on each side
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

3 - Speed nuts
- ❑ Qty. 4 on each side, at bumper

4 - Expanding nuts
- ❑ Qty. 3 on each side

5 - Expansion nut
- ❑ Qty. 3 on each side
- ❑ Gas-tight.
- ❑ The expanding nut seals the interior against exhaust gases and must always be renewed in the event of damage.

6 - Adapter
- ❑ On right side only, not for petrol engines
- ❑ Mounting prior to installing the rear wheel housing liner -1-

Assembly overview - sill panel cover

Note

The illustrations show the left-hand side. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ect to the correctness of information in this document.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Side member cover

- ❑ Removing:
- ❑ Release rear wheel housing liner ⇒ page 409 .
- ❑ Unscrew bolts -2- and remove sill panel cover downwards.
- ❑ Installing:

Note

Check spreader nut for renew if necessary.

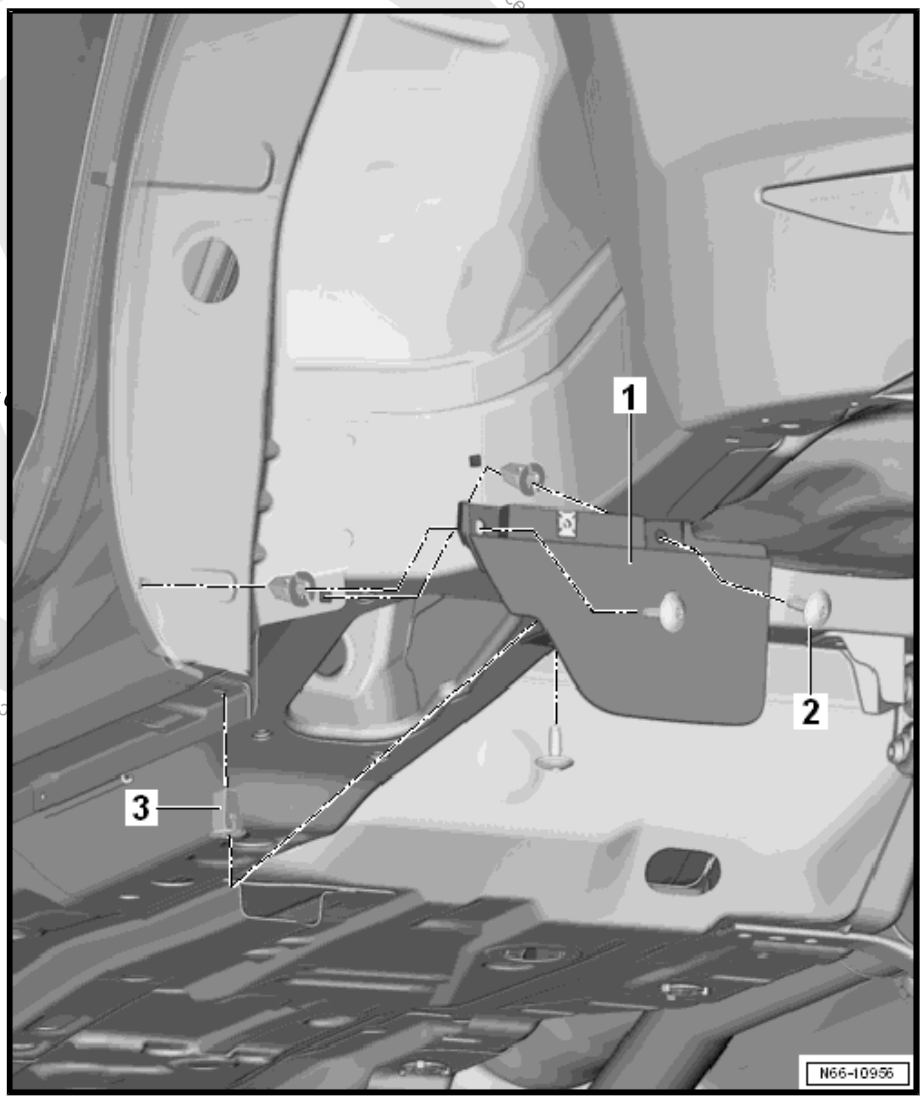
- ❑ Position and bolt sill panel cover.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ (2.0 Nm)

3 - Expansion nut

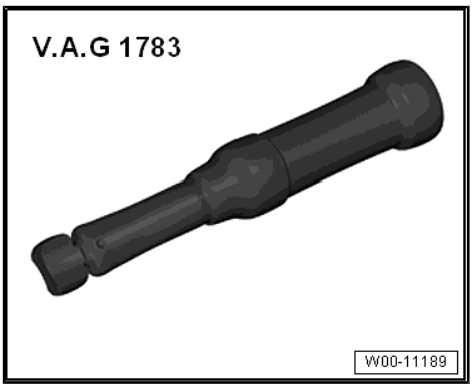
- ❑ Qty. 3



8.3 Removing and installing front wheel housing liner

Special tools and workshop equipment required

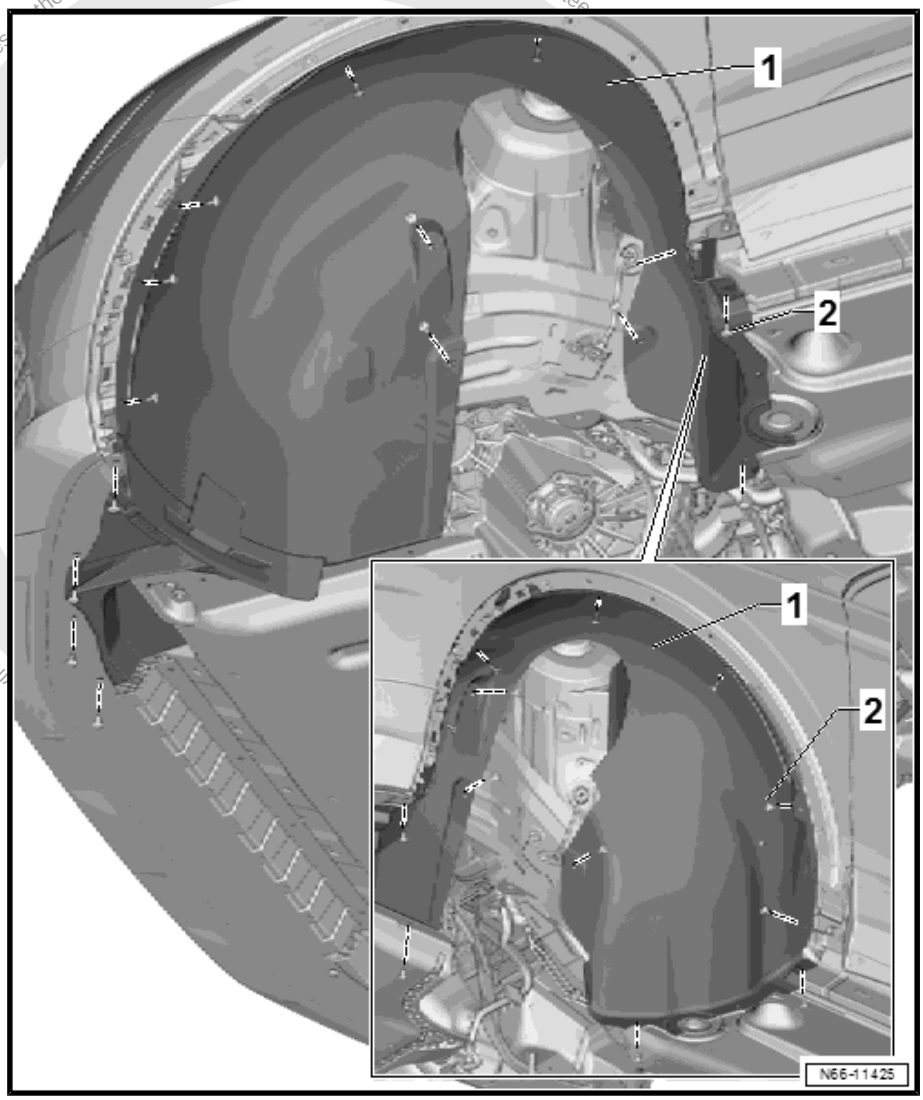
- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

- *Removal and installation is described for the front left wheel housing liner only. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*
- *For reasons of clarity of bolt illustration, the wheel is not shown.*

...thorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee ...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unles...



Removing

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Pull wheel housing liner -1- out of wing.

Installing

Note

Check spreader nuts for damage and renew if necessary.

– Insert front wheel housing liner -1- into wing.

– Align front wheel housing liner -1- with front bumper cover.

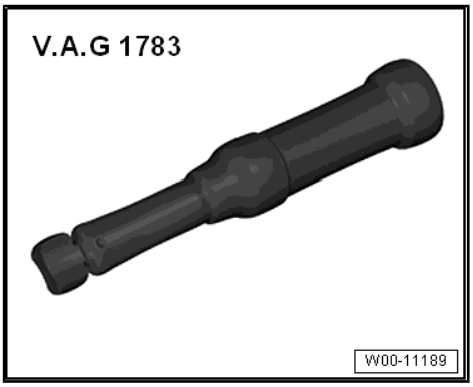
Specified torques

- Bolts
  ⇒ “8.1 Assembly overview - front wheel housing liner”, page 407 .

8.4 Removing and installing rear wheel housing liner

Special tools and workshop equipment required

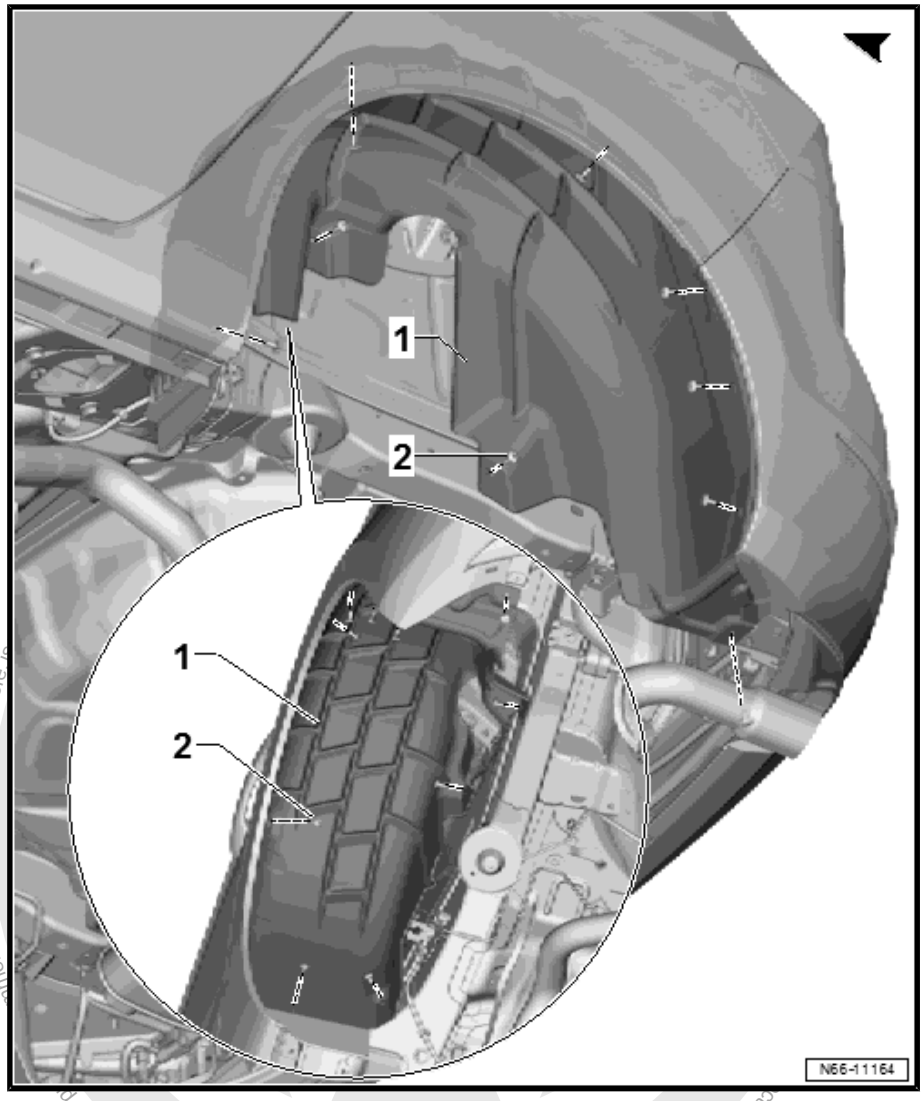
- Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Note

- *Removal and installation are described for the rear left wheel housing liner only. The procedure for the right-hand side is basically the same.*
- *The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Wheels, tyres; Specified torque for wheel bolts .

– Unscrew bolts -2-.

– Pull rear wheel housing liner -1- out of wheel housing.

Removing and installing sill panel cover ⇒ page 408 .

Installing

Note

Check spreader nuts for damage, and renew them if necessary ⇒ Item 5 (page 408) .

– Insert rear wheel housing liner -1- in wheel housing without kinking the liner.

– Mount wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Wheels, tyres; Specified torque for wheel bolts .

Specified torques

- Bolts
  ⇒ “8.2 Assembly overview - rear wheel housing liner”, page 408 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 Lettering and emblems

⇒ “9.1 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on rear”, page 414

⇒ “9.2 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on sides”, page 417

⇒ “9.3 Removing and installing emblems at vehicle front”, page 418

⇒ “9.4 Renewing lettering and badges at rear”, page 420

⇒ “9.5 Renewing lettering and badges on sides”, page 421

⇒ “9.6 Removing and installing lettering and emblems for radiator grille”, page 422

9.1 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on rear

⇒ “9.1.1 Removing and installing bonded lettering”, page 414

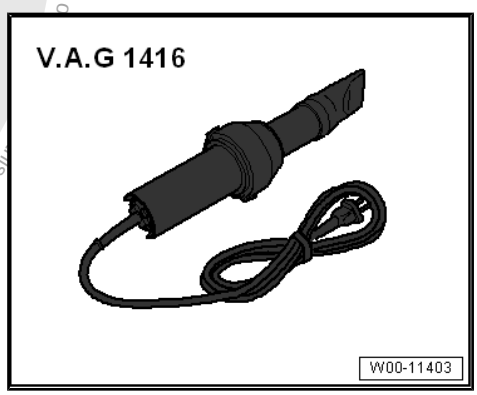
⇒ “9.1.2 Dimensions - lettering on rear lid”, page 415

⇒ “9.2 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on sides”, page 417

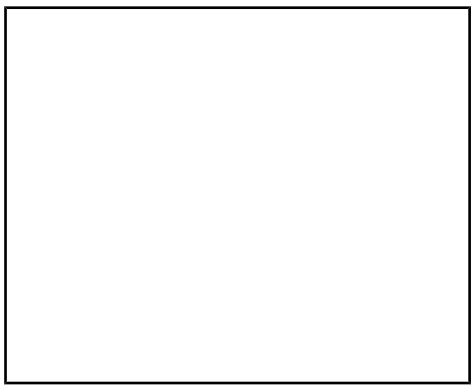
9.1.1 Removing and installing bonded lettering

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



Note

- *The vertical and horizontal dimensions of lettering for the different engines are identical.*
- *When fitting the lettering, observe the assembly instructions as follows.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Fitting instructions

- Heat lettering or emblem with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- before removing.
- If the lettering or emblem is removed and reinstalled, only use adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- to remove the adhesive remains.
- Remove existing adhesive residue of adhesive tape using adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The lettering or emblem must be bonded in place immediately after cleaning.
- Remove backing only immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.
- Lettering or emblem cannot be removed without being damaged.

9.1.2 Dimensions - lettering on rear lid

Note

When fitting the lettering, observe the fitting notes *⇒ page 414* .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Lettering

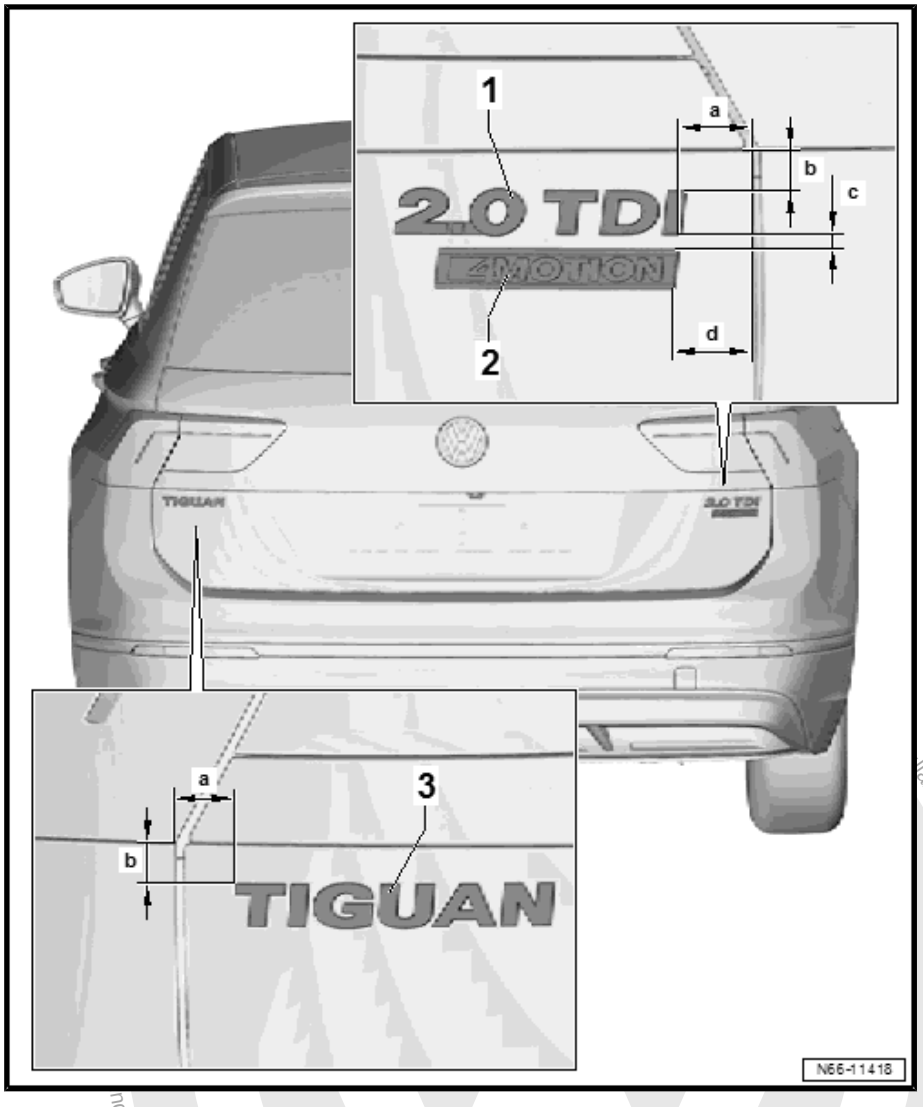
- ❑ Engine designation

2 - Lettering

- ❑ Technical designation
- ❑ Intermediate dimension -c- = 6 ± 1 mm between lettering
- ❑ Side dimension -d- = 35 ± 1 mm from outer edge of rear lid to lettering

3 - Lettering

- ❑ Model designation.
- ❑ Side dimension -a-: 25 ± 1 mm from outer edge of rear lid to lettering
- ❑ Height dimension -b- = 17 ± 1 mm from upper edge of lettering to edge in rear lid.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in any form and by any media, is not permitted without the written authorization of Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

9.2 Dimensions - lettering and emblems on sides

Note

Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA

1 - Badge

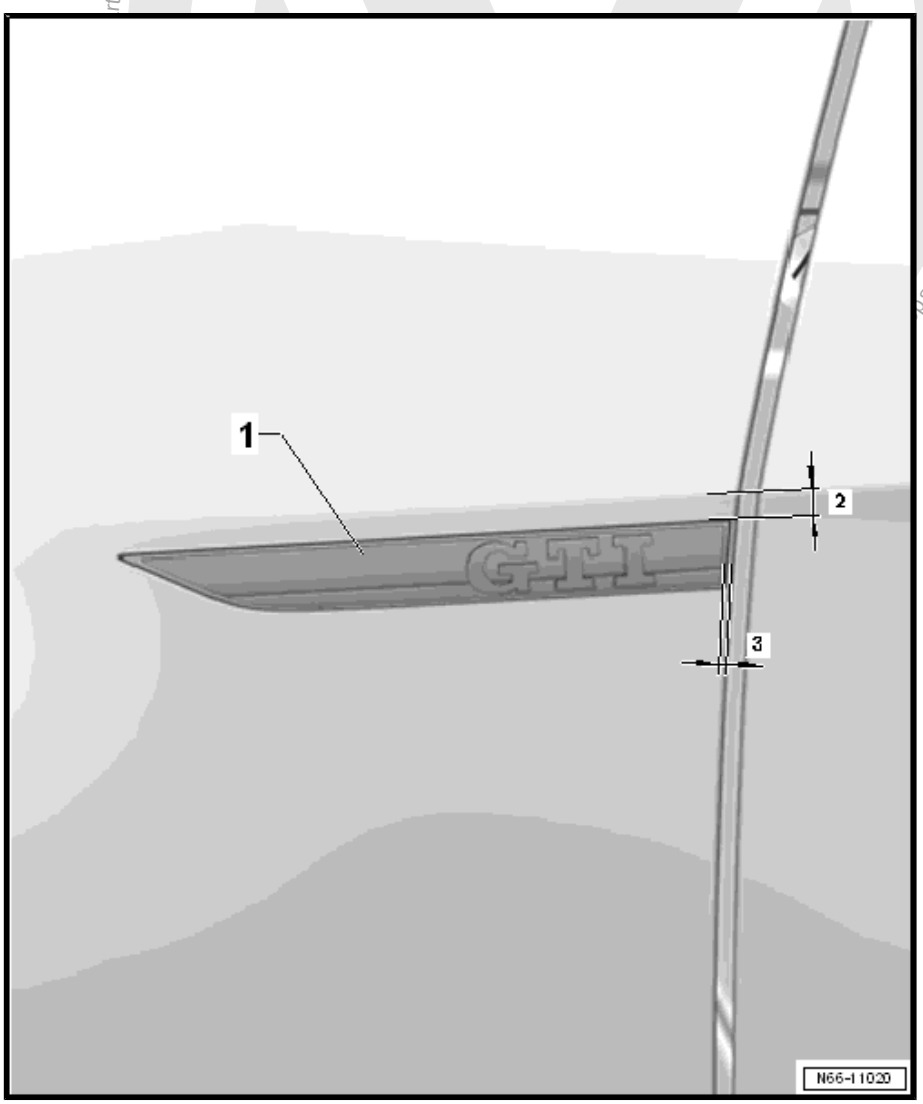
- ❑ The “GTI” lettering is shown as an example

2 - Height dimension

- ❑ 5.0 ± 1 mm, from upper edge of lettering to edge of wing

3 - Horizontal dimension

- ❑ 1.5 ± 1 mm, from outer edge of wing to lettering



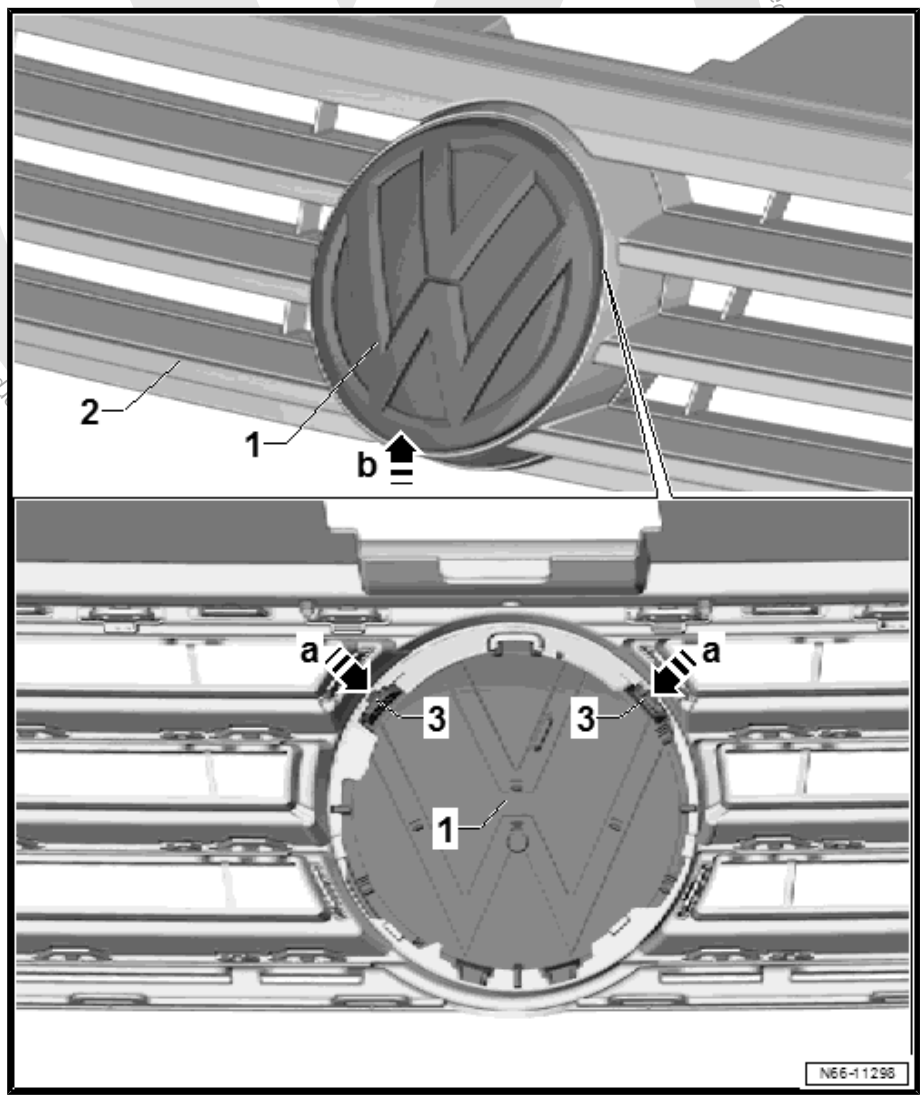
...rt or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee ... accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this ...

9.3 Removing and installing emblems at vehicle front

⇒ “9.3.1 Removing and installing brand emblem, vehicles without adaptive cruise control unit ”, page 418

⇒ “9.3.2 Removing and installing brand emblem, vehicles with adaptive cruise control unit J428 ”, page 419

9.3.1 Removing and installing brand emblem, vehicles without adaptive cruise control unit



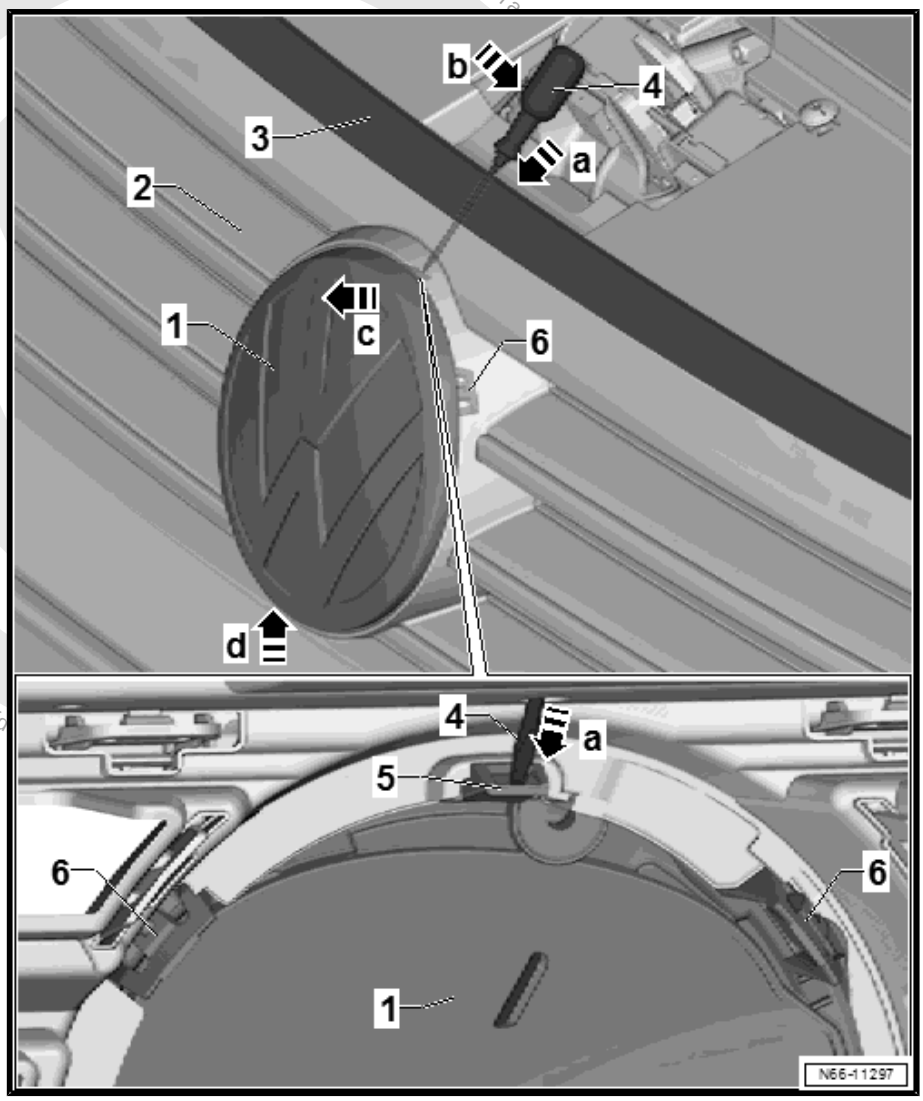
Removing

– Remove radiator grille -2-.
– Release the two retaining hooks -3- on the rear -arrow a-.
– Push emblem -1- slightly out of radiator grille -2-.
– Pull emblem -1- upwards out of radiator grille -2- -arrow b-.

Installing

– Push emblem -1- into radiator grille -2- until retaining hooks -3- can be heard to engage.

9.3.2 Removing and installing brand emblem, vehicles with adaptive cruise control unit - J428-



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Push seal -3- slightly to one side.

– Guide screwdriver -4- through opening -arrow a-.

– While doing this, push screwdriver -4- towards rear -arrow b-. Screwdriver -4- is thereby guided onto locking device -5-.

– Release locking device -5- -arrow a-.

– Pull emblem -1- slightly towards front out of radiator grille -arrow c-. The retaining hooks -6- will disengage autonomously while doing this.

– Pull emblem -1- upwards out of radiator grille -2- -arrow d-.

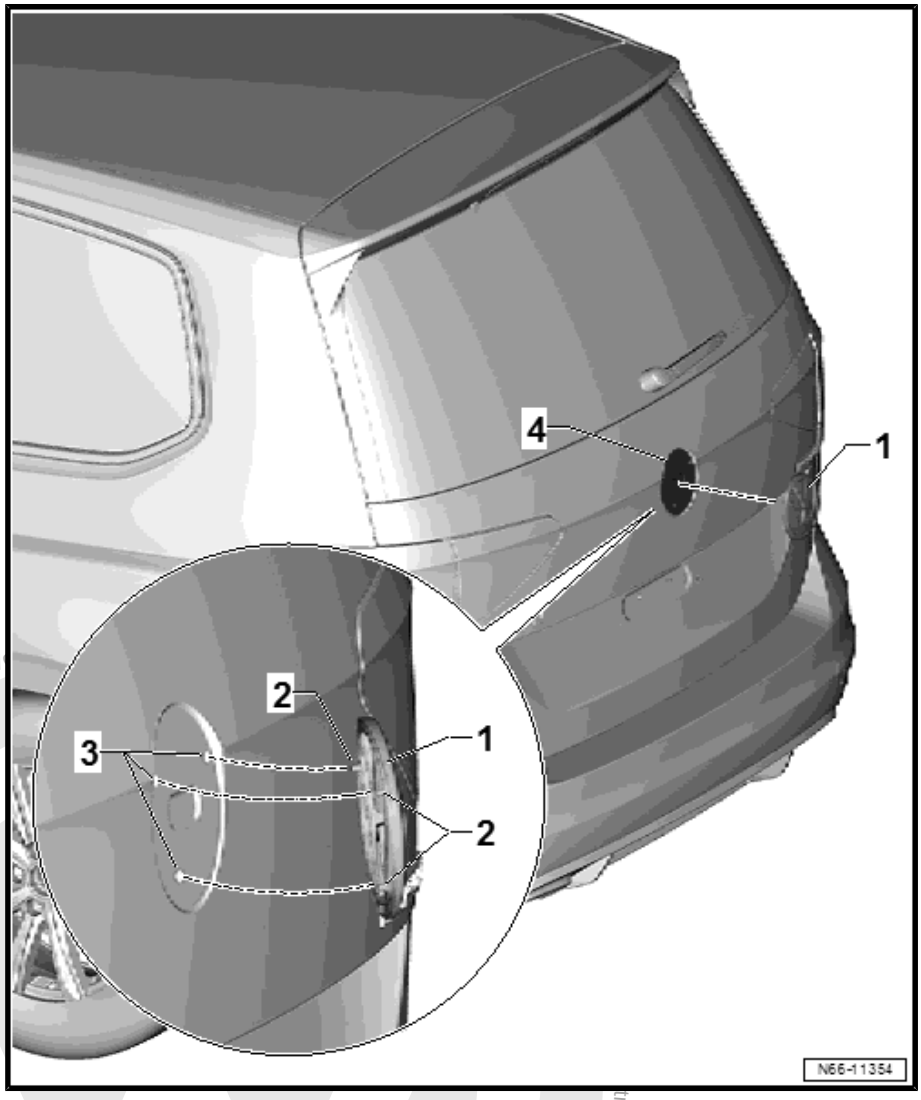
Installing

– Push emblem -1- into radiator grille -2- until retaining hooks -5 and 6- can be heard to engage.

9.4 Renewing lettering and badges at rear

Note

When fitting the lettering, observe the fitting notes *⇒ page 415*



Removing

– Before removing badge -1-, heat it with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Lift VW emblem off rear lid.

– Remove existing adhesive residues with adhesive remains remover - VAS 6349- .

Installing

– Thoroughly clean bonding surface -4- immediately with adhesive residue remover before sticking on.

• Bonding surfaces -4- must be free of dust and grease and there should be no adhesive residues.

– Pull off backing from adhesive tape on emblem -1-.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Using centring pins -2-, position emblem -1- in indentations -3- on rear lid.

– Press emblem down firmly.

9.5 Renewing lettering and badges on sides

⇒ “9.5.1 Fitting instructions”, page 421

⇒ “9.5.2 Renewing lettering for wing”, page 421

9.5.1 Fitting instructions

- Before removing the lettering, heat it with a hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
- If lettering is removed and reinstalled, only use adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- to remove the adhesive remains.
- Remove any glue residue from adhesive tape using adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .
- Ensure that the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- The lettering must be bonded in place immediately after cleaning.
- Remove backing only immediately before installation.
- Working temperature is approx. 21 °C.
- The lettering cannot be removed intact.

9.5.2 Renewing lettering for wing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



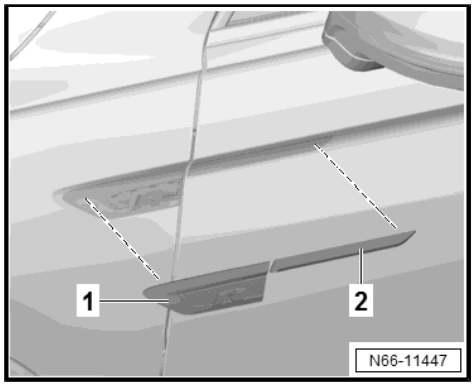
Removing

Note

- *The lettering cannot be removed intact.*
- *Different versions depending on model version; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ETKA*
- *Removal and installation are described only for the left side. Removal and installation of the right side are similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Carefully heat up lettering -1- or -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Carefully pull off lettering -1- or -2- from wing or door.



Installing

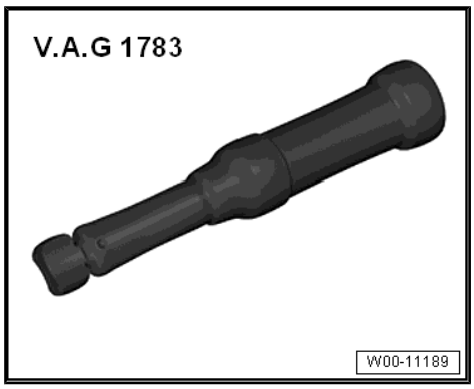
Install in reverse order, noting the following:

– Fitting notes ⇒ page 421 .
– Pull off backing.
– Position lettering -1- or -2- in swage line on wing or door and press down firmly.

9.6 Removing and installing lettering and emblems for radiator grille

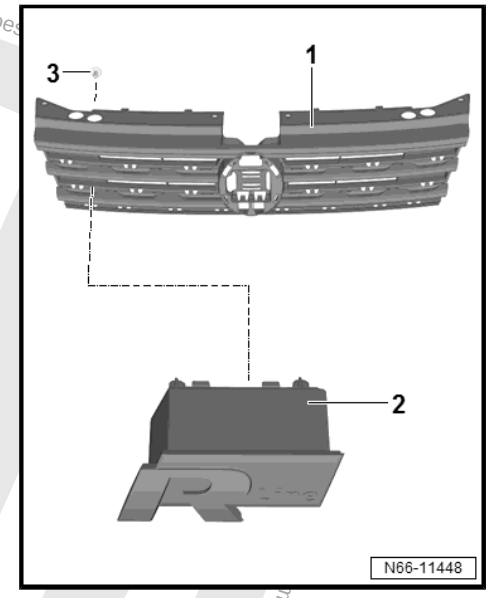
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



Removing

– Remove radiator grille ⇒ page 343 .
– Unscrew bolt -3- on rear of radiator grille -1-.
– Pull lettering -2- forwards out of radiator grille -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order, noting the following:

Specified torques

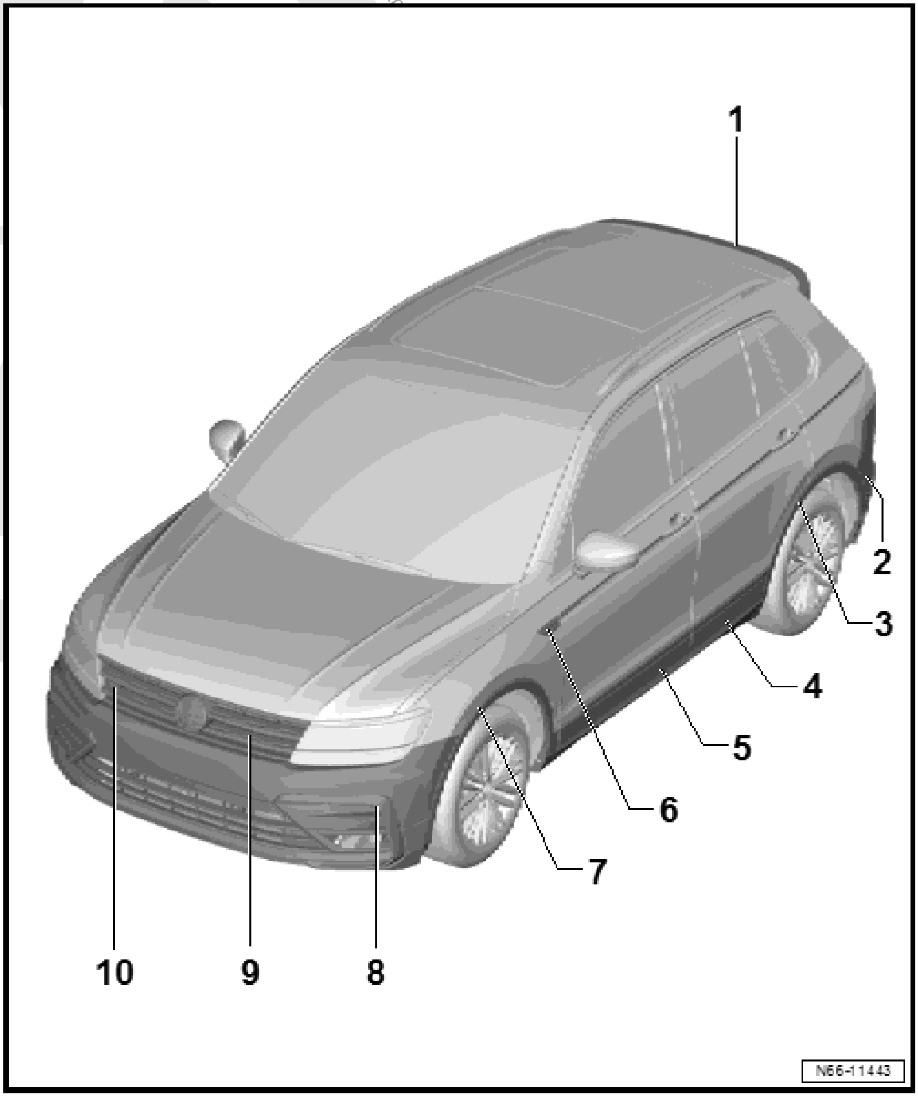
♦ ⇒ “1.1 Assembly overview - radiator grille”, page 341

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

10 Special add-on parts

⇒ “10.1 Assembly overview – special add-on parts”, page 423

10.1 Assembly overview – special add-on parts



1 - Rear spoiler
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 347
- ❑ Assembly overview ⇒ page 346

2 - Rear bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

3 - Rear wheel arch trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

4 - Rear door moulding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 357

5 - Front door moulding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 357

6 - Lettering on wing
- ❑ Replacing ⇒ page 421

7 - Front wheel arch trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

8 - Front bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275

9 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 343

10 - Emblems on radiator grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

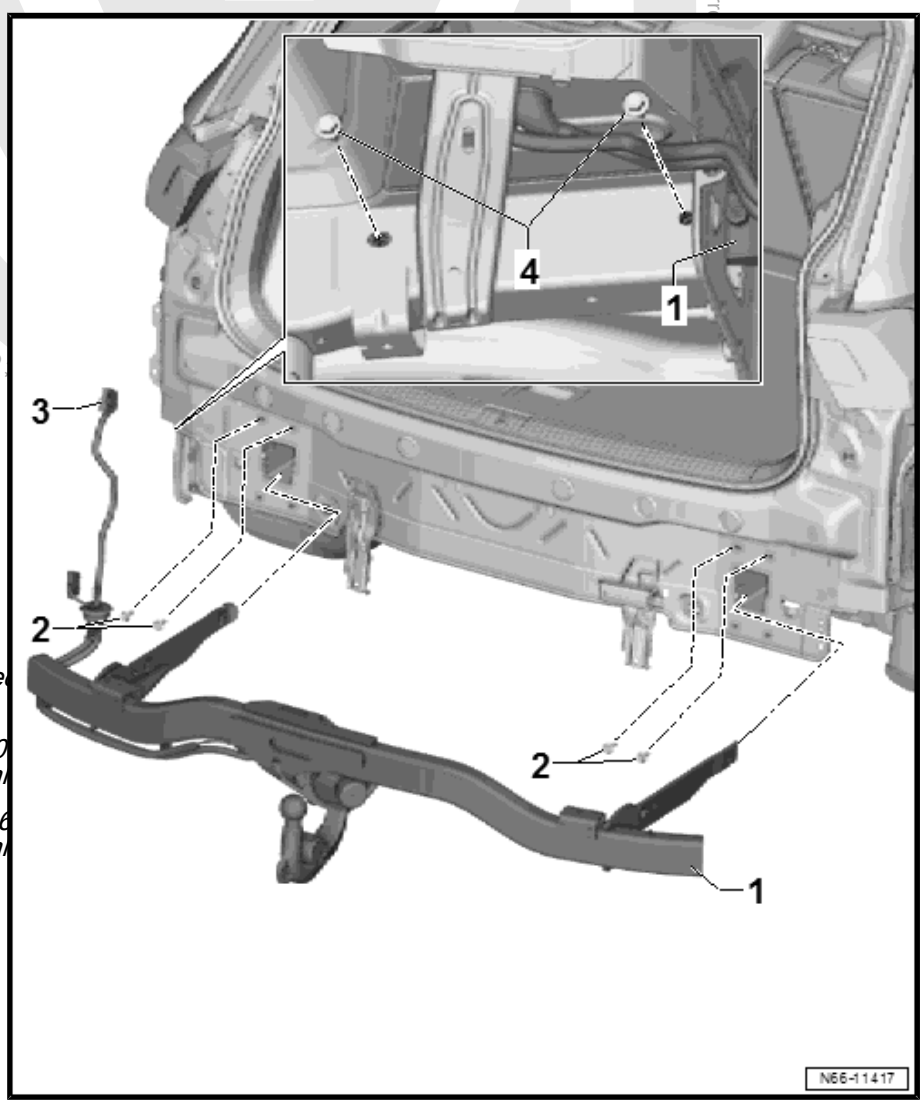
11 Support

⇒ “11.1 Assembly overview - towing bracket”, page 424
⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing towing bracket”, page 424
⇒ “11.3 Removing and installing trigger unit”, page 427

11.1 Assembly overview - towing bracket

Note

- *Minor differences will be encountered on removal and installation, depending on version.*
- *The specified torques refer only to factory-installed towing brackets.*
- *Request torque specifications for other towing brackets from the manufacturers.*



1 - Support

- ❑ Towing bracket with electrically actuated ball head.
- ❑ Removing and installing trigger unit

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Gas-tight threaded connections
- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°

3 - Connector

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Qty. 2 on each side
- ❑ Always renew bolts after loosening

Note

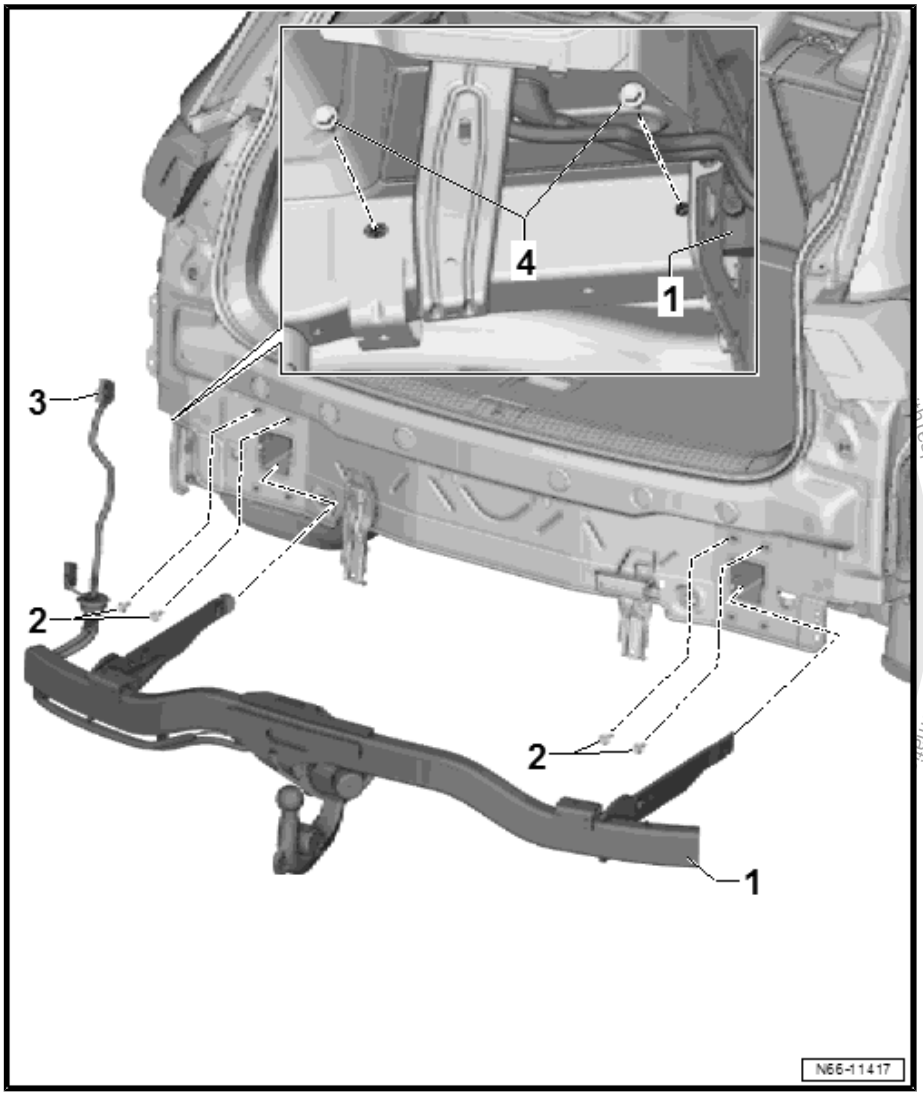
- *Different torque spe apply.*
- *On vehicles ➢ 09.20 911.784.01- is instal*
- *On vehicles 10.2016 911.730.01- is instal*

- ❑ Specified torque for bolt - N.911.784.01- M10 x 38 - SW22 is 50 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Specified torque for bolt - N.911.730.01- M10 x 40 - SW30 is 50 Nm + 180°

11.2 Removing and installing towing bracket

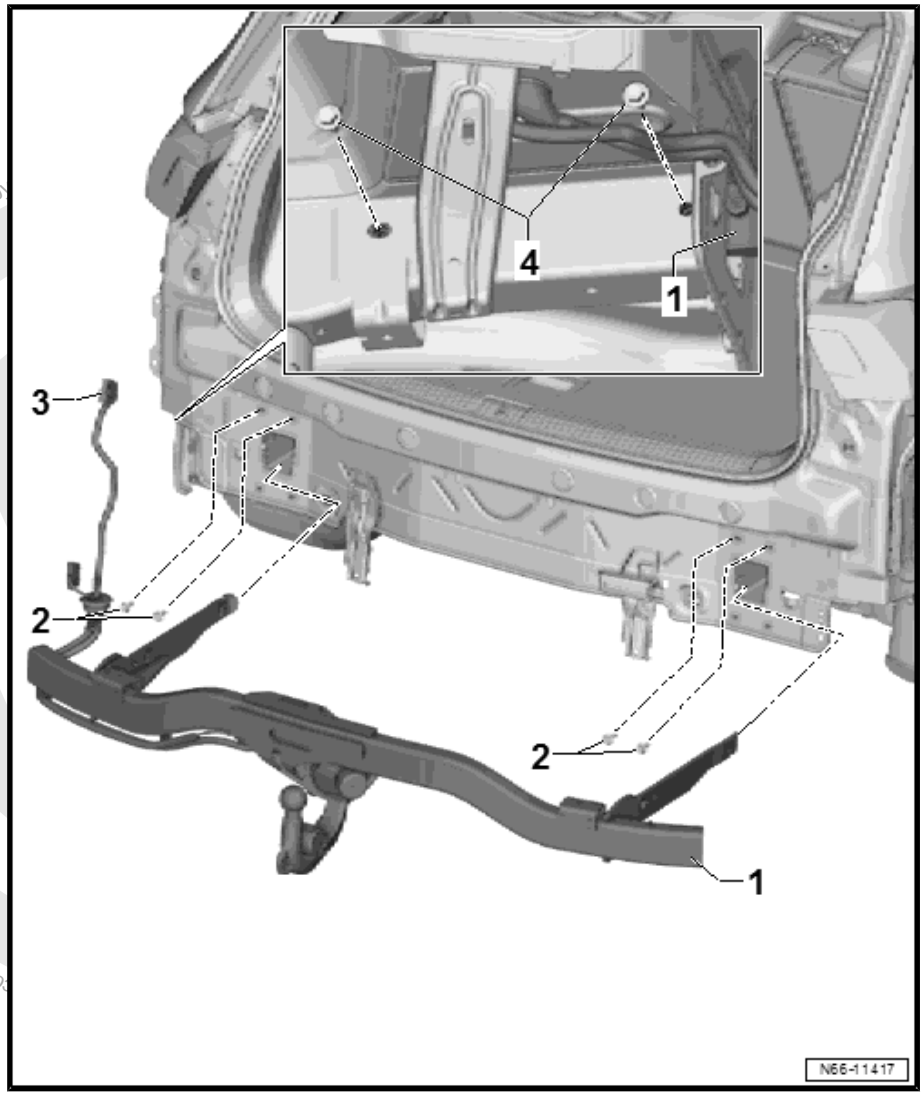
Removing

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove left luggage compartment side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trims; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .
– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 287 .
– Detach electrical connector -3- in interior.
– If present, remove reducing agent tank ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR system (selective catalytic reduction), Assembly overview - reducing agent tank .
– Unscrew bolts -4-.
– Pull towing bracket -1- in a parallel movement out of longitudinal members.

Installing



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by

– Installation is carried out in reverse order.

Note

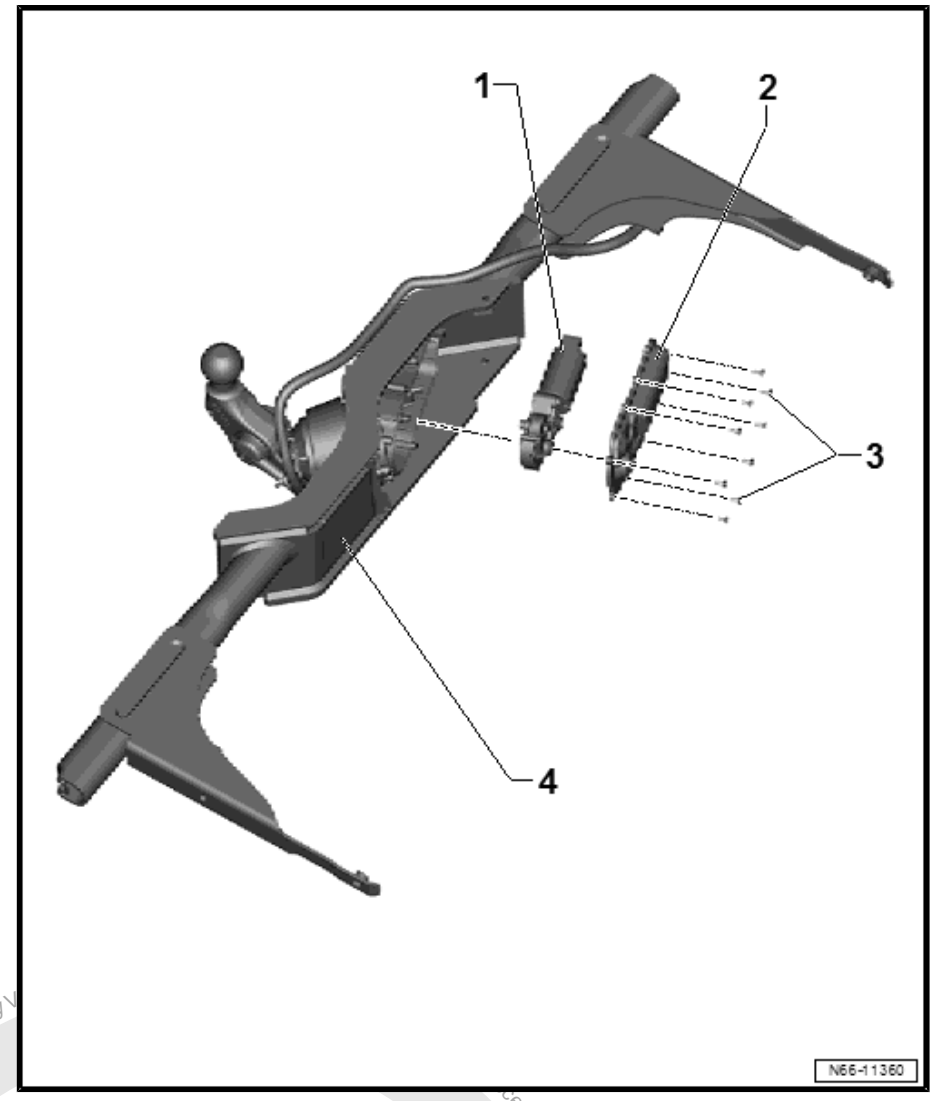
The expanding nuts -2- seal the interior against exhaust gases and must always be renewed in the event of damage.

– Perform functional check after installation of towing bracket.

Specified torques

- Bolts
  ⇒ “11.1 Assembly overview - towing bracket”, page 424

11.3 Removing and installing trigger unit



Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 287 .
– Remove towing bracket -4- ⇒ page 424 .
– Unscrew bolt -3-.
– Take off cover -2-.
– Remove drive -1-.

Installing

Note

- *Before fitting cover, the area where the seal touches it must be cleaned.*
- *Under no circumstances must water be allowed to enter the trigger unit -1-.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by VW. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Cover	1 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.